

**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS**



00005793476







# HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES OF AMERICA;

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY

CHARLES A. GOODRICH.

REVISED AND BROUGHT DOWN TO THE PRESENT TIME

BY

WILLIAM H. SEAVERY,

PRINCIPAL OF THE GIRLS' HIGH AND NORMAL SCHOOL, BOSTON.

With Maps and other Illustrations.

BOSTON:

BREWER AND TILESTON.

PHILADELPHIA: ELDREDGE AND BROTHER.

CHICAGO: W. B. KEEN & CO.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1867, by  
BREWER & TILESTON,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

Transfer  
Engineers School Liby.  
June 29, 1881

ELECTROTYPED AT THE  
BOSTON STEREO TYPE FOUNDRY,  
4 Spring Lane.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE History of the United States, by Charles A. Goodrich, has been too long and too favorably known to the public to need any special introduction. But the country has passed through the most momentous years of its history since the last edition of that excellent and popular work was prepared, and to continue it to the present time, and yet keep the book within the proper limits of a text-book for schools, it has been necessary to rearrange and rewrite the earlier chapters to such an extent that the present revision differs as much from former editions as several of the school histories in common use differ from each other.

In this edition the text is presented in type of two sizes. The matter in the larger type, by itself, forms a connected history, and may be sufficient for schools in which but a limited time can be devoted to the study; that in the smaller type goes more into detail, and may be made a part of the lessons for rigid preparation, or be merely read in connection with the closer study of the larger type, or be omitted altogether, at the option of the teacher.

At the end of each Period is given a general view of the condition, not only of the original thirteen colonies, or what was, at the time, the United States, but of what has since been annexed.

At the close of each Period is a Chronological Review, intended not merely for reference, but to be studied and committed to memory. It is believed that this purpose is better subserved by arranging the Reviews by Periods, than by bringing them together at the end of the book. Still further to adapt them to this end, only the leading events are given; the events are not merely enumerated, but are distinctly, though briefly, stated; and, in connected events, as in campaigns, pains have been taken to unite in one sentence those which are closely related.

In connection with the Chronological Reviews are lists of subjects from contemporary history, and of names of eminent persons not elsewhere mentioned in the History, selected from among those of whom no one would be willing to confess himself ignorant. In some schools these lists will probably not be used at all; in others there will be time and opportunity to make them subjects for inquiry and investigation by the pupil, or for conversational lectures by the teacher. Used in this way, they may be made to add much to the interest of the recitation, and (while they do not pretend to be exhaustive) greatly to extend the pupil's knowledge of men and things outside of his own country.

Each paragraph either has a subject-heading, or contains one or more words in **antique type**, or in *italics*, which, by suggesting its leading topics, will facilitate the labor of the pupil in preparing the lesson, and serve the teacher in recitation as a convenient substitute for questions.

By means of foot-notes and cross-references, the matter of the book can readily be rearranged, so as to make it more strictly chronological, or more strictly topical, than at present. Such changes of arrangement will be particularly useful in reviews.

The Appendix contains, besides other matter for reference or study, "Hints on the Method of Teaching History," by A. P. STONE, the able and accomplished Principal of the Portland High School. To this the attention of teachers and pupils is particularly directed. The Appendix closes with a Pronouncing Index of the more difficult proper names.

It is not less a pleasure than a duty here to acknowledge the obligations due to LOOMIS J. CAMPBELL, to whose careful scholarship and conscientious research the book is largely indebted for the accuracy which it is hoped will be found to characterize it.

W. H. S.

BOSTON, March, 1867.

# CONTENTS.

---

## Period I.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR DISCOVERIES.

Extending from the Discovery of San Salvador by Columbus, 1492, to the First Permanent English Settlement at Jamestown, Virginia, 1607. . . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 6

## Period II.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR SETTLEMENTS.

Extending from the First Permanent English Settlement at Jamestown, Virginia, 1607, to the Accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, 1689. . . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 28

## Period III.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR INTERCOLONIAL WARS.

Extending from the Accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, 1689, to the Peace of Paris, 1763. . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 74

## Period IV.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR THE REVOLUTION.

Extending from the Peace of Paris, 1763, to the Inauguration of George Washington as the First President of the United States, 1789. . . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 100

## Period V.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT.

Extending from the Inauguration of Washington, 1789, to the Inauguration of Lincoln, 1861. . . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 156

## Period VI.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR THE GREAT REBELLION.

Extending from the Inauguration of Lincoln, 1861, to the Close of the Thirty-ninth Congress, 1867. . . . . See ANALYSIS, p. 238

---

## APPENDIX.

Hints on the Method of Teaching History, by A. P. Stone. . . . .	1
Declaration of Independence. . . . .	5
Constitution of the United States of America. . . . .	8
Chief Officers of the National Government. . . . .	18
Table of the States in the Order of their Admission into the Union, with their Areas, Population, and Electoral Vote. . . . .	22
Pronouncing Index. . . . .	23

---

**A N A L Y S I S.**

---

**PERIOD I.—DISCOVERIES.****Chap. I.—Spanish Expeditions.**

- I. Columbus, p. 7.
- II. Spaniards in the South, p. 11.
- III. Spaniards in the United States, p. 12.

**Chap. II.—French Expeditions.**

- I. Early Expeditions in the North, p. 14.
- II. The Huguenots, p. 15.
- III. Later Expeditions, p. 15.

**Chap. III.—English Expeditions.**

- I. Discoveries and Explorations, p. 16.
- II. Attempts to form Settlements, p. 16.
- III. Charter of Virginia, p. 17.

**Chap. IV.—Condition, at the Close of this Period, of what is now the United States.**

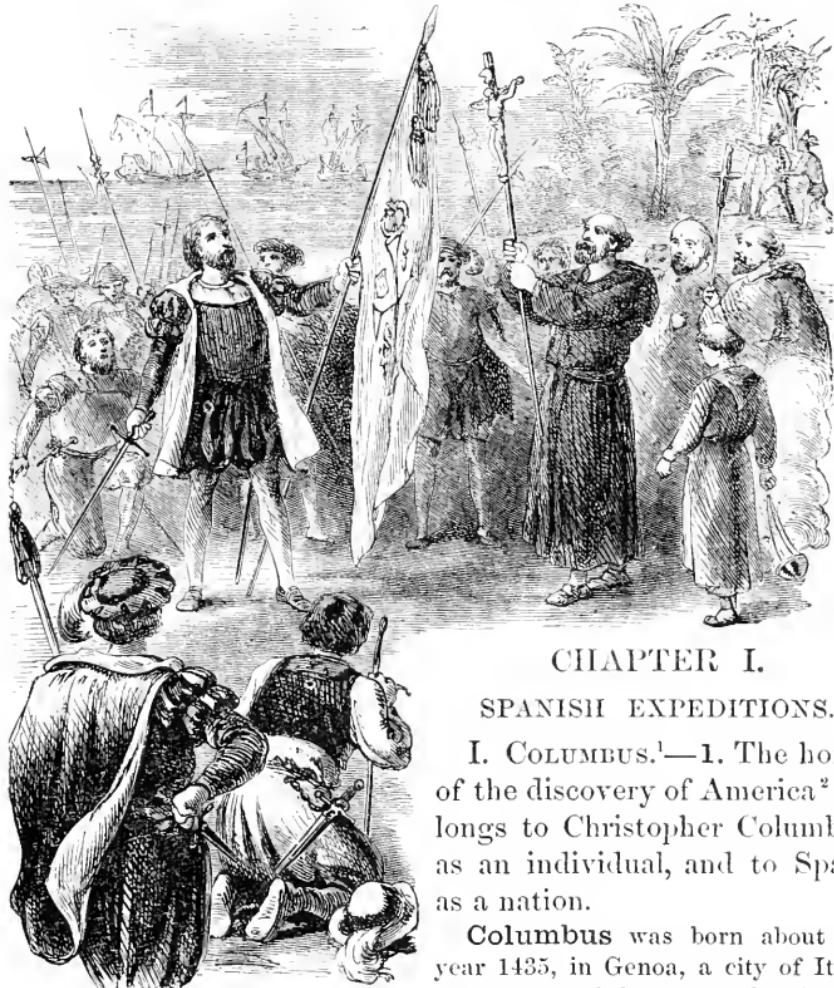
- I. Progress of Discovery, p. 18.
- II. Claims, p. 20.
- III. Aborigines, p. 21.

Chronology, p. 26.

# PERIOD I.

## DISTINGUISHED FOR DISCOVERIES.

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF SAN SALVADOR BY COLUMBUS, 1492,  
TO THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH SETTLEMENT, AT  
JAMESTOWN, VIRGINIA, 1607.



Landing of Columbus.

### CHAPTER I.

#### SPANISH EXPEDITIONS.

I. COLUMBUS.<sup>1</sup>—1. The honor of the discovery of America<sup>2</sup> belongs to Christopher Columbus, as an individual, and to Spain, as a nation.

Columbus was born about the year 1435, in Genoa, a city of Italy. At the age of fourteen, after having acquired some knowledge of geometry,

geography, astronomy, and navigation, he entered upon a seafaring life. About twenty years later we find him in Lisbon, attracted, no doubt, by the spirit of maritime enterprise, of which that city was then the centre.

<sup>1</sup> In Italian, *Colombo*: Latinized, it becomes *Columbus*, by which name he is best known. In Spanish, his name is written *Christoval Colon*. See p. 10, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> There is reason for believing that the Northmen, in the 10th century, found their way to

QUESTIONS.—1. To whom belongs the honor of discovering America? To what nation? — When and where was Columbus born? What is said of Columbus at the age of fourteen? Twenty years later? Why did he go to Lisbon?

Christopher Columbus.<sup>3</sup>

an armament for so important an expedition, he applied for aid, probably to his native city, perhaps to Venice, certainly to Portugal; but without success. He then sent his brother Bartholomew to England to ask assistance of Henry VII., but Bartholomew was taken by pirates, and did not reach that country for several years; meanwhile Columbus repaired to Spain to lay his plans before Ferdinand and Isabella, then on the united thrones of Castile and Arragon.<sup>4</sup> Seven weary years did he urge his project upon the attention of the Spanish sovereigns. At length Isabella undertook the enterprise, and Columbus was commissioned, by the king and queen, admiral and viceroy of all the lands he should discover.

4. A fleet, consisting of three small vessels, was soon ready for the voyage. Two of them, named the *Pinta* and *Niña*, were without deck in the centre, but built high at the prow and stern, with forecastles and cabins for the accommodation of the crew. The ship of Columbus, the *Santa Maria*, was decked, and of larger dimensions. On board of this fleet were ninety mariners, together with various private adventurers,—in all, one hundred and twenty persons.

---

Newfoundland, or Labrador, and even visited the shores of Rhode Island and Massachusetts. But their discoveries appear to have slept in forgetfulness until after Columbus had established the existence of a Western World.

<sup>1</sup> Then a common name for all Southern and Eastern Asia.

<sup>2</sup> This passage was finally accomplished by Da Gama in 1497.

<sup>3</sup> After an original contemporary portrait.

<sup>4</sup> Ferdinand, King of Arragon, married Isabella, heir to the throne of Castile and Leon, and thus the two kingdoms were united, in 1479. Navarre was conquered, and Spain formed into one monarchy, in 1512.

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What were the Portuguese then seeking? What project did Columbus conceive? Why did he think this passage would be shorter than that which the Portuguese were trying to find? 3. What did Columbus next do? What applications for aid did he make, and with what success? What of his brother Bartholomew? Before whom did Columbus then lay his plans? Who at length undertook the enterprise? 4. Name the ships of the fleet. Describe them. How many mariners? How many persons in all?

2. The Portuguese were at that time seeking a **passage to India**<sup>1</sup> by doubling the Southern extremity of Africa.<sup>2</sup> To Columbus this subject was invested with the deepest interest. He believed the earth to be round, and his daring mind conceived the project of reaching India by sailing west, across the Atlantic. As Asia was supposed to extend much farther east than it does, he thought that this passage would be shorter than that which the Portuguese were endeavoring to find.

3. Having formed his theory, he matured the plan of a voyage to test its truth. Too poor to fit out

5. At dawn, on Friday, August 12,<sup>1</sup> 1492, Columbus set sail from Palos, in Spain, to find a western passage to India. At dawn, Friday, October 21,<sup>2</sup> after a voyage of ten weeks, he reached an island, called by the natives Guanahani, but which he named **San Salvador**.<sup>3</sup> This island is one of the Bahamas, in the West Indian archipelago.

6. Leaving Palos, the little squadron first touched at the Canaries, and thence entered upon a **voyage of discovery** in the unexplored Atlantic. On losing sight of land the crews despaired of ever again seeing their homes. As they advanced their terrors increased. They observed that the needle varied from the north. This phenomenon, now familiar, filled the sailors with consternation, lest their only guide over the trackless ocean should fail them. Rugged seamen shed tears, and some broke into loud lamentations. At length they became mutinous, and demanded that their leader should attempt to return to Spain. Columbus did not waver for a moment. On the evening of October 20, indications of land were so strong that he ordered a vigilant watch from each vessel. About ten o'clock he thought he beheld a light glimmering at a distance, and soon a gun from the Pinta gave the joyful signal of land; whereupon they lay to, waiting impatiently for the dawn.

7. Early in the morning, Columbus, in a rich dress, holding the royal standard, **landed with his men**. All knelt and kissed the ground. Then rising, the admiral drew his sword, unfurled the royal banner, and took formal possession of the island in the name of his patrons, Ferdinand and Isabella. The crews now crowded around their leader. Kneeling at his feet, they implored his pardon for having distrusted him, and promised the blindest obedience for the future.

8. The Spaniards were surprised to find the natives unlike any race of people they had ever seen. They were of a dusky copper-color, naked and beardless, with long black hair floating on their shoulders, or bound in tresses round their heads. They supposed the Spaniards to have descended from the skies. The ships they looked upon as winged animals, with eyes of lightning and voices of thunder.

9. Columbus soon after discovered other islands of the same archipelago, among the rest **Cuba** and **Hayti**.<sup>4</sup> All these islands he supposed to be a part of India; and, as he had reached them by sailing west, they were called the *West Indies*. Their inhabitants were called *Indians* — a name afterwards extended to the natives of the adjacent continent.

<sup>1</sup> August 3, O. S.    <sup>3</sup> Called *Cat Island* on some maps. San Salvador signifies *Holy Saviour*.  
<sup>2</sup> October 12, O. S.    <sup>4</sup> Also called *St. Domingo*; by Columbus named *Hispaniola* (*Little Spain*).

QUESTIONS.—5. When did Columbus set sail? Whence? What island did he reach, and when? 6. Leaving Palos, where did the squadron touch? Its course thence? What is said of the crews? Of Columbus? What took place on the evening of October 20? 7. What the next morning? 8. Describe the natives. How did they regard the Spaniards? The ships? 9. What other discoveries did Columbus soon make? Whence the names *West Indies* and *Indians*?

About three months after the discovery of San Salvador, the admiral set sail for Spain, where he arrived after a tempestuous voyage. His return was hailed with acclamations of joy, and he was received by his sovereigns with the greatest distinction.

**10.** Columbus made three other voyages to the New World. On his second, in 1493, he laid, on the Island of Hayti, the foundations of *Isabella*, the first European town in America.

**1498.** On a third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the continent of America, near the mouth of the River Orinoco; and, on a fourth, in 1502, the coast of Central America.

**11.** While on his third voyage his enemies, who, since the success of his first expedition, had been striving to undermine his influence in Spain, induced the king to appoint in his place another governor, who seized Columbus and sent him to Spain in irons. On his arrival the general outburst of indignation at his treatment compelled Ferdinand to set him at liberty, but he never recovered his authority.



Amerigo Vespucci.

His death occurred at Valladolid on the 30th of May, 1506, not long after he returned from his fourth voyage.<sup>1</sup> He died in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery. It remained for subsequent explorers to prove that instead of merely finding a new way to the remote regions of the Old World, he had indeed discovered a new continent.

**12.** Columbus was entitled to the honor of giving his name to the land he had discovered; but in 1499, **1499.** Amerigo Vespucci,<sup>2</sup> a Florentine merchant, visited the Western Continent,

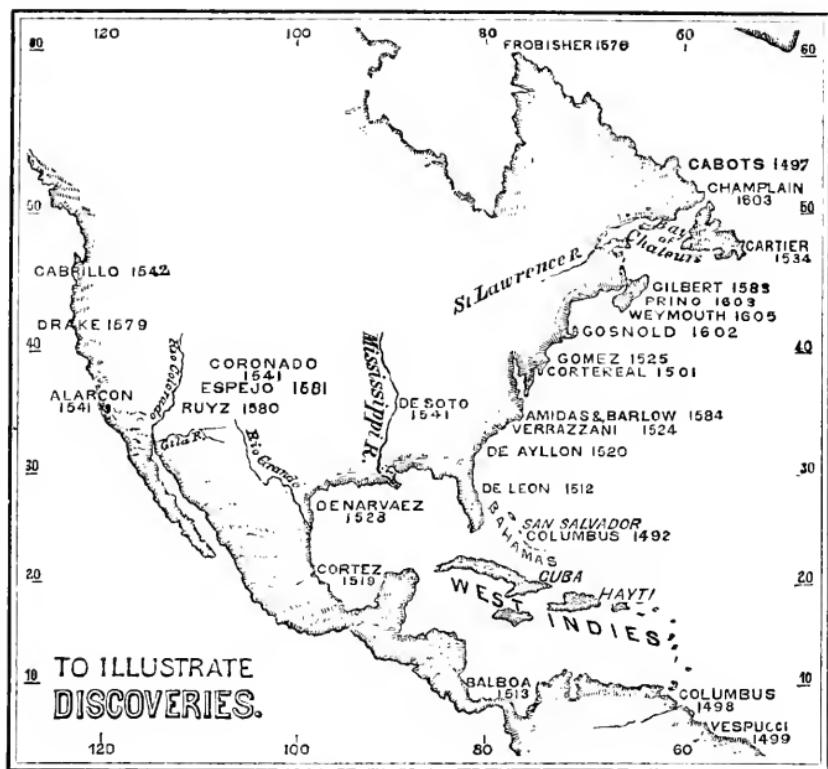
<sup>1</sup> His body was first deposited in the convent of St. Francisco, but afterwards removed to a monastery in Seville. Some years later it was taken to the New World he had discovered, and deposited in the Cathedral of St. Domingo. After resting here for more than two hundred and fifty years, his remains were, in 1795, again removed, and with great pomp conveyed to the Cathedral of Havana, where they now repose. Some time after his death, the ungrateful Ferdinand rendered to his remains the tardy honor of erecting over them a monument, with the inscription, "To Castile and Leon Columbus gave a New World."

"A Castilla y a Leon  
Nuevo mundo dio Colon."

<sup>2</sup> In Latin, *Americus Vespucius*, by which name he is frequently called.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Columbus's return voyage? How was he received in Spain? 10. What is said of the other voyages of Columbus? Second? Third? Fourth? 11. On his third voyage what efforts did his enemies make, and with what result? Where and when did Columbus die? How did he regard his discovery? 12. To what was Columbus entitled?

and, on his return, gave a very glowing account of his discoveries. This falling into the hands of a German writer on geography, led him to give to the New World the name *America*.



**II. THE SPANIARDS<sup>1</sup> IN THE SOUTH.—1. The Spaniards** did not neglect to follow up the discoveries of Columbus. It was not long before they had discovered and taken possession of the principal West India islands. They also sent expeditions to explore the coast of the main land, and in 1510 planted, near the Gulf of Darien, the first European colony on the continent. Three years later, **Balboa, 1513.** governor of the colony, crossed the Isthmus and discovered the Pacific Ocean. He first saw it from a high cliff, stretching far away to

<sup>1</sup> Portugal, so prominent as a maritime power, attempted little in the explorations of North America. In 1500, Cabral, keeping far to the west in a voyage round Africa (see p. 8, ¶ 2, note 2), fell in with Brazil, and claimed it for Portugal. Gaspar Cortereal was commissioned by the king to explore the western shores of the Atlantic. In 1501 he touched at several points of the American coast between New Jersey and Labrador, and kidnapped fifty natives for slaves. Cortereal made a second voyage, from which he never returned. The Portuguese attempted no further discoveries in North America. Successful adventures in other directions engrossed their whole attention.

the south, and hence named it the South Sea. This ocean received its present name from **Magellan**, a Portuguese, who, in the service of Spain, in 1520, sailed through the strait that bears his name, and entered the Ocean, which he called Pacific, because he found it so calm and free from storms. A few months afterwards Magellan was slain at the Philippine Islands, in a contest with the natives. One of his ships, however, realized the idea of Columbus, in reaching India by sailing west. This ship returned to Spain by the Cape of Good Hope, thus accomplishing the first circumnavigation of the globe.

**2. Expeditions** for discovery and trade were early sent from Cuba to the west shore of the Gulf of Mexico. The treasures they collected, and the rumors they gathered of the wealth and magnificence of Mexico, led to the fitting out of an armament under **Fernando Cortez**, in 1519, for the conquest of the country.<sup>1</sup> In two years Cortez subjugated the empire of Mexico, and it became a province of Spain.<sup>2</sup> The Spaniards had also established a settlement at Panama, a little to the east of the present city of that name. From this settlement **Francisco Pizarro** made three attempts to conquer Peru. He set out on his last and successful expedition in 1531, aided by Almagro. The next year Peru, with its riches and splendor, experienced the fate of Mexico. Although the conquerors of Mexico and Peru displayed great courage and ability, these qualities were offset by the meanest deception, the basest treachery, and the most unrelenting cruelty.

**III. THE SPANIARDS IN THE UNITED STATES.—1. Ponce de Leon** was the first who, under the patronage of Spain, explored any part of what is now the United States. On Easter Sunday, called by the Spaniards Pascua Florida, he came in sight of land, which, from the day, he named *Florida*. He landed near where St. Augustine now stands, and claimed the territory for Spain.

De Leon was an old man when, in 1512, he fitted out an expedition with the double design of finding gold and of discovering a fountain, then generally believed to exist, whose waters possessed the virtue of restoring and perpetuating youth. He found no gold; and so far was he from finding the fountain of youth, that some years afterwards he died of an arrow-wound received in a contest with the Florida Indians.

**2. In 1520 Vasquez de Ayllon**, a Spanish adventurer, fitted out two ships to search for slaves. He visited the coast of what is now South

<sup>1</sup> It illustrates the condition of the art of war at that time to state that, out of more than six hundred men who accompanied Cortez, only thirteen were armed with muskets.

<sup>2</sup> Just three centuries after this conquest (1821) Mexico threw off the Spanish yoke.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Magellan? What of one of his ships? 2. What is said of the conquest of Mexico? Of the conquest of Peru? Of the conquerors of these countries? III. 1. Who discovered Florida? Under whose patronage? Why was Florida so named?—With what design did De Leon fit out his expedition? The fate of De Leon? 2. Give an account of De Ayllon's voyage?

Carolina, then called Chicora, and having enticed on board his vessels large numbers of the unsuspecting natives, immediately set sail for Hayti. But he did not profit by his crime. One of his ships foundered, and on board the other many of the captives died: some of them, it is said, resolutely refused food, and died of starvation. **Stephen Gomez**, who had accompanied Magellan on his search for a passage to India south of America, sailed in 1525 on a voyage in the hope of discovering a similar passage north. Such a passage was long sought for under the name of the *North-West Passage*.<sup>1</sup> He touched at various points on the coast of what are now the Middle and Eastern States. Failing in the great object of the expedition, he filled his ships with Indians, to be sold as slaves. Three years later **Pamphilo de Narvaez** made an unsuccessful attempt to conquer Florida.

**3. Fernando de Soto**, who had gained a brilliant reputation and immense wealth by service in Peru with Pizarro, longed to add to both, by subduing the opulent cities that, he believed, lay hidden in the unexplored regions of North America. He obtained of Charles V. permission to conquer Florida, under which name was included all the eastern part of America north of Mexico. He landed on the western coast of the peninsula, and, in the spring of 1541, after two years of fruitless search for gold, he came upon the Mississippi River,<sup>2</sup> 1541. near the southern limit of the present state of Tennessee. The next year he died on its banks, and was buried in its waters.

After his death **his followers**, with incredible toil and hardship, succeeded in building boats to take them down the river. In these, more than four years after their first landing in Florida, they arrived at a Spanish settlement on the Gulf of Mexico—a wretched and care-worn remnant of the brilliant expedition that set out with De Soto.

**4. Nearly a quarter of a century later**, Philip II. of Spain commissioned **Melendez de Avilez** to conquer and colonize Florida, and to expel a colony of French Protestants<sup>3</sup> established near the mouth of the St. John's. The result of this expedition was, that in 1565 *St. Augustine*, the oldest European town in the United States, was founded by the Spaniards,<sup>4</sup> 1565. and the French colonists were, with the exception of a few Catholics, either driven from Florida,<sup>4</sup> massacred, or enslaved.

<sup>1</sup> Finally discovered by Captain McClure, in 1850-54, but useless to navigation.

<sup>2</sup> The Mississippi was not visited again by any European for more than one hundred and thirty years. See p. 67, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 15, ¶¶ 2, 3.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 94, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the voyage of Gomez. What of De Narvaez? 3. What did De Soto undertake? What river did he discover, and when? His fate?—What of his followers? 4. For what was Melendez de Avilez commissioned? The result of his expedition?

5. Spain was earliest in the field of discovery and exploration in the interior of North America, and on the Pacific shores. In 1541 **Alarçon** sailed north along the Pacific coast almost to San Francisco. The next year **De Cabrillo** explored the coast to near the mouth of the Columbia. These voyages were undertaken for the purpose of finding *a passage into the Atlantic.*<sup>1</sup> The same year that Alarçon set out on his expedition, **Coronado**, sailing along the eastern shores of the Gulf of California, discovered the River Gila, which he followed nearly to its source; he then struck east across the mountains, and reached the upper waters of the Rio Grande. In 1580 **Ruyz**, a Franciscan friar, made a missionary tour through the regions north of Mexico, traversing the country visited forty years before by Coronado. The next year **De Espejo** extended the explorations of Ruyz, 1582, and named the country *New Mexico*. In 1582 he founded *Santa Fé*, next to St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States.



## CHAPTER II.

### FRENCH EXPEDITIONS.

I. EARLY EXPEDITIONS IN THE NORTH.—1. The French attempted no discoveries in America until 1524, when 1524. **John Verrazzani**, a native of Florence, sailed in the service of Francis I. Making land near Wilmington, North Carolina, he explored the coast for a short distance south, then north as far as the northern part of Nova Scotia. On his way he entered the harbors of New York and Newport. He named 1534. the country *New France*. Ten years later, **James Cartier** made a voyage under a commission from the King of France. Passing Newfoundland, he entered a bay, which he named Bay of Chaleurs.<sup>2</sup> The next year, on a second voyage, he entered the Gulf of St. Lawrence,<sup>3</sup> and explored, as far as the Island of Montreal, the great river that flows into it.

**Lord Roberval** was afterwards appointed viceroy of these regions, and, with Cartier, undertook to colonize them; but the attempt was abandoned, and the viceroyalty relinquished.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 2, and note 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Bay of heats*, — so named from the intense summer heats which he experienced there.

<sup>3</sup> Cartier entered the gulf on the day of St. Lawrence, and gave the name of that saint to it. The Island of Montreal, and the city built upon it, owe their name to a beautiful hill near the centre of the island, which he named *Mont Real* (*Royal Mount*).

QUESTIONS.—5. What is said of Spain in the interior of North America and on the Pacific coast? What is said of Alarçon? Of De Cabrillo? Of Coronado? Of Ruyz? Of De Espejo? 1. When did France begin to make discoveries in America? Describe the voyage of Verrazzani. Describe the voyages of Cartier. — What is said of Roberval?

**II. THE HUGUENOTS.**—**1.** The celebrated **Coligny** obtained from King Charles IX. permission to establish in America a settlement for French Protestants,—Huguenots, as they were called. **John Ribault** led the expedition. In 1562 he reached Port Royal entrance, and built a fort, which, in honor of his king,<sup>1</sup> he named *Carolina*, a name afterwards applied to the neighboring territory. Leaving a garrison of twenty-five men, he returned to France for supplies and reinforcements. But France was distracted by civil wars. Aid could not be obtained, and the colonists soon abandoned Carolina.

**2.** Two years later, a second colony of Huguenots came over, under **Laudonnier**, who had sailed with Ribault on the former voyage. This colony established itself on the banks of the St. John's, in Florida. A second Fort Carolina was built. The next year Ribault arrived, bringing emigrants with their families, and abundant supplies. Spain, however, would not consent that land claimed<sup>2</sup> by her should harbor Protestants, and **Melendez**<sup>3</sup> was commissioned to “root out the heretics.” He took the settlement by surprise, and put most of the inhabitants to death with inhuman atrocity, “Not as Frenchmen, but as heretics,” as he declared.

**3.** The French government made no attempt to avenge the destruction of the colony, but French Protestants were aroused to the highest pitch of indignation. **Dominie de Gourgues** sold his property, collected contributions from his friends, and fitted out an armament to retaliate upon the Spaniards. In 1568, he surprised the Spanish forts erected near the ruins of Fort Carolina, and hanged the garrisons, placing over them the inscription, “Not as Spaniards and mariners, but as traitors, robbers, and murderers.” De Gourgues, having accomplished his purpose of revenge, embarked for France. His king disowned the expedition, and Florida returned to the possession of Spain.

**III. LATER EXPEDITIONS.**—**1.** In 1603, **Samuel Champlain** was sent out by a company of Rouen merchants. He made a careful examination of the country about the St. Lawrence, and selected Quebec as the proper site for a fort. Soon after, a patent was given to the **Sieur de Monts**, conferring upon him a territory extending, under the name of *Acadia*, from forty to forty-six degrees north, or from near the latitude of Philadelphia to near that of Fredericton, New Brunswick. Under this patent, the first permanent French settlement in America was established, in 1605, on the western coast of Nova Scotia, and named *Port Royal*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Charles, in Latin *Carolus*.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 12, § III, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 4.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 84, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—**1.** Give an account of Ribault's expedition. **2.** What can you tell of a second colony of Huguenots? Fate of the colony? **3.** How was the destruction of this colony avenged? **III.** **1.** Give an account of Champlain's expedition. What is said of De Monts? What was the extent of Acadia? What is said of Port Royal?

## CHAPTER III.

## ENGLISH EXPEDITIONS.

I. DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.—1. England was the first to compete with Spain for the honors and advantages of western discovery. In May, 1497, John Cabot, a **1497.** Venetian by birth, but then a resident in England, accompanied by his son **Sebastian**, sailed, under the patronage of Henry VII., on a voyage of discovery.<sup>1</sup> On the 3rd of July he fell in with land, which he named *Prima Vista*,<sup>2</sup> and which is believed to have been the coast of Labrador. Thus the continent of America was discovered by Cabot more than **1498.** a year before it was seen by Columbus,<sup>3</sup> and more than two years before Vespucci<sup>4</sup> visited it. The next year **Sebastian Cabot** made a second voyage, during which he explored the continent from Labrador to near Albemarle Sound.

2. In 1576 **Martin Frobisher** was sent out to find the north-west passage.<sup>5</sup> He sailed to the coast of Labrador, and as far north as the inlet that bears his name. **Sir Francis Drake** was the first Englishman who **1579.** navigated the Pacific Ocean. He sailed north, in 1579, as far as Cape Orford, Oregon, and, naming the country *New Albion*, took possession of it for his queen. He then returned to England by the Cape of Good Hope, thus completing the second circumnavigation of the globe.

II. ATTEMPTS TO FORM SETTLEMENTS.—1. In 1584 **Sir Walter Raleigh**,<sup>6</sup> under a commission from Queen Elizabeth, **1584.** despatched Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow to America, with two small vessels. They reached the coast of North Carolina, and spent several weeks in trafficking with the natives. On their return to England, they gave so brilliant a description of the country, that Elizabeth bestowed upon it the name of *Virginia*, as a memorial that the discovery had been made under the patronage of a virgin queen.

<sup>1</sup> The commission granted Cabot is the oldest state paper of England in reference to America. It is dated March 5, 1496.

<sup>2</sup> First seen.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 10, ¶ 10.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 10, ¶ 12.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 2, and note.

<sup>6</sup> Before this, Raleigh's half brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, made two attempts to effect a settlement in the New World. Both were ineffectual. On his second voyage, in 1583, he visited Newfoundland, and then sailed south, along the coast of Maine, to near the mouth of the Kennebec. But the loss of a part of his fleet compelled him to return to England. On his home-ward voyage his vessel was lost, with all on board.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of England in connection with western discovery? Who first discovered the continent of America? When and where? How long before Columbus saw it? How long before the visit of Vespucci? What more is said of Sebastian Cabot? 2. What is said of Frobisher? What of Drake's voyage? II. 1. Give an account of the expedition of Amidas and Barlow. By whom was Virginia named? Why so named?

3. Encouraged by the reports of Amidas and Barlow, and by the favor of his queen, **1585.** Raleigh the next year sent out a fleet, under the command of **Sir Richard Grenville**, for the purpose of making a settlement. As the colonists approached the coast of North Carolina, they narrowly escaped shipwreck on a cape named from that circumstance Cape Fear. They landed at Roanoke Island, in Albemarle Sound, where they remained nearly a year, surrounded by Indians, whom ill treatment rendered hostile. At length, threatened with starvation, they returned to England.

4. Two years afterwards, Raleigh despatched a company of emigrants, with wives and families, under **John White**, to establish homes in the New World. They arrived at Roanoke, and on the site of the former settlement laid the foundations of the *City of Raleigh*. White soon embarked for England to obtain reinforcements and supplies. He left a colony of more than one hundred persons; among them his infant granddaughter, Virginia Dare, the first child born of English parents in the present United States. After three years, he returned to find the city of Raleigh a desert. Nothing is known of the fate of the colony.

5. In 1602 **Bartholomew Gosnold** visited the coast of New England. He discovered Cape Cod, and named it, from his catching there a great number of codfish. **1602.**

He concluded to settle on one of the Elizabeth Islands, where he erected a fort and storehouse; but discontents arose, and it was thought expedient to abandon the settlement. In 1603 **Martin Pring** explored the coast of America, from the eastern part of Maine to Martha's Vineyard, and in 1605 **George Weymouth** from Cape Cod to the Penobscot.

**III. THE CHARTER OF VIRGINIA.**—1. England was now ready to take possession of her claims in America. Accordingly, the king, James I., granted, under the name of *Virginia*, the territory lying between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth parallels of latitude, to two companies, the London Company and the Plymouth Company. To the **London Company**, composed of



Sir Walter Raleigh.

QUESTIONS.—3. Give an account of the expedition under Grenville. 4. Give an account of the expedition under John White. Who sent out these expeditions? 5. What can you tell of Gosnold's voyage? Of Pring's? Of Weymouth's? 1. For what was England now ready? What territory did the grant of Virginia include? To what companies was Virginia granted?

“noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants,” in and about London, was granted a territory, called *South Virginia*, extending from the thirty-fourth to the thirty-eighth parallel, that is, from the latitude of Cape Fear to the latitude of the southern limit of Maryland. To the **Plymouth Company**, composed of “knights, gentlemen, and merchants,” residing in Plymouth and in the West of England, was granted a territory, called *North Virginia*, extending from the forty-first to the forty-fifth parallel, that is, very nearly from the latitude of the city of New York to the latitude of the south-eastern part of Maine. *The intermediate territory* of three degrees was open to both companies, with the condition that neither should settle within one hundred miles of any settlement previously established by the other.

2. The general direction of affairs in Virginia, North and South, was committed to a body of men appointed by the king, styled the **Council of Virginia**, and resident in England. The local affairs of each colony were to be managed by a **local council** resident in the colony, its members to be named by the king, or in accordance with his will. Each local council could choose its own president, who was to be the chief magistrate in the colony. The colonists had no civil privileges, and for a time the produce of labor was to be shared in common.<sup>1</sup>



## CHAPTER IV.

### CONDITION, AT THE CLOSE OF THIS PERIOD, OF WHAT IS NOW THE UNITED STATES.

I. PROGRESS OF DISCOVERY.—1. At the commencement of this Period, the existence of the **American** continent was unknown to Europe. When first discovered, it was supposed to be a part of Asia. Balboa,<sup>2</sup> Magellan,<sup>3</sup> Drake,<sup>4</sup> and others proved it to be separated from Asia by a wide ocean; and the various discoveries and explorations that have been briefly described in the previous chapters, determined with a good degree of accuracy the extent and the general outline of the continent, except at its extreme north.

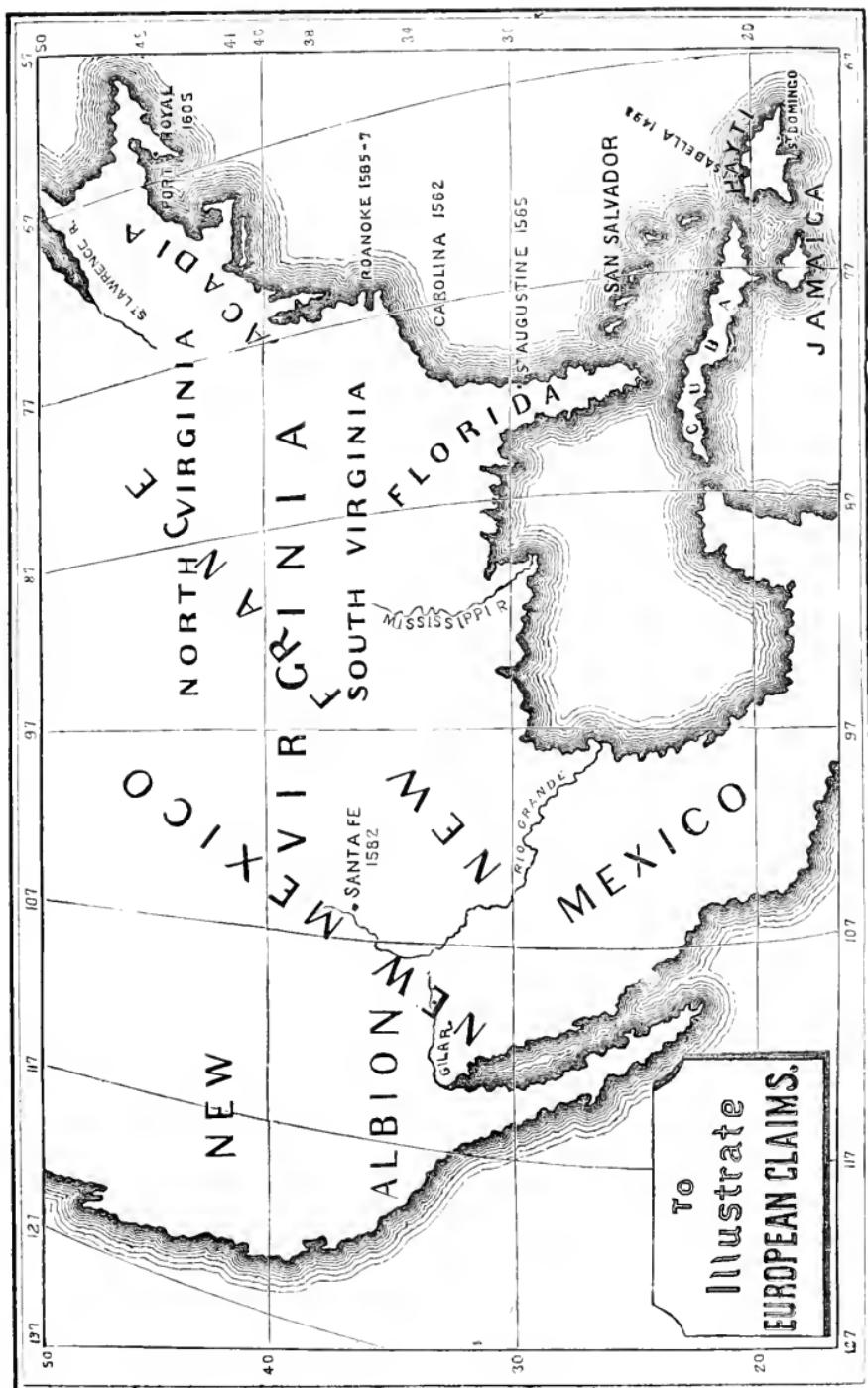
<sup>1</sup> See p. 32, ¶ 8.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 11, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 12, ¶ 1.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 16, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—Of whom was each company composed? The name and extent of the grant to each? What of the intermediate territory? 2. To whom was the general direction of affairs committed? How were the members of the local councils named? What authority had they? What is said of the colonists? Of the produce of labor? 1. What of America at the beginning of this period? What was at first supposed in regard to America? What was afterwards proved?



**2. The American Fisheries** did much to open to Europe the way to the shores of the New World. From an early date, the rich fishing grounds off Newfoundland attracted the attention of the maritime nations of Europe. They are supposed to have been noticed by the Cabots, and soon after their time began to be much frequented. Indeed, for many years they were the only attraction to the northern part of the American coast. In the latter half of the sixteenth century, it is estimated that "four hundred vessels came annually from the harbors of Portugal and Spain, of France and England, to the shores of Newfoundland."<sup>1</sup>

**II. CLAIMS.<sup>2</sup>—1.** "It was held in these times, among the Christian states of Europe, and is still a received principle of the law of nations, that **newly-discovered countries** belong to the discoverers. This title might be liable, indeed, to some exception in favor of the native inhabitants; but, in case those inhabitants were not Christians, they were looked upon as fair subjects for plunder and conquest, the exclusive privilege of which was attached to the discovery."<sup>3</sup> But **occupation** was necessary to complete the title by discovery; and if the nation originally discovering a country neglected for a long time to take possession of it, other nations could appropriate it.

**2.** In conformity to this doctrine, the immense region known as North America was, at the close of this period, claimed by Spain, England, and France. **Spanish claims**, under the name of Florida,<sup>4</sup> on the east, and of New Mexico,<sup>5</sup> in the interior and on the west, extended north indefinitely from the southern boundary of the United States. Within the present limits of the United States, Spain had confirmed her claims by settlements at St. Augustine and at Santa Fé. **French claims** extended south, under the name of Acadia,<sup>6</sup> to the latitude of Philadelphia, and under the name of New France,<sup>7</sup> indefinitely. The French had established a colony at Port Royal. **English claims**, by priority of discovery, might have been much more extensive than the charter for Virginia<sup>8</sup> made them. James, in this charter, while he did not avoid the regions claimed by France and Spain on the Atlantic coast, did avoid those actually occupied by them.

<sup>1</sup> Bancroft.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 14, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 19.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 15, § 111.

<sup>3</sup> Hildreth.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 14, ¶ 1.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 12, § III.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 17, § III.

**QUESTIONS.**—2. What is said of American fisheries? II. 1. What principle of the law of nations is mentioned? Effect of occupation on title by discovery? 2. What nations claimed North America? Describe and name the Spanish claims within the present limits of the United States. French claims. English claims.

**III. ABORIGINES.—1.** When our ancestors first landed upon the shores of the New World, they found it an almost unbroken wilderness, inhabited by numerous tribes or clans of **Indians**,<sup>1</sup> each tribe under its own sachem, or chief. Of their number, when the English settled among them, we have no certain estimate. They probably did not exceed one hundred and fifty thousand within the limits of the thirteen original states.

**2.** The different tribes within the boundaries of the United States were nearly the same in their **physical characteristics**. In person the Indians were tall, straight, and well-proportioned. Their skins were red, or of a copper brown; their eyes black; their hair long, black, and coarse. The same **moral characteristics** were common to the different tribes. They were quick of apprehension, and not wanting in genius. At times they were friendly, and even courteous. In council, they were distinguished for gravity and eloquence; in war, for bravery and address. They were taciturn and unsocial, except when roused by some strong excitement. When determined upon revenge, no danger would deter them,—neither absence nor time could cool them.

**3.** Of their **employments**, **war** was the favorite. Their weapons were war-clubs, hatchets of stone called tomahawks, and bows and arrows. Their warlike expeditions usually consisted of small parties, and it was their glory to lie in wait for their enemy, or come upon him by surprise. They rushed to the attack with incredible fury, and at the same time uttered their appalling war-whoop. Their captives they often tortured with every variety of cruelty, and to their dying agonies added every species of insult. Next to war, **hunting and fishing** were esteemed honorable. In the former, the weapons of war became the implements of the chase; in the latter, they used nets made of thread twisted from bark or from the sinews of the moose and deer; for fish-hooks, they used crooked bones. Their **arts and manufactures** were, for the most part, confined to the construction of wigwams, bows and arrows, wampum, ornaments, stone hatchets, and mortars for pounding corn; to the dressing of skins, and the weaving of mats from the bark of trees, or from a coarse sort of hemp. Their **agriculture** extended not much beyond the cultivation of corn, beans, peas, potatoes, and melons. Their skill in **medicine** was confined to a few simple prescriptions and operations. When they knew no remedy, they resorted to their powwow, or priest, who undertook a cure by means of sorcery. The Indians, however, were liable to few diseases compared with the number that prevails in civilized society. Their women, or **squaws**, tilled their scanty fields, and performed the drudgery connected with their household affairs.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Indians living in the United States, east of the Mississippi, have been arranged in eight families. The following will give the reader the names of these families, and of the most

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the New World at the time of its discovery? By whom inhabited? What was the probable number of the Indians? 2. What is said of their physical characteristics? Of their moral characteristics? 3. What was the favorite employment of the Indians? What is said of their warlike expeditions? Of the treatment of their captives? What other employments were honorable? What of their arts and manufactures? Their agriculture? Their skill in medicine? The women?

4. The amusements of the men were principally leaping, shooting at a mark, dancing, and gaming. Their dances were usually performed round a large fire. In their war dances they sung or recited the feats



Indian Dance.

which they or their ancestors had achieved, represented the manner in which they were performed, and wrought themselves up to an inexpressible degree of martial enthusiasm.

important tribes included in each; also, their locations at a time but little subsequent to the close of this period:—

I. The IROQUOIS, or WYANDOTS, occupying the northern part of the State of New York, and extending from the Hudson to Lake Erie. This family included, 1. The MOHAWKS; 2. The ONEIDAS; 3. The ONONDAGAS; 4. The CAYUGAS; 5. The SENECAS. This confederacy was called the FIVE NATIONS. At a later period, in 1713, they were joined by a kindred tribe from North Carolina and Virginia, the TUSCARORAS, and were called the SIX NATIONS. This family also occupied territory in Canada, north of the St. Lawrence and Lakes Ontario and Erie.

II. The ALGONQUINS.—Their territory extended entirely around that of the Iroquois. Their principal divisions in the United States were, 1. The ABENAKIS, occupying nearly all the present State of Maine and part of New Hampshire, and including the Penobscots, the Norridgewocks, and the Androscoggin, whose locations are marked very nearly by the rivers named for them.—2. The NEW ENGLAND INDIANS, extending from New Hampshire to Connecticut, and including the Pawtuckets, located near the mouth of the Merrimac; the Massachusetts, about the bay of the same name; the Wampanoags, or Pokanokets, occupying the south-eastern part of Massachusetts and the eastern part of Rhode Island; and the Narragansets, west of Narraganset Bay.—3. The MOHEGAN TRIBES, extending from the eastern part of Connecticut to New Jersey, and including the Pequods, east of the Connecticut; the Mohegans proper, west of the Connecticut, and the Manhattans, occupying the Island of Manhattan, on which the city of New York now stands, and portions of the surrounding country.—4. The LENNI LENAPE, best known by the name of one of their principal tribes, the Delawares, in the valley of the Delaware.—5. The POWHATANS, occupying the low lands between the James and the Potomac.—6. THE SHAWNEES, a roving tribe, but first met with in Tennessee, between the Ohio and the Cumberland Rivers.—7. THE ILLINOIS, in the southern part of the State that bears their name.—8. THE KICKAPOOS, north of the last named.—9. THE POTAWATOMIES, between the Kickapoos and Lake Michigan.—10. THE CHIPPEWAS, south-west of Lake Superior.—11. THE MENOMONIES, between Green Bay and Lake Superior.—12. THE SACS AND FOXES, south of and between the last two.—13. THE OTTAWAS, in the present State of Michigan, south of the Strait of Mackinaw.—14. THE MIAMIS, between Lakes Michigan and Erie.

III. THE CATAWBAS, in the Carolinas.

IV. THE MOBILIAN TRIBES, occupying the most of what is now called the cotton region, east of the Mississippi. These included, 1. The YAMASSEES, on the lower Savannah; 2. The SEMINOLES, in Florida; 3. The CREEKS, or MUSCOGEES, in Southern and Central Georgia; 4. THE CHOCTAWS, in the southern part of Mississippi; and, 5. THE CHICKASAWS, in the northern part of Mississippi.

QUESTION.—4. What is said of the amusements of the Indians?



V. The CHEROKEES, occupying the high lands of Northern Alabama, Georgia, the Carolinas, and Tennessee.

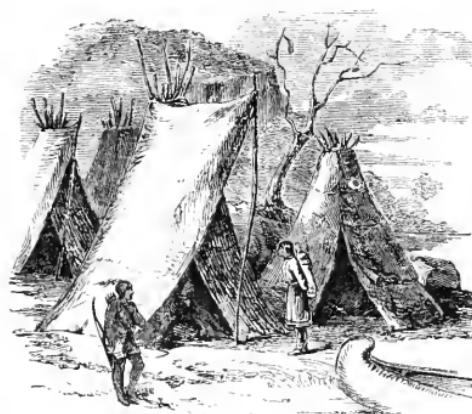
VI. The UCHEES, between the Creeks and Cherokees.

VII. The NATCHEZ, on the Mississippi, between the Choctaws and Chickasaws.

VIII. The DAKOTAS, or SIOUX, dwelling for the most part west of the Mississippi; but one tribe, the WINNEBAGUES, established themselves west of Lake Michigan.

The above Map will aid in marking the locations of these tribes.

They had no books, or written **literature**, except rude hieroglyphics; and **education** was confined to the arts of war, hunting, fishing, and the few manufactures which existed among them. Their **language** was rude, but sonorous, metaphorical, and energetic, and well suited to the purposes of public speaking.



Indian Wigwams.

5. Their houses were rude huts, called **wigwams**, generally grouped in villages. They were constructed by driving poles obliquely into the ground, and covering them with mats, skins, or the bark of trees. The Indians sat, ate, and lodged on the ground. Their **dress** in summer consisted of little besides a covering about the loins; but in winter they clothed themselves with the skins of wild beasts. They were exceedingly fond of ornaments, and of painting themselves with hideous de-

vices. Their **food** was of the coarsest and simplest kind—the flesh, and even the entrails, of all kinds of wild beasts and birds, the products of their limited agriculture, and such fruits as the country spontaneously produced. The money of the Indians, called **wampum**, consisted of small beads wrought from shells, and strung on belts, and in chains. A belt of wampum was given as a token of friendship, or as a seal or confirmation of a treaty.

6. The **government** of the Indians, in general, was an absolute monarchy. The will of the sachem was law. In matters of moment, he consulted his councillors; but his decisions were final. When propositions for war or peace were made, or treaties proposed to them, they met the ambassadors **in council**, and, at the end of each paragraph or proposition, the principal sachem delivered a short stick to one of the assembly, intimating that it was his peculiar duty to remember that paragraph. This was repeated, till every proposal was finished; they then retired to deliberate among themselves. After their deliberations were ended, the sachem, or some councillors to whom he had delegated this office, replied to every paragraph, in its turn, with an exactness scarcely exceeded in the written correspondence of civilized powers. Each man actually remembered what was committed to him; and, with his assistance, the person who replied, remembered the whole. War and peace, among some tribes, seem to have been determined on in a council formed of old men, distinguished by their exploits. They spoke at pleasure, and always listened

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of their literature? Education? Language? 5. What can you tell of their houses? Dress? Food? Money? 6. What is said of their government? Describe their proceedings in council when propositions for war or peace were made. How were the councils formed, in some tribes?

to the speaker with profound and respectful silence. When peace was decided on, the chiefs of the hostile tribes ratified the treaty by smoking, in succession, the same pipe, called the **calumet**, or pipe of peace.

7. The **religious notions** of the natives consisted of traditions, mingled with many superstitions. They believed in the existence of two gods: the one good, who was the superior, and whom they styled the Great or Good Spirit; the other evil. They worshipped both, and, besides these, fire, water, thunder,—anything which they conceived to be superior to themselves, and capable of doing them injury. **Marriage** among them was generally a temporary contract. The men chose their wives agreeably to fancy, and put them away at pleasure. Polygamy was common. The Indians buried **their dead** in shallow graves, sometimes in a sitting posture, facing the east, sometimes in a reclining posture; or deposited them upon high scaffolds, or laid them upon the earth and covered them with bark. Sometimes mounds were raised over them. With the deceased were buried his arms and utensils, for the use of the departed spirit.

8. The **origin of the Indians** is involved in much obscurity. It is generally supposed that they originated in Asia, and at some former period emigrated from that country to America, over which, in succeeding years, their descendants spread. This opinion is rendered probable by the fact that the figure, dress, manners, and customs of the Indians are strikingly similar to those of the people of North-eastern Asia; and the near approach of the two continents towards the north would render such emigration far from difficult. Traditions among some of the Indian tribes favor this opinion. They relate that their ancestors were driven from a distant land, through regions of intense cold, across a narrow sea filled with masses of ice.

There are evidences, too, that the Indians found in portions of the United States were not the original inhabitants, but that they had displaced a race which had made considerable advance in civilization, driving them to settle about the Gulf of Mexico and in Peru. Similar evidence exists that a race of higher civilization gave place to one of a lower in North-eastern Asia. From these facts, it seems not improbable that barbarous tribes invaded and drove from their homes the former inhabitants of portions of Asia, compelling them to emigrate across Behring's Straits, and then, after the lapse of centuries, perhaps, followed them to America, again expelling them from their homes.

---

QUESTIONS.—How were treaties ratified? 7. What of their religious notions? How was marriage regarded among them? How did they bury their dead? 8. What is said of the origin of the Indians? What is the general opinion? What renders this probable? What traditions have the Indians in regard to their ancestors? Of what are there evidences? From these facts what is probable?

## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

- 1492. Columbus discovered America, 9.
- 1497. John and Sebastian Cabot discovered the continent of America, probably Labrador, 16.
- 1498. Columbus discovered the continent of America, 10.
- 1499. Amerigo Vespucci, from whom America was named, visited the Western Continent, 10.
- 1512. De Leon discovered Florida, 12.
- 1513. Balboa discovered the Pacific, and called it the South Sea, 11.
- 1520. Magellan discovered the Strait of Magellan, and entered and named the Pacific Ocean. One of his ships completed the first circumnavigation of the globe in 1522, 12.
- 1521. Cortez completed the subjugation of Mexico, 12.
- 1524. Verrazzani explored the coast of America from North Carolina to Nova Scotia, 14.
- 1532. Pizarro completed the subjugation of Peru, 12.
- 1534. Cartier explored the shores of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, 14.
- 1541. Alarcon explored the Pacific coast to near San Francisco, 14.  
Coronado discovered the Gila and the Rio Grande, 14.  
De Soto discovered the Mississippi, 13.
- 1562. The Huguenots attempted a settlement in South Carolina, 15.
- 1565. St. Augustine, the oldest European town in the United States, was founded by Melendez, 13.
- 1579. Drake visited the western coast of North America, named it New Albion, and claimed it for England, 16.
- 1582. Santa Fé was founded; next to St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States, 14.
- 1584. Raleigh sent out, under Amidas and Barlow, an expedition which reached the coast of North Carolina. The country was named Virginia, 16.
- 1585-7. Raleigh made unsuccessful attempts to colonize America, 16.
- 1602. Gosnold discovered and named Cape Cod, 17.
- 1605. Port Royal (Annapolis), Nova Scotia, was settled by the French, 15.
- 1606. James I. granted the Charter of Virginia, 17.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

- 1492. The fall of Granada terminated the Moorish dominion in Spain.
- 1508. The League of Cambray.
- 1509. Henry VIII. king of England. Died 1547.
- 1513. Leo X., Pope. Died 1521.—The battle of Flodden Field.
- 1515. Francis I. king of France. Died 1547.
- 1517. The Reformation in Germany begun by Martin Luther.

1519. Charles I. of Spain became Charles V., emperor of Germany.  
Abdicated as king 1555, 6, and not long after as emperor.
1520. Solyman II., the Magnificent, Sultan of Turkey. Died 1566.  
Solyman was the last to reach sovereign power of the five contemporary rulers that fill so large a place in European history,—Henry VIII., Leo X., Francis I., Charles V., and Solyman II.
1523. Gustavus Vasa freed Sweden from the Danish yoke, and was made Gustavus I. of Sweden. As sovereign, he was contemporary with all but Leo, of the five named above.
1525. The battle of Pavia. Francis I. taken prisoner.
1529. The Reformers *protested* against the decrees of the Diet of Spire, and were called *Protestants*.—Siege of Vienna by Solyman.
1530. The creed of the German Protestants, styled the Augsburg Confession, drawn up by Melanchthon, and approved by Luther.
1533. Parliament declared Henry VIII. the head of the English Church.
1540. The Order of the Jesuits instituted by Loyola.
1544. The Peace of Crespy.
1558. The Mogul power in India finally established.
1571. The battle of Lepanto. The Turkish fleet destroyed by the combined fleets of Spain and Italy, under Don John of Austria.
1572. The St. Bartholomew massacre.
1576. Wars began between Catholics and Protestants, in France, known as the *Wars of the League*.
1579. The revolt of the seven provinces that formed the Dutch Republic in Holland, consummated in the Union of Utrecht.
1582. New Style introduced into Catholic countries, by Pope Gregory XIII.,—October 5 being reckoned October 15.
1588. The Spanish Armada destroyed.
1590. Henry of Navarre, as Henry IV. of France, broke the power of the League in the battle of Ivry.
1598. Henry IV. of France issued the Edict of Nantes, tolerating Protestants.
1603. James VI. of Scotland succeeded Elizabeth on the English throne as James I., and thus united the English and the Scottish crowns.
1605. The Gunpowder Plot.

Among the eminent men who closed their career during this Period were,

Raphael, . . . . .	1520.	Loyola, . . . . .	1556.
Machiavelli, . . . . .	1527.	Melanchthon, . . . . .	1560.
Ariosto, . . . . .	1533.	Michael Angelo, . . . . .	1564.
Correggio, . . . . .	1534.	Calvin, . . . . .	1564.
Sir Thomas More, . . . . .	1535.	Titian, . . . . .	1576.
Erasmus, . . . . .	1536.	Camoens, . . . . .	1579.
Copernicus, . . . . .	1543.	Sir Philip Sidney, . . . . .	1586.
Luther, . . . . .	1546.	Tasso, . . . . .	1595.
Rabelais, . . . . .	1553.	Spenser, . . . . .	1599.

---

A N A L Y S I S .

---

## PERIOD II.—SETTLEMENTS.

## Chap. I.—Virginia.

- I. Virginia under the Charters, p. 29.
- II. Virginia a Royal Province, p. 33.

## Chap. II.—Massachusetts.

- I. North Virginia, p. 36.
- II. Plymouth Colony, p. 36.
- III. Colony of Massachusetts till the Union of 1643, p. 39.
- IV. Massachusetts from the Union to the Close of the Period, p. 41.

## Chap. III.—New Hampshire, p. 45.

## Chap. IV.—Connecticut.

- I. Colony of Connecticut, p. 46.
- II. Colony of New Haven, p. 48.
- III. Connecticut and New Haven united, p. 49.

## Chap. V.—Rhode Island.

- I. Providence Plantation, p. 50.
- II. Rhode Island Plantation, p. 50.
- III. The United Plantations, p. 51.

## Chap. VI.—New York.

- I. New York under the Dutch, p. 52.
- II. New York under the English, p. 55.

## Chap. VII.—New Jersey, p. 57.

## Chap. VIII.—Delaware, p. 58.

## Chap. IX.—Maryland, p. 59.

## Chap. X.—Pennsylvania, p. 61.

## Chap. XI.—North and South Carolina.

- I. The Carolinas, p. 64.
- II. North Carolina, p. 66.
- III. South Carolina, p. 66.

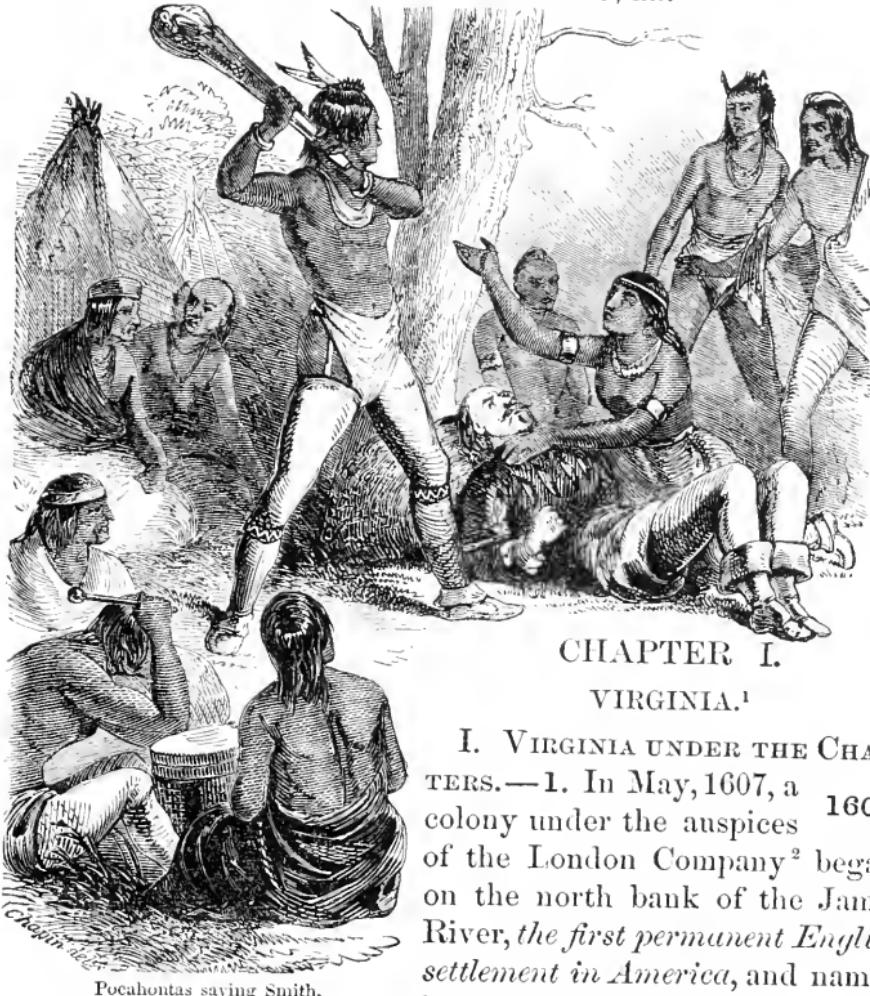
## Chap. XII.—French Possessions in what is now the United States, p. 67.

## Chap. XIII.—Condition, at the Close of this Period, of what is now the United States, p. 68.

## Chronology, p. 72.

## PERIOD II. DISTINGUISHED FOR SETTLEMENTS.

EXTENDING FROM THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH SETTLEMENT, AT JAMES-TOWN, VIRGINIA, 1607, TO THE ACCESSION OF WILLIAM AND MARY TO THE THRONE OF ENGLAND, 1689.



Pocahontas saving Smith.

### CHAPTER I.

#### VIRGINIA.<sup>1</sup>

I. VIRGINIA UNDER THE CHARTERS.—1. In May, 1607, a colony under the auspices of the London Company<sup>2</sup> began, on the north bank of the James River, *the first permanent English settlement in America*, and named it Jamestown.<sup>3</sup>

Three small ships, under the command of Christopher Newport, conveyed to the New World the colonists, who numbered one hundred and five persons. It was their original intention to settle at Roanoke, but a storm drove the little fleet into Chesapeake Bay.

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> The members of the company named in the charter were Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers, Richard Hakluyt, and Edward Maria Wingfield. See p. 17, § III.

<sup>3</sup> The capes at the entrance of the Chesapeake Bay they named Charles and Henry, after the sons of King James I.; the river and the settlement they named in honor of the king.

QUESTIONS.—I. Name the first permanent English settlement in America. When, where, and by whom made?—How many ships were sent out, and under whose command? The number of the colonists? Where did they originally intend to settle?

**2.** The prominent men in the **local council**<sup>1</sup> appointed for the government of the new colony, were Bartholomew Gosnold,<sup>2</sup> John Smith,<sup>3</sup> Edward Maria Wingfield, Christopher Newport, and John Ratcliffe. Smith was the ablest man among them; and, on the voyage, his companions, jealous of his genius and influence, had imprisoned him on a false charge of sedition. A trial was at length granted him, and being honorably acquitted, he was restored to his seat in the council. In the trying times that followed, the salvation of the colony was owing to his energy and ability.

**3.** In June Newport sailed for England, and the **colonists** soon experienced a variety of calamities. They were but poorly fitted to grapple with life in the wilderness. Among them were only twelve laborers and a few mechanics, and no men with families. The majority were gentlemen, as they were called, unused to labor, many of them despising it. Provisions were scarce and of a poor quality. The neighboring tribes of Indians became jealous and hostile; and, worse than all, sickness spread among the colonists. Before autumn one half of their number had perished, and among them Gosnold, the projector of the enterprise. To add to their distress, it was discovered that Wingfield, the president, was designing to escape to the West Indies, with the most valuable stores. He was therefore deposed, and Ratcliffe was made president in his place. The latter, however, was incapable; and the settlers turned for relief to Smith, who soon restored order, and obtained from the Indians abundant supplies of food.

**4.** **Smith** made several tours of exploration in the neighboring country. On one of these, he was attacked by a party of Indians, and taken prisoner. His captors brought him before Powhatan, their king, and he was condemned to death. His head was laid upon a stone; the club was raised to strike the fatal blow, when, to the astonishment of the savages, **Pocahontas**, the young and beautiful daughter of Powhatan, threw herself upon the captive, and implored her father to spare his life. The maiden's prayer was granted. Smith was dismissed, with assurances of friendship, and accompanied by a guard of twelve men to Jamestown, where he arrived after an absence of seven weeks.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 18, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 17, ¶ 5.

<sup>3</sup> John Smith had been apprenticed to a merchant in his youth; but, being of a roving turn, he left his master, travelled in France, Netherlands, Egypt, and Germany, and at length entered the service of the Emperor of Germany, who was carrying on a war with the Turks. The regiment in which Smith served was engaged in several hazardous enterprises, in which he exhibited a bravery admired by all the army. Subsequently he was wounded in battle, taken prisoner, and sold as a slave. His master treated him with such inhumanity, that, in a fit of desperation, Smith killed him, and escaped to Russia. From thence he made his way to England, where he arrived in season to join the expedition about to sail under Newport.

<sup>4</sup> Ever after this, Pocahontas was the firm friend of the English. In 1609, circumstances having arisen to interrupt the friendly disposition of Powhatan towards the colonists, he plotted their entire destruction. His design was to attack them unapprised, and to cut them off at a blow. In a dark and stormy night, the heroic Pocahontas hastened alone to Jamestown, and disclosed the inhuman plot of her father. The colonists were thus put on their guard, and their ruin averted. Pocahontas afterwards embraced the Christian religion, and was married to an English gentleman, named Rolfe, with whom she visited England, where she was received with great respect. She died at the age of twenty-two, and left one son, whose descendants inherited her lands in Virginia, and are among the most respectable families in that state.

QUESTIONS.—2. Who were the prominent men in the local council? What is said of John Smith? 3. What is said of the colonists? What difficulties beset them? Before autumn how many had perished? What is said of Wingfield? What of Ratcliffe? To whom did the settlers turn for relief, and with what success? 4. Tell the story of Smith's capture, sentence, and escape.

**5.** He found the utmost disorder prevailing in affairs at Jamestown. The number of the English was reduced to forty, and many of these were restrained from abandoning the settlement only by the persuasion and threats of Smith. The arrival of Captain Newport with provisions and a hundred and twenty new settlers, promised some improvement in the condition of the colony; but the new-comers were of the same sort as their predecessors—vagabond gentlemen and broken-down tradesmen, who, in spite of the remonstrances of Smith, wasted their time searching for gold.



Captain John Smith.

**6.** In the year 1609, the London Company obtained from the king a **second charter**, granting enlarged territory and more ample privileges. They now received, as absolute property, a region extending two hundred miles north from Old Point Comfort, and the same distance south,—that is, from the southern limit of North Carolina to near the northern boundary of Maryland,—and westward indefinitely. **1609.**

The affairs of the colony were to be managed by a **council**, to be chosen by the company. This council, resident in England, was empowered to make the laws and to appoint a governor, who should supersede the local council of the old charter.

**7.** Captain Smith, the “shield and sword” of the colony, returned to England in 1609, and his departure was the signal for insubordination and illness. The Indians refused to furnish further supplies of provisions, and the horrors of famine ensued. Some of the English, while in search of food, were waylaid and slain by the savages; others sailed away to turn pirates. This period was long remembered in Virginia as the **starving time**. Smith left in the colony nearly five hundred persons; in six months the number was reduced to sixty. **1610.**

**8.** At this juncture, **Lord Delaware**, who had been appointed governor for life under the new charter, appeared, with men

---

QUESTIONS.—5. How did Smith find affairs at Jamestown? What is said about Newport and new settlers? How did the new-comers spend their time? 6. What is said of a second charter? What region was granted by it?—How was the council appointed? What was it empowered to do? 7. What happened to the colonists after Smith returned to England? 8. Who now arrived as governor, and what was the result?

and provisions, just in season to prevent the disheartened colonists from returning to England. By his judicious management, matters presently wore a better aspect; but ill health soon **1611.** obliged him to leave the administration, and he was succeeded by **Sir Thomas Dale.** Sir Thomas introduced the policy of assigning to each settler a few acres of land as his own. The advantages of this measure were soon so apparent, that a larger assignment was made, and the plan of working in a common field<sup>1</sup> abandoned.

**9.** A third charter was granted in 1612, and the control of affairs heretofore committed to counsels<sup>2</sup> was assumed directly **1619.** by the company.<sup>3</sup> Till 1619 the colonists had no voice in making the laws by which they were governed; but that year, under the administration of **Sir George Yeardley**, a representative government was introduced, and *the first legislative assembly in America* convened at Jamestown.

**10.** Two years later the London Company confirmed, by a **written constitution**, the privileges conceded by Yeardley. By this constitution the government was vested in a governor and council, appointed by the company, and a general assembly to convene yearly, consisting of the council and two representatives, called burgesses, from each borough. **Immigrants** continued to arrive. Several settlements had now been established near the James and York Rivers.<sup>4</sup> **Corn** was raised in considerable quantities, and the culture of **tobacco** had become so profitable that even the streets of Jamestown were planted with it. It subsequently became not only the staple, but the currency of the colony.

**11.** In 1620, a Dutch ship, from Africa, touching at Jamestown, landed twenty negroes, for sale as slaves. These **1620.** were purchased by the planters, and **negro slavery** was thus introduced into the English colonies in America.

There were at this time but few women in Virginia. In order to attach the colonists to the country, one hundred and fifty respectable young **women** were brought over. These were sold to the planters, as wives,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 18, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 18, ¶ 2, and p. 31, ¶ 6.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 17, § III.

<sup>4</sup> Some years before this, the colony had become strong enough not only to protect itself, but to disturb its neighbors. In 1613 Captain Argal, from Virginia, broke up a French settlement just begun at Mount Desert Island, off the coast of Maine, burned Port Royal (see p. 15, § III.), and it is asserted, though on somewhat doubtful authority, compelled some Dutch traders on Manhattan Island (see p. 53, ¶ 1) to acknowledge the authority of the English. On the departure of Argal, however, the French reestablished themselves at Port Royal, and the Dutch flag was again hoisted at Manhattan.

QUESTIONS.—Who was Lord Delaware's successor? What policy did Dale introduce? What is said of the advantages of this measure? 9. What change took place in the control of affairs in 1612? When and under what governor did the first legislative assembly in America convene? 10. What did the London Company do two years later? How was the government vested, by the constitution? What is said about immigrants and settlements? What about corn and tobacco? 11. When and how was negro slavery introduced?—How were the colonists supplied with wives?

at the price, at first, of one hundred and twenty, and afterwards, one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco, which was worth, at the time, three shillings a pound. Accessions of a different character were also made to the colony. By order of King James, one hundred **criminals** were sent over, to be sold as servants for a term of years.

**12. Indian Massacre and War.**—The colony was now enjoying great prosperity; but in 1622 it experienced a stroke which nearly proved fatal. **Opechancanough,** 1622. the chief of the Powhatans, proud, revengeful, and extremely hostile to the English, concerted a plan to cut them off at a blow; and it was so far put in execution that three hundred and forty-seven persons—men, women, and children—were slain almost in the same instant.

**13.** The whole surrounding Indian population had been enlisted by the artful Opechancanough, Powhatan's successor. Jamestown and some of the neighboring places were saved by the disclosure of a **friendly Indian**; and messengers were sent out to warn the people, but it was too late to reach the distant settlements. As soon as the **English** had time to recover themselves, they rose to avenge the death of their slaughtered friends, destroyed many of the savages, and drove the remainder far into the wilderness.—But, by the calamities which fell upon the colonists, their settlements were reduced from eighty to less than eight; in a short time, out of four thousand persons, but twenty-five hundred remained. Expeditions for exterminating the savages were occasionally made for ten years.

**II. VIRGINIA A ROYAL PROVINCE.**—**1.** The stockholders of the London Company had become very numerous, and the king, unable to restrain the freedom with which they discussed the royal prerogatives, took away their **charter**, in 1624.

- QUESTIONS.—What was the price of a wife? What other accessions were made to the colony? 12. What plan did Opechancanough concert? When? How far was his plan put in execution? 13. How were Jamestown and other places saved? How did the English avenge the death of their friends? To what extent were their settlements and population reduced? 1. When and why was the London Company deprived of its charter?



The government of the colony was assumed by the crown, **1624.** and vested in a governor and twelve councillors appointed by the king. Virginia was, however, permitted to retain its legislative assembly.

**2. Second Indian War.**—In 1644 the Indians, who had remained unfriendly since the war of 1622, made a second attack on the English. By this onslaught about three hundred persons, in the frontier settlements, lost their lives. A vigorous war was immediately begun against the savages. The aged Opechaneanough was taken prisoner, and shot by a soldier. The war continued about two years, and ended in the cession of large tracts of land to the English.

**3. The sympathies of the colonists were with the king during the civil war in the mother country;** and after the execution of King Charles I., his son, a fugitive from England, was recognized by the Virginians as their rightful sovereign. On the **restoration** of Charles II. to the throne, in **1660.** he confirmed Sir William Berkeley in the office of governor, which he already held by the will of the people. From this time the governor seems to have devoted himself to restricting the liberties of the colonists; and they sent agents to England to lay their grievances at the foot of the throne. But Charles chose to forget Virginia's loyalty to him in exile, and the people could obtain no redress.

**4. Navigation Acts.**—During the time of the Commonwealth, Parliament had extended its authority to America, in an act requiring all exports from the colonies to England to be carried in English or colonial vessels (1651).<sup>1</sup> Virginia had reason to expect, after the restoration, some special marks of the king's favor. In 1660, however, an additional act required her, in common with the other colonies, to find in England alone a market for her principal exports; and, soon after, another act required the colonies to bring from England alone their principal imports. In 1672 duties were imposed upon articles imported from one colony to another. These *restrictions upon commerce* began that series of aggressions which a century later drove the colonies into the war of the revolution.<sup>2</sup>

**5. Bacon's Rebellion.**—Many of the Virginia planters, **1676.** indignant at the tyranny of Governor Berkeley, and disgusted with his inefficient measures for defence against the Indians, rose in opposition to his government in 1676,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This act was intended both to promote English navigation and to strike a blow at the naval power of the Dutch, who were then engrossing almost the whole carrying trade of the world.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 101, 111.

<sup>3</sup> One hundred years before the declaration of independence.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the government of the colony? 2. Give an account of the second Indian war. 3. With which party did the colonists sympathize during the civil war in England? What is said of Berkeley? 4. What navigation acts are mentioned? What is said of these restrictions upon commerce? 5. Give an account of Bacon's rebellion.

under the lead of Nathaniel Bacon, one of the council. The insurgents were making rapid headway against the governor, when Bacon suddenly died, and with him the cause he had espoused.

6. The immediate cause of this outbreak was the depredations of some Indians from Maryland, who, in revenge for the treacherous murder of several of their chiefs, committed many barbarities on the planters.<sup>1</sup> As Berkeley would not defend them, the people demanded of him permission to arm and defend themselves. They also asked as a leader Nathaniel Bacon, a young man of great popularity, and distinguished for his talents and energy. The governor, fearing to put arms into the hands of discontented men, and jealous of Bacon's influence, refused. The Indians continued their ravages, attacking Bacon's plantation, and killing a number of his men. Without a commission, he placed himself at the head of those who had volunteered to repel the savages. Soon, duplicity on the part of the governor and his adherents compelled Bacon, in self-defence, to attack them in Jamestown. Berkeley's supporters made but a feeble resistance, and then fled from the town, which was burned to prevent their return.



Burning of Jamestown.

On the death of Bacon, Berkeley recovered his power, and wreaked his vengeance on the patriots with fines, confiscations, and executions, till the thoughtless and ungrateful Charles declared, "The old fool has taken away more lives in that naked country, than I for the murder of my father."

7. The Virginians, though oppressed for some years by needy and covetous governors, continued eminently loyal, and when the Revolution in England placed William and Mary on the throne, in 1689, acknowledged with reluctance the new sovereigns. See p. 78, ¶ 14.

<sup>1</sup> This was the year of King Philip's war in New England, 1675. See p. 42, ¶ 4, and p. 61, ¶ 8.

QUESTIONS.—Who was its leader? Its result? 6. Give the particulars of this rebellion. 7. What is said of the Virginians?

## CHAPTER II.

MASSACHUSETTS.<sup>1</sup>

I. NORTH VIRGINIA.—**1.** Soon after the issue of the Virginia Charter,<sup>2</sup> the Plymouth Company sent out a number of emigrants under **George Popham**, to establish a plantation in North Virginia. **1607.** The same year that Jamestown was settled they landed near the mouth of the Kennebec, and erected a fort, which they named *Fort St. George*. But discouraged by the rigors of a severe winter, and by the death of their leader, they returned the next year to England.

**2.** In 1614, **Captain John Smith**<sup>3</sup> sailed from England with two ships, for purposes of trade and discovery in North Virginia. **1614.** Leaving a part of his company at Monhegan Island,<sup>4</sup> to engage in fishing, he explored the coast from the Penobscot to Cape Cod, made a map of it, and named the country *New England*, which name was confirmed by Prince Charles (afterwards Charles I.).

**3.** In 1620 the old Plymouth Company was dissolved, and another charter was obtained from the king, by which a new company was formed, called the **Council of Plymouth**. To this company was granted, under the name of *New England*, in absolute property, all the territory between the fortieth and forty-eighth degrees of north latitude (that is, from about the latitude of Philadelphia to the latitude of the Bay of Chaleurs), and extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

This charter was the basis of the several grants subsequently made of the New England territory, which, however, was destined to be first settled without any patent from the Council of Plymouth, or from the king, and, indeed, without their knowledge.

II. PLYMOUTH COLONY.—**1.** In 1620 a colony of Puritans from England reached the coast of Massachusetts, and **1620.** landing December 21,<sup>5</sup> began a settlement which was named **Plymouth**.<sup>6</sup> This was the *first permanent settlement in what is now called New England*.

The **Puritans** were dissenters from the Church of England, and because they desired a *purer* form of worship, received from their enemies, in derision, the name which they have made honorable. A band of these,

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 45, and p. 39, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 17, § III.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 30, 31.

<sup>4</sup> This island, on the coast of Maine, had for some years been the rendezvous of fishermen, and for a long time remained, as it has again become, the centre of important fisheries.

<sup>5</sup> December 11, O. S.

<sup>6</sup> The spot was named *Plymouth* on Smith's map.

QUESTIONS.—**1.** Give an account of the expedition under George Popham. **2.** Give an account of the expedition under Captain John Smith. **3.** When was the Plymouth Company dissolved, and what company took its place? Give the name and limits of the grant to the new company.—Of what was its charter the basis? **II.** **1.** When, where, and by whom was the first permanent settlement in New England made?—Who were the Puritans? Why so named?

with their able and pious pastor, John Robinson, in 1608 took refuge in Holland from the persecutions they suffered in England.

2. After some years they determined to remove to America.<sup>1</sup> To carry out this design, they formed a **partnership** with certain merchants of London. The merchants were to furnish money and share the profits with the colonists, who were to furnish labor.<sup>2</sup> Having kept a day of solemn humiliation and prayer, the Pilgrims embarked for Southampton, where they were joined by others from London. In August, 1620, they set sail for the **New World** in two vessels, the Speedwell and the Mayflower. But the Speedwell soon sprung a leak, and they put back to Plymouth, where she was condemned as unseaworthy; and the Mayflower, taking on board one hundred and two of the emigrants, sailed from Plymouth in the month of September. They intended to settle near the Hudson River, but after a tempestuous passage of more than two months, they came to anchor in the harbor of Cape Cod.



Landing of the Pilgrims.

3. Before landing the male immigrants subscribed their names to a **written agreement** to obey such laws as might be enacted from time to time for the common good.

<sup>1</sup> They were induced to take this step from the fear lest their posterity should mingle with the people of Holland, and their church become extinct, and from the hope of laying a foundation for the extensive advancement of the kingdom of Christ in America.

<sup>2</sup> At the end of seven years all the property held by the company was to be divided among the merchants and colonists, so that the former should draw as large a share of the profits for each contribution of £10 (about \$50) as the latter for seven years of labor.

QUESTIONS.—Where did some of them take refuge? 2. Where did they determine to remove? What partnership did they form? Describe their first attempt to reach the new world. Their voyage in the Mayflower. 3. What took place before landing?

Among the forty-one names appended to this instrument were those of John Carver, the first governor; William Bradford, the second governor, and the historian of the settlement; the cultivated Edward Winslow; their ruling elder, William Brewster; and the fearless soldier, Miles Standish. They were employed about a month exploring the country and searching for a suitable place for a settlement. At length they reached the harbor of Plymouth; and, on the 21st of December, went on shore and explored the adjacent country. This marks the era of the **landing of the Pilgrim Fathers** on what has been called *Plymouth Rock*.

**4. Difficulties** and discouragements soon gathered round the pilgrims, and many fell sick from want and exposure. Before the end of March, death had taken off nearly half of the little band. At one time there were only seven well persons in the colony. The dead were buried near their first landing-place; but these early graves were levelled and sown with grass, to conceal them from the Indians, “lest, by counting the number of the dead, they should ascertain the weakness of the living.”

**5.** Fortunately the **Indians** did not molest them, during this time of their severe trial. The pilgrims made a treaty of friendship, commerce, and mutual defense, with Massasoit, the Great Sachem of the Wampanoags.<sup>1</sup> This treaty was kept inviolate until the breaking out of King Philip’s War — a period of more than fifty years. Canonius, the proud and powerful chief of the Narragansets, was at first hostile, but the determined course of Governor Bradford led him to seek an alliance with the colony.

**6.** The colonists began the **cultivation of the ground** the spring after their arrival; and the fruits of their industry were shared in common. The third season a small portion of land was assigned to each family, and, as a result, abundant harvests began to be raised. A profitable **trade** was opened with the Indians. European trinkets were exchanged for furs and other products of the chase; and, after a few years, the pilgrims raised corn in such quantities as to be able to sell it to the Indians, and to the fishermen who frequented the coast. Cargoes were occasionally sent to

**1627.** England, made up of furs, sassafras, and lumber. In 1627 the colonists purchased the interests of the **London merchants**, thus becoming the sole proprietors of the land on which they had settled, and for which a patent had been procured from the Council of Plymouth. The common property was now divided, and each colonist received twenty acres of land as his own.

---

<sup>1</sup> Early in the spring the colonists were surprised by hearing an Indian calling out, as he entered their village, “Welcome, Englishmen! Welcome, Englishmen!” This was Samoset, an Indian who had picked up a few English words from the Monhegan fishermen. He told the English that, a few years before, a plague had swept off all the natives, — that there was neither man, woman, nor child remaining. Thus there was no one to lay claim to the land in which their lot had been cast. On a subsequent visit to the colony, Samoset brought with him Squanto, an Indian, who had been kidnapped and carried to Spain several years before, and afterwards to England, from whence he had lately been brought to the coast of Cape Cod. By means of these Indians the treaty with Massasoit was brought about. See p. 22, note (II., 2).

QUESTIONS.—What names are mentioned as appended to the constitution? What era is marked by the twenty-first of December? 4. What soon happened to the pilgrims? What is said of sickness and death among them? 5. What is said of the Indians? Massasoit? Canonius? 6. What is said of the fruits of industry? What change was made the third season? Result? What of their trade? What change in 1627? How much land was assigned to each?

7. The **form of government** was very simple. A governor was chosen by popular vote. At first he had one assistant; afterwards his power was limited by a council of five, and finally of seven assistants. In council the governor had a double vote. The legislature was “the whole body of the male inhabitants.” In 1639 the diffusion of the population over a wide territory led to the introduction of a representative legislature, to which each town sent deputies. From this time the history of Plymouth will be found with that of Massachusetts Bay, with which colony Plymouth was united in 1692. See p. 41, § IV., and p. 76, ¶ 3.

**III. COLONY OF MASSACHUSETTS BAY TO THE UNION OF 1643.—1.** In 1626 Roger Conant, with a few associates, removed from a fishing station at Cape Ann to Naumkeag, now Salem. Two years later John Endicott and one hundred Puritans settled there, and thus laid the foundation of 1628. the colony of Massachusetts Bay.<sup>1</sup> This colony was sent out by a company that had obtained from the Council of Plymouth a grant of land extending from three miles north of any part of the Merrimac River to three miles south of any part of the Charles River, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

2. The next year this company, under the name of “The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England,” obtained from Charles I., king of England, a charter vesting the executive power in a governor, deputy governor, and eighteen assistants, and the legislative power in the proprietors. Another party of emigrants immediately came over, and some of them settled at Charlestown, which had been occupied the year before by a few persons from Naumkeag.

3. In 1630 the proprietors transmitted the charter and powers of government from London to the colony in 1630. America. The officers, in the first instance, were chosen by the company in England. The excellent John Winthrop was appointed governor. He sailed for Massachusetts, accompanied by about eight hundred emigrants, and was soon followed by several hundred more, many of whom were persons of wealth

<sup>1</sup> Named from the Massachusetts, a tribe of Indians. See p. 22, note (II., 2). The name of the tribe was probably derived from the Indian name of the Blue Hills of Milton, in its neighborhood.

QUESTIONS.—7. Describe the form of government. Who composed the legislature at first? Who, after 1639? When was this colony united with Massachusetts? 1. What is said of the settlement at Salem? What grant had been obtained by the company that sent out the colony? 2. Under what name did the company obtain a charter? In whom were the powers of government vested? What is said of the settlement of Charlestown? 3. Where were the powers of government transmitted in 1630? Who was appointed governor? How many immigrants accompanied him to Massachusetts, and how many soon followed?

and station, as well as of intelligence and piety. Some of them formed settlements at Dorchester, Roxbury, Watertown, and Lynn; others, with Winthrop, hearing of an excellent spring of water there, established themselves at Boston,<sup>1</sup> which became the capital of the colony.

**4.** Winthrop found the colony in a condition of great distress. A large number had died, and sickness prevailed among the survivors. Their stock of provisions was nearly exhausted. Many of the planters, accustomed to a life of affluence in England, were unable to endure the privations of a new settlement. The next winter was one of great severity. There were but few comfortable houses. Famine threatened the colony, and many were obliged to subsist on shell-fish, ground-nuts, and acorns, which at that season could only be procured with the greatest difficulty. A day was set apart for public fasting and prayer; but on the day before that fixed upon, a ship arrived from England laden with provisions, which were distributed among the people, and the appointed fast was exchanged for a day of general thanksgiving.

**5.** Early in 1631 two important rules were adopted. First, that **1631.** freemen alone should have the power of electing the magistrates, as the governor, deputy governor, and his assistants were called. Second, that those only should be made freemen who belonged to some church within the limits of the colony. This latter rule remained in **1634.** force more than thirty years. In 1634 a change was effected in the mode of legislation. The settlements had become so numerous and extended that the freemen could not, without great inconvenience, meet to transact public business. It was therefore ordered that the whole body of the freemen should be convened only for the election of the magistrates, who, with deputies to be chosen by the towns, should have the power of enacting the laws. Seven years afterwards a code of written laws was adopted, called *The Body of Liberties*.



Governor Winthrop.

<sup>1</sup> Indian name, *Shawmut*; called, at first, by the English, *Tri-Mountain*; afterwards *Boston*, from the English town of the same name, whence had come some of the principal settlers.

QUESTIONS.—What places were settled by Winthrop and the immigrants of this year? 4. Describe the condition of the colony, as Winthrop found it. What of the next winter? Of their houses? To what straits were the colonists reduced by famine? Relate how a day of fasting was changed to a day of thanksgiving. 5. What two important rules? When adopted? What change in the mode of legislation? When effected? What of a written code?

**6.** The Puritans did not escape religious dissensions in New England. In 1635, Roger Williams<sup>1</sup> was banished from the colony for publishing opinions which were deemed seditions and heretical by the ministers and magistrates. Banishing Williams did not end the trouble. A year later, Mrs. Ann Hutchinson began to teach doctrines at variance with those generally received. She was declared to be "like Roger Williams, or worse." This trouble assumed a more formidable aspect from the fact that Henry Vane,<sup>2</sup> a young man of twenty-three, whose popular talents and winning manners had caused him to be elected governor that year, became one of her supporters. The next year, however, Winthrop was again made governor, and Mrs. Hutchinson,<sup>3</sup> with the most prominent of her followers, was exiled from the colony. Frequent **accessions** of Puritans from England continued to be made; three thousand came over with Vane, and at least as many more in 1638.<sup>4</sup>

**7.** From this time to the close of this Period the New England colonies had much in common; and it will be convenient, in the history of Massachusetts, to narrate many events in which the other colonies also took prominent part, thus anticipating something of their history.

#### IV. COLONY OF MASSACHUSETTS FROM THE UNION TO THE CLOSE OF THE PERIOD.—**1.** In 1643, the better to provide for their common security and welfare, the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut,<sup>5</sup> and New Haven,<sup>6</sup> united in a confederacy, styled the **United Colonies of New England.**

This union continued more than forty years,—until the charters of the colonies were either taken away or suspended. Each colony retained the management of its own affairs, while all matters pertaining to the confederacy were intrusted to commissioners,—two from each colony.

**2. Maine.**—Between the years 1652 and 1658, Massachusetts, considering her grant<sup>7</sup> to embrace the southern portion of Maine, with the consent of the inhabitants, asserted her jurisdiction over the territory, as far as the Kennebec; and from this time till 1820 the history of Maine remains merged in that of Massachusetts. (See p. 54, ¶ 8, and p. 76, ¶ 3.)

<sup>1</sup> See p. 50, Chap. V.

<sup>2</sup> Afterwards Sir Henry Vane. After his return to England he acted a prominent part in the civil wars of that country, and was ultimately convicted of high treason and executed.

<sup>3</sup> Mrs. Hutchinson, after remaining some years in Rhode Island, removed to the territory of the Dutch, near New York, where she and her family, except one daughter, who was taken captive, were massacred by the Indians. See p. 54, ¶ 5, and note.

<sup>4</sup> It is stated that Cromwell and Hampden had arranged to join the emigration of this year, but that they were prevented by the king, against whom they were the most active leaders in the troubles that followed.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 46.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 48, § 11.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 39, ¶ 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—6. What is said of Roger Williams? Of Ann Hutchinson? What prominent supporter of the latter? Fate of Mrs. Hutchinson? What accessions were made to the colony? 7. What is said of the New England colonies from this time? 1. What confederacy was formed in 1643, and for what purpose?—How long did this union continue? Terms of the union? 2. Over what territory did Massachusetts assert her jurisdiction, and why?

Both the French<sup>1</sup> and the English<sup>2</sup> early attempted to establish colonies in what is now the State of Maine. About the time of the founding of the Plymouth Colony, a few feeble settlements were begun along the coast; but before they had gained much strength, the Council of Plymouth<sup>3</sup> granted to several companies portions of the same territory, from the Piscataqua to the Penobscot. These grants, in after years, were the source of serious controversies. In 1639 Sir Ferdinando Gorges,<sup>4</sup> who had previously obtained a grant of the province,<sup>4</sup> secured a royal charter for all the land from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec. This region was named the *Province of Maine*.<sup>5</sup> Saco was already a considerable village. Massachusetts, having asserted jurisdiction, confirmed it, in 1677, by purchasing of the heirs of Gorges their claim.

**3. Royal commissioners**, appointed by Charles II. to investigate colonial affairs in New England, and to hear and determine complaints, arrived in Boston in 1664. Their appointment was looked upon with great suspicion. Massachusetts openly protested against their exercise of authority as in conflict with her chartered rights; but in the other colonies they were received with real or feigned respect. At length they were recalled, and New England enjoyed a season of peace and prosperity till the breaking out of King Philip's War.

**4. King Philip's War.**—In 1675,<sup>6</sup> Philip, son and successor of the friendly Massasoit, united most of the New England Indians in a war against the colonies, called *King Philip's War*. To defend their hunting grounds from the encroachments of the whites, and to avenge personal wrongs, the Indians commenced this war, which, for a time, endangered the very existence of the English settlements. Connecticut alone, of all the New England colonies, though liberally con-



King Philip.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 32, note 4.    <sup>2</sup> See p. 36, ¶¶ 1, 2, and note 4.    <sup>3</sup> See p. 36, ¶ 3.    <sup>4</sup> See p. 45, ¶ 1.  
<sup>5</sup> "This eastern country had been commonly called the *Mayne* [main] land, in distinction from the numerous islands on its coast, and thus perhaps it was that Gorges's province obtained its name."—Palfrey.

<sup>6</sup> One hundred years before the beginning of the revolutionary war. See p. III.

QUESTIONS.—What nations early attempted settlements in Maine? What is said of Ferdinando Gorges? Saco? How did Massachusetts confirm her jurisdiction? 3. By whom and for what purpose were commissioners sent to New England? When? How were they received? 4. Who was King Philip? For what purpose did he unite most of the New England Indians, and when? Cause of the war?

tributing to the common defence, escaped its ravages. For more than a year this savage contest spread devastation and ruin among the scattered villages of the English. There was safety nowhere: laborers in the field were slain by the prowling enemy, travellers were shot from the wayside ambuscade, families were torn from their beds in the dead of night and butchered, congregations in the house of God were attacked and massacred.

The death of Philip, who was shot by an Indian, put an end to the war after it had continued little more than a year. This contest broke the spirit of the **New England Indians**.

**5.** The first attack was made upon the people of Swansey as they were returning from public worship on a day of humiliation and prayer, appointed under the apprehension of an approaching war. The whites were immediately aroused. **Philip**, soon driven from Mount Hope, the chief seat of his tribe, with his warriors spread through the country, scalping the defenceless inhabitants, burning houses, and stirring up his red brethren to a war of extermination against the English.

**The frontier settlements** were

broken up, and the inhabitants flocked to the fortified houses of the towns. The valley of the Connecticut, from Northfield to Springfield, suffered from the attacks of the savages. Early in the fall the eastern Indians fell upon the settlements of Maine and New Hampshire, killing the inhabitants, and consigning their houses, barns, and mills to the flames.

**6.** The **Narragansets** had pledged themselves, in the beginning of the war, to take no part against the English. Learning, however, that they had harbored Philip, and fearing that they would join him in the spring, a body of troops from Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, set out in December to attack them. They found the enemy strongly intrenched in a swamp in South Kingston. Enclosed by a palisade and thick hedge were their wigwams and winter supply of food. After a severe fight the English gained a complete victory. The wigwams and stores were burned. Of about four thousand Indians supposed to be in the enclosure, the sword, fire, famine, and exposure left but a miserable remnant. This conflict is known as the **swamp fight**.



Fortified House.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the ravages of the war. What put an end to it? Effect of the war upon the Indians? 5. What is said of the first attack? Of the whites? Of Philip? Of the frontier settlements? 6. Why did the English attack the Narragansets? Describe the swamp fight.

7. The allies of **Philip** now began to desert him, and late in the summer of 1676 he returned to the vicinity of Mount Hope, pursued by a party under Captain Church. His wife and son were taken prisoners. Crushed by this calamity, the savage chief exclaimed, "Now my heart breaks, and I am ready to die." A few days after, he was shot by an Indian friendly to the English. His captive son was sent to Bermuda to be sold into slavery.

8. In this war the **whites** had lost six hundred men, besides women and children; six hundred of their houses had been burned, and twelve villages were entirely, and many others partially, destroyed. In addition to these losses, the colonists were burdened with a heavy debt. Of the **Indians**, thousands had fallen in battle, and thousands more joined tribes at the west and in Canada. After Philip's death a border warfare continued in Maine for nearly two years.

9. **New England Charters annulled.**—The New England colonies had long been regarded by the king (Charles II.) with no great favor. In the struggle between his father and Parliament, they had sided with the latter.<sup>1</sup> Massachusetts had not only refused to acknowledge the authority of the king's commissioners,<sup>2</sup> but had resisted the Navigation Acts<sup>3</sup> as unjust and illegal, and therefore became the especial object of the king's displeasure. Accordingly, in 1684, her charter was declared void, and soon afterwards the charters of the other New England colonies were also annulled.

10. Charles died before he had time to adjust the affairs of **1686.** the colonies; but his successor, James II., pursuing the same arbitrary policy, in 1686 appointed the odious **Sir Edmund Andros**<sup>4</sup> governor of New England. For more than two years the people endured his tyranny, but in 1689 the **Revolution in England**<sup>5</sup> drove James II. from his throne, and from New England its oppressors.

When news of the Revolution reached Boston, the people seized Andros and his associates, and sent them to England to answer for maladministration, and the New England colonies returned to their former mode of government. See p. 76, ¶ 3.

<sup>1</sup> After the Restoration they had sheltered from royal vengeance three of the regicide judges, William Goffe, Edward Whalley, and John Dixwell.

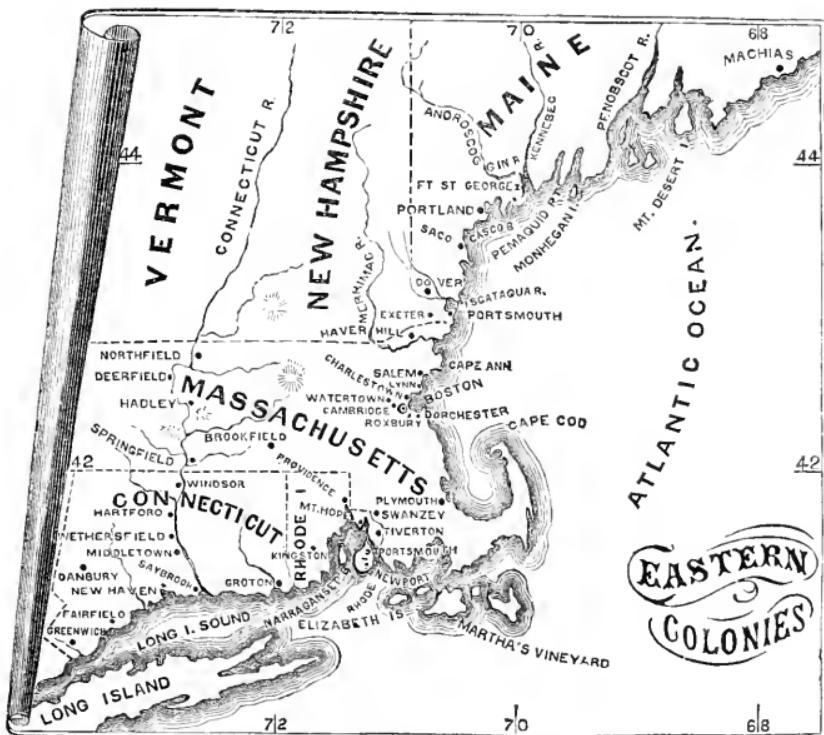
<sup>2</sup> See p. 42, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 34, ¶ 4.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 55, ¶ 2.

<sup>5</sup> This Revolution is called the Revolution of 1688. It was consummated in February, which—as the civil year then began March 25—was February, 1688, instead of, as by the present reckoning, February, 1689. See Contemporary Chronology, p. 99 (1752).

QUESTIONS.—7. What more is said of Philip? 8. What were the losses of the whites? Of the Indians? 9. Why did the king annul the New England charters? What special reasons in the case of Massachusetts? 10. Who was appointed governor of New England? When, and by whom? Character of Andros's administration? When and how was New England relieved from its oppressors?—What was done with Andros and his associates?



## CHAPTER III.

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. Two years after the landing of the Pilgrims,<sup>1</sup> Sir Ferdinando Gorges<sup>2</sup> and Captain John Mason obtained from the Council of Plymouth a grant of lands lying between the Merrimac and the Kennebec. The next year the proprietors sent out two small parties, one of which formed a settlement that has grown to be the present city of Portsmouth;<sup>3</sup> the other established itself at Cocheco, now Dover. For several years these towns were mere fishing stations. In 1629 the partnership between Gorges and Mason was dissolved. The former took the part lying east of the Piscataqua;<sup>2</sup> the latter that lying west, and named his province *New Hampshire*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 36, § II.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 42, ¶ 2.

<sup>3</sup> First called *Strawberry Bank*.

<sup>4</sup> After the county of Hampshire, England, in which Mason lived.

QUESTIONS.—I. What grant was made to Gorges and Mason, and when? What is said of the settlement of Portsmouth and Dover? What division was made of the grant to Gorges and Mason? What name did Mason give his province?

Religious troubles in Massachusetts contributed to the settlement of New Hampshire. Some banished followers of Mrs. Hutchinson,<sup>1</sup> led by her brother-in-law, the Rev. John Wheelwright, in 1638 founded Exeter.

**2.** In 1641 the scattered settlements in New Hampshire were united to Massachusetts, of whose history theirs **1641.** forms a part for nearly forty years, when, by order of the crown, New Hampshire was made a royal province, **1679.** governed by a President and Council appointed by the king, and a House of Representatives elected by the people. The province fell, with the rest of New England, into the power of Andros;<sup>2</sup> but after the Revolution in England freed the colonies from his tyranny, the people placed themselves again under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts.

**3.** Robert Mason, grandson and heir of John Mason, arrived in New Hampshire in 1681, and, as Lord Proprietor, demanded that leases should be taken out under him. His demands were resisted in the courts of law; and so determined was the hostility of the people that judgments obtained in his favor could not be enforced. See p. 75, ¶ 2.



## CHAPTER IV.

### CONNECTICUT.<sup>3</sup>

**I. COLONY OF CONNECTICUT.—1.** The Earl of Warwick was the first proprietor of the soil of Connecticut,<sup>4</sup> under a grant from the Council of Plymouth. By him it was transferred, in 1631, to Lord Say and Seal, Lord Brooke, **1631.** and others. The territory so conveyed had for its eastern boundary the Narraganset River, and for its western, like most of the colonial grants, the Pacific Ocean.

**2.** Two years after this transfer, a few men, under Captain Holmes, from the Plymouth colony, sailed up the Connecticut to the place where Hartford now stands. Here the Dutch, the discoverers of the river, had erected a fort, and were ready to dispute possession with the English. Regardless of the threats of the Dutch commandant, Captain Holmes pressed forward and established a trading-house at Windsor.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 41, ¶ 6.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

<sup>3</sup> See Map, p. 45.

<sup>4</sup> Connecticut takes its name from that of its principal river, which is an Indian word, signifying *Long River*.

QUESTIONS.—What contributed to the settlement of New Hampshire? When and by whom was Exeter founded? 2. When was New Hampshire united to Massachusetts? What took place nearly forty years after? What after the Revolution in England? 3. What is said of Robert Mason and his claim? 1. Who was the first proprietor of Connecticut? To whom did he convey it? Boundaries? I. 2. What is said of Captain Holmes and the Dutch?

3. In 1634 a company consisting of the churches of Watertown, Dorchester, and Newtown (now Cambridge), made preparations for removal to the banks of the Connecticut, and the same year some of the Watertown people began a settlement at **Wethersfield**. The next year a small party emigrated from Dorchester to **Windsor**, and in 1636 the final emigration of the company took place. Those from Newtown, with the Rev. Thomas Hooker, "the light of the western churches," settled at **Hartford**.

With no guide but a compass, they made their way, on foot, over mountains, swamps, and rivers. During their journey, which lasted a fortnight, they lived chiefly upon the milk of the cows they drove with them.

4. **Saybrook Colony**.—In 1635 **John Winthrop**, son of the Massachusetts governor, as agent for Lord Say and Seal and Lord Brooke, built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and made a settlement there, which he named, in honor of his employers, **Saybrook**. In 1644 this colony was united with the settlements farther up the river, already organized as a distinct commonwealth.

5. **The Pequot War**.—The year 1637 is distinguished, in the history of Connecticut, for a war with the Pequots,<sup>1</sup> which resulted in the entire destruction of that tribe.

The previous year a number of whites had been murdered by Pequot and Narraganset<sup>2</sup> Indians. The latter made satisfaction to the colonies; the former, failing to do so, were only incited to further outrages by an inefficient attempt to punish them. In the spring it was resolved to crush the Pequots. **Captain John Mason**, at the head of about eighty men from the river towns, and more than four hundred friendly Indians under Uncas, sachem of the Mohegans,<sup>1</sup> and Miantonomoh, of the Narragansets,<sup>3</sup> surprised the enemy in their stronghold,<sup>4</sup> in the present town of Groton, burned their fort, and killed six hundred men, women, and children. Of the English, two were killed and twenty wounded.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 22, note (II., 3.)

<sup>2</sup> See p. 22, note (II., 2.)

<sup>3</sup> The Mohegans were friendly to the English; the Narragansets would have been persuaded to make common cause with the Pequots, but for Roger Williams, who, at the risk of his life, visited the wigwam of their chief, and there confronting the deputies of the Pequots, he not only prevented the alliance, but induced the wavering Narragansets to aid the colonists.

<sup>4</sup> Mason approached the fort at daybreak. The barking of a dog roused the sleeping sentinel, who ran into the fort, crying out, "Owanux! Owanux!" Englishmen! Englishmen! The troops rushed to the attack, and immediately were within the palisades, fighting hand to hand with the half-awakened savages. The Pequots far outnumbered their assailants, and, recovering from their first surprise, made a brave resistance. Victory seemed doubtful, when Mason, exclaiming, "We must burn them!" set fire to one of the wigwams in the enclosure. The flames rapidly enveloped the frail cabins, and drove many from their shelter to become an easy prey to the English musket.

QUESTIONS.—3. What is said of the settlement of Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford? 4. Give an account of the Saybrook colony? 5. When did the Pequot war break out? The result?—Cause of the war? Describe Mason's expedition against the Pequots.

**6.** This terrible blow so disheartened the **Pequots**, that they made not much further resistance. Some were enslaved, others distributed among the Mohegans and Narragansets, and the tribe ceased to exist. Sassacus, their chief, escaped to the Mohawks,<sup>1</sup> who put him to death. The New England Indians, awed by the fearful retribution meted out to the Pequots, did not molest the colonies for nearly forty years.<sup>2</sup>

**7.** In 1639 the freemen of Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield, finding themselves without the limits of Massachusetts,<sup>3</sup> assembled at Hartford, and organized a separate government for the *Connecticut Colony*. They adopted a constitution,<sup>4</sup> which ordained that a governor, deputy governor, and magistrates should be elected annually by the freemen, and that these officers, with representatives chosen by the towns, should constitute the legislature of the colony.

**8.** In 1650 a treaty was concluded at Hartford, which established a dividing line between the **English and Dutch colonies**,<sup>5</sup> near the present boundary between Connecticut and New York, on the main land. The latter were to retain their "Fort of Good Hope,"<sup>6</sup> in Hartford, and the lands belonging to it. But four years later, when the English colonies apprehended further troubles with them in consequence of the war between England and Holland, the legislature at Hartford took possession of these; and the Dutch thenceforth prosecuted no further claims in New England.

**II. COLONY OF NEW HAVEN.** — **1.** **New Haven** was founded in 1638, by a company of emigrants under the lead of **1638.** John Davenport, a distinguished nonconformist minister of London, and Theophilus Eaton, an eminent London merchant. This and the neighboring towns, which were settled soon after, were known as the **New Haven colony**.<sup>6</sup>

**2.** The next year they established a **government**, adopted the Scriptures as the law of the colony, and restricted, as had been done in Massachusetts, the right of voting and of holding office to church members. Mr. Eaton was annually chosen governor of the colony until his death — a period of nearly twenty years. New Haven shared with Connecticut her difficulties with the Dutch.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 22, note (I., 1.).

<sup>2</sup> See p. 42, ¶ 4.  
<sup>3</sup> The first example in history of a written constitution formed by the people. It was the basis of their government till the adoption of the present constitution in 1818.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 7.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 46, Chap. IV., ¶ 2.

<sup>6</sup> Davenport and his associates arrived at Boston during the Hutchinson controversy (see p. 41, ¶ 6). Wishing to avoid the religious dissensions then disturbing Massachusetts, they determined to settle elsewhere, and Quinnipiac, now New Haven, was fixed upon as their future home.

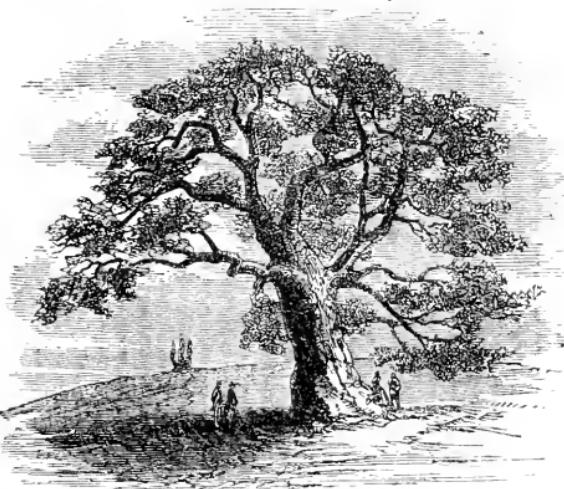
**QUESTIONS.** — 6. What further is said of the Pequots? Effect upon the New England Indians of this retribution? 7. When and by what settlements was a government organized for the towns on the Connecticut? What did the constitution ordain? 8. What treaty was concluded between the English and Dutch colonies, and when? When and why were the Dutch driven out of Hartford? 1. When and by whom was New Haven founded? 2. What is said of the government of the colony? What of Mr. Eaton? What of difficulties with the Dutch?

**III. CONNECTICUT AND NEW HAVEN UNITED.**—**1.** In 1665, under a charter granted three years before by Charles II., Connecticut and New Haven were united, and **1665.** styled the *Colony of Connecticut*. The charter<sup>1</sup> confirmed the privileges of the Connecticut constitution,<sup>2</sup> and embraced the territory granted to Lord Say and Seal and Lord Brooke.<sup>3</sup>

**2. Connecticut and New York.**—While Connecticut, with the other colonies of New England, was involved in the terrible war with Philip,<sup>4</sup> she was threatened with the loss of a large part of her territory from the claims of the Duke of York, into whose hands New Netherland, now New York, had been given by his brother, Charles II. With characteristic perfidy, Charles, disregarding the Connecticut charter, had granted to the duke a province which had the Connecticut as its eastern boundary.<sup>5</sup> Accordingly, Edmund Andros,<sup>6</sup> then governor of New York,—the same who was afterwards so conspicuous an instrument of tyranny in New England,—proceeded to Saybrook with a small force, to assert his authority. But he met with so determined resistance **1675.** that he relinquished the attempt. In 1683 the boundary between New York and Connecticut was established, much as at present.<sup>7</sup>

**3.** In 1687, the year after **Sir Edmund Andros** landed in Boston as governor of New England, he went to Hartford, and, entering the legislative assembly, demanded the charter, and declared the colonial government dissolved. Reluctant to surrender the charter, the assembly protracted its debates till evening. Upon a preconcerted signal the

lights were extinguished, and Captain Wadsworth seized the charter, which lay upon the table, and secreted it in the hollow of an oak. Sir Edmund,



The Charter Oak.

<sup>1</sup> To the younger Winthrop, one of the most accomplished men of the age, was the province chiefly indebted for the liberality of her charter. He went to England as the agent of Connecticut, of which he was the governor, and so won the favor of the monarch, that he obtained a charter more liberal in its provisions than any that had yet issued from the throne.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 48, ¶ 7.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 46, Chap. IV., ¶ 1.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 42, ¶ 4.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 8.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

<sup>7</sup> The boundary was finally run in 1731.

**QUESTIONS.**—**1.** When and under what name were Connecticut and New Haven united? What did the charter confirm? What did it embrace? **2.** When and how was Connecticut threatened with a loss of territory? Who was then governor of New York? Describe his attempt to assert his authority over Connecticut. What is said of the boundary between New York and Connecticut? **3.** Give an account of the course of Andros in Connecticut.

however, assumed the government, which was administered in his name until the dethronement of James II., in 1689.<sup>1</sup> On this event, the people took the charter from its hiding-place, “discolored, but not effaced,” convened the assembly, and resumed their former government. See p. 77, ¶ 6.



## CHAPTER V.

### RHODE ISLAND.<sup>2</sup>

I. PROVIDENCE PLANTATION.—1. Roger Williams,<sup>3</sup> banished from Massachusetts, obtained from Canonicus and Miantonomoh, chief sachems of the Narragansets, a tract of land at the **1636.** head of Narraganset Bay, and there, with a few associates, began a settlement in 1636, which he named **Providence.**<sup>4</sup>

2. The government first established for the new colony was a pure democracy, its legislative, judicial, and executive functions being exercised by the assembled citizens. The will of the majority was the law, yet “only in civil things.” Williams acted upon the principle which he had advocated in Massachusetts, and which had been the chief ground of complaint against him in that colony, viz., *that the civil power has no control over the religious opinions of men.* Providence quickly became the refuge of the persecuted in other colonies; with them Williams shared the lands he had obtained, reserving to himself “not one foot of land, not one tittle of political power, more than he granted to servants and strangers.”

II. RHODE ISLAND PLANTATION.—1. In 1638 William Coddington and eighteen others, being persecuted in **1638.** Massachusetts for their religious tenets, followed Roger Williams to Providence. By his advice they purchased of the Narragansets, Aquidneck,<sup>5</sup> now Rhode Island,<sup>6</sup> and began the settlement of **Portsmouth.** The next year another settlement was commenced, and named **Newport.** Both towns belonged to the same colony, which afterwards received the name of the Rhode Island Plantation.



<sup>1</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 45.  
<sup>3</sup> See p. 41, ¶ 6. Though the founder of Rhode Island, Williams was not the first European who dwelt within its limits. William Blackstone, the first white inhabitant of Boston, had removed to the banks of the river that now bears his name, a little above Providence, before that city was founded. He had no intention, however, of establishing a separate colony, and acknowledged the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. He removed because he found the authority of the “lords brethren” in Boston as oppressive as that of the “lords bishops” in England.

<sup>4</sup> In grateful remembrance of “God’s merciful providence to him in his distress.”

<sup>5</sup> Also called *Aquiday*, *Aquetnet*, &c.—Indian names signifying *Peaceful Island*.

<sup>6</sup> “An island of a reddish appearance was observed lying within [Narraganset Bay]. This was soon known to the Dutch as *Rooide* or *Red Island.* From this is derived the name of the Island and State of Rhode Island.”—*Brodhead.*

QUESTIONS.—What happened upon the dethronement of James II.? 1. When and by whom was Providence founded? 2. What is said of the government? Upon what principle did Williams act? What did Providence quickly become? II. 1. What were the first settlements of the Rhode Island Plantation? When and by whom made?

2. In principle the **government** of Rhode Island was the same, both in civil and religious matters, as at Providence. In form, however, it was, at first, different. In imitation of the Jewish government under the judges, their chief ruler was styled *Judge*.

**III. THE UNITED PLANTATIONS.**—1. The Providence and Rhode Island colonies remained distinct for several years, but their proposal to join the New England Union<sup>1</sup> being refused, ostensibly on the ground that they had no charter, **1644**. Williams went to England, and, in 1644, obtained from Parliament a **charter of incorporation**, by which the Plantations were united under one government, with the full control of their civil and religious affairs. A democratic form **1647**. of government was organized, “by which, in 1647, freedom of faith and worship was assured to all—the first formal and legal establishment of religious liberty ever promulgated, whether in Europe or America.” In 1663, **1663**. under the name of the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, they obtained from Charles II. a **royal charter** similar in its provisions to that granted to Connecticut.

2. The charter made the Pawcatuck the western boundary of the Plantations, thus including territory already granted to Connecticut.<sup>2</sup> *Rhode Island*, as the united Plantations came at length to be called, found it difficult to maintain the integrity of her soil against her neighbors. Connecticut on one side, and Plymouth and Massachusetts on the other, endeavored to appropriate her territory; and it was not till near the middle of the next century that her **boundaries** were definitely settled.

3. One of the earliest laws passed by the legislature, under the royal charter, restricted the **right of suffrage** to the holder's of a certain amount of real estate, and to their eldest sons. While Rhode Island remained an agricultural community, this occasioned no complaint; but about one hundred and eighty years later it threatened to cause a civil war.<sup>3</sup>

4. Soon after **Andros** assumed the government of New England,<sup>4</sup> he repaired to Rhode Island, abolished the charter, and appointed a council to assist him in governing the colony. But when news of the dethronement of James arrived, Rhode Island resumed her charter. The officers whom Andros had displaced were reinstated, except the governor, who hesitating to incur the responsibilities of the office, **Henry Bull**, “a fearless Quaker,” consented to accept the position. See p. 77, ¶ 6.

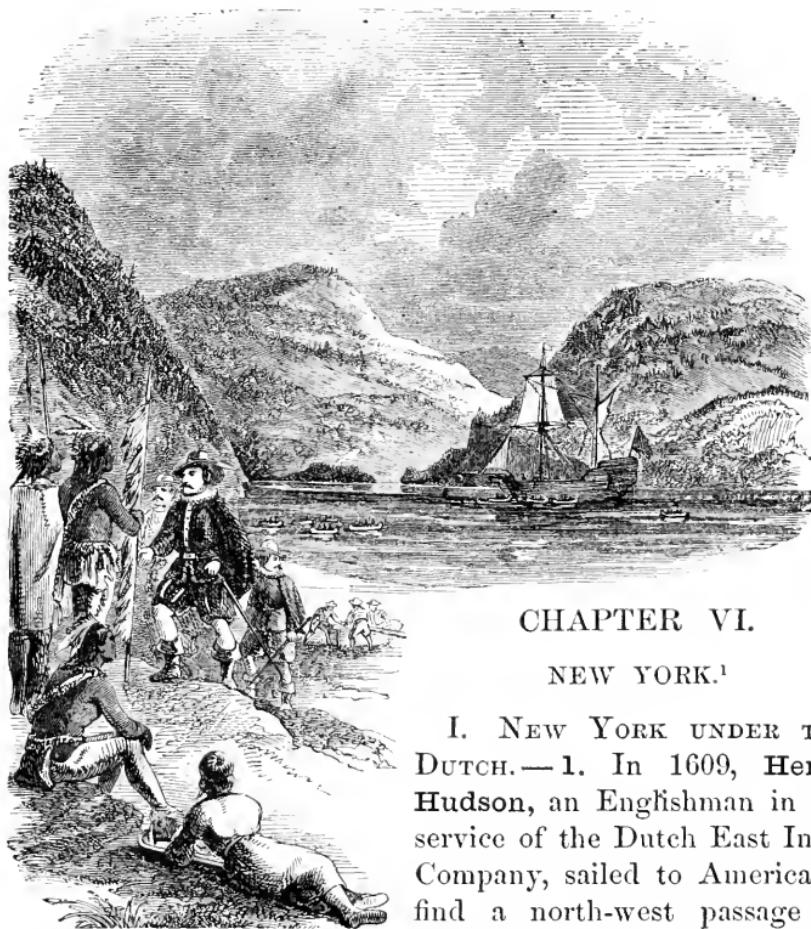
<sup>1</sup> See p. 41, § IV.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 49, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 204, ¶ 4.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

**QUESTIONS.**—2. What is said of the government of Rhode Island? 1. When and how were the Providence and Rhode Island Plantations united? What was assured to all? When was a royal charter obtained, and what were its provisions? III. 2. What is said of the boundaries? 3. What is said of the right of suffrage? What can you tell of Andros in Rhode Island? What happened when news of the dethronement of James arrived?



First Voyage up the Hudson.

## CHAPTER VI.

NEW YORK.<sup>1</sup>

I. NEW YORK UNDER THE DUTCH.—1. In 1609, Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the service of the Dutch East India Company, sailed to America to find a north-west passage to India.<sup>2</sup> Failing in this, he ex-

plored the eastern coast of North America, from Chesapeake Bay to Long Island,<sup>3</sup> entered New York harbor, and ascended the Hudson beyond the present site of Albany. This voyage laid the foundation of the Dutch claim to territory in America.<sup>4</sup>

Dutch merchants soon began to send out trading vessels to the newly discovered river, and huts for the shelter of traders were erected at

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 56.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 2.  
<sup>3</sup> This region was first visited by Cabot in 1498 (see p. 16, ¶ 1), afterwards by Verrazzani in 1524 (see p. 14, ¶ 1), and by Gomez in 1525 (see p. 13, ¶ 2).

<sup>4</sup> Hudson then sailed for England. James I., hoping to prevent the Dutch from laying claim to the country explored by Hudson, forbade his return to Holland; but the discoverer sent to his employers "a brilliant account" of his voyage. On a subsequent voyage, under the patronage of the English, in search of a path to the Pacific, Hudson discovered the bay that bears his name. After this his crew, becoming mutinous, seized him, his son, and seven others, threw them into a shallop, and set them adrift. Nothing more was ever heard of them.

QUESTIONS.—1. In whose service and with what design did Hudson sail to America? What harbor and river did he enter? What claim was founded upon this voyage?—What did Dutch merchants soon do?

its mouth, on *Manhattan Island*.<sup>1</sup> A fort was constructed on the southern part of the island, probably in 1614, and about the same time a fortified trading-house was built near the present site of Albany.

**2.** In 1621 the States General<sup>2</sup> granted to the **Dutch West India Company** extensive privileges for trade and colonization, which resulted in their claiming North America from Cape Henlopen to the Connecticut, and naming this region *New Netherland*. Under the patronage of this company, **1623.** colonization began in earnest in 1623. Permanent settlements were made at **New York** and **Albany**,—the former called New Amsterdam, and the latter Fort Orange.

**3.** The first governor of New Netherland was **Peter Minuit**, who arrived at New Amsterdam in 1626.

In order to give an impulse to colonization in their territory, the Dutch West India Company allowed persons who would plant colonies of fifty settlers, to select vast tracts of land, which they were to purchase **1629.** of the Indians, and which should descend to their posterity forever. Of this privilege several availed themselves. Such were called **patroons** —that is, patrons—or lords of the manor. This was the foundation for the manors of New York, some of which remain to this day. Out of the land monopolies thus established grew, more than two centuries afterwards, serious disturbances, known as the *anti-rent difficulties*.<sup>3</sup>

**4.** During the administration of **Walter Van Twiller**, who superseded Minuit, in 1633, the English gained a foothold on territory claimed by the Dutch in Connecticut.<sup>4</sup> In 1638 **Sir William Kieft** became governor. He was a man of enterprise and ability, but haughty and unscrupulous. The history of his administration is little more than a chronicle of struggles and contentions with the English on the Connecticut, the Swedes on the Delaware,<sup>5</sup> and the Indians in his neighborhood.

**5.** A war with the Indians was by far the most serious of the troubles of Kieft's administration. Under his predecessors the Indians near Manhattan had been friendly; but now they became totally estranged. Dishonest traders imposed upon them. Kieft himself undertook to exact tribute. In revenge for real and fancied wrongs, some murders **1643.** were committed by the Indians. Kieft, in retaliation, attacked a party of them while sleeping, unsuspecting of danger. Warrior, squaw, and child were indiscriminately massacred. This united against the Dutch

<sup>1</sup> This island, the present site of New York, was so called after the Indian tribe of Manhattans. It was purchased of the Indians for sixty guilders, or about twenty-four dollars.

<sup>2</sup> This was the title of the government of the Dutch Republic.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 204, ¶ 5.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 46, Chap. IV., ¶ 2.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 59, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—Where were a fort and trading-house soon erected? 2. What did the States General grant in 1621, and to what company? What claim did the company make under this grant? What permanent settlements were made, and when? 3. Who was the first governor of New Netherland?—What plan did the Dutch West India Company adopt to colonize their territory? Who were the patroons? 4. What took place during Van Twiller's administration? What is said of Kieft? Of his administration? 5. Give an account of the war with the Indians

all the neighboring Indians. Villages were laid waste; the farmer was murdered in his field, and his children carried into captivity.<sup>1</sup> But at length a short-lived reconciliation was brought about.

6. Confidence, however, was not restored. The Indians thirsted for further revenge, and the war was renewed. The Dutch engaged Captain John Underhill, who had distinguished himself in the Indian wars of New England, to act as a leader. He defeated the savages on Long Island and at Strickland's Plain in Greenwich. Finally both parties became weary of the contest, and peace was established in 1645. The conduct of Kieft was reprobated both in Holland and in New Netherland. Deprived of his office, he embarked for Europe, in a ship richly laden with furs; but his vessel was wrecked, and the guilty Kieft perished.

7. The fourth and last, as well as the ablest and most noted governor of New Netherland, was Peter Stuyvesant.

**1647.** He arranged a boundary with the English in Connecticut,<sup>2</sup> conquered the Swedes on the Delaware,<sup>3</sup> and annexed their territory to New Netherland. His policy towards the Indians was so conciliatory that they were generally peaceably disposed during his term of office. But while he was absent upon his expedition against the Swedes, the savages ravaged the country about New Amsterdam, and destroyed the settlements on Staten Island. On his return the governor purchased, rather than conquered, a peace. In 1663 the Indians laid waste the Dutch village of Esopus (now Kingston). Stuyvesant promptly sent a force to chastise them, and they were compelled to sue for peace.

8. Conquest of New Netherland.—The English claimed New Netherland on the ground of the discoveries of the Cabots;<sup>4</sup> and in 1664 Charles II. granted to his brother, **1664.** Duke of York and Albany,<sup>5</sup> the territory extending from the Connecticut to the Delaware.<sup>6</sup> The duke immediately took forcible possession of his province, which, as well as its principal city, was named New York. Fort Orange was called Albany. Long Island was united to New York. The grant to the duke also included the country in the present State of Maine,<sup>7</sup> lying between the Kennebec and the St. Croix.

When the English squadron entered the harbor of New Amsterdam,

<sup>1</sup> It was at this time that the celebrated Ann Hutchinson, who had been banished from Massachusetts, was murdered. See p. 41, ¶ 6, and note 3.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 48, ¶ 8.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 59, ¶ 2.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 16, ¶ 1.

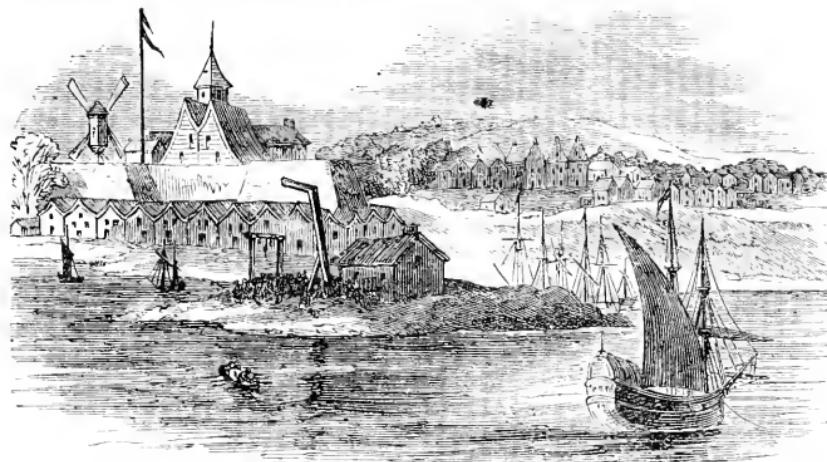
<sup>5</sup> Afterwards James II.

<sup>6</sup> The grant of Charles was a flagrant act of injustice, both to Holland, with which country England was then at peace, and to the people of Connecticut, whose chartered rights it violated.

<sup>7</sup> The duke's grant in Maine was claimed by the French as a part of Acadia. See p. 15, § III.

QUESTIONS.—6. Give an account of the war renewed. Of the establishment of peace. What is said of Kieft? His fate? 7. What is said of Stuyvesant?—Of his transactions with the English and the Swedes? With the Indians? 8. Why did the English claim New Netherland? What territory was granted by Charles II. in 1664, and to whom? What did the duke immediately do? What change was made in the name of the province and its two principal settlements? What else was included in the duke's grant?

Stuyvesant resolved to defend the city. But many of the inhabitants were natives of England, and many of the Dutch, not being allowed any voice in the affairs of the colony, were willing to submit to the authority of England, in the hope of obtaining political privileges, such as were enjoyed by the English colonies in New England. Thus the governor was not supported by the people, and was obliged to capitulate.



View of New Amsterdam.

**II. NEW YORK UNDER THE ENGLISH.—1.** The first governor under the Duke of York was **Colonel Nichols**. The people were sadly disappointed in their hope of obtaining greater liberty. Contrary to all right, the governor declared the Dutch titles to land invalid, and enriched himself by the fees demanded for their renewal. Still more odious was the administration of **Francis Lovelace**, the successor of Nichols. A remonstrance against taxation without representation was ordered to be burned by the common hangman. While Lovelace<sup>1</sup> was governor, the Duke of York extended his authority over the settlements on the west bank of the Delaware, by right of conquest from the Dutch.<sup>2</sup>

**2.** In 1672 war was declared between England and Holland; and when, the next year, a small Dutch squadron appeared off New York, the people, still oppressed by Lovelace, saw without regret the possessions of the Duke of York return to the Dutch. At the close of the war, however, all conquests were restored, and New Netherland became a second time New York. **Edmund Andros**,<sup>3</sup> afterwards the tyrant of New England, was appointed first governor of the restored province in 1674, and ruled with arbitrary sway.

<sup>1</sup> During the administration of Lovelace, a mail was started between New York and Boston, by way of Hartford. According to announcement, the messenger was to leave New York, January 1, 1672, and complete the journey to Boston and back within the month.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 7.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why did the inhabitants refuse to aid Stuyvesant in defending the city? 1. What is said of Nichols and his administration? Of Lovelace? Under his administration where did the duke extend his authority? 2. When was New York recaptured by the Dutch? When restored? What is said of Andros?

3. Political freedom seemed to be in store for New York **1683**, when Colonel Thomas Dongan arrived as governor, in 1683. He came over with instructions from the duke to call an assembly of representatives of the people. The assembly met, and established a **Charter of Liberties**, which became the foundation of a representative government in the colony.

Dongan, in connection with the governor of Virginia, entered into a treaty with the Iroquois, or **Five Nations**.<sup>1</sup> The war-paths of this powerful confederacy extended from the St. Lawrence to the Tennessee, and from the Atlantic to the Mississippi. None of the neighboring tribes had been able to withstand them. This treaty was long kept inviolate, and afforded great protection to the English settlements against the encroachments of the French from Canada,<sup>2</sup> as well as against the ravages of Indian warfare.



4. When the Duke of York became king of England, in 1685, under the title of James II., he refused to confirm the privileges which, as duke, he had granted.

He forbade legislative assemblies, and prohibited printing presses; and

<sup>1</sup> See p. 22, note (I.), and p. 67, Chap. XII, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 82, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—3. When did Dongan arrive as governor, and with what instructions? What is said of a Charter of Liberties?—With what Indians was a treaty established? What is said of this powerful confederacy? What advantages resulted from this treaty? 4. What course did the Duke of York take when he became king?—What restrictions did he impose?

in 1688 New York was annexed to the jurisdiction of **Andros**, then governor of New England. In him and his lieutenant, Francis Nicholson, James found fit instruments of oppression. When, however, news of the flight of James, of the accession of William and Mary, and of the seizure of Andros in Boston, reached New York, the officers of the crown withdrew from the city. **Jacob Leisler**, a captain of the militia, and an influential citizen, with the approbation of the people took possession of the fort, and held it for William and Mary. See p. 77, ¶ 7.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### NEW JERSEY.

**1.** THE territory from the Hudson to the Delaware<sup>1</sup> was included in the grant made by Charles II. to the Duke **1664.** of York, and came into the possession of the English with the rest of New Netherland.<sup>2</sup> The same year the duke conveyed this territory to **Lord John Berkeley** and **Sir George Carteret**,<sup>3</sup> and the province was named *New Jersey*.<sup>4</sup> The colonization of New Jersey is usually dated from a settlement made in 1664, by English Puritans from Long Island, at a place afterwards named **Elizabethtown**.<sup>5</sup>

**2.** Before this there had been located, in New Jersey, trading establishments by the Dutch; among others one, and probably the earliest, at **Bergen**, about the year 1618, and another at **Fort Nassau**,<sup>6</sup> in 1623. Several settlements had also been made by the Swedes and Finns,<sup>7</sup> and by the English; but in 1655, Stuyvesant, the governor of New Netherland, took exclusive possession of the territory for the Dutch.<sup>8</sup>

**3.** To encourage immigration, a **liberal constitution**, called "the concessions," was granted by the proprietors. This vested the government of the province in a governor and council appointed by the proprietors, and a legislative assembly **1665.** elected by the people; and in 1665 **Philip Carteret**, brother of Sir George, was sent over as the first governor.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Hudson was called North River, the Delaware South River.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 8.

<sup>3</sup> Berkeley and Carteret were already proprietors of Carolina. See p. 64, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> In honor of Carteret, who had been governor of the Island of Jersey.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 58, ¶ 1.

<sup>5</sup> So named in honor of Lady Elizabeth, wife of Sir George Carteret.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 7.

<sup>6</sup> On the east bank of the Delaware, a little below Philadelphia.

QUESTIONS.—To whose jurisdiction was New York annexed? What took place on the seizure of Andros? 1. In what grant was the territory between the Hudson and the Delaware included? To whom did the Duke of York convey this territory, and what was it named? From what is the colonization of New Jersey usually dated? 2. What settlements had been previously made, and by whom? 3. What is said of the concessions? In whom did they vest the government? Who was the first governor?

The liberal provisions of this constitution, together with the fertility of the soil and salubrity of the climate, soon induced **emigrants**, chiefly from New England and New York, to form settlements within the territory. **Newark** was settled, in 1666, by people from Connecticut.

4. In 1673 New Jersey, with the rest of what had been New Netherland, fell again into the power of the Dutch, but was restored to the English by the peace of the next year.<sup>1</sup> Thereupon the duke, in utter disregard of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, to whom he had conveyed the province ten years before, claimed it as **a dependency of New York**. But at length he was prevailed upon to relinquish his claim.

5. Berkeley sold his interest in New Jersey to certain **Quakers**, who made a settlement at Salem, and in 1676, by agreement with Carteret, the province was divided into **East Jersey** and **West Jersey**. East Jersey fell to Carteret, and in 1682, after his death, it was sold to **William Penn**<sup>2</sup> and others. Governors were appointed for the two provinces by their respective proprietors.

In 1688 both Jerseys, with New York, were placed under that minion of James, Andros; and when he was driven from the country,<sup>3</sup> the Jerseys were left for a time without a regular government. See p. 77, ¶ 9.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### DELAWARE.<sup>4</sup>

1. THE permanent colonization of the present State of Delaware<sup>5</sup> was begun in 1638 by a company of **Swedes** and **Finns**, under Peter Minuit,<sup>6</sup> formerly a governor of New Netherland. Having purchased of the natives a tract of land on the Delaware, they settled near the present site of Wilmington, and laid claim to the territory from Cape Henlopen to the Falls of the river, near Trenton. The settlement they named **Christina**, and the country *New Sweden*.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 55, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 61, Chap. X.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

<sup>4</sup> See Map, p. 56.

<sup>5</sup> Delaware, as well as the bay and river that wash its eastern shore, takes its name from Lord Delaware, one of the governors of Virginia. See p. 31, ¶ 8.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 53, ¶ 3.

<sup>7</sup> This colony was established in accordance with a design formed by the celebrated Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, and the settlement was named from his daughter and successor, the youthful Queen Christina.

QUESTIONS.—What induced emigrants to settle in New Jersey? When and by whom was Newark settled? 4. When was New Jersey recaptured by the Dutch? When restored? What unjust claim was made by the duke? 5. To whom did Berkeley sell his interest in New Jersey? When and how was the province divided? To whom did East Jersey fall, and to whom was it afterwards sold?—What happened to the Jerseys in 1688? What after Andros was driven from the country? 1. When and by whom was Delaware colonized? Where did the Swedes and Finns settle, and to what territory did they lay claim? Name of the settlement and country?

The subsequent settlements of the Swedes were chiefly within the limits of the present State of Pennsylvania, and the capital of the province was located upon the Island of Tinicum, a few miles below Philadelphia.

**2.** The Dutch<sup>1</sup> at Manhattan, claiming New Sweden as a part of New Netherland, looked upon the colonists as intruders, and in 1655 Governor Stuyvesant<sup>2</sup> reduced the Swedish forts, took possession of the country, and sent away such of the inhabitants as refused allegiance to Holland.

**3.** When the Duke of York took possession of New Netherland, the territory west of the Delaware, though not included in his patent, became part of New York.<sup>3</sup> In 1682, 1682. the duke having transferred it to William Penn, it became part of Pennsylvania,<sup>4</sup> and was known as "the territories, or three lower counties, on the Delaware." See p. 78, ¶ 12.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### MARYLAND.<sup>5</sup>

**1.** Lord Baltimore, a Roman Catholic nobleman, obtained from Charles I., king of England, a grant of land lying on both sides of Chesapeake Bay, and extending from the Potomac east to the ocean, Delaware Bay and River, and north to the fortieth parallel of latitude.<sup>6</sup> This grant was named *Maryland*.<sup>7</sup>

**2.** Sir George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, in order to provide a refuge in America for Roman Catholics, who were persecuted in England, applied for a patent of the country north of the Potomac. This was readily promised by the king, but Lord Baltimore dying before the patent was issued, it was made out in favor of his son Cecil, who inherited his father's title.

**3.** In 1634 about two hundred planters, mostly Roman Catholics, under Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore's 1634.

---

<sup>1</sup> As early as 1631 the Dutch had planted a colony near the present town of Lewes, but the immigrants were cut off by the Indians.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 7. <sup>3</sup> See p. 55, ¶ 1. <sup>4</sup> See p. 62, §§ 2, 3. <sup>5</sup> See Map, p. 56.

<sup>6</sup> This grant was included in the grant to the London Company by their second charter (see p. 31, ¶ 6); but after the dissolution of the company (see p. 33, ¶ 1), the king assumed the right to reconvey any of the territory not actually occupied. The grant also included Delaware; but Baltimore's claim to this province was resisted on the ground that it had been already settled when Maryland was conveyed to him (see note 1, above, and p. 20, ¶ 1). The present boundaries between Maryland and Delaware were fixed upon as a compromise between the heirs of Baltimore and Penn (see p. 61, note 4) many years later.

<sup>7</sup> Named in the charter Terra Mariae, *Mary's Land*, in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria.

QUESTIONS.—Where were the subsequent settlements of the Swedes chiefly made? Where was the capital located? 2. When and by whom was New Sweden conquered? 3. When did the territory west of the Delaware become a part of New York? When a part of Pennsylvania? Chap. IX. 1. To whom was Maryland granted? Extent of the grant? Name? 2. Who first applied for this grant, and for what purpose? 3. When and by whom was a settlement made?



First Lord Baltimore.

brother, as governor, arrived from England, and near the mouth of the Potomac, on the site of an Indian village purchased of the natives, began the settlement of St. Mary's.

**4.** The charter<sup>1</sup> secured to the colonists a share in the legislation of the province, and immunity from taxation by England.

The first legislature consisted of a general convention of the freemen; but in 1639 a representative legislature was established, which, in a few years,

was divided into an upper and lower house, the members of the former being appointed by the proprietor, and those of the latter chosen by the people.

**5. Clayborne's Rebellion.**—Few of the colonies escaped intestine troubles; nor did Maryland form an exception. In 1635 a rebellion broke out, chiefly caused by William Clayborne, who, some years before, under a royal license to trade with the Indians, had formed establishments on the Chesapeake, and who now by force of arms attempted to withstand the authority of Lord Baltimore. His followers, however, were taken prisoners, and he himself fled. A few years later Clayborne returned to Maryland, and, heading a party of insurgents, overthrew the government. Calvert, the governor, was compelled to take refuge in Virginia; but the revolt was soon suppressed, and he resumed his office.

**6. The Toleration Act.**—In 1649 the assembly gave the sanction of law to what had already been the practice in the colony—that no one professing faith in Jesus Christ should be molested on account of his religious belief.<sup>2</sup>

**7.** The liberality of the charter of Maryland, and of its legislation, had attracted to the province a great number of **Protestants**, and soon after the overthrow of monarchy in England they outnumbered the Catholics in the legislative assembly, and made a most ungrateful use of their power. They disputed the rights of the proprietor, disfranchised Catholics, and

<sup>1</sup> This was the first colonial charter which secured to the people legislative power.

<sup>2</sup> This act of toleration differs from that passed in Rhode Island two years before (see p. 51, § III.). In Rhode Island all forms of religious faith and worship were protected by law; in Maryland, all forms of Christianity.

declared them not entitled to the protection of the laws of Maryland. **Civil war** followed, and the Protestants were victorious. But on the Restoration, in 1660, Lord Baltimore recovered his rights, **1660**, and his brother, Philip Calvert, was recognized as governor.

**8.** Several circumstances contributed to the rapid growth and **prosperity of Maryland**. Her soil was fertile, and her seasons were mild. Her charter granted more ample privileges than had been conferred on any other colony in America, and the free enjoyment of religious opinions within her borders made her an asylum for the persecuted Puritan from Virginia and the persecuted Churchman from New England. Maryland was less disturbed by **Indian hostilities** than most of the other colonies. The justice of the settlers in their dealings generally secured the friendship of the natives. Yet the region between the Potomac and the Chesapeake became involved in the second Indian war in Virginia,<sup>1</sup> and again in 1675-7 the two colonies were united in repelling the Maryland Indians.<sup>2</sup>

**9.** On the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, the tranquillity of Maryland was interrupted. The delay on the part of the governor to proclaim the new sovereigns, and an absurd rumor that the Catholics were plotting the destruction of the Protestants, roused the latter to seize the government, which remained in their hands **1691**, until the king, in 1691, unjustly wrested from Lord Baltimore his political rights as proprietor, and Maryland became a royal province. See p. 78, ¶ 13.

## CHAPTER X.

### PENNSYLVANIA.<sup>3</sup>

**1.** A TERRITORY west of the Delaware was, in 1681, granted to William Penn<sup>4</sup> by Charles II. of England, and named **1681** by the king *Pennsylvania*.<sup>5</sup> This territory corresponded nearly with the present state of the same name.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 34, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 35, ¶ 6.

<sup>3</sup> See Map, p. 56.

<sup>4</sup> Penn's father, a distinguished admiral in the English service, dying, had bequeathed to him a large claim against the government. To cancel this, Charles readily granted a province in America. The grant was covered in part by the grants to Connecticut (see p. 46) and Maryland (see p. 59); "and though the limits on the north and west were adjusted without difficulty, the boundary between Pennsylvania and Maryland was long a subject of contest, and it was finally settled by the survey of Mason and Dixon, eminent English engineers sent over to establish this boundary, begun in 1763 and completed in 1767." Subsequently the continuation of this line, known as *Mason and Dixon's line*, was fixed upon as a boundary between Pennsylvania on the south and Virginia.

<sup>5</sup> *Penn's Woodland*.

QUESTIONS.—What ungrateful use did they make of their power? What followed? **8.** What contributed to the prosperity of Maryland? What is said of Indian hostilities? In what Indian wars was the province involved? **9.** What happened on the accession of William and Mary? What roused the Protestants to seize the government? What happened in 1691? **1.** To whom was Pennsylvania granted, and when?

William Penn.<sup>2</sup>

**Frame of Government**, vesting all authority in the proprietor, or a governor appointed by him, and a council and legislative assembly chosen by the people. The same year Penn himself came over, with a large number of colonists, chiefly Quakers.

3. A legislature having been convened at Chester, a code was enacted, called the **Great Law**, by which, among other provisions, it was ordained that no one believing in one **1682**. “Almighty God” should be molested in his religious opinions, and making “faith in Jesus Christ” a necessary qualification for voting and for holding office.<sup>3</sup>

An **Act of Union** was also passed, which annexed to Pennsylvania the *territories*<sup>1</sup> already conveyed to Penn by the Duke of York. Here, as well as in the province itself, long before Penn’s grant, settlements had been made by the Swedes and the Dutch. These were confirmed in their rights of property, and allowed the same privileges as the English.

4. Soon after Penn’s arrival, he met a delegation of the neighboring tribes of **Indians**, and established with them a

<sup>1</sup> See p. 58, Chap. VIII.

<sup>2</sup> After the only authentic original portrait of Penn in existence, painted in 1666, when he was twenty-two years of age.

<sup>3</sup> It will be seen that the form of religious toleration was like that of Maryland (see p. 60, ¶ 6), rather than like that of Rhode Island (see p. 51, § III.).

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Penn? Of the Friends? What was Penn desirous of founding? 2. What did he do after receiving his patent? How did Penn’s Frame of Government vest authority? When did Penn come over? 3. When and where was a legislature convened? What did the Great Law ordain?—What else was done by this legislature? What of the Swedes and Dutch? 4. What is said of Penn’s treaty with the Indians?

Penn was a man of liberal views, of great benevolence, integrity, ability, and energy. He belonged to the society of **Friends**, or Quakers—a sect much persecuted in England, where it had recently arisen. He was desirous of founding a colony where civil and religious liberty might be enjoyed.

2. Immediately after receiving his patent, he despatched an agent to negotiate with the Swedes and Dutch,<sup>1</sup> already settled in his province. He also sent out a company of emigrants.

In 1682 he prepared a

treaty of peace and friendship, which remained uninterrupted for more than seventy years,—till Pennsylvania passed from the control of the Quakers.<sup>1</sup>



Penn's Treaty with the Indians.

5. Early in the year 1683 the proprietor laid out a capital for his province, and named it **Philadelphia**—a name **1683.** which signifies *brotherly love*.

This city was erected on lands previously occupied by the Swedes, and purchased of them by Penn. Within a year nearly a hundred houses were built in the new city, and at the expiration of the second year it contained more than two thousand inhabitants. Indeed the whole province had a more rapid and prosperous settlement than any of the other colonies.

<sup>1</sup> This meeting took place under a great elm, by the side of the Delaware, in what is now a part of Philadelphia, called Kensington. Penn, attended by a few friends, arrived at the spot where the simple children of the forest gathered around him, and he thus addressed them: "We meet on the broad pathway of good faith and good will: no advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. I will not call you children,—for parents sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only,—for brothers differ. The friendship between me and you I will not compare to a chain; for that the rains might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts,—we are all one flesh and blood." Touched by this warm-hearted and generous address, the Indians declared, "We will live in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the moon and the sun shall endure;" and "not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian."

**6.** In March a second legislature was convened to meet at the capital, while it was yet scarcely more than a wilderness; and at the request of the freemen, Penn, always ready to accede to their wishes, granted a **charter of liberties**, extending the liberal provisions of the former government.

**7.** Penn returned to England in 1684, leaving the administration of the government in the care of five **commissioners**, with **Thomas Lloyd** as president; and under their control the affairs of the colony remained till after the accession of William and Mary to the English throne. See p. 78, ¶ 10.



## CHAPTER XI.

### NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.

**I. THE CAROLINAS.—1.** The Carolinas have their early history in common. In 1663 Lord Clarendon and seven associates<sup>1</sup> obtained from Charles II. of England a patent for a **1663**. vast territory south of Virginia. Two years later this company induced the king to enlarge the boundaries of their province so as to embrace a country extending, in latitude, from the present northern limit of North Carolina to a parallel south of St. Augustine, and, in longitude, from the Atlantic to the Pacific. This province was named *Carolina*.<sup>2</sup>

**2.** When the proprietors came into possession of their province, they found that settlements had already been made, by planters from Virginia, on the northern shore of Albemarle **1663**. Sound. In 1663 a government, securing to the people liberty of conscience and a voice in legislation, was instituted under **William Drummond**, one of the settlers, as governor, and the plantation was named the **Albemarle colony**.<sup>3</sup>

**3.** About the year 1660 a number of adventurers from New England formed a settlement at the mouth of Cape Fear River;

<sup>1</sup> Clarendon's associates were the Duke of Albemarle (the distinguished General Monk), Lord Craven, Lord Ashley Cooper (afterwards the Earl of Shaftesbury), Sir John Colleton, Sir William Berkeley (the governor of Virginia; see p. 34), his brother Lord John Berkeley, and Sir George Carteret, the last two afterwards proprietors of New Jersey (see p. 57, ¶ 1.).

<sup>2</sup> The name was at once commemorative of the English king who granted it, and the king of France under whose authority an attempt had been made to plant a colony within its limits a century before. See p. 15, § II.

<sup>3</sup> In honor of the Duke of Albemarle, one of the proprietors.

QUESTIONS.—6. When and where did the second legislature meet? What did Penn grant? 7. What is said of Penn in 1684? In whose care did he leave the government? 1. What of the early history of the Carolinas? What grant was made in 1663, and to whom? Two years later? 2. Give an account of the settlement of the Albemarle colony. Of its government. 3. Give an account of the settlement of the Clarendon colony.

but it did not prosper, and most of the adventurers abandoned it. Five years later, however, a company from Barbadoes established near the same place a settlement that was called the **Clarendon colony**. This colony absorbed such of the New Englanders as remained at Cape Fear. **Sir John Yeamans** administered the government under a constitution similar to that of the Albemarle colony.

4. In 1670 a third colony, called the **Carteret colony**,<sup>1</sup> was founded by emigrants from England. The colonists, **1670**, accompanied by **William Sayle** as governor, first entered the harbor of Port Royal, near Beaufort; but not long afterwards they sailed into the Ashley River, and founded Old Charleston. This, like the more northern colonies, early adopted a representative form of government.

5. In 1680 the people of Old Charleston, attracted by the more pleasant location of a point of land between the **1680**. Rivers Ashley and Cooper,<sup>2</sup> removed thither, and there laid the foundation of the present city of **Charleston**.

Scarcely had they removed when their safety was endangered by the hostility of the **Indians**. Retaliatory measures became necessary; many of the natives were shot; others were captured, and sent into slavery in the West Indies. Peace was made with them the following year.

6. The distinguished statesman Lord Shaftesbury, one of the proprietors, and the eminent philosopher John Locke, drew up for the Carolina colonies a form of government, magnificent in design and labored in detail, known as the **Grand Model**. This scheme of government was never carried out. Though nominally in force for nearly a quarter of a century, it was found to be wholly impracticable, and the people, in spite of attempts to enforce it, continued under their own forms of government.

7. Though Carolina remained one province till 1729, yet so remote were the colonies from each other that their affairs were administered by **two governments**, one for the northern or Albemarle, and another for the southern or Carteret colony; and to the latter the governor of the middle or Clarendon colony, with most of its inhabitants, soon removed.

---

<sup>1</sup> After Sir George Carteret, one of the proprietors.

<sup>2</sup> Named in honor of Sir Ashley Cooper (Earl of Shaftesbury), one of the proprietors.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who was the governor, and what of his government? 4. When and by whom was the Carteret colony founded? Under whom as governor? What harbor did they first enter? What town did they found soon after? 5. Give an account of the founding of the present city of Charleston.—What is said of difficulties with the Indians? 6. What can you tell of the Grand Model? 7. What governments were established for Carolina? To which government was the Clarendon colony joined?

**II. NORTH CAROLINA.**—**1.** Accessions were made to the Albemarle or North Carolina colony from New England, from the Bermudas, and elsewhere, but its progress was long retarded by **domestic dissensions**. An insurrection arose from an attempt to enforce the Grand Model; taxes were enormous, and commercial restrictions embarrassing. In 1677 an attempt was made to enforce the oppressive **Navigation Acts**<sup>1</sup> against a vessel from New England, when the people rose, imprisoned the governor of the colony and several members of the council, and then proceeded to organize a government for themselves.

**2.** Still the proprietors were anxious to establish their authority; and for that purpose they sent over, in 1683, as governor, **Seth Sothel**, then one of their number. He only increased existing disorders. For five years the inhabitants endured his injustice and oppression, and then seized him, and banished him from the colony. It is said of Sothel, that “the dark shades of his character were not relieved by a single ray of virtue.” See p. 78, ¶ 15.



**III. SOUTH CAROLINA.**—**1.** The progress of the southern colony was, from the beginning, more rapid than that of the northern. Many **Dutch** families from New York, being dissatisfied with their transfer

<sup>1</sup> See p. 34, ¶ 4.

QUESTIONS.—**1.** Whence were accessions made to the Albemarle colony? How was its progress retarded? What sources of domestic trouble are mentioned? What of an attempt to enforce the Navigation Acts? **2.** Give an account of Sothel and his administration. **III. 1.** What is said of the progress of the southern colony? Of Dutch settlers?

to the English in 1664,<sup>1</sup> were ready to find a home here; and, in 1671, ship-loads of them were transported by the proprietors to Carolina free of expense, and liberal grants of land were made them. Their number was increased from time to time by emigrants from Holland. Soon after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes,<sup>2</sup> a large number of **Huguenots**, or French Protestants, came over, and settled in the colony. The profanity and licentiousness of the court of Charles II. also drove not a few **Puritans** across the Atlantic, a number of whom settled in South Carolina.

**2.** In 1686 **James Colleton**, a brother of one of the proprietors, was appointed governor, in the hope that he would be able to reconcile the colonists to the proprietary authority, to which they had for a long time been averse. But his arbitrary conduct drove the people to open resistance. The public records were seized, the colonial secretary was imprisoned, the governor defied, and in 1690 he was banished from the colony. See p. 78, ¶ 15.



## CHAPTER XII.

### FRENCH POSSESSIONS IN WHAT IS NOW THE UNITED STATES.

**1.** WHILE the English were taking possession of a narrow strip along the coast from Maine to South Carolina, the **French**<sup>3</sup> were exploring the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, the Mississippi, and their tributaries.

**2.** **Champlain**,<sup>4</sup> "the father of New France," laid the foundation of Quebec in 1608, and the next year discovered the lake that bears his name. He entered what is now New York,<sup>5</sup> accompanied by a party of Hurons and Algonquins, and defeated in battle their enemies, the Five Nations,<sup>6</sup> thus gaining for the French the enmity, and for the English the friendship, of that confederacy.

**3.** **French Jesuits**,<sup>7</sup> with their usual energy and zeal, were the most active pioneers of discovery. One of the most devoted of their number, **James Marquette**, determined to

<sup>1</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 8.

<sup>2</sup> See Contemporary Chronology, p. 73 (1685).

<sup>4</sup> See p. 15, § III.

<sup>5</sup> It is worth while to remark that the representatives of three different nations were penetrating the interior of what is now the Middle States, from different points, at nearly the same time,—Champlain, Hudson (see p. 52, ¶ 1), and Smith,—Smith having made an exploration of the Chesapeake in 1608.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 22, note (I.).

<sup>7</sup> Even before the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, Jesuit priests had borne the message of a Saviour to the Indians living on the upper waters of the Keunebee, and east of that river. They carried the symbols of their nation and religion through the wilderness, till they planted the lilies of France and preached the doctrines of the cross on the shores of Lake Superior.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Huguenots? Of Puritans? 2. Give an account of Colleton and his administration. Chap. XII. 1. How were the French employed while the English were taking possession of the coast from Maine to Carolina? 2. When and by whom was Lake Champlain discovered? What city did Champlain found the previous year? What Indians did he defeat in battle? Result to the French and the English? 3. What is said of French Jesuits? Give an account of Marquette's exploration of the Mississippi.

explore the great river of the west, of which he had heard from **1673.** the Indians; and in 1673 he and **Louis Joliet**, a trader of Quebec, with five of their countrymen, entered the **Mississippi** from the Wisconsin, and, in two birch-bark canoes, floated down its current below the mouth of the Arkansas, the **1682.** first European explorers of that river since De Soto.<sup>1</sup> Nine years afterwards **La Salle** explored the river to its mouth, and naming the vast region drained by it and its branches **Louisiana**,<sup>2</sup> claimed it for France. See p. 80.



## CHAPTER XIII.

CONDITION, AT THE CLOSE OF THIS PERIOD, OF WHAT IS NOW THE UNITED STATES.

**1.** At the close of this Period the territory of the present United States was still claimed by England, France, and Spain.<sup>3</sup>

**East of the Mississippi**, the **English**, having crowded the French out of Carolina,<sup>4</sup> and the Dutch out of New Netherland,<sup>5</sup> as the Dutch had previously crowded the Swedes out of New Sweden,<sup>6</sup> occupied the Atlantic coast from Maine to South Carolina. **France** included among her American possessions part of the present States of Maine, Vermont, and New York,<sup>7</sup> and all that immense region between the Mississippi, the Great Lakes, and the Alleghanies, thus limiting on the west grants made by England.<sup>8</sup> The **Spanish claim** included, in addition to the present Florida, an indefinite region having for its southern boundary the whole northern shore of the Gulf of Mexico.

**2.** **West of the Mississippi**, claims and possessions, except the claim that the re-discovery of that river gave to France, remained as at the close of the first Period.<sup>3</sup> Scattered missions and trading-posts had been established by Spain in Texas, and as far north as the present New Mexico and California, while farther north extended her indefinite New Mexico, and on the Pacific lay England's almost forgotten New Albion.<sup>9</sup>

**3.** The population of the English colonies at the close of this Period is estimated at about two hundred thousand.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 3.

<sup>2</sup> In honor of Louis XIV., king of France.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 20, § II.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 15, § II.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 54, ¶ 8.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 59, Chap. VIII., ¶ 2.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 67, Chap. XII., and note 5.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 46, Chap. IV., ¶ 1.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 16, ¶ 2.

<sup>10</sup> Bancroft gives the following approximate distribution of this number: Massachusetts, with Plymouth and Maine, 44,000; New Hampshire, 6,000; Rhode Island, 6,000; Connecticut, 19,000; New York, 20,000; New Jersey, 10,000; Pennsylvania, with Delaware, 12,000; Maryland, 25,000; Virginia, 50,000; the two Carolinas, 8,000.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of La Salle's exploration of the Mississippi. 1. At the close of this period what nations claimed the territory of the present United States? What is said of the English east of the Mississippi? Of France? Of the Spanish claim? 2. What is said of claims and possessions west of the Mississippi? 3. What was the estimated population of the English colonies at the close of this Period?

**4. The manners** of the colonists in **Virginia** were those of the less rigid English. There was found in the colony a good deal of that frankness, hospitality, taste, and refinement which distinguish the better classes of the southern people at this day. In **New England** the people were more strict in their notions, and consequently more rigid in their manners. If they had no greater faith in the Scriptures than the people of Virginia, they moulded their government and shaped private character and morals upon a more severe and literal construction of them.<sup>1</sup> They studied simplicity of manners, taste, and living. They were patriotic, industrious, and public-spirited. In **New York**, the manners of the colonists were strictly Dutch,—with no other modifications than those which the privations of a new country, and the few English among them, necessarily effected. The same steadfast pursuit of wealth, the same plodding industry, the same dress, air, and physiognomy, which are given as characteristic of Holland, were exhibited in New Netherland.

**5. Slavery** at an early period found its way into all the colonies,—first silently permitted, then regulated by law.

This odious institution was introduced into the country not less by the cupidity of the north, which found its profits in the slave trade, than by the cupidity of the south, which found its profits in slave labor. The commercial policy of England, too, tended to fasten it upon the colonies. In **New England** slavery was not generally profitable, and slaves were chiefly employed as house servants. In the **middle and southern colonies** they were employed in the field, and indeed in every department of manual labor. South Carolina alone, of the original thirteen states, was, from its infancy, a slave colony. The year after Old Charleston was settled, negro slaves were imported from Barbadoes.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The laws of the colonies throw great light on the views and manners of the people of that age. Take, for example, several laws of the *Massachusetts colony*: one, in 1639, prohibiting the drinking of healths; another, in 1651, prohibiting "persons whose estate did not exceed two hundred pounds wearing gold or silver lace, or any bone lace above two shillings per yard," and requiring the selectmen to take notice of the "apparel" of the people, especially their "ribbands and great boots." "Only a small number of persons of the best condition had the designation *Mr.* or *Mrs.* prefixed to their names; this respect was always shown to ministers and their wives. *Goodman* and *Goodwife* were the appropriate addresses of persons above the condition of servitude and below that of gentility." Mr. Josias Plaistowe, for stealing corn from the Indians, was to be called only Josias Plaistowe, and not *Mr.*, as formerly. Robert Shorthose, for swearing in a certain manner, was sentenced to have his tongue put into a cleft stick, and to stand so for the space of half an hour. The *colony of Connecticut* ordered that no person under twenty years of age should use any tobacco, without a certificate from a physician; and no others, although addicted to its use, unless they were ten miles from any house, and then not more than once a day. And this regulation was made while the Virginians were raising all the tobacco they were able, deriving a revenue from it for the support of government, paying their ministers with it, and using it as a currency. In Hartford every freeman who neglected to attend town-meeting was fined sixpence, unless he had a good excuse. And in 1643 it was ordered that the watch should ring a bell every morning, before daybreak, and that at least one person should be up within one quarter of an hour after, in every house.

<sup>2</sup> Negro slavery did not originate in America. The first European immigrants to the New World brought with them negro slaves. They also enslaved the natives. But the condition of slavery under which the negro thrived, was destructive to the Indian; and to prevent the utter extinction of the red man, Bartolome de las Casas, about a century before the introduction of negro slaves into Virginia, with a sincere but mistaken benevolence, advocated and effected the general substitution of negro for Indian slavery in the Spanish colonies. From this time the slave trade was a source of great gain, and the profits of slavery blinded men to its iniquity.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell of the manners of the colonists in Virginia? In New England? In New York? 5. What of slavery in the colonies?—How introduced? What of slavery in New England? In the middle and southern colonies? What is said of South Carolina in connection with slavery?

**6. Religion.**—The French and Spanish settlements and missions within the present limits of the United States were exclusively Roman Catholic. Of the English colonies whose history has already been given, Maryland was Protestant by a great majority, and the rest almost unanimously.

**7. The Church of England** was established in Virginia, Maryland, and the Carolinas. In New England the colonists were **Calvinists** in doctrine and **Congregational** in discipline. The **Dutch Reformed Church** was the prevailing religion in New York. The first settlers in Maryland were chiefly **Roman Catholics**; and this church has ever exercised great influence in that colony. The first **Baptist** church in America was formed at Providence, under Roger Williams. The **Quakers** made their appearance in Massachusetts in 1656; and at the close of this Period, Pennsylvania, Delaware, West Jersey, Rhode Island, and in some measure North Carolina, were Quaker colonies.

**8. The different sects in America** were often at war with each other. Catholics were at some time the victims of oppression in all the colonies. Massachusetts in the north, however, and Virginia in the south,—the former Puritan, the latter of the English Church,—always foremost in their respective sections, were the foremost in the work of **persecution**. Massachusetts persecuted Baptists with fines and imprisonments, and inflicted on Quakers still severer penalties.<sup>1</sup> The other New England colonies, except Rhode Island, followed her lead. Virginia fined and imprisoned Quakers and Baptists, and banished New England Puritans.

**9. Indian Missions.**—The Spanish and French immigrants to America made strenuous efforts for the conversion of the Indians to Christianity. This is particularly true of the French. It was their untiring zeal for the spread of the gospel that led their priests to penetrate those vast regions of western wilderness, till then untrodden by the foot of civilized man. The history of Christianity presents no names more illustrious for unselfish devotion than Anthony Daniels, Claude Allouez, and James Marquette,<sup>2</sup> Jesuit missionaries to the American Indians. Nor were the English neglectful of the spiritual welfare of the Indian. Conspicuous among their missionaries to the natives stand John Eliot, “the

<sup>1</sup> Believing the principles of the Quakers subversive of good order and good government,—and, indeed, the extravagant conduct of some of the sect gave occasion for this belief,—the rulers of Massachusetts enacted a law banishing them from the colony on pain of death; seeking “not the death, but the absense, of the Quakers.” Under this law two Quakers were hanged on Boston Common in 1659; and later, two others were executed, one of them a woman.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 67, ¶ 3.

**QUESTIONS.**—6. What was the religion of the French and Spanish settlements? The religion of the English colonies? 7. In what colonies was the Church of England established? What were the New England colonies in doctrine and discipline? What was the prevailing religion in New York? What of Roman Catholics in Maryland? Of the first Baptist church in America? What of the Quakers? 8. What is said of the different sects in America? Of Catholics? What colonists were foremost in the work of persecution? What more is said of Massachusetts? What of the other New England colonies? What more is said of Virginia? 9. For what purpose did the Spanish and French immigrants make strenuous efforts? What more is said of the French? What devoted missionaries are mentioned? Of what were the English not neglectful? Who were conspicuous among their missionaries?

apostle to the Indians," and the Mayhews, father and son. So cheering was their success, that in 1660 there were ten towns of converted Indians in Massachusetts.

**10. Education.**—Schools, supported in part by endowments and in part by fees for tuition, were early established in most of the colonies. But the common school was almost from the first the peculiar glory of New England.<sup>1</sup>

In Massachusetts measures were early taken to establish a college, which in 1638 was located in a part of Newtown, afterwards called Cambridge. The institution was named **Harvard College**, in **1638**. honor of the Rev. John Harvard, who bequeathed to it his library, and half of his estate, amounting to several hundred pounds. The first **printing press** in America was established in Cambridge in 1639. There were no **newspapers** in America during this Period.

**11.** At first the colonies had but little **trade and commerce**, except with England, and that was very limited. They imported all their merchandise, and made such returns as they were able in tobacco, peltry procured from the Indians, lumber, beef, pork, grain, and fish. **Arts and manufactures** were of slow growth. Thread and yarn were spun and knit by the women at their homes. The weaving of woollen and cotton fabrics was introduced by some Yorkshire clothiers, who began the settlement of Rowley, Massachusetts, in 1638. After a little time the manufacture of linen, woollen, and cotton cloth in this province became very remunerative.

**12.** The first business of the settlers was to clear the forests, and supply themselves with food from the soil. But the fertility of the earth soon taught them to look to **agriculture** as a source of wealth, as well as of subsistence. It therefore became the leading object of industry. Indian corn and different kinds of European grain, as well as most of the garden fruits and vegetables common in the mother country, were cultivated in all the colonies. Besides these, beef and pork were the principal products of the northern and middle colonies, and tobacco of the southern. The cultivation of tobacco was introduced into Virginia almost from the first. Cotton, that since, as an American product, has played so important a part in the commerce of the world, was first cultivated in Virginia in 1621.

---

<sup>1</sup> To certain official inquiries respecting education in the colonies, the governor of Connecticut replied, "One fourth of the annual revenue is laid out in maintaining free schools." To the same questions Governor Berkeley, of Virginia, replied, "I thank God there are no free schools, nor printing, and I hope we shall not have them these hundred years."

**QUESTIONS.**—Success of the English missionaries? 10. What is said of schools in the colonies? Of the common school? What can you tell of Harvard College? Of the first printing press in America? Of newspapers? 11. What of the trade and commerce of the colonies? Of arts and manufactures? When, where, and by whom was the manufacture of cotton and woollen fabrics introduced? 12. What of agriculture? What were cultivated in all the colonies? What other principal products of the northern and middle colonies? Of the southern? What of tobacco? Of cotton?

## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

1607. Jamestown was founded in Virginia, the first permanent English settlement in America, 29.
1609. Hudson discovered the Hudson River, 52.  
Champlain discovered Lake Champlain, 67.
1610. The starving time prevailed in Virginia, 31.
1614. Captain Smith explored the coast of New England, 36.
1619. A legislative assembly, the first in America, was convened in Virginia, 32.
1620. Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia, 32.  
Plymouth was settled by the Puritans, the first permanent English settlement in New England, 36.
1622. Opechancanough's war broke out in Virginia, 33.
1623. Dover and Portsmouth, in New Hampshire, were settled, 45.  
The permanent colonization of New York was begun by the Dutch, 53.
1630. Boston was founded by Governor Winthrop, 40.
1634. The colonization of Maryland was begun at St. Mary's, 60.
- 1634-6. Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford, in Connecticut, were settled by emigrants from Massachusetts, 47.
1636. Roger Williams founded Providence, 50.
1638. Delaware was settled by the Swedes and Finns, 58.  
New Haven was founded by Eaton and Davenport, 48.  
Harvard College was established in Cambridge, 71.
1639. A separate government was organized for Connecticut, 48.
1643. The confederacy styled the United Colonies of New England was formed, 41.
1644. The Rhode Island and Providence Plantations were united, forming Rhode Island, 51.
1663. The Albemarle colony (North Carolina) was organized, 64.
1664. New Netherland was taken by the English, and named New York, 54.  
Elizabethtown, in New Jersey, was settled, 57.
1665. Connecticut and New Haven were united, under the name of Connecticut, 49.
1673. Marquette explored the Mississippi, 67.
1675. King Philip's war began, 42.
1676. Bacon's rebellion broke out in Virginia, 34.
1680. Charleston, South Carolina, was founded, 65.
1682. La Salle explored the Mississippi to its mouth, 68.
1683. Philadelphia was founded by William Penn, 63.
1686. Sir Edmund Andros was appointed governor of New England, 44.
1689. Andros was seized and sent to England, 44.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

1609. The independence of the Dutch Republic acknowledged.  
 1610. Henry IV. of France assassinated by Ravaillac.  
 1618. The beginning of the "Thirty Years' War."  
 1624. Richelieu, chief minister of Louis XIII. of France. He was for eighteen years the leading statesman of Europe.  
 1632. Victory and death of Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, at the battle of Lützen.  
 1640. Portugal revolted from Spain, and regained her independence under John IV., Duke of Braganza.  
 Frederic William, the Great Elector of Brandenburg. He laid the foundation of the kingdom of Prussia.  
 1642. Beginning of the civil war in England between Charles I. and Parliament.  
 1645. The battle of Naseby, in England, ruined Charles I.  
 1647. A revolution in China placed the present ruling dynasty on the throne.  
 1648. The Peace of Westphalia put an end to the "Thirty Years' War." Origin of the system of the "balance of power."  
 1649. Charles I. of England beheaded.  
 1653. Cromwell proclaimed Lord Protector.  
 1660. The Restoration. Charles II. restored to the English throne.  
 1661. Colbert minister of France, which becomes the most formidable power in Europe. With his administration commenced the era called the "Age of Louis XIV."  
 1665. Great Plague in London—100,000 deaths.  
 1679. Habeas Corpus Act passed by the English Parliament.  
 1683. The last siege of Vienna by the Turks, raised by John Sobieski, king of Poland.  
 1685. The Edict of Nantes revoked by Louis XIV.  
 1688. League of Augsburg. The principal continental states, afterwards joined by England, united to resist France.

---

Among the eminent men who closed their career during this Period were,

Arminius, . . . . .	1609.	Galileo, . . . . .	1642.
Cervantes, . . . . .	1616.	Richelieu, . . . . .	1642.
Shakespeare, . . . . .	1616.	Hampden, . . . . .	1643.
Francis Bacon, . . . . .	1626.	Grotius, . . . . .	1645.
Kepler, . . . . .	1630.	Descartes, . . . . .	1650.
Lope de Vega, . . . . .	1635.	Pascal, . . . . .	1662.
Ben Jonson, . . . . .	1637.	Molière, . . . . .	1673.
Rubens, . . . . .	1640.	Milton, . . . . .	1674.
Vandyke, . . . . .	1641.	Corneille, . . . . .	1684

**A N A L Y S I S.**

---

**PERIOD III.—INTERCOLONIAL WARS.**

**Chap. I.—The Separate Colonies.**

- I. Colonies already established, p. 75.
- II. The new Colony, Georgia, p. 79.
- III. French and Spanish Settlements, p. 80.

**Chap. II.—King William's War, p. 82.**

**Chap. III.—Queen Anne's War.**

- I. Beginning of the War.—War in the South, p. 83.
- II. War in the North.—Treaty of Utrecht, p. 84.

**Chap. IV.—The Spanish War, p. 85.**

**Chap. V.—King George's War, p. 86.**

**Chap. VI.—The French and Indian War.**

- I. The Beginning of Hostilities and the Declaration of War, p. 87.
- II. Unfortunate Campaigns of 1756 and 1757, p. 90.
- III. Successful Prosecution and Termination of the War, p. 91.

**Chap. VII.—Condition, at the Close of this Period, of what is now the United States, p. 95.**

**Chronology, p. 98.**

## PERIOD III.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR INTERCOLONIAL WARS.

EXTENDING FROM THE ACCESSION OF WILLIAM AND MARY TO THE THRONE OF ENGLAND, IN 1689, TO THE PEACE OF PARIS, IN 1763.



Death of General Wolfe.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE SEPARATE COLONIES.

#### I. COLONIES ALREADY ESTABLISHED.—1.

In the preceding Period we have seen the English colonies in America struggling with the wilderness, without much sympathy with, or knowledge of, each other: in this Period we

shall see common dangers bringing together those already established, and a new colony<sup>1</sup> (Georgia) called into being. Some facts that peculiarly mark the growth of each colony will be given in this chapter. After this chapter the English possessions in what is now the United States will generally be regarded as a unit, having a common history.

**2. New Hampshire**<sup>2</sup> remained under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts till 1692, when, contrary to the wishes of the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 79.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 45, 46.

QUESTIONS.—1. What have we seen in the preceding Period? What shall we see in this Period? What will be given in this chapter? After this chapter what of the English possessions in the present United States? 2. What happened to New Hampshire in 1692?

people, New Hampshire again became a separate province. **1741.** After seven years the two provinces came under one governor (Earl of Bellamont); but a final separation took place in 1741.

The vexatious Masonian controversy<sup>1</sup> was terminated by yielding to the claimants under Mason's grant the unoccupied portions of the province.

**3. Massachusetts.**<sup>2</sup>—William and Mary, successors of James II. on the English throne, refused to restore to Massachusetts her former charter,<sup>3</sup> but granted a new one in 1691, less liberal than the old.<sup>4</sup> By the new charter Plymouth was united to Massachusetts, whose jurisdiction also extended over Maine and Nova Scotia;<sup>5</sup> and the governor and other high officers, formerly chosen by the people, were appointed by the king.

**1692.** In May of the next year, **Sir William Phipps**, a native of Maine, arrived from England as first governor under the new charter, which he brought with him.

**4.** About this time that strange delusion known as the **Salem witchcraft**<sup>6</sup> prevailed in Massachusetts.

Suspicion of witchcraft had previously arisen in New England, and some persons had been executed for practising the craft. In **1692.** 1692 the delusion broke out anew in consequence of the strange actions of some children in the family of Mr. Parris, a minister in Danvers, then a part of Salem. A physician pronounced them bewitched, and an Indian servant of Mr. Parris was flogged into an admission that she had bewitched them. Other children and some adults were soon afflicted in the same way, and several persons were accused of witchcraft. The accusations attracted great attention, and were generally believed.

**5.** The awful mania spread. Cotton Mather, an influential minister of Boston, and a firm believer in witchcraft, encouraged the delusion; the magistrates countenanced it; the newly-appointed governor hastened to summon a special court to try the accused. So warped were the judgments of men, that the strangest and most improbable stories were taken as evidence. In a few months twenty persons had been executed, more

<sup>1</sup> See p. 46, ¶ 3.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 36-44.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 9.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 39, ¶¶ 2, 3.

<sup>5</sup> England did not come into undisputed possession of Nova Scotia till 1713 (see p. 85, ¶ 4), nor of the eastern part of Maine till 1755 (see p. 89, ¶ 9).

<sup>6</sup> At this period, the actual existence of witchcraft was taken for granted, and doubts respecting it were deemed little less than heresy. The learned Baxter, who lived at this time in England, pronounced the disbeliever in witchcraft an "obdurate Sadducee;" Sir Matthew Hale, one of the brightest ornaments of the English bench, repeatedly tried and condemned those who were accused of witchcraft; and the celebrated Blackstone, a half century later, declared that to deny the existence of witchcraft was to deny Revelation.

QUESTIONS.—Seven years afterwards? In 1741?—How was the Masonian controversy settled? 3. What happened to Massachusetts in 1691? By the new charter how were the territory and jurisdiction of Massachusetts extended? How were her privileges abridged? Who was the first governor under the new charter? 4. About this time what prevailed in Massachusetts?—Give an account of the origin and progress of the delusion. 5. What is said of Cotton Mather? The magistrates? The governor? How many persons were executed?

than fifty had been tortured or frightened into confessing themselves witches,—indeed, confession was their only safety,—and the jails were full of prisoners. No one was safe from suspicion. At length the frenzy spent itself, people began to come to their senses, the accused were liberated, and the terrible drama closed.

**6. Rhode Island**<sup>1</sup> and **Connecticut**<sup>2</sup> continued to thrive under their charters until long after they ceased to be dependencies of Great Britain, but without any change so marked in their internal policy, or external relations, as to need special mention in this chapter.

**7. New York.**<sup>3</sup>—**Leisler**,<sup>4</sup> supported by the democraey, but bitterly opposed by the aristocracy, conducted the affairs of the province with great prudence, until the arrival, in 1691, of Colonel Henry Sloughter as governor. The destruction of Leisler was now resolved upon by his enemies. He was tried on a charge of treason, and found guilty. Governor Sloughter at first refused to sign the death warrant; but his signature was obtained while he was drunk, and when he recovered his senses Leisler was no more. Sloughter was succeeded by the corrupt and covetous Benjamin Fletcher, and the latter, in 1698, gave place to the Earl of Bellamont, whose jurisdiction was also made to extend over Massachusetts and New Hampshire. A little before this **William Kidd**,<sup>5</sup> a New York shipmaster, having been commissioned to cruise against the pirates that were then infesting every sea, himself turned pirate, and became the most notorious of them all. Bellamont caused him to be seized and sent to England, where he was tried and executed.

**8.** In 1741, during the administration of George Clarke, the supposed discovery of a **negro plot** to burn the city of New York, and to rob and murder the inhabitants, threw the people into great commotion. **1741.** Many negroes were arrested and imprisoned. On insufficient evidence, more than thirty were burned at the stake or hanged, and twice as many transported. When the alarm was over, and impartial judgment had taken the place of excitement and fear, many persons believed that the proceedings had been rash, and that there was no evidence of any plot among the negroes.

**9. New Jersey.**<sup>6</sup>—In 1702 the proprietors of both the Jerseys surrendered the powers of government to the crown, and the two provinces were united, and placed under the same governor with New York, but having a separate legislative assembly. In 1738 New Jersey became entirely **1738.** distinct from New York, with **Lewis Morris** as governor.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 50, 51.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 46-50.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 52-57.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 57, ¶ 4.

<sup>5</sup> The name is wrongly given in the once well-known ballad,—

“My name was *Robert Kidd*, as I sailed, as I sailed.”

<sup>6</sup> See pp. 57, 58.

QUESTIONS.—How many confessed themselves witches? At length what happened? 6. What is said of Rhode Island and Connecticut? 7. Give an account of the administration and fate of Leisler. What can you tell of William Kidd? 8. Give an account of the negro plot in New York. 9. What happened to the Jerseys in 1702? What in 1738?

**10. Pennsylvania.**<sup>1</sup>—After William and Mary became sovereigns of England, Penn's loyalty being suspected, the government of his province was taken from him and given to the governor of New York; but in 1694, the charges of disloyalty having been disproved, he resumed his authority.

**11. Returning to Pennsylvania,** he found the people clamorous for greater political privileges, and granted them, in 1701, a **more liberal charter**,<sup>2</sup> under which the colony prospered till the American Revolution, when the Pennsylvanians took the government into their own hands, and purchased of Penn's heirs the proprietary claims.<sup>3</sup>

**12. Delaware**<sup>4</sup> was permitted, in 1702, to secede from Pennsylvania, so far as to have a separate legislative assembly;  
**1702.** but the same governors presided over both colonies until the Revolution, when Delaware became an independent state.

**13. Maryland**,<sup>5</sup> in 1715, was restored to the heir of Lord Baltimore, and remained a proprietary province until  
**1715.** the Revolution, when the people assumed the government, and confiscated the rights of the proprietor.

**14. Virginia**<sup>6</sup> enjoyed a steady growth during this period, and though among the foremost in its turbulent scenes, there is nothing in her history that needs a separate narrative here.

**15. North Carolina and South Carolina.**<sup>7</sup>—The infamous Sothel, banished from the northern colony,<sup>8</sup> appeared in South Carolina, and assumed the government. The people, after enduring his oppression about two years, drove him from the colony. Philip Ludwell and John Archdale stand preëminent among the early governors of the Carolinas. They restored order to the province, and immigration was encouraged by the liberal policy of the proprietors. Huguenots and Quakers here found a home; and here too settled, in 1710, many Swiss and Germans, the latter driven from their homes on the Rhine by religious persecutions.

In 1729 the two Carolinas, which had hitherto been considered as one province, were separated, and the proprietors having ceded to the crown their rights of government and seven eighths of the soil, North Carolina and South Carolina became distinct royal provinces. See pp. 83–4, ¶¶ 2, 5.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 61–64.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 64, ¶ 6.

<sup>3</sup> Penn died in England in 1718.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 58, 59.

<sup>5</sup> See pp. 59–61.

<sup>6</sup> See pp. 29–35.

<sup>7</sup> See pp. 64–67.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 66, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—10. Why was Penn deprived of his government? To whom was it given? When did Penn resume his authority? 11. What did he grant the people of his province? What did the Pennsylvanians do at the time of the Revolution? 12. When and to what extent did Delaware separate from Pennsylvania? What of Delaware at the time of the Revolution? 13. When was Maryland restored to the heir of Baltimore? What of Maryland at the time of the Revolution? 14. What is said of Virginia? 15. What is said of Sothel? Of Ludwell and Archdale? What of Huguenots and Quakers? Of Swiss and Germans?—When did the Carolinas become distinct royal provinces?

**II. THE NEW COLONY, GEORGIA.**<sup>1</sup>—1. To James Oglethorpe, an Englishman, greatly distinguished for his philanthropy, and eminent both as a soldier and as a civilian, belongs the honor of founding in America a refuge for the poor of his own country, and the persecuted of all nations. In 1732 George II. granted to him and associates, "in trust for the poor," the territory between the Savannah and the Altamaha.<sup>2</sup> This territory was named *Georgia*, from the king.

2. The same year thirty-five families, consisting of about one hundred and twenty-five persons, embarked from England under Oglethorpe. They landed in February, 1733, **1733.** and began to build the town of **Savannah**, on a high bluff near the mouth of the river of the same name. The **Indians** received the strangers with great cordiality. Oglethorpe early arranged a treaty with the assembled chiefs<sup>3</sup> of the **Creeks**,<sup>4</sup> and made satisfactory bargains with them for land.

3. After ten years of disinterested effort in behalf of Georgia, during which time he visited England twice to bring over emigrants and soldiers, Oglethorpe left his colony to return to it no more. He left it in a state of tranquillity; but it had never flourished. A party of Scotch Highlanders, who settled **Darien** (1736), and a company of German Lutherans, formed thriving communities, but most of the colonists were poor and inefficient; none, at first, were permitted to gain a free title to the land they cultivated.

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> This region had been included in the Carolina patent, but the proprietors had surrendered their interests to the crown. See p. 64, ¶ 1, and p. 78, ¶ 15.

<sup>3</sup> Tomochichi, one of the chiefs, presented to Oglethorpe a buffalo's skin, painted on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle. "The eagle," said he, "signifies swiftness; and the buffalo, strength. The English are as swift as a bird, and as strong as a beast; since, like the first, they fly over the vast seas, and, like the second, nothing can withstand them. The feathers of the eagle are soft, and signify love; the buffalo's skin is warm, and signifies protection; therefore love and protect our families."

<sup>4</sup> See p. 22, note (IV., 3).

**QUESTIONS.**—1. What is said of James Oglethorpe? What grant of land was made to him and associates? When and by whom? Name of the grant? 2. Give an account of the founding of Savannah. What is said of the Indians? Of the treaty with them? 3. What more is said of Oglethorpe? How did he leave his colony? What is said of some Scotch Highlanders and German Lutherans? What of most of the colonists?



James Oglethorpe.

The trustees, wearied with the complaints of the colonists, **1752.** surrendered their charter to the crown in 1752, and Georgia became a royal province. See p. 85, Chap. IV.

**III. FRENCH AND SPANISH SETTLEMENTS.—1.** The French, during this period, were taking possession of the immense regions they had explored.<sup>1</sup>

**Lemoine d'Iberville**, with about two hundred French colonists, made the first European settlement in the present State of Mississippi, at **Biloxi**, in 1699. Three years afterwards, he transferred most of the colonists to found **Mobile**. In 1712 the whole valley of the Mississippi, claimed by France as Louisiana,<sup>2</sup> was leased, for a term of years, to **Anthony Crozat**, a wealthy French merchant, on condition that he should bring into the country a stipulated number of immigrants. Under the auspices of Crozat was built, in 1716, Fort Rosalie, **1716.** the beginning of the present city of **Natchez**. Crozat relinquished his lease the next year, and the country was for fifteen years under the direction of the **Mississippi Company**, which the famous **John Law** had organized in France. **Bienville**, the governor **1718.** appointed by this company, founded **New Orleans** in 1718.

**2.** Near Fort Rosalie was the principal seat of the **Natchez**.<sup>3</sup> The French demanded that these Indians should surrender the site of their village to them for plantations. Incensed at this arrogant demand, and urged on by the **Chickasaws**,<sup>4</sup> who were hostile to the French, **1729.** the Natchez, in 1729, fell upon the settlement at the fort, put the men to death, and made prisoners of the women and children. In retaliation for this massacre, a French force, the next year, nearly exterminated this proud tribe. Two attempts, both of which were signal failures, were made, a few years after, to subdue the hostile Chickasaws.

**3.** Before the last intercolonial war,<sup>5</sup> the French had constructed, between Montreal and New Orleans, a chain of forts, more than sixty in number.

The most important of these were **Detroit**, built in 1701, **Niagara**, in 1726, and **Crown Point**, in 1731. Other forts were built after the beginning of the difficulties that led to that war.<sup>6</sup>

**4. Spain**,<sup>6</sup> claiming the whole coast of the Gulf of Mexico, and jealous of the efforts of France to colonize the country at the mouth of the Mississippi, erected a fort at **Pensacola**, in Florida, as early as 1696, perhaps earlier, and established military posts in **Texas**.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 67, Chap. XII.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 87, Chap. VI.

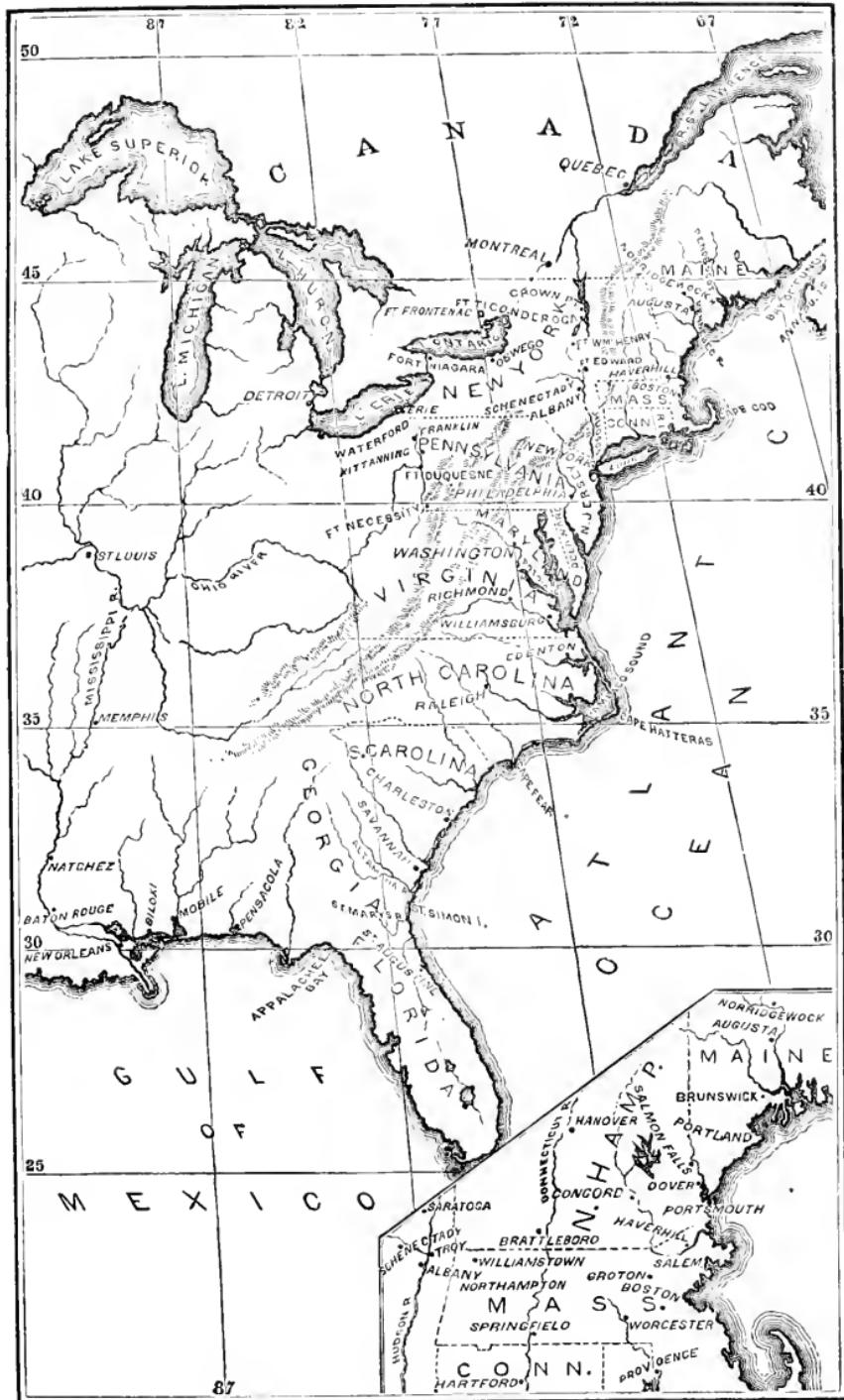
<sup>2</sup> See p. 23, note (VII.).

<sup>5</sup> See p. 88, ¶¶ 3, 6.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 22, note (IV., 5).

<sup>6</sup> See p. 68, ¶¶ 1, 2.

QUESTIONS.—When and why did Georgia become a royal province? 1. What is said of the French during this period?—Of the founding of Biloxi? Of Mobile? To whom was Louisiana leased? On what conditions? When and what was the beginning of Natchez? When and by whom was New Orleans founded? 2. Tell the story of the war with the Natchez. 3. Before the last intercolonial war what had the French constructed?—What were the most important of these? 4. What is said of Spain in Florida and Texas?



## CHAPTER II.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR.<sup>1</sup>

**1.** WHEN James II. was driven from the throne of England,<sup>2</sup> he fled for protection to Louis XIV., king of France, who 1689. espoused his cause. This kindled between the two countries, in 1689, the flames of a war, known as *King William's War*, which extended to their colonies in America. Both parties were aided by the Indians. Those of Canada and Maine, and the tribes to the east of Maine, joined the French; the Five Nations<sup>3</sup> assisted the English.

**2.** At the opening of the war, in July, Dover, in New Hampshire, was surprised. The aged Major Waldron was slain, with twenty of his garrison, and twenty-nine captives were taken to Canada. The next winter a party consisting of more than a hundred French and Indians fell upon 1690. Schenectady, in New York, and burned it. The assault was made in the dead of the night. Men and women were dragged from their beds, and, with their sleeping infants, remorselessly murdered. Sixty persons perished in the massacre; nearly half as many were taken prisoners; while the rest of the inhabitants, half naked, fled through the deep snow to Albany. In the spring, Salmon Falls, in New Hampshire, and Casco,<sup>4</sup> in Maine, experienced a fate similar to that of Schenectady.

**3.** Roused by these atrocities, the colony of Massachusetts resolved 1690. to attack the enemy in turn. Accordingly, a naval expedition, under Sir William Phipps,<sup>5</sup> sailed for the reduction of Port Royal,<sup>6</sup> in Nova Scotia, and speedily effected its object. The same year the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York united in an attempt to conquer Canada. A land force, under a son of Governor Winthrop,<sup>7</sup> of Connecticut, was sent against Montreal, and a fleet, under Sir William Phipps, against Quebec. Both these expeditions<sup>8</sup> were disastrous failures. During the war nearly all the settlements in New Hampshire and Maine were attacked, and many of them were abandoned. Near its close the Indians fell upon Haverhill, Massachusetts, and killed or carried away many of the inhabitants.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 44, ¶ 10.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 67, Chap. XII., ¶ 2.

<sup>4</sup> Now Fortland.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 76, ¶ 3.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 15, § III.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 47, ¶ 4.

<sup>8</sup> To defray her portion of the expenses incurred in these expeditions, Massachusetts issued bills of credit, or treasury notes—the first paper money ever issued in the English colonies.

<sup>9</sup> Among the captives was Mrs. Dustan, taken by the savages from a sick bed. This heroic woman, assisted by her nurse and by a boy who had been previously captured, planned an escape, which was successfully accomplished by killing, in the night, ten of the Indian family that guarded them, and making their toilsome way through the wilderness to Haverhill.

QUESTIONS.—1. Cause of King William's war? When did it break out? What is said of the Indians in this war? 2. Describe the attack on Dover. On Schenectady. What is said of Salmon Falls and Casco? 3. What did Massachusetts resolve upon? What expedition was fitted out? Result? Describe the attempt to conquer Canada. What of the settlements in New Hampshire and Maine? Of Haverhill?

4. In 1697 a **treaty**, which put an end to King William's war, was concluded at **Ryswick**.<sup>1</sup> By this **1697**. treaty each party was to have in America the same territorial claims as before the war.

## CHAPTER III.

### QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.<sup>2</sup>

#### I. BEGINNING OF THE WAR.—WAR IN THE SOUTH.—

1. The peace of Ryswick proved of short duration, and in 1702 England declared against France and Spain a war **1702.** which involved the American colonies of these countries. The principal causes of the war were, 1. On the death of James II., his son, James Francis Edward, *The Pretender*, was acknowledged by Louis XIV. as king of England, although this kingdom had settled the crown on Anne, second daughter of James II. 2. Louis had placed his grandson on the throne of Spain, in violation of an agreement, to which England was a party, for preserving the balance of power in Europe. This war, commonly known in America as *Queen Anne's War*, is called in Europe the *War of the Spanish Succession*.

2. **South Carolina** began hostilities in America by sending, in 1702, an expedition by land and water, for the reduction of the Spanish settlement of **St. Augustine**.<sup>3</sup> The town was taken without difficulty; but the garrison retired to the castle, which was strongly fortified. Soon two Spanish ships of war appeared off the harbor, and the Carolinians, abandoning their vessels and stores, made a hasty retreat. An expedition soon after undertaken by South Carolina against the **Indian allies of Spain**, residing on Appalachee Bay, was more successful. Their villages were burned and their lands laid waste. A large number of these Indians was removed to the banks of the Altamaha, and their country was given up to the Indian allies of the English.

3. In 1706 a French and Spanish squadron made an attack upon **Charleston**; but the inhabitants, led by their energetic governor, Nathaniel Johnson, and the brave Colonel William Rhett, captured one of the ships, took many prisoners, and, with slight loss to themselves, repelled the invaders.

<sup>1</sup> A town in the west of Holland.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 4.

QUESTIONS.—4. When did the war end? Where was a treaty concluded, and how did it affect territorial claims in America? 1. Against what countries did England declare war? When? How did this war affect the American colonies? What causes of the war are mentioned? Name of the war in America and in Europe? 2. When and by what colony were hostilities begun? Describe the expedition against St. Augustine. The expedition against the Indian allies of Spain. 3. Give an account of the attack upon Charleston.

4. During Queen Anne's war, but not as a part of it, the **Tuscaroras**,<sup>1</sup> in **North Carolina**, exasperated by the encroachments of the whites, fell upon the plantations along Pamlico Sound and the Roanoke with such fury, that in one night one hundred and thirty of the inhabitants were slain. South Carolina came to the aid of the northern colony, and brought with her her native allies from beyond the Savannah. With this assistance the Tuscaroras were conquered. Nearly a thousand of them were taken prisoners. The remainder of the tribe migrated north in 1713, and were admitted as the sixth nation of the Iroquois confederacy.<sup>2</sup> This war broke the power of the natives in North Carolina.

5. In 1715, after the close of the war, but before the bitterness engendered by it had died out, the **Yamassee**<sup>3</sup>s headed a confederation of all the tribes from Cape Fear to Florida, for the destruction of the whites in **South Carolina**. This confederation is by many supposed to have been instigated by the Spaniards of St. Augustine, with whom the Yamassee had recently entered into friendly relations. The savages desolated the frontier settlements, and advanced towards Charleston. So great was the danger, that the governor, Charles Craven, armed some of the slaves. Virginia and North Carolina contributed to assist the threatened province. The main body of the enemy was defeated and driven across the Savannah. The Yamassee took refuge with the Spaniards in Florida, and the other tribes soon made peace.

## II. THE WAR IN THE NORTH.—THE TREATY OF UTRECHT.

1. In the north the war took the same form as the preceding war. There were the same Indian alliances, except that the Five Nations,<sup>4</sup> always friendly to the English, were now under a pledge of neutrality to the French, and shielded New York from hostile incursions, leaving Massachusetts, Maine, and New Hampshire to bear the chief calamities of the war.<sup>4</sup> **Deerfield** and **Haverhill** were sacked and burned by Canadians and Indians, and many of the inhabitants slain. Even the neighborhood of Boston was threatened.

2. In 1707 an unsuccessful attempt was made to wrest **Port Royal**<sup>5</sup> from the French. Three years later its conquest was accomplished by a force from New England, in connection with a fleet from the mother country, and its name was changed to *Annapolis*, in honor of Queen Anne.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 22, note (I.).

<sup>2</sup> See p. 22, note (IV., I).

<sup>3</sup> See p. 82, ¶ 1.

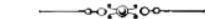
<sup>4</sup> Governor Joseph Dudley, of Massachusetts, endeavored to secure the neutrality of the Abenakis. See p. 22, note (II., I). "The sun," said their chiefs, "is not more distant from the earth than our thoughts from war." Yet, in six weeks from this time, these savages had begun their ruthless plunderings, and burnings, and murders all along the frontier, from the Kennebec to the country of the Mohawks. The now aged Captain Church (see p. 44, ¶ 7) offered his services to Governor Dudley, to punish the eastern Indians and the French for the savage cruelties perpetrated by them. Rewards were offered for Indian prisoners and for Indian scalps.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 15, § III., and p. 82, Chap. II., ¶¶ 3, 4.

QUESTIONS.—4. Give an account of the war with the Tuscaroras. Result to the Indians in North Carolina? 5. Give an account of the war with the Yamassee. Result to that tribe. To the other tribes? 1. What is said of the war in the north? How was New York shielded? Where did the chief calamities of the war fall? 2. When and how was the conquest of Port Royal accomplished? How was its name changed?

**3.** The next year England sent a fleet and an army for the **subjugation of Canada**. Additional forces were promptly raised by the colonies, New Jersey and New York joining New England in this enterprise. The assistance of the Five Nations was also secured. Through the ignorance and obstinacy of the commander of the fleet, Sir Hovenden Walker, eight transports were thrown upon the rocks in the St. Lawrence, and nearly a thousand men perished. A land force, already on its way to attack Montreal, hearing of this disaster, returned.

**4.** A **treaty** concluded at **Utrecht**,<sup>1</sup> in 1713, closed Queen Anne's war. By this treaty England obtained, in America, possession of Hudson's Bay, of Newfoundland, and of Acadia, since called Nova Scotia. The troubles with the eastern Indians<sup>2</sup> continued for several years.



## CHAPTER IV. THE SPANISH WAR.<sup>3</sup>

**1.** ENGLAND, refusing to accede to the measures Spain had taken to prevent contraband trade with her American colonies, declared war against that country in 1739. This war involved the southern English colonies in difficulties with the Spaniards in Florida. After continuing about five years, with no important result in America, it became merged in King George's war.<sup>4</sup>

**2.** General Oglethorpe<sup>5</sup> was ordered to invade the Spanish territory. In 1740, aided by a force from South Carolina, and by a large number of friendly Indians, he marched into Florida, and after taking two small Spanish forts, laid siege to **St. Augustine**.<sup>6</sup> But sickness and desertion weakened the invading army, and Oglethorpe was forced to raise the siege.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Holland, thirty-three miles south-east of Amsterdam.

<sup>2</sup> The English pushed their settlements into the territories of the Abenakis, with an utter disregard of the rights of the natives. So great had proved the influence of the French missionaries over the Indians in the preceding wars, that the English came to look upon their establishments as hostile encampments. Sebastian Rasles, a Jesuit priest, dwelt near the present village of Norridgewock, with his savage converts, whom he had been gathering around him for more than a quarter of a century. In 1722 the English sent an expedition to break up his mission; but the missionary, with his flock, escaped. In revenge, the settlements on the Kennebec were threatened, and Brunswick was burned by the Abenakis. Massachusetts now raised troops for a war against the eastern Indians, and offered a reward for each Indian scalp. A missionary village on the Penobscot, with its chapel, was laid in ashes, and in 1724 the mission at Norridgewock was surprised, the venerable priest slain, his chapel and village pillaged and destroyed. The overthrow of the mission accomplished, French influence was at an end, and in 1726 a peace was negotiated with the eastern Indians.

<sup>3</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 86.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 79.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 4.

QUESTIONS.—3. Describe the expedition for the subjugation of Canada. State the circumstances of its failure. 4. When did Queen Anne's war end, and where was the treaty concluded? What did England gain in America by this treaty? What of the troubles with the eastern Indians? 1. How were the southern English colonies involved in difficulties with the Spaniards in Florida? In what war did this war become merged? 2. Describe Oglethorpe's expedition against St. Augustine.

Two years afterwards, the **Spaniards invaded Georgia**. A fleet sailed from St. Augustine, and arrived at the Island of St. Simon, on the coast of Georgia. By means of a stratagem, Oglethorpe, with a much inferior force, repelled the attack, the country was relieved of its invaders, and Georgia and the Carolinas were saved from ruin.



## CHAPTER V.

### KING GEORGE'S WAR.<sup>1</sup>

**1. NEWS** of another war between England and France reached America in 1744. This war, commonly known in America as *King George's War*, originated in disputes regarding the succession to the throne of Austria, and hence in Europe was called the *War of the Austrian Succession*. In this war all the leading states of Europe were involved. But England had a particular quarrel with France, because Louis XV., king of France, had acknowledged Charles Edward, the *Young Pretender*, as the rightful sovereign of England, and had formed an alliance with Spain, then at war with that country.

The American colonies first learned the existence of a state of war through the surprise and capture by the French of a small English **garrison at Canso**, whence eighty prisoners were taken to Louisburg.

**2. The most important event of this war in America was the capture of Louisburg.**

This fortress was called, from its strength, the *Gibraltar of America*. All the New England colonies furnished troops for its capture, and New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania made appropriations in aid of the enterprise. In April, 1745, **1745.** the **expedition** sailed for Louisburg, under the command of General William Pepperell, of Maine. A month later Commodore Warren, with an English fleet, joined him at Canso. The combined forces, numbering more than four thousand troops, landed and laid siege to the fortress, which, on the 28th of June,<sup>2</sup> surrendered.

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> June 17, O. S.  
A powerful fleet was sent out by France the next year, under the Duke d'Anville, for the purpose of retaking Louisburg and desolating the English colonies; but a disastrous passage, shipwreck, and a fatal distemper, so reduced the armament that no attack was made.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the invasion of Georgia by the Spaniards. Chap. V. 1. When did news of another war between England and France reach America? Name of this war in America and in Europe? Origin of the war? What particular quarrel had England with France?—How did the American colonies first learn of the war? 2. What was the most important event of this war in America?—Give an account of the expedition against Louisburg.



Louisburg and Vicinity.

3. The central colonies, as in Queen Anne's war, were protected by the Iroquois confederacy, now the Six Nations. But the northern frontier suffered from hostile incursions.

A party of French and Indians from Crown Point captured a small garrison at **Williamstown**, Massachusetts, and ravaged the settlement at **Saratoga**, New York. To secure themselves against these attacks, the English colonies, as far south as Virginia, elated at the success at Louisburg, united in furnishing troops to act in concert with a British fleet for the **conquest of Canada**. But England failed to send the promised fleet, and the projected conquest fell through.

4. A treaty negotiated at **Aix-la-Chapelle**,<sup>1</sup> in 1748, terminated King George's war. By the treaty all conquests were to be mutually restored. The St. Mary's was fixed upon as the southern limit of Georgia; but the boundaries between the British and French provinces in America were left unsettled—the germ of another war.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.<sup>2</sup>

I. THE BEGINNING OF HOSTILITIES AND THE DECLARATION OF WAR.—1. We come now to the last and severest of the intercolonial struggles. The cause of this war, known as the *French and Indian War*, was the conflicting claims of France and England to territory in America. When war was actually declared, both these countries had formed alliances, which gave rise to the mighty struggle in Europe called the *Seven Years' War*.

2. Scarcely had the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle been signed, when the French and the English began to quarrel about the boundaries of **Acadia**.<sup>3</sup> The former would restrict that name to the present Nova Scotia; the latter claimed under it the whole region east of the Penobscot and south of the St. Lawrence. Collisions took place between the rival claimants.

3. But severer troubles were brewing on the **Ohio**. An association of speculators, called the **Ohio Company**, having obtained from George II., king of England, a grant of a vast tract of land on the Ohio River,

<sup>1</sup> A city of Rhenish Prussia.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 81.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 85, ¶ 4, and p. 54, ¶ 8, note 7.

QUESTIONS.—3. What is said of the central colonies? Of the northern frontier?—What is said of Williamstown and Saratoga? Why and by what colonies was the conquest of Canada projected? Why did the project fail? 4. When did King George's war end? Where was the treaty negotiated? Result in America of the treaty? Chap. VI. 1. What was the cause of the French and Indian war? What is said of this war in Europe? 2. What quarrel had the English and French about Acadia? What did the French consider the boundaries of Acadia? What the English? 3. How did difficulties originate on the Ohio?

prepared to establish settlements, and to open a trade with the Indians. The governor of Canada had early intelligence of the designs of this company, and, claiming the valley of the Ohio for France,<sup>1</sup> sent, in the spring of 1753, twelve hundred men from Montreal to occupy the disputed territory. They established posts at Erie, at Waterford, and at Franklin,<sup>2</sup> seized some of the English traders, and retained them as prisoners.

**4.** The company appealed for protection to Robert Dinwiddie, governor of Virginia, who resolved to send “a person of distinction to the commander of the French forces on the Ohio River, to know his reasons for invading the British dominions.” The person intrusted with this service was **George Washington**, who then, at the early age of twenty-one, entered upon that line of public service which resulted in the independence of his country. He set out from Williamsburg,<sup>3</sup> on his difficult and perilous journey, late in the autumn. He successfully accomplished his mission, and returned after an absence of nearly three months. The French commandant, St. Pierre, avowed the purpose of keeping possession of the Ohio, and of seizing every English trader found within the valley.

**5.** Early in the following spring, **Virginia** sent out a body of troops to protect the Ohio Company in erecting a fort at the junction of **1754.** the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers. Washington became the leader of the expedition. Pressing forward with his troops, he reached the Great Meadows, erected a fort, and named it **Fort Necessity**. Here learning of the approach of a small force of the French, he attacked them by surprise, killing and taking prisoners nearly the whole party. This contest may be said to mark the **opening of the war**.

**6.** Meanwhile the French drove away the English who were building the fort, themselves completed the work, and named it, in honor of the governor of New France, **Fort Duquesne**. From this fortress they marched against Washington, who, at Fort Necessity, with but four hundred men, was compelled to surrender, July 4, on condition, however, that he, with his whole command, should be permitted to return unmolested to Virginia.

**7. Albany Plan of Union.**—The British ministry, perceiving war to be inevitable, recommended the colonies to secure the friendship of the Six Nations, and to unite in some scheme of common defence. Accordingly, a convention of delegates from the New England colonies, and from New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, was held at Albany, on the day of the surrender of Fort Necessity, July 4, 1754. This convention adopted a plan of union, drawn up by Benjamin Franklin. But this plan was approved neither by the provincial assemblies nor by the king's council. By the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 67, Chap. XII., and p. 20, § II.

<sup>2</sup> Called by the French *Presqu' Isle*, *Le Bauf*, and *Venango*, respectively.

<sup>3</sup> Then the capital of Virginia.

---

QUESTIONS.—Where did the French establish posts? 4. To whom did the Ohio Company appeal for protection? What did Dinwiddie resolve to do? Whom did Dinwiddie send to the French commandant? Give an account of Washington's journey. What purpose did the French commandant avow? 5. What expedition did Virginia send out? When? Who became leader of the expedition? What fort did he build? Describe the opening of the war. 6. What is said of Fort Duquesne? Give an account of the attack upon Washington. 7. What can you tell of the Albany plan of union?

former it was rejected, because it gave too much power to the crown; by the latter, because it gave too much power to the people.<sup>1</sup>

**8. Events of 1755.**—Early in the spring of 1755, four expeditions were planned by the colonies; one against the French in Nova Scotia, a second against the French on the Ohio, a third against Crown Point,<sup>2</sup> and a fourth against Niagara<sup>3</sup> —the first a disgraced success, the others discreditable failures.

**9.** The expedition against **Nova Scotia** reached the Bay of Fundy in June. The French forts in that province were speedily reduced, and the whole region east of the Penobscot fell under British authority.

The submission of the province was followed by an act of the most heartless cruelty towards the French inhabitants of Acadia. Pretending to fear that the **Acadians** would aid the French in Canada, the English authorities assembled, by artifice, several thousands of these unsuspecting people, drove them on board ships, and scattered them among the colonies from New Hampshire to Georgia.<sup>4</sup>

**10.** The expedition against the **French on the Ohio** was conducted by General Braddock, a British officer, who, with Colonel Washington as one of his aids, began his march from Virginia for Fort Duquesne in June, with about two thousand men. Ignorant of Indian warfare, yet too self-confident to receive advice, Braddock urged forward his troops, and, when within a few miles of the fort, was surprised by a small party of French and Indians, and suffered a terrible defeat.

The **English regulars**, appalled at the yells of the savages, and at the sight of their officers and comrades falling around them by shots from an unseen foe, broke and fled, leaving their artillery, stores, baggage, everything, in the hands of the enemy. Braddock, brave as he was obstinate, was mortally wounded while vainly attempting to rally his men. While the “regulars broke and ran like sheep before the hounds,” the **provincial troops**, though held in great contempt by the English officers, fought bravely. Washington, cool and intrepid, and exposed to every danger, was one of the few officers that escaped unhurt.

<sup>1</sup> According to this plan, a grand council was to be formed, of members chosen by the provincial assemblies of the colonies. This council, with a governor-general appointed by the crown and having a negative voice, should be empowered to make general laws, to raise money in all the colonies for their defence, to call forth troops, regulate trade, and lay duties.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 90, and p. 80, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 80, ¶ 3.

<sup>4</sup> It is upon an incident connected with this act of tyranny that Longfellow's poem of *Evangeline* is founded. A few of the Acadians, escaping through the woods, formed a settlement on the banks of the St. John, in the northern part of Maine, where their descendants, in language, manners, and customs but little changed since their exile, still reside.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why was the plan rejected by the provincial assemblies? Why by the king's council? 8. What expeditions were planned in 1755? 9. Give an account of the expedition against Nova Scotia.—What is said of the treatment of the Acadians? 10. Give an account of the expedition against the French on the Ohio.—What is said of the English regulars? What of Braddock? Of the provincial troops? Of Washington?

**11.** The expedition against **Crown Point** was led by General William Johnson, of New York. Near the south end of Lake George he met and defeated a force of French and Indians, under Baron Dieskau. Satisfied with this success, Johnson<sup>1</sup> wasted the autumn in erecting Fort William Henry, near the battle-ground. Leaving a garrison in the fort, he disbanded his troops.

Johnson arrived at the southern extremity of Lake George in the latter part of August. While here, intelligence was received that a large body of the enemy had landed at South Bay, now Whitehall, and was marching towards Fort Edward, which had recently been erected on the Hudson. A detachment sent out by Johnson to intercept the French and save the fort, was surprised and routed with frightful slaughter. Dieskau pursued, and made a spirited attack upon the camp of Johnson. Here victory decided for the English; the enemy retired in great disorder, leaving Dieskau wounded and a prisoner.

**12.** Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, had command of the expedition against **Niagara**. He advanced as far as Lake Ontario; but the news of Braddock's defeat, the want of provisions, and the lateness of the season, caused the enterprise to be abandoned. Nothing was accomplished except the building of a new fort at Oswego, in which he left a garrison.

**II. UNFORTUNATE CAMPAIGNS OF 1756 AND 1757.—**

**1. Events of 1756.**—Thus far hostilities had been carried on without any formal proclamation of war; but in May, 1756, war was declared. Lord Loudoun, sent out as commander-in-chief of all the troops in the English colonies, attempted nothing of consequence.<sup>2</sup> While he was trifling away the summer, the Marquis de Montcalm, who had been appointed to the chief command of the French, invested the fort at **Oswego** with about five thousand French, Canadians, and Indians, and after a brief siege took it.

<sup>1</sup> For this victory Johnson was made a baronet of Great Britain. See p. 93, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> The plan of operations for 1756 had for its object the reduction of Crown Point, Fort Duquesne, and Niagara; but owing to the delay and inefficiency of those in command, not one of these objects was even attempted.

QUESTIONS.—11. Give an account of the expedition against Crown Point.—Describe this expedition more particularly. 12. Give an account of the expedition against Niagara. 1. When was war formally declared? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the troops in the English colonies? Who was the French commander-in-chief? What did he do?



Lake Champlain  
and Vicinity.

By this capture the French obtained command of Lakes Ontario and Erie, and of the country of the Six Nations. Sixteen hundred prisoners, and a great quantity of artillery and stores, fell into the hands of the enemy.

2. The only success of the colonial forces, during this campaign, was the chastisement of the **Indians**, who, since the defeat of Braddock, had been laying waste the frontier settlements of Pennsylvania, and murdering the inhabitants. Colonel John Armstrong, with about three hundred men, marched against **Kittanning**, their chief village, situated on the Alleghany, and, though meeting with an obstinate resistance, destroyed their town, and killed their principal chiefs.

3. **Events of 1757.**—The British Parliament made great preparations to prosecute the war in 1757. The reduction of **Louisburg**<sup>1</sup> was resolved upon. A large force was collected and placed under Loudoun. At Halifax he was joined by a powerful fleet and a land force from England. But his tardiness gave the French time to reënforce the fortress, and the design of attacking it was abandoned.

4. Weakness and indecision marked the councils of the English during this campaign. Not so with the French. Montcalm, finding the troops withdrawn for the reduction of Louisburg, seized the occasion to make a descent on **Fort William Henry**,<sup>2</sup> then garrisoned by two thousand men. With a force of about eight thousand French and Indians he laid siege to it, and at the expiration of six days it surrendered. General Webb, who lay at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles distant, with an army of four thousand men, offered no assistance to the besieged garrison. So gallant was the defence of Fort William Henry, that its brave commander, Colonel Monro, and his troops, were allowed an honorable capitulation, and promised a safe escort to Fort Edward. No sooner, however, had the troops left the protection of the fort, than the Indians attached to the French army, despite the efforts of Montcalm to prevent it, plundered them of their baggage, and murdered many of them in cold blood.

III. SUCCESSFUL PROSECUTION AND TERMINATION OF THE WAR.—1. In the summer of 1757, the celebrated **William Pitt**, afterwards Lord Chatham, was placed at the head of the administration, and breathed new soul into British councils. The tide of success now turned in favor of the English, who achieved victory after victory, until the whole of Canada surrendered to the British arms.

2. **Events of 1758.**—Three expeditions were proposed for this year; the first against Louisburg, the second against Ticonderoga,<sup>2</sup> and the third against Fort Duquesne.

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 86.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 90.'

QUESTIONS.—Result of this capture to the French? 2. What is said of the Indians in Pennsylvania? What chastisement was inflicted? 3. What can you tell of the attempt to reduce Louisburg in 1757? 4. What can you tell of Montcalm's descent on Fort William Henry? Of the defence of the fort? Of the Indians attached to the French army? III. 1. What is said of William Pitt? 2. What expeditions were proposed for 1758?

3. A large fleet, under Admiral Boscawen, conveying a powerful army, under General Amherst,<sup>1</sup> appeared before **Louisburg**<sup>2</sup> early in June. After a vigorous resistance, this fortress and the whole island of Cape Breton were surrendered, July 27, together with nearly six thousand prisoners, and large munitions of war. At the same time the English became masters of the Island of St. John,<sup>3</sup> and of the coast from the St. Lawrence to Nova Scotia.

4. The expedition against **Ticonderoga** was unsuccessful. It was conducted by the inefficient General Abercrombie, now commander-in-chief, Lord Loudoun having been recalled.

While the siege of Louisburg was going on, Abercrombie, having embarked at Fort William Henry with an army of fifteen thousand men, passed down Lake George, and landing near its outlet, marched against Ticonderoga, which was defended by a strong garrison, commanded by the brave and vigilant Montcalm. Abercrombie, without waiting for his artillery, rashly ordered an assault. After a bloody struggle, in which he lost, in killed and wounded, two thousand men, he made a precipitate retreat.

5. The disgrace of this repulse was in some degree retrieved by Colonel Bradstreet, who, with three thousand men from Abercrombie's command, mostly provincials, sailed down Lake Ontario and captured **Fort Frontenac**, together with several armed vessels on the lake.

6. The movement to dispossess the French of **Fort Duquesne** was successfully accomplished by General Forbes.

The army of seven thousand men advanced with difficulty, and when within fifty miles of the fort, it was decided by a council of war to abandon the enterprise. Just at this time prisoners were brought in, who revealed the weak state of the garrison. It was therefore determined to push forward the troops. Washington, with his Virginians, led the advance. As they approached the fort, the garrison deserted it; and late in November the English flag was planted over Fort Duquesne, which was then named **Fort Pitt**, in honor of the illustrious British minister. Pittsburgh still commemorates the name. Peace with the **western Indians** was one of the fruits of this victory, and this contributed to the fortunate issues of the next year.

<sup>1</sup> James Wolfe was second in command. Richard Montgomery was also a commissioned officer at this siege. Wolfe (see p. 94, note 1) and Montgomery (see p. 117, ¶ 14) both fell afterwards at Quebec—the former fighting for his king, the latter for colonial independence.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 86.

<sup>3</sup> Now Prince Edward Island.

QUESTIONS.—3. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg. What, with Louisburg, fell into the hands of the English? 4. What is said of the expedition against Ticonderoga?—Describe this expedition more particularly. 5. How was the disgrace of Abercrombie's repulse in some degree retrieved? 6. What is said of the expedition against Fort Duquesne?—Give a more particular account of this expedition and its result.

**7. Events of 1759.** — The campaign of 1759 had for its object the conquest of Canada. To this end it was determined that General Amherst should lead one army against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, General Prideaux another against Niagara, and General Wolfe a third against Quebec.

**8.** In July, on the approach of Amherst, **Ticonderoga** and **Crown Point** were evacuated. **Niagara**, after a siege of about three weeks, also fell into the hands of the English.<sup>1</sup>

**9.** Meanwhile, General Wolfe was prosecuting the most important enterprise of the campaign, the reduction of **Quebec**.



Embarking at Louisburg with eight thousand men, and escorted by a powerful fleet, he landed with his troops, in June, on the Island of Orleans, below Quebec. The able General Montcalm commanded in the city, and he had fortified it, as he supposed, against every approach. But along the St. Lawrence, above the city, rise precipitous, from the water's edge, cliffs to a great height, terminating in a broad plateau, known as the Plains of Abraham. Montcalm had not made this line secure, deeming it impossible for the English to scale the cliffs.

After several fruitless efforts to reduce the city, Wolfe resolved upon the bold expedient of attempting this seeming impossibility. Accordingly his troops were transported several miles up the river, and, after midnight, dropping silently down the current, they landed about a mile above the city, and began to ascend the precipice.

**10.** Early in the morning of September 13, Wolfe had drawn up his army on the Plains of Abraham, which commanded the city. Before noon he gained a victory which decided the fate of France in America. Five days after the battle **Quebec** capitulated.<sup>2</sup>

No sooner was the astonished Montcalm informed of the position of the English army, than he advanced to meet his foe. The opposing forces

<sup>1</sup> A few days before the surrender, the able and distinguished General Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a mortar. The command devolved on Sir William Johnson, who successfully put in execution the plans of his lamented predecessor.

<sup>2</sup> The next spring the French made an ineffectual attempt to recover Quebec.

QUESTIONS.—7. What was the object of the campaign of 1759? What expeditions were determined on? 8. What is said of the expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point? Against Niagara? 9. What was the most important enterprise of the campaign? — Who commanded in Quebec? Describe Wolfe's method of attack. 10. When and where was the decisive battle fought? Result of the victory? When did Quebec capitulate? — Give a more particular account of the battle.

were nearly equal in numbers, each having about five thousand men; but the French were far inferior in discipline. The English reserved their fire until their assailants were within forty yards, and then opened upon them with deadly effect. The French fought bravely; but their ranks became disordered, and, notwithstanding the repeated efforts of their officers to form them, and to renew the attack, they were so successfully pushed by the British bayonet, and hewn down by the Highland broadsword, that their discomfiture was complete. Both commanders fell mortally wounded.<sup>1</sup>

**11.** Early in September, 1760, General Amherst collected before **Montreal** eighteen thousand men, for the purpose of reducing this last stronghold of the French in Canada, **1760.** when the governor, perceiving that no effectual resistance could be made, surrendered. With Montreal all **Canada** fell into the power of the English.

**12.** **Spain** in 1761 began hostilities against England, and became the ally of France, when conquest had left to France **1761.** but little to protect in the new world. Spain gained nothing by this war. British cruisers cut off her colonial commerce, and a British armament, to which New England and New York contributed, captured Havana.<sup>2</sup>

**13.** **Peace of Paris.** — In 1763 a treaty was ratified at Paris, **1763.** that put an end to the American intercolonial wars. By this treaty, **Spain** ceded to England Florida<sup>3</sup> in exchange for Havana. **France** relinquished all her claims and possessions in North America, except two small islands;<sup>4</sup> to **England** she gave up all east of the Mississippi, except the island<sup>5</sup> and city of New Orleans; and to Spain, in grateful recompense for the losses which that nation had suffered during the war, this island and city, and all west of the Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> Wolfe was twice wounded early in the battle, but continued to encourage his men. At the moment of victory a third bullet pierced his breast. He was now obliged to be carried to the rear of the line. He died in the field, before the battle was ended, but lived long enough to know that the victory was his. While leaning on the shoulder of a lieutenant, he was seized with the agonies of death: at this moment was heard the shout, "They run! — they run!" The hero raised his drooping head, and eagerly asked, "Who run?" Being told that it was the French, he replied, "Then I die happy," and expired. Montcalm, fighting in front of his battalion, received a mortal wound about the same time. When carried to the city, the surgeon informed him he could survive but a few hours. "So much the better," he replied; "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." He died the next morning.

<sup>2</sup> The capital of Cuba.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 147, ¶ 38, and note 1.

<sup>4</sup> France retained a share in the North American fisheries, and the islands (St. Pierre and Miquelon) as a shelter for her fishermen.

<sup>5</sup> This island is the territory bounded by the Mississippi on the west and south, and on the east and north by Lakes Borgne, Pontchartrain, and Maurepas, and by the River Iberville, which, at full flood, takes water from the Mississippi a few miles below Baton Rouge, and carries it through these lakes to the Gulf of Mexico.

QUESTIONS.—11. Give an account of the fall of Montreal. 12. What nation became the ally of France, and when? How did Spain suffer in this war? 13. When and where was the treaty ratified that ended the war? By this treaty what exchange was made by England and Spain? What did France relinquish? What to England? What to Spain?

**14. The Cherokee War.**—During the war with the French and Indians in the north, the Cherokees<sup>1</sup> were firm friends of the English, and defended the frontiers south of the Potomac. In return they were treated with the basest ingratitude, and the Carolinas were made to feel, by a desolating invasion, the just indignation of the Indians. In 1761, after two years of strife, Colonel Grant marched into their country, defeated them, laid waste their villages, and compelled them to sue for peace.

**15. Pontiac's War.**—After the capture of Montreal, the English proceeded to take possession of the French posts in Canada and the west. The natives, friendly to the French and hostile to the English, saw their own doom in the stream of immigration that soon began to pour over the mountains. One bold spirit determined to make a stand against this unwelcome occupation of their soil, and succeeded in uniting many of the western tribes to drive out the English from beyond the Alleghanies. This was **Pontiac**, a chief of the Ottawas. He was so far successful, **1763.** that in the summer of 1763, when he was ready for action, within the space of two weeks most of the English posts west of Niagara fell into the hands of the savages. The garrisons were nearly all slain. English traders were murdered and scalped, and the whole western frontier was laid waste. A thousand families were driven from their homes.

Fort Pitt was saved by the timely arrival of assistance. Detroit escaped capture, having withstood for several months a siege conducted by Pontiac in person. The next year the Indians were intimidated by the active preparations made to subdue them, and the tribes began to fall away from the conspiracy, and make peace with the English. A few years afterwards, Pontiac was assassinated by an Indian.



## CHAPTER VII.

### CONDITION, AT THE CLOSE OF THIS PERIOD, OF WHAT IS NOW THE UNITED STATES.

**1.** France now had disappeared from the number of European claimants to the territory<sup>2</sup> of the United States. Spain had succeeded to the French claim west of the Mississippi, while east of that river all but the island and city of New Orleans had come under the power of England.<sup>3</sup>

**2.** Great Britain now possessed thirteen colonies settled along the Atlantic coast, soon to appear as a new nation. In

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 23, note (V.).

<sup>2</sup> See p. 68, ¶¶ 1-2.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 94, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—14. Give an account of the Cherokee war. 15. What induced Pontiac to make war on the English? For what purpose did he unite many western tribes? How far was Pontiac successful?—What is said of Fort Pitt? Of Detroit? Of the Indians the next year? Fate of Pontiac? 1. What is said of France at the close of this Period? Of Spain? Of England? 2. What is said of the colonies of Great Britain?

these colonies there prevailed **three forms of government**—charter, proprietary, and royal. Under all these forms the people had participated in legislation, and become accustomed to share in the administration of affairs.

The **charter governments** were those of Massachusetts (until 1692), Rhode Island, and Connecticut. In these colonies, under their charters, the government was committed to the freemen. The **proprietary governments** were those of Maryland, Pennsylvania (with Delaware), and at first New York, New Jersey, and the Carolinas. Here the proprietors were authorized, under certain restrictions, to establish governments. The **royal governments** were those of New Hampshire, Virginia, Georgia, and afterwards Massachusetts, New York, New Jersey, and the Carolinas. In these the appointment of the principal officers belonged to the crown.

**3. The population** of what is now the United States, east of the Mississippi, at the close of this Period, was not far from two millions. Twelve years later, at the breaking out of the Revolutionary War,<sup>1</sup> it is estimated to have been something less than three millions.

**4.** We observe, during this Period, a gradual assimilation of **manners** and character among the colonies. Although the first settlers were collected from various countries of Europe, and emigration from different nations still continued to pour in, yet the greater part of the people were now Americans by birth and education. The increase of wealth and intercourse with Europe had begun to introduce the tastes, fashions, and luxuries of the Old World.

**5. Religion.**—Religious intolerance had now greatly abated, persecution had ceased, and the rights of conscience were generally recognized.

During this Period America was the field of the labors of the eminent divines **John Wesley**, for some time missionary to the colonists and Indians of Georgia, afterwards the founder of the sect called Methodists, and **George Whitefield**, who travelled extensively in England and America as an evangelist. It was chiefly under Whitefield's labors that the remarkable religious excitement, known as the *Great Revival*, occurred in America, about the time of the beginning of the Spanish war.<sup>2</sup> Whitefield was buried in Newburyport, Massachusetts.

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. III.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 85, Chap. IV.

**QUESTIONS.**—What forms of government prevailed in these colonies? In what had the people participated, and to what had they become accustomed?—Name the charter governments. What of the government in these colonies? Name the proprietary governments. By whom were governments established in these colonies? Name the royal governments. What of the appointment of officers in these colonies? 3. What was the population in the present United States, east of the Mississippi, at the close of this Period? Twelve years later? 4. What can you tell of the manners of the colonists? 5. What is said of religious intolerance, persecution, and the rights of conscience?—What of Wesley and Whitefield? Of the Great Revival?

**6.** Notwithstanding the desolating wars, the interests of education advanced. Five colleges were established.<sup>1</sup> As yet, sermons constituted the principal literature of the colonies. The first newspaper printed in America was the *Boston News Letter*, issued in 1704. During this period flourished two men whose researches made them known and honored by the learned throughout the world — **Jonathan Edwards**,<sup>2</sup> an eminent metaphysician and divine, and **Benjamin Franklin**,<sup>3</sup> whose labors as a philosopher and a statesman continued through the next Period.

**7.** The trade of the colonies felt the restrictions imposed by the mother country. From the very beginning, laws were enacted by England, from time to time, designed to make the colonies depend on her for manufactured articles, to limit their trade, and check their spirit of enterprise.<sup>4</sup> But, in spite of these restrictions, **trade and commerce** steadily increased.

**8.** Notwithstanding the obstacles interposed by Great Britain to the progress of **arts and manufactures** in the colonies, the coarser kinds of cutlery, some coarse cloths (both linen and woollen), hats, paper, shoes, household furniture, farming utensils, were manufactured to a considerable extent; not enough, however, to supply the inhabitants. **Agriculture** was greatly improved and extended. Immense tracts of forests were cleared, and better modes of husbandry introduced. The colonies now raised a large surplus of food for export.

<sup>1</sup> In Virginia, William and Mary College, in 1692; in Connecticut, Yale College, in 1700; in New Jersey, the College of New Jersey, in 1746; in Pennsylvania, the University of Pennsylvania, in 1749; and in New York, Columbia College, in 1754.

<sup>2</sup> Born in Windsor, Connecticut, in 1703, died 1754.

<sup>3</sup> Born in Boston, Massachusetts, in 1706, died 1790. About the same time that Edwards gave to the public his best known work, the *Freedom of the Will* (1754), appeared, in London, Franklin's *Letters on Electricity* (1751-54), which challenged the admiration of the world.

<sup>4</sup> To carry out the Navigation Acts (see p. 34, ¶ 4) and bring the trade of the colonists under stricter control, the English government established, in 1696, *The Board of Trade and Plantations*, consisting of a president and seven members, known as Lords of Trade. Down to the period of the American Revolution this board exercised a general oversight of the colonies. New and more stringent provisions were added to the Acts of Trade, and *Courts of Admiralty* were established throughout the colonies (1697), with power to try revenue cases without a jury. To illustrate the selfish commercial policy of England, we may notice several laws of Parliament. In 1732 an act was passed prohibiting "the exportation of hats out of the plantations of America, and to restrain the number of apprentices taken by hat-makers." In 1733 Parliament passed what was called the "Molasses Act," laying duties on molasses, sugar, and rum imported from any but the British West India Islands. An act of 1750 prohibited "the erection of any mill for slitting or rolling of iron, or any plating forge to work with a tilt-hammer, or any furnace for making steel, in any of the colonies." In like manner was prohibited the exportation from one province to another of all wools and woollen goods. The colonies were also obliged, by the Acts of Trade (see p. 34, ¶ 4), to procure from England many articles which they could have purchased cheaper in other markets.

QUESTIONS.—6. What is said of education? Of literature? Of the first newspaper? Of Edwards and Franklin? 7. What can you tell of the trade and commerce of the colonies?

8. Of arts and manufactures? Of agriculture?

## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

- 1689. King William's War began, 82.
- 1692. Massachusetts received a new charter, extending her territory, but abridging her privileges, 76.  
The delusion known as the Salem Witchcraft prevailed in Massachusetts, 76.
- 1697. The treaty of Ryswick closed King William's War, 83.
- 1699. Biloxi was settled — the first permanent French settlement on the Gulf of Mexico, 80.
- 1702. Delaware obtained a separate legislative assembly, 78.  
Queen Anne's War began, 83.
- 1710. Port Royal was taken from the French, and named Annapolis, 84.
- 1713. The treaty of Utrecht closed Queen Anne's War, 85.
- 1718. New Orleans was founded by the French, 80.
- 1729. Carolina was divided into two distinct royal provinces — North Carolina and South Carolina, 78.
- 1733. The colonization of Georgia was begun at Savannah, by the English under Oglethorpe, 79.
- 1738. New Jersey became a distinct royal province, 77.
- 1739. The Spanish intercolonial war began, 85.
- 1741. New Hampshire was finally separated from Massachusetts, 76.
- 1744. King George's War began, 86.
- 1745. Louisburg was taken by the English, 86.
- 1748. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle closed King George's War, 87.
- 1752. Georgia became a royal province, 80.
- 1755. The whole country east of the Penobscot fell under British authority, 89.  
Defeat and death of Braddock, 89.
- 1756. The French and Indian War, which had been raging two years, was formally proclaimed, 90.
- 1757. Fort William Henry was captured by Montcalm, 91.
- 1759. Quebec, and the next year Montreal and all Canada, fell into the power of the English, 93, 94.
- 1763. The treaty of Paris put an end to the French and Indian War, 94.  
Pontiac's War broke out, 95.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

- 1689. Peter the Great became sole Czar of Russia at the age of seventeen.  
Died in 1725.
- William and Mary ascended the throne of England. William died in 1702.

1697. Charles XII. became King of Sweden at the age of fifteen. Killed in 1718, at the siege of Frederickshald.
1699. Peace of Carlowitz. From this dates the decline of the Ottoman Power.
1700. Death of Charles II. of Spain.
1701. Prussia erected into a kingdom.
1704. Gibraltar taken by the English.  
Marlborough won the decisive victory of Blenheim.
1707. Legislative union of England and Scotland.
1709. Battle of Pultowa. Here Peter the Great arrested Charles XII. in a career of victory that had begun to alarm all Europe.
1720. The South Sea Bubble burst.
1739. Nadir Shah (Kouli Khan) invaded India, and broke the power of the Great Mogul.
1740. Frederic II., the Great, became King of Prussia. Died in 1786.  
Maria Theresa succeeded to the hereditary states of her father, Charles VI. Five years afterward she was seated on the imperial throne, her husband, Francis of Lorraine, having been elected emperor. Maria died in 1780.
1745. Battle of Fontenoy, and defeat of the Anglo-Dutch army by Marshal Saxe.
1746. The cause of the Young Pretender ruined at Culloden.
1752. The New Style adopted in the British dominions, September 3 being called September 14. The Civil Year, which had previously begun March 25, was made to begin January 1, corresponding with the Historical Year.
1755. Great earthquake in Lisbon.
1757. The beginning of the British Empire in India. Clive defeated Surajah Dowlah, infamous for having confined prisoners in the Black Hole of Calcutta, and for other cruelties.  
Battle of Prague. Frederic II., the Great, won a brilliant but dearly-bought victory.
1760. George III. became king of England. Died in 1820.
1763. The Peace of Hubertsberg, with the Peace of Paris, closed the seven years' war in Europe.

Among the eminent men who closed their career during this Period were,

La Fontaine, . . . . .	1695.	Sir Christopher Wren, . . .	1723.
Racine, . . . . .	1699.	Newton, . . . . .	1727.
Dryden, . . . . .	1700.	Prince Eugene, . . . . .	1736.
Bossuet, . . . . .	1704.	Halley, . . . . .	1742.
Boileau, . . . . .	1711.	Pope, . . . . .	1744.
Fénelon, . . . . .	1715.	Swift, . . . . .	1745.
Leibnitz, . . . . .	1716.	John Sebastian Bach, . .	1750.
Addison, . . . . .	1719.	Montesquieu, . . . . .	1755.
Marlborough, . . . . .	1722.	Handel, . . . . .	1759.

**A N A L Y S I S.**

---

**PERIOD IV.—REVOLUTION.**

Chap. I.—Causes of the Revolution, p. 101.

Chap. II.—The War.

- I. From the Opening of the War to the Declaration of Independence, p. 111.
- II. From the Declaration of Independence to the Invasion of Georgia. — War chiefly in the North, p. 119.
- III. From the Invasion of Georgia to the Close of the War. — War chiefly in the South, p. 133.

Chap. III.—The Adoption of the Federal Constitution, p. 148.

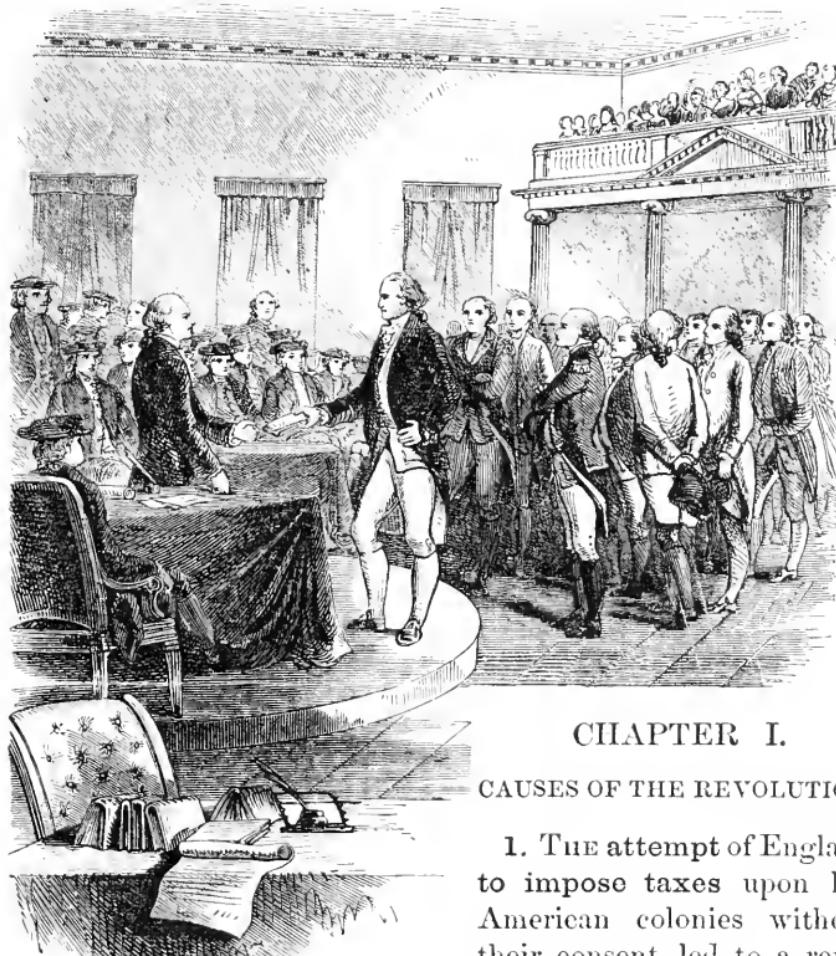
Chap. IV.—Condition, at the Close of this Period, of what is now the United States, p. 150.

Chronology, p. 154.

## PERIOD IV.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR THE REVOLUTION.

EXTENDING FROM THE PEACE OF PARIS, IN 1763, TO THE INAUGURATION OF GEORGE WASHINGTON AS THE FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES, IN 1789.



Washington resigning his Commission.

independence, and the establishment of a republic under the name of the *United States of America*.

2. The late war left **England** oppressed with a heavy debt,<sup>1</sup> and the ministry determined that the American colonies, in whose behalf the war had been in part undertaken, should be taxed to bear a portion of the

<sup>1</sup> At the Peace of Paris (1763) the English national debt amounted to nearly £129,000,000, or \$645,000,000. — *Knight's History of England*.

QUESTIONS.—1. What caused the American Revolution? In what did the Revolution result?  
2. How had the late war left England? What did the English ministry determine?

burden. The **colonies** were now suffering from their own losses in the war; and they owed but little to the mother country. They had been drawn into the previous bloody and expensive wars on England's account, and if she had espoused their cause in the last great struggle, the monopoly of colonial trade amply repaid her. Besides, this war had been connected with European complications, and Great Britain had willingly entered into it, in the hope of humbling her ancient rival, France. Excepting Georgia, all the colonies had been established without aid from the treasury of England, while that nation had imposed restraints upon their commerce and manufactures, and had exposed some of them to the peculation and tyranny of royal governors, after having wrested from them their charters. Yet at this time the colonists had no desire to renounce their allegiance to England. Nor had they ceased to cherish sentiments of filial regard towards the mother country, and to speak of that country under the endearing appellation of home.<sup>1</sup>

**3.** scarcely had the ratification of peace given to the colonists promise of a season of prosperous rest, when the British Parliament (in 1764), at the recommendation of George Grenville, then prime minister, first formally declared its intention of raising a revenue from **America**; and, at the same time, imposed duties upon certain colonial imports.

**4.** The next year this declaration was followed up by **1765.** the passage of the **Stamp Act**, which ordained that upon

<sup>1</sup> Yet the Americans were jealous of English interference with their rights. During the French and Indian War, the British ministry endeavored to enforce more rigorously the oppressive Navigation Acts (see p. 34, ¶ 4). The issuing of *Writs of Assistance* (in 1761), for this purpose, had excited great opposition. These writs permitted custom-house officers to search, and to call upon others to assist in searching, wherever they pleased, for goods which they suspected had been introduced into the provinces without the payment of duties. The people felt that any menial of the crown, influenced by mere suspicion, malice, or revenge, could, arming himself with one of these writs, invade the sanctity of their homes. Measures were taken to test the legality of the writs before the Superior Court in Massachusetts. At this trial *James Otis*, a distinguished lawyer of Boston, eloquently advocated the people's cause; and although writs were subsequently issued, they were seldom executed. The elder President Adams says of the orator, on this occasion, "Otis was a flame of fire. With a rapid torrent of impetuous eloquence, he hurried away all before him. American independence was then and there born. Every man of an immense crowded audience appeared to me to go away, as I did, ready to take arms against Writs of Assistance."

A similar spirit of resistance to English interference in colonial matters was manifested in what is known as the *Parsons' Cause*, in Virginia. Tobacco was the currency of the colony. Salaries were paid in it. To relieve the people, in years of scarcity, the legislature had passed a law permitting cash, at the rate of twopence a pound, to be paid instead of tobacco. The clergy resisted this law; and, through their influence, the king withheld his signature, and consequently the law was void. Yet, when the clergy claimed the difference between two-pence a pound and the enhanced price of tobacco, their claim was resisted, and they brought an action for damages in a Virginia court, held at Hanover Court-House. The question involved was really between the colonial legislature and the king. *Patrick Henry*, a young lawyer of twenty-seven, then without distinction, pleaded the cause of colonial right; and here he first exhibited that wonderful eloquence which made him the foremost orator of the Revolution. He uttered the same bold truths that, two years before, had made the royalists declare *Otis* "the great incendiary of New England." The jury awarded damages of one penny, to conform to the letter of the law — its spirit had fled before the eloquence of *Henry*.

QUESTIONS.—From what were the colonies now suffering? Into what had they been drawn on England's account? What would repay England for espousing the colonial cause in the late war? Why had she willingly entered into it? To what extent had England aided in establishing the colonies? What had been her course towards them? What was the feeling in the colonies towards the mother country at this time? 3. What did Parliament declare soon after the ratification of peace? 4. When was the Stamp Act passed? What did it ordain?

all business documents and newspapers stamps<sup>1</sup> should be fixed, which the colonists were obliged to purchase of the government. This act denied to those who violated it the privilege of a trial by the usual courts and judges of the colonies. When news of its passage reached America, general indignation spread through the country. The colonies had no representation in Parliament, and they maintained that *taxation and representation are inseparable*. Resolutions were passed against the act by most of the colonial assemblies.<sup>2</sup>

#### 5. The assembly of Virginia

was the first to meet. Resolutions, introduced into the House of Burgesses by Patrick Henry, the youngest member, evinced a settled purpose of resistance to unjust taxation. They were violently opposed, but were carried through by the bold and powerful eloquence of Henry. In the heat of the debate, he boldly asserted that the king had acted the part of a tyrant; and, alluding to the fate of other tyrants, he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his BRUTUS, Charles I. his CROMWELL, and George III.—" here pausing, till the cry of "Treason, treason!" from several parts of the house, had ended, he added—"may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it!" These resolutions went forth, and roused the people to a stern determination in defence of their rights.

#### 6. Before Massachusetts

had heard of the action of Virginia, her legislature, at the instance of the eloquent James Otis, had issued a



Patrick Henry.

<sup>1</sup> Stamps for different articles paid different prices. For a diploma or certificate of a college degree, two pounds were charged; for a license for selling wine, twenty shillings; for a common deed, one shilling and sixpence; for a newspaper, one halfpenny to a penny, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The Stamp Act passed Parliament by an overwhelming majority. Yet America found some friends in that body. When the bill was brought in, Charles Townshend, in advocating it, exclaimed, "These Americans, planted by our care, nourished by our indulgence, protected by our arms, until they have grown to a good degree of strength and opulence—will they now turn their backs upon us, and grudge to contribute their mite to relieve us from the heavy load which overwhelms us?" Colonel Barre caught the words, and, with a vehemence becoming a soldier, rose and said, "Planted by your care! No! your oppression planted them in America.... They nourished by your indulgence! They grew by your neglect.... They protected by your arms! They have nobly taken up arms in your defence." . . . The night after this act passed, Dr. Franklin, who was then in London, wrote to Charles Thomson, afterwards Secretary of the Continental Congress, "The sun of Liberty is set; the Americans must light the lamps of industry and economy."<sup>3</sup> To which Mr. Thomson answered, "Be assured we shall light torches quite of another sort;" thus predicting the convulsions which were to follow.

QUESTIONS.—What did it deny? Effect in America of the news of its passage? What did the colonists maintain? What was done by most of the colonial assemblies? 5. What resolutions were passed by the Virginia assembly? What is said of Patrick Henry in connection with these resolutions? 6. What course did Massachusetts take?

circular letter, inviting all the colonies to send delegates to a Congress which should meet in New York, to deliberate upon the common welfare. The legislature of **South Carolina**, led by the patriotic Christopher Gadsden, was the first to respond to the call of Massachusetts. "Massachusetts," said Gadsden, "sounded the trumpet, but to South Carolina it is owing that it was attended to."

7. In the midst of a constantly increasing excitement, delegates from nine colonies<sup>1</sup> assembled in New York, October 7, to consult for the general safety. This convention, known as the **Colonial Congress**,<sup>2</sup> drew up a *Declaration of Rights*, asserting that their own representatives alone had the right to tax them, and their own juries to try them. A petition to the king, George III., and memorials to Parliament, were also adopted.

8. The **popular excitement** continued to increase. Stamp officers were insulted, their property was destroyed, and they were compelled to resign.<sup>3</sup> The act was to go into operation on the first day of November; but on that day scarcely a sheet, of all the bales of stamps that had been sent to America, could have been found in the colonies. They had either been destroyed, secreted, or returned to England. The day was kept as a day of mourning. The bells were muffled and tolled. Vessels displayed their flags at half-mast. At first there was a general suspension of all business which required stamped paper, but in a short time it was determined to disregard the act, and affairs resumed their usual course.

9. About this time **associations**, under the title of *Sons of Liberty*, were formed in the colonies, to oppose the unjust and arbitrary measures of the British government. The principal *merchants* agreed to import no more goods from England until the odious act should be repealed. *Societies* were also instituted, the members of which resolved to forego all the luxuries of life, rather than obtain them from England.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The unrepresented colonies were North Carolina, Virginia, New Hampshire, and Georgia. The last two sent in their adherence to the action of the Congress; the first two, though prevented from sending delegates, were in sympathy with the movement.

<sup>2</sup> This was the first Congress purely *American* in its origin and object. A union of the colonies was first suggested by William Penn, in 1697. In 1722 Daniel Coxe, of New Jersey, made a similar suggestion; and, in 1754, Franklin, as has already been stated (p. 88, ¶ 7), proposed a plan of union, on the recommendation of the English ministry.

<sup>3</sup> In Boston the stamp officer was hanged in effigy, on an elm that ever after was known as the *Tree of Liberty*. It stood near the corner of Essex and Washington Streets.

<sup>4</sup> These societies included both sexes. The members denied themselves the use of all foreign articles of clothing; carding, spinning, and weaving became the daily employment of women of fashion; sheep were forbidden to be used as food, lest there should not be found a sufficient supply of wool. To be dressed in a suit of homespun was a sure passport to popular favor.

QUESTIONS.—What course did South Carolina take? 7. When, where, and for what purpose did the Colonial Congress assemble? How many colonies were represented? What did this Congress draw up? What adopt? 8. What is said of popular excitement? Of stamp officers? Of the day when the Stamp Act was to go into operation? What effect had the Stamp Act on business in the colonies? 9. What is said of the Sons of Liberty? To what did the principal merchants agree? What societies were instituted?

10. Alarmed at these vigorous measures, **British merchants and manufacturers** soon began to feel the necessity of uniting with the colonies in petitioning Parliament for a repeal of the obnoxious law. Fortunately for the interests of both the colonies and the mother country, a change in the administration of England took place about this time. To the new ministry it was obvious that measures must be taken either to repeal the odious statute, or compel America to submit by force of arms. **Mr. Pitt** and **Edmund Burke** were among the foremost advocates of repeal, which was at length **1766.** carried (1766), but only by accompanying the repealing act by a declaratory act, asserting the right of Parliament "to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever."

11. The joy of the colonies at the repeal of the Stamp Act was unbounded. They manifested, in various ways, their gratitude to Pitt and others, who, in Parliament, had advocated the cause of America. The declaratory act, asserting the supremacy of Parliament, was thought to be a mere reservation to save the pride of parliamentary authority, and it gave but little uneasiness. The old feelings of filial attachment to England revived, and commercial intercourse was speedily resumed.<sup>1</sup>

Before the passage of the act the colonies had been disposed to make a distinction between duties on imports, or **external taxation**, and **internal taxation**, such as was imposed by the Stamp Act; and, though levying duties on imports had been regarded, like all restrictions upon trade, as an oppressive exercise of authority, yet it had led to no outbreak.

12. The discussions growing out of the Stamp Act had modified and defined colonial opinions on the **authority of Parliament**, and the colonies were now ready to deny the right of that body to tax them in any form, or even to legislate for them. *No representation, no taxation*, had grown into the cry, *No representation, no legislation*.

13. The year the Stamp Act passed, Parliament required the colonies to furnish quarters and supplies to British troops

<sup>1</sup> Scarcely less lively was the feeling of satisfaction among the friends of America in London. Regarding Mr. Pitt as chiefly instrumental in the repeal, they crowded about the door of the House of Commons to receive him; and, in the language of Burke, "They jumped upon him like children on a long-absent father. They clung to him as captives about their redeemer. All England joined in his applause." London warehouses were illuminated, and flags were displayed from the shipping in the Thames.

QUESTIONS.—10. What effect did these measures have? What change took place in England about this time? What was obvious to the new administration? When was the Stamp Act repealed? By what was the repeal accompanied? 11. Effect in the colonies of the repeal of the Stamp Act?—What distinction in taxes had the colonies been disposed to make? 12. What change of colonial opinion had taken place in regard to the authority of Parliament? 13. What requisition did Parliament make on the colonies?

sent amongst them. New York refused to comply with this **1767.** requisition. In 1767 the enemies of America, led by

Charles Townshend, a member of the British ministry, secured the passage of an act imposing a **tax on tea** and several other imports; a second act creating a **board of revenue commissioners** for America; and a third, suspending the legislative power of the **New York assembly** until it should furnish the king's troops in that colony with supplies.

**14.** These three acts again excited universal alarm in America, and the same strong opposition was exhibited as had prevailed against the Stamp Act. Non-importation associations

were again formed. **Massachusetts**, through her assembly, issued a circular letter, draughted by that sterling patriot, Samuel Adams, calling upon her sister colonies to unite in obtaining a redress of grievances. In response, nearly every colonial legislature denied the right of Parliament to legislate for the colonies.

The British ministry, highly incensed at this step of Massachusetts, demanded that the call be rescinded; but the assembly refused to rescind.

**15.** Soon after the revenue commissioners arrived in Boston, they directed that **John Hancock's sloop "Liberty"** should be seized for a violation of the new revenue laws. A mob collected as soon as this seizure became known, assaulted the custom-house officers, broke the windows in their houses, and dragged the collector's pleasure-boat to Boston Common, and burned it. The commissioners fled for refuge to Castle William (now Fort Independence), in Boston Harbor.

**16.** The public excitement was increased by the **arrival at Boston**, in 1768, of two regiments of troops, sent to assist the magistrates in the preservation of peace, and the custom-house officers in the execution of their duties.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did New York treat the requisition? What three acts were passed in 1767, and under whose lead? 14. Effect in America of these acts? What did Massachusetts do? What response was made by the other colonies? 15. What is said of the seizure of the sloop "Liberty"? Consequences? 16. When and for what purpose were British troops sent to Boston?



Samuel Adams.

The troops landed and marched, with offensive parade, into the town. The selectmen having refused to provide quarters, the State House, by order of the governor, was opened for the reception of the soldiers. Everything was calculated to excite the indignation of the citizens. Guards were placed at the doors of the State House, through which the council must pass, in going to their chamber. The Common was covered with tents. Soldiers were constantly marching and countermarching to relieve the guards. The sentinels challenged the inhabitants as they passed. Worship on the Sabbath was disturbed by the sound of the fife and drum.

**17.** The spirited conduct of Massachusetts having been particularly offensive, Parliament, in 1769, besought the king to give orders to the governor of that province to send such as might be guilty of treason to England for trial. 1769.

A measure more odious to the people of America, or more hostile to the British constitution, could not be named, than to tear a man from his home, to be tried by a jury of strangers. The assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina were dissolved by their governors for censuring this act of tyranny. The assembly of Massachusetts convened, but refusing to transact any business while the State House should be surrounded by an armed force, was adjourned by the governor to Cambridge. At this place it passed resolutions declaring the maintenance of a standing army in the colony, in time of peace, to be an infringement of the rights of the people, and soon after was prorogued by the governor for refusing to make appropriations of money desired by him.

**18.** The next year, Parliament, at the recommendation of Lord North, then prime minister, abolished all duties imposed by the act of 1767, except the duty on tea. 1770.

North supposed the colonists would not object to pay the small duty on tea, and designed, by retaining the tax on that article, to secure their assent to the principle of taxation. In this he altogether mistook them. It was not in regard to the amount of taxes that they were contending, but in regard to the right of taxation.

**19.** On the very day (March 5, 1770) that North brought forward in Parliament the measure just mentioned, an event occurred that produced great excitement in Massachusetts, and, indeed, throughout the colonies. An affray, known as the **Boston Massacre**,<sup>1</sup> took place between citizens of Boston and some of the king's soldiers, in which the citizens were fired upon, three of their number killed, and several wounded.

<sup>1</sup> The quarrel began some days before between a soldier and a citizen, in which the soldier was beaten. Late in the evening of March 5, the soldiers, while under arms, were insulted, and dared to fire. One of them, who had received a blow, fired at the aggressor; and a single discharge from six others succeeded. The town was instantly thrown into the greatest commotion; the bells were rung, and in a short time several thousands of the citizens had assembled.

QUESTIONS.—Give a more particular account of the arrival of the troops in Boston and of proceedings there. 17. What did Parliament beseech the king to do in 1769?—What is said of this measure? Of the assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina? Of the assembly of Massachusetts? 18. On the recommendation of Lord North what did Parliament do in 1770?—Why did North retain the tax on tea? 19. Give an account of the Boston Massacre.

**20.** In 1773, committees of correspondence and inquiry were appointed by most of the colonies, to keep up an interchange of opinions, and promote unity of sentiment.

A common origin, a common language, and common sufferings, had already established between the colonies a union of feeling and interest; and now, common dangers drew them together more closely.

**21.** About the same time Lord North arranged for teas to be shipped to America, so that, notwithstanding the tax upon them, they would be cheaper in the colonies than in England. This, thought North, would induce the Americans to abandon the principle for which they were contending, and pay the small duty of only threepence per pound. But this attempt to bribe the colonists only exasperated them the more. At Charleston, South Carolina, tea was landed, but stored in damp cellars, where it soon spoiled. The vessels which brought tea to Philadelphia and New York were obliged to return with their cargoes to England; and it was designed by the patriots of Boston to make a similar disposition of the cargoes at that place; but the governor refusing to permit the ships to leave 1773. the port, public meetings were held in Faneuil Hall, and it was determined that the tea should not be landed. At the close of one of these meetings (December 16), a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the vessels, and threw the tea, consisting of three hundred and forty-two chests, into the harbor. This is known as the *Boston Tea Party*.

**22.** Parliament, the next year, adopted measures of retaliation. The first of these, the *Boston Port Bill*,<sup>1</sup> prohibited

---

A bloody combat must have ensued, but for the promise of the governor that justice should be done in the morning. Captain Preston, who was in command, and the soldiers, were arrested and tried for murder. John Adams and Josiah Quincy, two of the most popular leaders, volunteered in their defence. The captain and six soldiers were acquitted; two were convicted of manslaughter, and sentenced to be burned in the hand in open court.

During the summer of 1772, another event occurred, which increased the bitterness of feeling between the Americans and the agents of royal authority in the colonies. This was the destruction of a British armed schooner, called the *Gaspee*, which had been stationed in Narraganset Bay, to assist in executing the revenue and trade laws. On the 9th of June, while chasing a sloop into Providence, the *Gaspee* ran upon a shoal, and remained fast. At night a number of armed men, from Providence and Bristol, made themselves masters of her, and set her on fire. A large reward was offered for the discovery of the perpetrators, but without success.

<sup>1</sup> The Port Bill deprived many of the people of Boston of their accustomed means of livelihood, and was productive of great suffering. Salem refused to profit by the ruin of her sister city; and the wharves of that town and of Marblehead were freely offered for the use of Boston merchants. The generous sympathy of the other colonies was awakened in behalf of Massachusetts. The House of Burgesses in Virginia ordered that the day on which the Port Bill was to go into effect should be observed as a day of fasting, humiliation, and prayer.

---

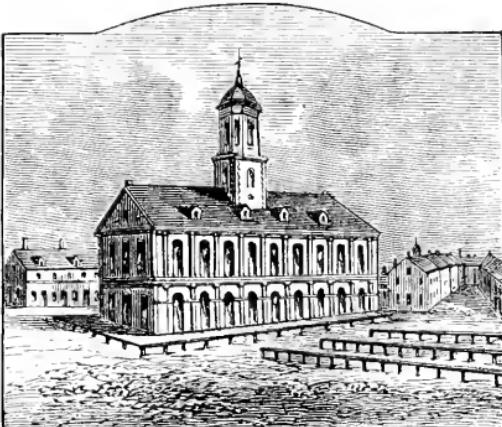
QUESTIONS.—20. When and for what purpose did the colonies appoint committees of correspondence?—What circumstances had tended to unite the colonies? What drew them more closely together? 21. What arrangement did Lord North make for shipping teas to America? What object had Lord North in view? What was done with the tea taken to Charleston? To Philadelphia and New York? To Boston? 22. What retaliatory measures did Parliament adopt?

all intercourse with Boston by water, and made Salem the port of entry and the seat of government; the second in effect subverted the charter of Massachusetts, by vesting in the king or the governor the appointment of all executive, military, and judicial officers; the third ordained that all persons who should be accused, in the province, of murder committed in support of the crown, might be sent to another colony or to England for trial.

**23.** To enforce these oppressive measures, General Thomas Gage, commander-in-chief of the royal troops in America, was also commissioned as governor of Massachusetts, to which province four more regiments were ordered.

**24.** So far was Massachusetts from being intimidated by these measures, that the **provincial assembly at Salem**, at its first meeting, adopted a resolution that it was expedient to call a general congress of the colonies, and appointed five delegates. It was also recommended that an agreement be entered into not to import or use articles subject to a parliamentary tax. This agreement was first adopted as "a solemn league and covenant," at a public meeting in Boston—an example soon after followed by most of the other towns in the province.

**25.** On the 5th of September, 1774, a general congress assembled in Carpenters' Hall,<sup>2</sup> Philadelphia. This is known as the **First Continental Congress**.<sup>3</sup> All the colonies were

Faneuil Hall of 1763.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Faneuil Hall was the usual place of meeting for the patriots of Boston during the troublous times that preceded the Revolutionary War, and hence its popular name the *Cradle of Liberty*. The original building was presented to the town of Boston by Peter Faneuil, in 1742, for a market and town hall. It was burned in 1761, and rebuilt in 1763. In 1805 it was enlarged to its present size, being made twice the width of the original building, and one story higher.

<sup>2</sup> A hall of meeting for the Society of House Carpenters of Philadelphia.

<sup>3</sup> The Congress of 1774 has justly been celebrated, both at home and abroad. The Earl of Chatham, in one of his brilliant speeches, remarked of it, "History, my lords, has been my favorite study; and, in the celebrated writings of antiquity have I often admired the patriotism of Greece and Rome; but, my lords, I must declare and avow, that, in the master states of the world, I know not the people or senate, who, in such a complication of difficult circumstances, can stand in preference to the delegates of America assembled in General Congress at Philadelphia." Among the members were Samuel Adams and John Adams, of Massachusetts; Philip Livingston and John Jay, of New York; John Dickinson, of Pennsylvania; George Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia; Christopher Gadsden and John Rutledge, of South Carolina.

QUESTIONS.—23. What was done to enforce these measures? 24. What resolution did the assembly of Massachusetts adopt, and what agreement recommend? 25. When and where did the First Continental Congress meet?

represented but Georgia, whose governor had prevented the election of delegates. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, 1774. was chosen president, and Charles Thomson, of Pennsylvania, secretary. This body resolved that the whole country ought to support Massachusetts in her opposition to the late acts of Parliament, agreed upon a second *Declaration of Rights*,<sup>1</sup> and recommended an *American Association*, pledged to non-intercourse with England. The Congress also voted another petition to the king,<sup>1</sup> addresses to the people of Great Britain and Canada, and made provision for a new Congress, to assemble in the ensuing May.

26. While the Continental Congress was in session, the assembly of Massachusetts convened, and resolved itself into a Provincial Congress, with John Hancock, a patriotic and wealthy merchant of Boston, as president. This Congress proceeded to organize a body of militia ready to take up 1774. arms at a minute's warning, and hence called *minutemen*. The general direction of affairs was given to a *Committee of Safety*. The other colonies followed the example of Massachusetts in preparing themselves for the conflict.

The great body of the people resisted the aggressions of England, and were called patriots, or **Whigs**; by the English, **rebels**. The few who supported the royal cause were called royalists, or, in the political language of the day, **Tories**.<sup>2</sup> The British soldiers, from their scarlet uniforms, received, in common speech, the name **redcoats**.

27. The king, of a nature arbitrary and stubborn, was bent on reducing his colonial subjects to submission by the sword. Parliament determined to make no concession to the colonies, and proceeded to other measures of oppression.<sup>3</sup>

Parliament, early in 1775, rejected a conciliatory bill introduced by Lord Chatham, and passed an act to restrain the trade of the New England provinces, and to forbid their fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. Restrictions were also soon imposed upon the middle and southern

<sup>1</sup> See p. 104, ¶ 7.

<sup>2</sup> The names Whig and Tory had long been used in England as party names, the former being applied to those who would limit the power of the crown, the latter to their opponents.

<sup>3</sup> In England public feeling was now generally against the colonies. Dr. Franklin wrote, "Every man in England seems to consider himself as a piece of a sovereign over America; seems to jostle himself into the throne with the king, and talks of 'our subjects in the colonies.'

QUESTIONS.—What colony was not represented? Name the president and secretary of this Congress. What did this body resolve? Agree upon? Recommend? Vote? For what make provision? 26. What is said of the assembly of Massachusetts? What did it proceed to do? What is said of the Committee of Safety? What course did the other colonies take?—What is said of Whigs and Tories? What were British soldiers commonly called? 27. What is said of the king? Of Parliament?—How did Parliament attempt to promote disunion in the colonies?

provinces, except New York, North Carolina, and Georgia. This policy, designed to promote disunion in America, did not accomplish its object.

All attempts at reconciliation having proved fruitless, the colonies were driven to the dread alternative of war.

---

## CHAPTER II. THE WAR.

I. FROM THE OPENING OF THE WAR TO THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.—1. Events of 1775.—The first blood of the Revolutionary War was shed at Lexington, Massachusetts, April 19, 1775. On the previous night General Gage sent Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn from Boston, with eight hundred troops, to destroy a quantity of military stores that had been collected by the Americans at Concord.

The British general had taken great precautions to prevent the intelligence of this expedition from reaching the country. But the patriots of Boston had long been suspicious of such a movement, and scarcely had the troops started, when, by preconcerted signals, the country was alarmed.

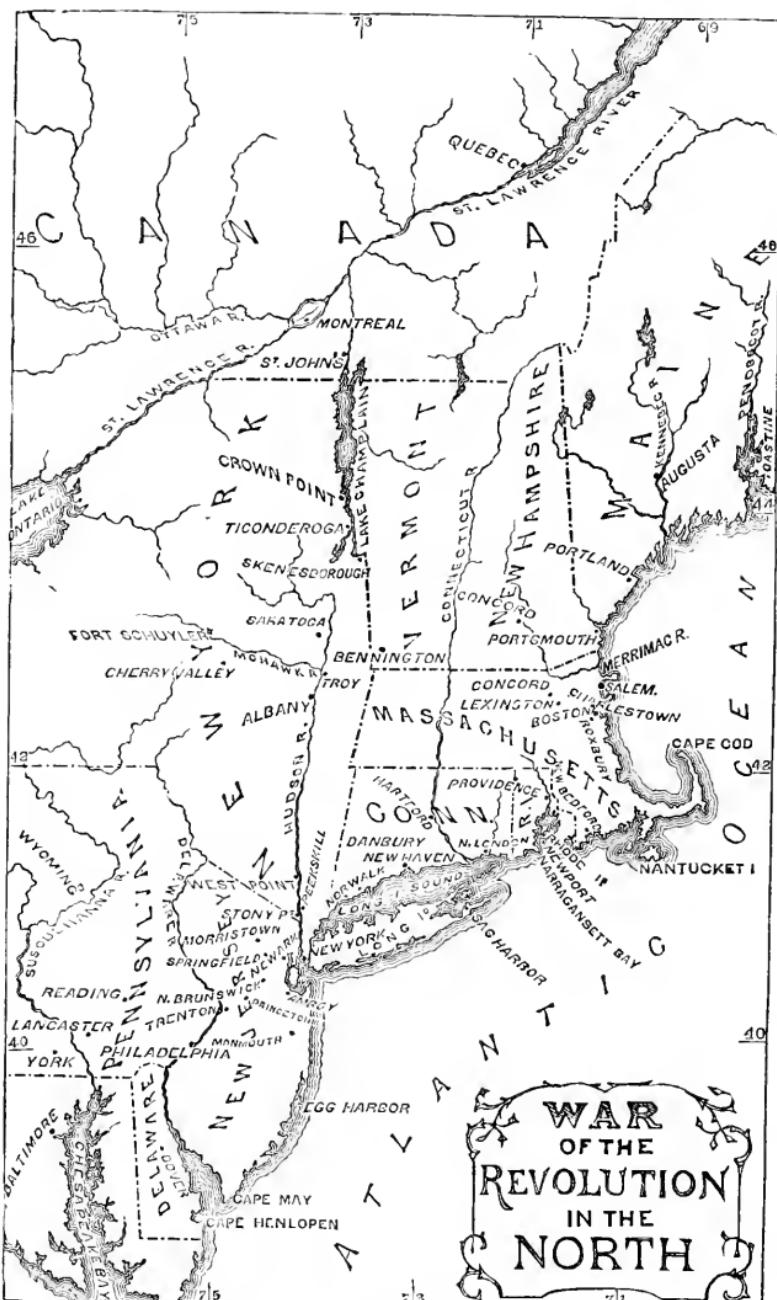
2. On reaching Lexington the next morning, a little before sunrise, the English found about seventy minute-men assembled in front of the meeting-house, under Captain John Parker. Major Pitcairn rode up to them, and shouted, “Disperse, you rebels! Throw down your arms, and disperse!” Not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his soldiers to fire. Eight of the minute-men were killed, and several wounded.

3. The British then proceeded to Concord, where they destroyed such of the stores as had not been removed, and, after a skirmish with the minute-men there assembled, began a hasty retreat towards Boston, pursued by the Americans, who, from behind trees, fences, and houses, kept up a continuous fire. The whole country was now in arms, and attacked the troops on every quarter.

This expedition cost the British, in killed, wounded, and missing, two hundred and seventy-three men. The loss of the Americans was eighty-eight. It is probable that not one of the eight hundred would have reached Boston, but for reinforcements that met them on their return.

---

QUESTIONS.—To what were the colonies now driven? 1. When and where was the first blood of the Revolutionary War shed? For what purpose were troops sent from Boston? Under whose command? 2. Give an account of the affair at Lexington. 3. What is said of the British at Concord? What is said of the retreat of the British?—Loss on each side?



Map of Boston and Vicinity, p. 114.

Map of New York and Vicinity, p. 120.

Map of Trenton and Vicinity, p. 122.

Map of Philadelphia and Vicinity, p. 126.



Map of Burgoyne's Expedition.  
Saratoga and Vicinity, p. 127.

10 \*

Map of Charleston and Vicinity, p. 137.  
Map of Yorktown and Vicinity, p. 144.



Boston and Vicinity.

evening of the 19th, "the king's governor and the king's army found themselves closely beleaguered in Boston." The veteran John Stark, with volunteers from New Hampshire, pushed forward to the scene of action. Israel Putnam, of Connecticut, without waiting for a change of clothing, left his farm-laborers in the field, and hastened to rouse the neighboring militia, in answer to the summons from Lexington. Nathanael Greene came with a thousand men from Rhode Island.

**5.** Although studious to avoid striking the first blow, the Americans were now ready to act on the offensive. Accordingly, early in May, volunteers, chiefly from Vermont, led by Ethan Allen and Seth Warner, accompanied by Benedict Arnold, of Connecticut, seized **Ticonderoga**,<sup>1</sup> and soon after **Crown Point**,<sup>2</sup> thus opening the way for the invasion of Canada.

**6.** Not long after these events, Gage received large **reënforcements** from England, under the distinguished Generals William Howe, Henry Clinton, and John Burgoyne, making the whole garrison in Boston about ten thousand men. Gage now prepared to act vigorously. He issued a **proclamation** offering pardon to all opposing the government, on condition that they should return to their allegiance, excepting John Hancock<sup>3</sup> and Samuel Adams,<sup>4</sup> who were to be reserved for hanging.

**7. Royal authority** terminated this year throughout the country, the king's governors, for the most part, abdicating their governments, and taking refuge on board English ships.

<sup>1</sup> At break of day Allen and his Green Mountain Boys, as the troops of Vermont were sometimes called, reached the fort, and rushed in at the gate. The commander was surprised in bed, and summoned to surrender. "By what authority?" asked he. "I demand it," said Allen, "in the name of the Great Jehovah, and of the Continental Congress." The summons was instantly obeyed, and the fort, with its valuable stores, was surrendered.

<sup>2</sup> See Map, p. 90.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 110, ¶ 26.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 106, ¶ 14.

QUESTIONS.—4. What was the effect of news of the affair at Lexington and Concord? What is said of the army which gathered about Boston?—What of Stark? Of Putnam? Of Greene? 5. What expedition was fitted out? The result? 6. What reënforcements did Gage receive? What proclamation did he issue? 7. What is said of royal authority, and the king's governors?

On the second night after the outrage at Lexington, Lord Dunmore, the royal governor of **Virginia**, seized a quantity of powder belonging to the colony, and conveyed it on board an armed vessel. The provincial militia, greatly exasperated, put themselves under the lead of Henry,<sup>1</sup> and compelled the governor to pay the full value of the powder. The cowardly Dunmore immediately issued a proclamation against "a certain Patrick Henry, and a number of deluded followers, who had put themselves in a posture of war;" and, not long afterwards, apprehensive of personal danger, fled on board a British man-of-war. On the very first day of the next year, he caused **Norfolk**, the largest and richest town in Virginia, to be bombarded and burned for refusing to furnish provisions to the king's forces.

**8. The Second Continental Congress** met at Philadelphia, May 10. This Congress sent a last petition<sup>2</sup> to the king, appointed a committee of secret correspondence with the nations of Europe, and assumed the authority of a general government of the colonies, under the style of the *United Colonies of America*. As military opposition to Great Britain was now resolved upon, Congress adopted the army before Boston as the *Continental Army*, and appointed **George Washington**<sup>3</sup> commander-in-chief of "the forces raised or to be raised in defence of American liberties." There were also appointed four major-generals and eight brigadier-generals.<sup>4</sup> Georgia was, for the first time, represented in the Continental Congress, at its next session, in September.

**9. On the 17th of June** was fought the **battle of Bunker Hill**,<sup>5</sup> in Charlestown, Massachusetts, in which the Americans, after having twice repulsed twice their number of the English, were compelled to retreat in consequence of the failure of their ammunition. This was the *first actual battle* of the war.

**10. To make the investment of Boston more complete**, the Committee of Safety<sup>6</sup> ordered Colonel William Prescott, with about a thousand men, to occupy, on the night before the battle, Bunker Hill. For some reason, Prescott advanced farther down the Peninsula of Charlestown, and began to fortify Breed's Hill, where the battle was actually fought. At dawn the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 103, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 110, ¶ 25.

<sup>3</sup> The honor of having suggested and advocated the choice of this illustrious man is justly ascribed to John Adams, of Massachusetts. On presenting their commission to Washington, Congress unanimously adopted the resolution "that they would maintain and assist him, and adhere to him, with their lives and fortunes, in the cause of American liberty."

<sup>4</sup> The major-generals were Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam. The brigadier-generals were Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathanael Greene.

<sup>5</sup> See Map, p. 114.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 110, ¶ 26.

QUESTIONS.—What of Dunmore in Virginia? Of the destruction of Norfolk? 8. When and where did the Second Continental Congress meet? What petition did it send? What committee appoint? What authority assume? What army adopt, and under what name? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What is said of Georgia? 9. What is said of the battle of Bunker Hill? 10. Give a more particular account of the battle.

English were astonished to discover that a redoubt had been thrown up by the Americans during the night, and began a cannonade upon them from Copp's Hill, in Boston, and from ships of war in the harbor. The Americans, however, urged on their defences, and during all the forenoon lost but a single man. Stark, early in the day, brought up his New Hampshire volunteers; and Putnam was present to inspire the patriot troops with his own indomitable courage. A little after noon, three thousand British, under command of Generals Howe and Pigot, crossed over in boats from Boston, and advanced upon the redoubt, firing as they ascended the hill. But the Americans reserved their fire until the enemy was within about ten rods, when a terrific discharge of musketry cut down whole ranks of the assailants. The British retreated in confusion.



Battle of Bunker Hill.

Rallied by their officers, they advanced again to the attack, and again were repulsed with heavy loss. Reënforced, they made a third charge upon the redoubt. But the Americans had now exhausted their scanty stock of ammunition, and being without bayonets, after having obstinately defended themselves for some time with the but-ends of their muskets, they retired up the peninsula.

11. To the Americans the **consequences of the battle** were those of a decided victory. They learned that their enemy was not invincible; the national pulse beat higher, and the arm of opposition was braced more firmly. At the same time the patriots were made to feel the importance of stricter discipline and greater preparations. The loss of the English was over a thousand; that of the Americans, not quite half as many. Among the Americans killed was the lamented General Joseph Warren, a distinguished patriot of Boston, and president of the Provincial

Congress of Massachusetts; among the English, Major Pitcairn, who first lighted the torch of war at Lexington. While the battle was raging the town of Charlestown was set on fire by order of General Gage.

**12. Washington** reached Cambridge,<sup>1</sup> the headquarters of the American army, July 2, and was received with joyful acclamations. His attention was immediately directed to organizing his undisciplined forces, and to a more vigorous prosecution of the siege of Boston.

**13.** While the commander-in-chief was thus employed, two expeditions were sent out for the invasion of Canada; one by way of Lake Champlain, under Generals Schuyler<sup>2</sup> and Montgomery, of New York; the other, by the Kennebec, under Colonel Arnold.<sup>3</sup> But the colonial forces gained no permanent foothold in Canada.

**14. Schuyler** falling sick, the command devolved on **Montgomery**.<sup>4</sup> St. John's<sup>5</sup> was taken by siege, and Montreal surrendered soon after without resistance. Montgomery then marched upon Quebec, and fell, on the last day of the year, while leading his forces to a desperate but unsuccessful assault upon that city. **Arnold** was despatched, with about one thousand men, from Cambridge, to penetrate Canada by way of the Kennebec and the wilderness. Two months of incessant toil and hardship brought him to the St. Lawrence, near Quebec, where he effected a junction with Montgomery, who took command. After the failure of the assault upon Quebec, and the fall of his chief, Arnold retired, with the remainder of the army, a few miles up the river, and encamped for the winter. The next year the Americans abandoned Canada.

**15.** English cruisers kept up a constant alarm along the New England coast. Falmouth, now **Portland**, then a town of five hundred houses, was burned (October 18), to punish the inhabitants for their spirited resistance to British authority.

**16. Events of 1776.** — Early in 1776 it was determined to dislodge the enemy from Boston. Accordingly, on the night of March 4, Washington sent a party to fortify Dorchester (now South Boston) Heights. By morning, intrenchments had been thrown up that completely commanded the town and harbor. General Howe,<sup>6</sup> who had succeeded General Gage,

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 114.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 115, ¶ 8, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 114, ¶ 5.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 92, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> While the siege of St. John's was going on, *Colonel Allen*, rash as he was brave, with but little more than a hundred men, penetrated to Montreal, and attacked that city, then garrisoned by a considerable force. Defeat was the penalty of this wild adventure, and Allen was sent to England a prisoner, in irons.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 114, ¶ 6.

QUESTIONS.—12. When did Washington reach Cambridge? How was he received? To what did he direct his attention? 13. What two expeditions were sent out? Result? 14. Give some particulars of these expeditions. 15. What is said of British cruisers? Of Portland? 16. What steps were taken to dislodge the enemy from Boston, and with what result?

perceiving his position to be no longer tenable, evacuated Boston, March 17. A detachment of Americans took **1776.** immediate possession, and on the next day Washington entered the town, to the great joy of the inhabitants.<sup>1</sup>

As the Americans entered the town, Howe's army, about eight thousand in number, with more than eleven hundred adherents to the royal cause, was sailing out of the harbor for Halifax, in one hundred and twenty vessels. The British were permitted to retire unmolested, with the tacit understanding that the town should not be destroyed.

**17.** Fearing lest the British fleet, on leaving Boston, should steer for **New York**, Washington sent detachments of troops, under General Putnam, to fortify and protect that city. The commander-in-chief soon followed, with the main body of his army. He placed a considerable force at Brooklyn, on Long Island, and stationed the remainder in the city itself. His whole force now was seventeen thousand men.

**18.** In the winter General Clinton had sailed from Boston with troops. Early in June, having been joined by a powerful squadron from England, under Sir Peter Parker, he appeared before **Charleston**,<sup>2</sup> South Carolina. The harbor was guarded by a small fort<sup>3</sup> on Sullivan's Island, in which was stationed a garrison of about four hundred men, under the brave Colonel William Moultrie. An attack, by sea and land, was made upon this fort, June 28, which resulted in the mortifying failure of the British.

While the American riflemen held the land force, under Clinton, in check, Moultrie, with but a tenth as many guns as were brought to bear upon him, so crippled the ships, that after a bombardment of several hours, Parker was obliged to retire, with heavy loss.

In a few days the British sailed for New York, and the southern colonies gained a respite from the calamities of war for two years and a half. See p. 133, § III.

<sup>1</sup> For eleven months had the citizens endured the insolence of a hostile force, and the hardships of a siege. Churches had been stripped of their pews, shops rifled of their goods, and houses pillaged. The Old South Church was turned into a riding-school, and Fanueil Hall into a play-house. Cold and hunger had been added to the other afflictions of the inhabitants.

<sup>2</sup> The contest in that quarter had already begun. Anticipating aid from England, the Tories of North Carolina had collected a large number of troops, under Macdonald. But on the 26th of February they were utterly routed by the patriots, at a place since called Moore's Creek, in honor of the patriot leader, Colonel Moore.

<sup>3</sup> This fort was afterwards named, in honor of its defender, Fort Moultrie. See Map, p. 137.

QUESTIONS.—When did the Americans take possession of the town?—What further is said of the departure of the British? 17. What steps did Washington now take to defend New York? How did he place his army? 18. Describe the attempt of the British to take Charleston. Result.—What did the British next do? What respite did the southern colonies gain?

**II. FROM THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE TO THE INVASION OF GEORGIA.—WAR CHIEFLY IN THE NORTH.—**

**1. Events of 1776 continued.**—So far the colonies had been struggling only for a redress of grievances. But the character of the war was now to be changed. England had replied to the petition to the king by continuing her measures of oppression, and sentiments of loyalty among the Americans had given place to a desire for independence.<sup>1</sup>

England declared the colonists rebels, and colonial ships lawful prizes. She determined to send to America twenty-five thousand more British soldiers, and seventeen thousand Hessians,<sup>2</sup> hired of petty German princes.



Old State House in Philadelphia.

**2.** In accordance with instructions from Virginia, Richard Henry Lee, early in June, introduced into Congress, then in session in the State House in Philadelphia, a resolution declaring, *That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States.* On July 4, 1776, a **Declaration of Independence**,<sup>3</sup> drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, was solemnly adopted by Congress, and the thirteen colonies became free and independent states. The new-born nation was named the *United States of America*.

As the news of this action of Congress spread through the country, it was everywhere greeted with the firing of cannon, the ringing of bells, and other demonstrations of public exultation.<sup>4</sup>

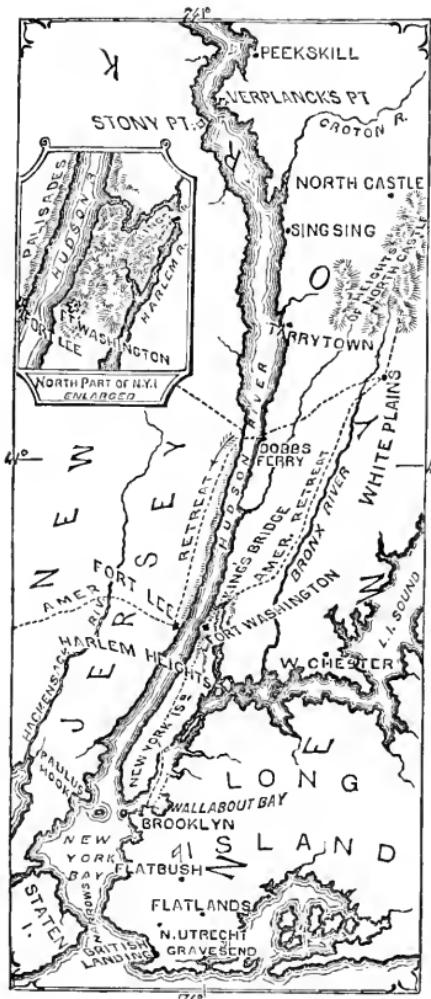
<sup>1</sup> A pamphlet, entitled *Common Sense*, published the early part of this year, by Thomas Paine, a recent emigrant from England, advocated, with great vigor, the necessity of a separation from the mother country, and exerted a powerful influence in preparing the popular mind for this change. "This pamphlet," says Dr. Rush, "burst upon the world with an effect that has rarely been produced by types and paper in any age or country."

<sup>2</sup> So called because most of them were obtained from the Landgrave of Hesse-Cassel.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 5. Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, were appointed a committee to draft a declaration, in accordance with the purport of Lee's resolution. More than a year before this, the people of *Mecklenburg County*, North Carolina, had declared themselves independent of England.

<sup>4</sup> By a singular coincidence, the bell on the Old State House, in Philadelphia, the first to peal forth the glad tidings of freedom, had upon it this inscription: "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof."

**QUESTIONS.**—1. For what had the colonies so far been contending? To what had American sentiments of loyalty given place?—What further measures of oppression did England adopt? 2. What resolution was introduced into Congress? By whom? For what is July 4, 1776, memorable? What name was given to the new-born nation?—How was the news greeted?



New York and Vicinity.

The loss of the Americans was about two thousand, more than half prisoners. Among the captured were Generals Sullivan and Stirling. The loss of the British did not much exceed four hundred.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 118, ¶ 18.

<sup>3</sup> Before beginning hostilities, the Howes attempted to open negotiations for the settlement of the difficulties between Great Britain and the colonies; first with Washington, and afterwards with Congress. But they did not recognize the official title of the commander-in-chief, nor the legal authority of Congress, and their proposals were not entertained. It was subsequently ascertained that their powers were altogether inadequate to the proposed object.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 126, ¶ 18.

QUESTIONS.—3. What general arrived in New York Harbor, and with what garrison? How was he reënforced?—What was the object of the British? How many troops had Howe, and how many had Washington to oppose him? 4. When was the battle of Long Island fought, and with what result?—Loss to each side?

**3.** Just before the Declaration was adopted, General Howe arrived in New York **1776**. Harbor, from Halifax, with the garrison he had taken from Boston. Soon after, he was joined by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, with reinforcements from England, and by the forces under Clinton from the south.<sup>1</sup>

Howe had, in all, a formidable army of twenty-four thousand veteran troops, besides a powerful fleet, and was supplied with all kinds of stores for both the land and sea service. The object of the British was to get possession of New York and the Hudson, and thus communicate with Canada, and separate the eastern from the western colonies.<sup>2</sup> To oppose this force Washington had about eight thousand men fit for duty; but, before active operations commenced, reinforcements had brought his army up to about nineteen thousand effective troops.

**4.** General Howe did not long remain inactive.<sup>3</sup> On the 27th of August he attacked and defeated the American troops, on Long Island, under Putnam.

5. After this defeat, Washington withdrew the remainder of the troops from Long Island, under cover of night and a dense fog, to New York, and soon after evacuated the city, and retired to **Harlem Heights**,<sup>1</sup> where he threw up fortifications.<sup>2</sup> The British landed on the eastern shore of New York Island,<sup>3</sup> September 15. The American commander, perceiving that the enemy designed to gain the rear of his camp, left a force of about three thousand men to defend Fort Washington, and abandoned the rest of the island. On the 28th of October he met the English at **White Plains**, where an indecisive engagement ensued. Washington, however, thought it prudent to fall back to the heights of North Castle. He soon discovered that the British intended to enter New Jersey; and, having left about four thousand troops at North Castle, under General Lee, and a force under General Heath, at Peekskill, to guard the Highlands of the Hudson, he crossed over into **New Jersey** with the main body of his army.

6. On the 16th of November, **Fort Washington**, after a spirited defence, was compelled to surrender to a large force of the enemy; and, four days afterwards, Lord Cornwallis having landed on the west bank of the Hudson, with six thousand British troops, **Fort Lee** was evacuated, the garrison joining Washington, who retreated to Newark. The retreat was continued through **New Jersey** from Newark to Brunswick, from Brunswick to Princeton, from Princeton to Trenton, and from Trenton to the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware.

The pursuit was urged with so much rapidity that the rear of the American army, while engaged in demolishing the bridges just crossed, was often within sight and shot of the van of the enemy, employed in building them up. This retreat was made under circumstances of the deepest depression and gloom. Washington's army was pursued by an insolent foe. The provincials, driven from Canada,<sup>4</sup> had been obliged to

<sup>1</sup> In the northern part of New York, or Manhattan Island.

<sup>2</sup> About the time that Washington took post at Harlem, it was deemed important to ascertain the state of the British army on Long Island. For this purpose Captain Nathan Hale, a young officer of liberal education and accomplished manners, volunteered his services. He entered the British army in disguise, and obtained the information desired; but while returning he was apprehended, and ordered for execution the next morning. He was not allowed a Bible, nor the attendance of a minister. His last words were, "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

<sup>3</sup> Near the present Thirty-sixth Street.

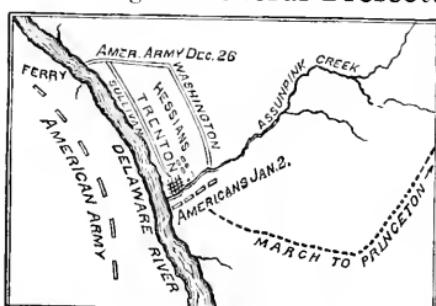
<sup>4</sup> See p. 117, ¶ 14.

QUESTIONS.—5. What did Washington next do? Where did the British land? What did Washington perceive? What steps did he take in consequence? What happened October 28? To what place did Washington fall back? What was his next course, and for what reason? 6. What of Fort Washington? Of Fort Lee? Of the retreat through New Jersey? What is said of the pursuit?

give up **Crown Point**,<sup>1</sup> and had lost the control of **Lake Champlain**. Nor did tidings from New England bring any encouragement. The same day (December 8) that Washington retreated across the Delaware, Sir Peter Parker,<sup>2</sup> with a British squadron, took possession of **Newport**, then the second town in New England. The little provincial fleet that was stationed in Narraganset Bay, under Commodore Hopkins,<sup>3</sup> took shelter in Providence River.

7. Disheartened at recent losses, numbers of the militia were daily claiming to be discharged; and even the regular troops deserted in bodies. The **army** of Washington became so reduced, that it scarcely amounted to three thousand men; and even these were poorly fed, and without tents to shelter them from the inclemency of the season. Added to this, many of the leading men in New Jersey and Pennsylvania were making peace with the enemy. But, in the midst of so much adversity, **Washington** did not despair of the public safety, nor betray any symptoms of hesitation or fear. **Congress** too, though prudently retiring to Baltimore, manifested the same spirit of constancy, and invested the commander-in-chief with almost unlimited military authority.

8. In December, while **General Lee**,<sup>4</sup> with culpable tardiness, was coming to the aid of Washington, he was surprised and captured, near Morristown, where he had taken quarters, with a small guard, at some distance from his troops. His command then devolved upon General Sullivan, who pressed forward to join Washington. Lee was afterwards exchanged for the English **General Prescott**, who was captured in Newport, the



next July, in much the same way, by a party of Americans under Colonel Barton.

9. The British army distributed itself among the villages of New Jersey, fifteen hundred Hessians occupying Trenton. Washington, by a bold stroke, now retrieved the

fortunes of the campaign. On

the night of the 25th of December he recrossed the Delaware, and in the morning, suddenly falling upon the Hessians at **Trenton**, took their artillery and a thousand prisoners.

Between thirty and forty of the Hessians were killed, and Colonel Rahl, the commander, was mortally wounded. The Americans lost only four

<sup>1</sup> See p. 114, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 118, ¶ 18.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 130, ¶ 29.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 121, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—What reverses had the provincials recently suffered? What bad tidings from New England? 7. How, and to what extent, was Washington's army reduced? Condition of his army? What other disheartening circumstance is mentioned? What is said of Washington? Of Congress? 8. What can you tell of the capture and exchange of Generals Lee and Prescott? 9. Where was the British army now distributed? Describe Washington's victory at Trenton.—What further particulars of this victory can you give?

— two killed and two frozen to death. Washington had arranged for three detachments of his army to cross. Only one, consisting of twenty-four hundred men, led by himself, aided by Generals Sullivan and Greene, was able to overcome the obstacles presented by the intense cold, a stormy night, and the floating ice. Washington immediately crossed again into Pennsylvania, with his prisoners and booty.



Washington crossing the Delaware.

**10. Events of 1777.**—On the morning of January 3, Washington, eluding the English force under Cornwallis, now concentrating at Trenton, fell upon and routed a body of the enemy at Princeton.

To retrieve the disaster of December 26, Cornwallis prepared to attack Washington, who had again taken post at Trenton. The opposing forces were separated, on the night of January 2, only by the narrow stream that divides the town. The English general looked forward to an easy victory in the morning. But when morning came, the Americans had escaped. Washington, with only five thousand men, was too weak to withstand the threatened attack, and it was hazardous for him, pressed by a superior force, to attempt to cross the Delaware. In this emergency, the commander-in-chief adopted the bold expedient of marching, under cover of night, round the main army of the enemy, to surprise a detachment left by Cornwallis at Princeton. The English lost, in killed and prisoners, four hundred. The Americans lost about a hundred; among them was the brave General Mercer, who fell mortally wounded.

---

QUESTIONS.—10. What of Washington's success at Princeton?—Give a more particular account of the affair at Princeton.

11. The victories at Trenton and Princeton greatly revived the spirits of the Americans. Washington took up his 1777. winter quarters at Morristown, stationing small bodies of men at various posts, from Princeton to the Highlands of the Hudson. By sending out occasional detachments to harass the British, he kept them, for the most part, within their encampments at New Brunswick and Amboy.<sup>1</sup>

12. While the main armies remained in winter quarters, various expeditions were organized by the opposing forces. In March the British sent a detachment from New York to destroy some American military stores at Peekskill. The provincials, unable to defend them, burned them and fled. In April Cornwallis surprised General Lincoln at Bound Brook, in New Jersey, and compelled him to retreat with some loss.



Marquis de Lafayette.

The same month General Tryon, late royal governor of New York, with about two thousand men, landed near Norwalk, Connecticut, marched upon Danbury, destroyed the military stores collected there, burned the town, and committed many outrages upon the inhabitants. This roused the neighboring militia, under Generals Wooster,<sup>2</sup> Arnold,<sup>3</sup> and Silliman, and the British were obliged to retreat, with heavy loss. The next month a party of Connecticut militia, under Colonel Meigs, crossed Long Island Sound, surprised a body of the enemy at Sag Harbor, destroyed a large quantity of British stores, took ninety prisoners, and returned without losing a man.

13. In the spring of this year the Marquis de Lafayette,<sup>4</sup> a wealthy French nobleman, not yet twenty years old, fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and crossed the ocean to offer his services to the Americans, in their struggle for independence. He only asked to be permitted to enlist as a volunteer, and serve without pay. Congress, however, soon appointed him a major-general. Lafayette brought with him several

<sup>1</sup> Now Perth Amboy.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 115, ¶ 8, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 114, ¶ 5.

<sup>4</sup> Marie Jean Paul Roch Yves Gilbert Motier, Marquis de Lafayette.

QUESTIONS.—11. Effect of the victories at Trenton and Princeton? Where was Washington's army, and how employed during the winter? 12. What is said of the affair at Peekskill? At Bound Brook? At Danbury? At Sag Harbor? 13. What is said of Lafayette? Whom did he bring with him?

officers, among them the **Baron de Kalb**, a German veteran. Not long afterwards Congress accepted the services of Count **Pulaski**, distinguished for resistance to the oppressors of his native Poland. **Thaddeus Kosciusko**, also a Pole, afterwards renowned in fighting for his country, had already entered the patriot army.

**14.** Near the close of May, **Washington** left his winter quarters, and so disposed his army as to watch General Howe, who seemed to hesitate whether to advance upon Philadelphia, or to march up the valley of the Hudson and meet the army preparing, under Burgoyne, to invade the States from Canada. At length the British general-in-chief, leaving New Jersey, sailed from New York, with his brother's fleet, and about eighteen thousand troops, and, landing on the shores of Elk River, near the head of Chesapeake Bay, immediately put his army in motion towards **Philadelphia**. Washington was ready, though with but eleven thousand effective men, to oppose him. The armies met at Chad's Ford, on the **Brandywine**, September 11, and, after an engagement that continued nearly all day, the Americans were obliged to retreat.

The loss of the Americans in this action was estimated at twelve hundred killed, wounded, and prisoners. The British lost, in killed and wounded, less than six hundred. Several foreign officers greatly distinguished themselves in this battle; among them, Count Pulaski and Lafayette. The latter was wounded while endeavoring to rally his men.

**15.** So little was the commander-in-chief disheartened by this repulse, that in a few days he determined to risk another battle. But a violent storm came on, which ruined the ammunition of the Americans, and **Washington** fell back to Pottsgrove, leaving Philadelphia open to the enemy. General Wayne, left behind with his division to hang upon the British rear, was attacked at night near **Paoli**, and lost three hundred men. **Congress** had adjourned to Lancaster; soon afterwards it adjourned to York, where it continued in session until summer.

**16.** On the 26th of September the British took possession of **Philadelphia**. The main body of the royal army was encamped at **Germantown**, where it was attacked by Washington, October 4. After a severe action the Americans were repulsed, with a loss double that of the British.

---

QUESTIONS.—What other distinguished foreigners joined the American army? 14. What disposition did Washington make of his army in May? What course was taken by the British general-in-chief? Describe the battle of Brandywine.—What more can you tell of this battle? 15. To what place did Washington fall back? What is said of the affair at Paoli? Of Congress? 16. When did the British take possession of Philadelphia? Where was the main body of the royal army encamped? What of the battle at Germantown?



Immediately after entering Philadelphia, Howe detached part of 1777. his force to capture some forts on the Delaware, which prevented his fleet from coming up the river. Washington improved the opportunity to attack the British camp at Germantown. At first victory inclined towards the Americans. Their failure may be attributed chiefly to inexperience and want of discipline. Their loss in this battle was nearly twelve hundred men.

17. The force sent against the defences of the Delaware met with stout resistance. Count Donop, with twelve hundred Hessians, assaulted **Fort Mercer**, at Red Bank, on the Jersey shore, but fell mortally wounded, and the attack was repulsed with great slaughter. At the same time several British ships assailed **Fort Mifflin**, on an island in the Delaware, but they were obliged to retire—a sixty-four being blown up and a frigate burned. In November, however, the Americans were obliged to evacuate these forts, and the river was opened to the British fleet.<sup>1</sup>

18. The expedition of General Burgoyne has already been alluded to.<sup>2</sup> Burgoyne's plan was to force his way from Canada to New York, and thus cut off New England from the other colonies. He left Canada with eight thousand regulars, besides Canadians and Indians. Passing up Lake Champlain, he invested **Fort Ticonderoga**, July 1, then garrisoned by three thousand men, under General St. Clair. St. Clair abandoned the fort, and, with considerable loss, effected a junction with General Schuyler,<sup>3</sup> the commander of the northern army, who was then at Fort Edward. The united forces, numbering not more than five thousand men, retired on the approach of Burgoyne, and finally took post on the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 129, ¶ 26, and p. 131, ¶ 32.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 125, ¶ 14.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 117, ¶ 13.

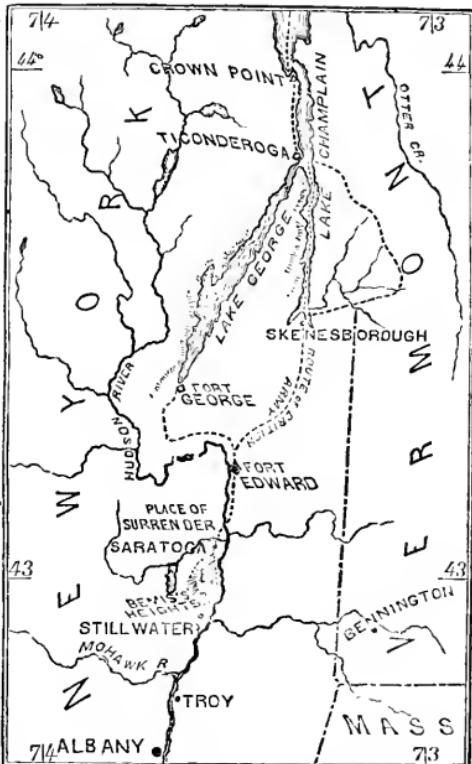
QUESTIONS.—What more can you tell of the battle at Germantown? 17. What is said of the attack on Fort Mercer? On Fort Mifflin? 18. What was Burgoyne's plan? What fort did he invest? How was the fort garrisoned? What is said of St. Clair? Who was commander of the northern army? Where did he take post?

**19.** After taking possession of Ticonderoga, Burgoyne immediately sent forward his gunboats, which overtook and destroyed or captured the American flotilla near Skenesborough.<sup>1</sup> The garrison at that place set fire to their stores and fled. Burgoyne then pushed forward with great difficulty to Fort Edward, and thence advanced along the east bank of the Hudson. Finding himself short of provisions, he despatched Colonel Baum, with a strong force of regulars, Tories, Canadians, and Indians, to seize some stores at Bennington, Vermont. This detachment was totally defeated, August 16, by a body of Vermont and New Hampshire militia, under Colonel Stark.<sup>2</sup>

The loss of the enemy was eight hundred, in killed, wounded, and captured. Colonel Baum was wounded mortally. The loss of the Americans was less than one hundred.

**20.** Reënforcements were now gathering to the American camp, and just as General Schuyler had all things ready to make head against the English with some prospect of success, he was superseded by General Gates.<sup>3</sup>

**21.** While proceeding up Lake Champlain, Burgoyne sent Colonel St. Leger, with a detachment, chiefly of Mohawk Indians, under their chief, Joseph Brant, and of Canadians, against Fort Schuyler.<sup>4</sup> General Herkimer hastened to its relief; but, falling into an ambush at Oriskany,



Burgoyne's Expedition. Saratoga and Vicinity.

<sup>1</sup> Now Whitehall.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 114, ¶ 4. Stark was made a brigadier-general for his gallantry on this occasion.

<sup>3</sup> Gates did little more than to reap where Schuyler had sown. The latter, though causelessly removed, made a full statement to Gates of all his plans — a generosity that Gates meanly requited by omitting to invite him to his first council of war.

<sup>4</sup> Formerly called Fort Stanwix. It was on the site of Rome, New York.

he was mortally wounded, and lost four hundred men. The garrison, however, held St. Leger in check until he heard of the approach **1777.** of Arnold, who had been despatched against him, when he fled, leaving behind him his stores and baggage.

**22.** The situation of Burgoyne was now critical. His supplies were cut off. His Indian allies were deserting. Advance and retreat were alike perilous. He resolved, however, to endeavor to reach Albany. Having crossed the Hudson, he was met by the provincials, September 19, at Bemis's Heights, near Saratoga, where an obstinate battle ensued. Night put an end to the indecisive struggle. On the 7th of October another battle was fought,<sup>1</sup> near the same place, resulting in decided advantage to the Americans.

In both engagements the Americans lost less than five hundred men; the English, more than a thousand, besides ammunition and baggage.

**23.** Ten days after the second battle, Burgoyne, finding himself cut off from every avenue of retreat, and all hope of assistance, surrendered, at Saratoga, his whole force of near six thousand men.<sup>2</sup>

**24.** Meanwhile, British troops from New York, advancing up the Hudson to aid the army from Canada, had captured the American forts in the Highlands; but after the surrender of Burgoyne, they dismantled the forts, and returned to New York. Gates kept the main body of his victorious army near Albany till too late to assist Washington against the British in Philadelphia before winter set in.

**25.** On the 17th of November, Congress sent out, for adoption, **Articles of Confederation**, that had been agreed to after long debate. They were ratified by the several states, and became the Constitution of the new nation.

These articles authorized Congress to carry on war; to make peace; to manage affairs with foreign nations; to decide the number of men and the amount of money to be raised, and to assign to each state its proportion. But here the power of Congress ended. It could make no general laws, and could lay no direct taxes. These powers the states reserved to themselves. In consequence of these reservations, supplies of men and money were often delayed, to the great detriment of the cause.

<sup>1</sup> The battle-ground was just above Stillwater; hence, these battles are sometimes called the first and second battles of Stillwater.

<sup>2</sup> In his despatch after the surrender, Gates did not, as custom and civility required, address the commander-in-chief, but Congress directly. Arnold and Morgan were so conspicuous in these engagements that the soldiers attributed their successes to them more than to Gates. Burgoyne had boasted that he would eat his Christmas dinner at Albany. He ate dinner there before Christmas, but as a prisoner.

<sup>3</sup> Maryland was the last state to adopt the articles. She gave her assent March 1, 1781.

---

QUESTIONS.—22. What was now the situation of Burgoyne? Upon what did he resolve? Give an account of the battles near Saratoga. 23. Of Burgoyne's surrender. 24. Of the British expedition up the Hudson. What is said of Gates's army? 25. What is said of the Articles of Confederation?—What powers were conferred on Congress by these articles?

**26.** In December, Washington took up his winter quarters at **Valley Forge**, a position easy of defence, and convenient to watch the enemy in Philadelphia, as well as to protect the military stores at Reading, and Congress, now in session at York.



Valley Forge.

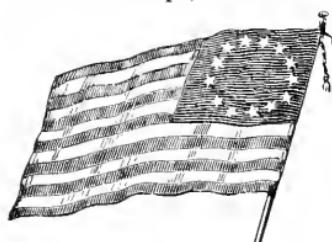
**27.** The royalists passed the winter in the enjoyment of all that an opulent city could afford. Not so with the patriots. Rude huts were their only shelter; they were often destitute of food, without blankets for the night, without sufficient clothing, and marking with blood, from their naked feet, their marches over ice, and snow, and frozen ground.<sup>1</sup>

**28.** While Washington was struggling against every obstacle to keep his army together, through the gloomy winter, at Valley Forge, an intrigue was set on foot to remove him from the chief command. This is known as the **Conway cabal**, from Conway, an adventurer, who was prominent in it. The reverses of the army under Washington were contrasted with the brilliant success of Gates, who himself was not unwilling to supplant his superior. When this became known, so great was the storm of indignation that burst forth from the army, the state legislatures, and from the people, that the instigators of the movement cowered, ashamed or afraid to acknowledge the part they had taken in it.

<sup>1</sup> Washington wrote from Valley Forge, "Without arrogance, or the smallest deviation from truth, it may be said that no history, now extant, can furnish an instance of an army suffering such hardships as ours has done, bearing them with the same patience and fortitude."

QUESTIONS.—26. Where did Washington take up his winter quarters? 27. What is said of the condition of the royalists and the patriots during the winter? 28. Give an account of the Conway cabal.

**29. A naval exploit** of this year deserves mention. Captain Wickes, with three ships, made a cruise round Ireland, and swept from the British waters their merchantmen. On his way to America, one of his ships was captured; and on the coast of Newfoundland, Wickes, with all his crew, was lost. The **American flag**,<sup>1</sup> a circle of thirteen stars on a blue ground and thirteen alternating red and white stripes, first floated from the mast-head on Wickes's cruise. From the earliest period



Flag of 1777.

of the war **American privateers** proved a serious injury to English commerce. Before the close of the year 1777 more than eight hundred prizes had been captured by American cruisers. The Congress of 1775 appointed a marine committee, and began a **navy**. Esek Hopkins, usually styled commodore, was its first commander.

**30. Events of 1778.**—The effects of the capture of Burgoyne's army were not less important in Europe than in America. The **British government** now made overtures to the colonies for conciliation, but they were rejected.

A minority in Parliament had always opposed the violent measures of the government in relation to America. News of the defeat of Burgoyne wrought a change in the views of the majority, so far that Lord North brought forward **Conciliatory Bills**, which speedily passed, and which conceded all that had been asked before the beginning of the war. But these bills did not concede what America now demanded, namely, independence; and the attempt at reconciliation came to nought.

**31. Burgoyne's surrender** led **France**, February 6, to acknowledge the independence of the United States, and enter into **treaties** of alliance and commerce with the infant republic.

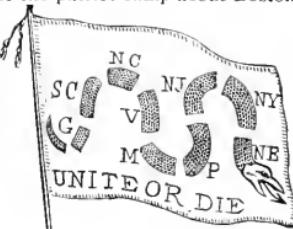
<sup>1</sup> The union of St. George's cross, the old flag of England (a red cross on a white ground), and St. Andrew's cross, the old flag of Scotland (a white cross on a blue ground), gave the union flag of Great Britain. In January, 1776, a flag was raised over the patriot camp about Boston,

having thirteen stripes, with the union of Great Britain. But it was not thought proper to keep the British union after the declaration of independence, and, in the summer of 1777, the flag described above was adopted. After the close of the war, when new states came to be added, it was decided to add a star for each new state, and, lest the circle should become too large, to arrange the stars in the form of one large five-pointed star. Other arrangements of stars are



Flag of 1776.

now generally adopted. Before the war, and during its earlier stages, various devices served to distinguish those who espoused the patriot cause. The troops sometimes fought under the flags of the different states. While the idea of union was taking hold of the public mind, a favorite device was that of the joint snake—each joint bearing the name of some part of the country.



Joint-snake Flag.

**QUESTIONS.**—29. What naval exploit of this year? What is said of the American flag? Of American privateers and cruisers? Of the beginning of a navy? 30. What is said of the effect in Europe of Burgoyne's surrender? What did the British government do?—What can you tell of Conciliatory Bills? 31. What was the effect in France of Burgoyne's surrender?

Early in 1776, Silas Deane, of Connecticut, was sent to France as a commercial and political agent, to procure supplies of arms and military stores, and to ascertain the disposition of the French court in regard to the contest between Great Britain and the colonies. Later in the year Congress appointed Benjamin Franklin, Mr. Deane, and Arthur Lee as **commissioners** to negotiate a treaty with the French government.<sup>1</sup> Franklin was untiring in his efforts to obtain the recognition of American independence, and his services were of the highest value. His reputation as a philosopher, and his agreeable social qualities, gained him the respect and esteem of the best minds in the French capital.<sup>2</sup> Though the French government secretly favored the Americans, allowing arms to be taken from the public arsenals, and prizes taken by American privateers to be sold in French and West India ports, yet, before the capture of Burgoyne, the success of the conflict was too doubtful for France to risk embroiling herself in a war with her old enemy, Great Britain, by open intervention. Without the assistance of France in money, ships, and troops, and more than all, without her moral support, the United States would have succeeded, if at all, only after a struggle greatly prolonged.

**32.** The effect of this alliance was immediately apparent. The British, under command of Sir Henry Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe,<sup>3</sup> evacuated Philadelphia,<sup>4</sup> June 18, and crossed into New Jersey, intending to concentrate the royal forces at New York before the arrival of the expected armament from France. Washington pursued and overtook the retreating foe at **Monmouth** Court-House, on the morning of June 28. The English were so roughly handled, that, after



Benjamin Franklin.

<sup>1</sup> John Adams took Deane's place, in April, 1778. Later in the year Congress dissolved the commission by appointing Franklin minister plenipotentiary to the court of France.

<sup>2</sup> "Men imagined," says a celebrated French historian, "they saw in him a sage of antiquity come back to give austere lessons and generous examples to the moderns." See p. 97, ¶ 6, and p. 162, ¶ 12, and note 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 117, ¶ 16.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 125, ¶ 16.

QUESTIONS.—What agent was sent to France, and for what purpose? What commissioners were appointed, and for what purpose? What is said of Franklin? How had the French government favored the Americans? What is said of the importance of the assistance of France? 32. Who succeeded General Howe? When did Clinton evacuate Philadelphia? With what intention? Give an account of the battle of Monmouth.

night had ended the battle, Clinton stole away, under cover of darkness, and embarked at Sandy Hook for New York. **1778.** Washington crossed the Hudson, and took post at White Plains, where he remained till late in the autumn, when he cautious his troops around New York, with his headquarters at Middlebrook, in New Jersey.

**33. Lee** was ordered forward, with a strong force, to engage the enemy at Monmouth. When Washington came up, he encountered the whole division in full retreat. Greatly exasperated, the commander-in-chief sharply reprimanded Lee, and ordered the retreat to be checked, and the troops to be brought into action, which soon became general.<sup>1</sup> The loss of the Americans, in killed and wounded and those disabled by the extreme heat, was two hundred; that of Clinton, three hundred, and on his march more than fifteen hundred, chiefly Hessians, deserted from his standard. **Baron Steuben**, a Prussian officer who had recently been appointed inspector-general of the patriot forces, took an active part in this battle. Steuben was an excellent disciplinarian, and introduced into the American armies a uniform system of tactics.

**34.** About this time **Kaskaskia**, **Vincennes**, and other settlements north of the Ohio, fell into the hands of a party of Virginians. Early in July a deed of shocking barbarity was perpetrated in the secluded and lovely **Valley of Wyoming**, in Pennsylvania. The infamous Colonel John Butler, at the head of more than a thousand Tories and Indians, made a descent into the valley, and desolated the settlements with fire and sword, sparing neither age nor sex. In November, **Cherry Valley**, in New York, suffered a similar visitation.

**35.** The **French fleet and army**,<sup>2</sup> sent to assist the United States, appeared off the Delaware, July 6, under Count D'Estaing, just in time to miss Admiral Howe, who, with an inferior fleet, had taken refuge in New York harbor, where the heavier vessels of the French could not follow him.

**36.** D'Estaing then sailed for **Newport**, to coöperate with General Sullivan, in an attempt to drive the British from the Island of Rhode Island.<sup>3</sup> While D'Estaing was waiting for the arrival of the American army, Admiral Howe, having been reënforced, left New York for the relief of Newport. The very day that the army under Sullivan, aided by Lafayette

<sup>1</sup> For his conduct on this occasion, and for addressing two disrespectful letters to Washington, Lee was brought to trial, and sentenced to be suspended from command for one year. After the expiration of his sentence, he was dismissed from the service for writing an insolent letter to Congress. He died just before the close of the war.

<sup>2</sup> The fleet consisted of twelve ships of the line and four frigates; the army numbered four thousand troops. See p. 130, ¶ 31.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 122, ¶ 6.

QUESTIONS.—What of Clinton after the battle? Of Washington? 33. Give some further particulars of this battle. What is said of Baron Steuben? 34. What is said of the settlements north of the Ohio? Of the attack upon the Valley of Wyoming? Upon Cherry Valley? 35. When and where did the French fleet and army arrive? Under what commander? Where had the English fleet taken refuge? 36. Give an account of the attempt to drive the British from the Island of Rhode Island.

and Greene, was ready to lay siege to Newport, D'Estaing despatched the British fleet, and went out to give battle. A storm, however, prevented the engagement, and so damaged the French fleet that D'Estaing sailed to Boston for repairs. Sullivan was forced to retire. The English pursued, and, August 29, attacked the Americans, but were repulsed, with great slaughter. Sullivan continued his retreat, and reached the main land. After D'Estaing had completed his repairs in Boston, he sailed to the West Indies, to operate against the English possessions there, and a British squadron followed to defend them.

**37.** Hostilities were now conducted by the British in a more revengeful spirit. Sir Charles Grey was sent on a ravaging expedition against **New Bedford, Fairhaven, and Martha's Vineyard.** Another expedition, sent along the coast of New Jersey, burned **Egg Harbor.** A body of dragoons, under Colonel Baylor, was surprised, and cut to pieces without mercy; the same fate befell the infantry of Pulaski's legion.

**38.** The autumn of this year finds the position of **the opposing armies** but little changed from that of two years before. Washington, at White Plains, is watching Clinton in New York. But the British, in New York, are now on the defensive. New Jersey and Philadelphia have been lost and won. Newport is in the possession of the enemy, but they have lost the settlements north of the Ohio. America, moreover, has become inured to war, and gained the support of France, whose example, in recognizing the new nation, was soon followed by other European states.

**III. FROM THE INVASION OF GEORGIA TO THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.—THE WAR CHIEFLY IN THE SOUTH.—1. Events of 1778, continued.**—Towards the close of 1778, the south began to be the principal theatre of the war, and **Georgia**, the weakest of the Southern States, was the first to be attacked. Late in December, Colonel Campbell, with thirty-five hundred troops, sent from New York by General Clinton, landed near **Savannah.** They found not more than twelve hundred men, under General Robert Howe, to oppose them. These were surprised, and completely routed, and the town fell into the hands of the English, December 29.

**2. Events of 1779.**—The year 1779 is distinguished for nothing very decisive in the war of the Revolution. A few days after the fall of Savannah, General Prevost arrived with royal troops from Florida, and took command of the British forces. He soon completed the subjugation of Georgia, in spite

---

QUESTIONS.—After completing his repairs in Boston, where did D'Estaing sail, and for what purpose? 37. How did the British now conduct hostilities? What towns suffered from ravaging expeditions? What of Baylor's dragoons and Pulaski's legion? 38. Compare the state of affairs in the autumn of 1778 with that of two years before. 1. When did the south begin to be the principal theatre of the war? What state was first attacked? Give an account of the fall of Savannah. 2. What is said of the year 1779? Of the subjugation of Georgia?

of the efforts of General Lincoln, commander of the southern department. The principal stand made by the Americans 1779. was at **Brier Creek**, where, March 3, they were surprised and defeated with great loss.

Sunbury was the first place that yielded to Prevost, who then sent Colonel Campbell, with a body of men, to excite a rising of the loyalists in the interior, and to take Augusta. Seven hundred Tories, while marching towards this place, were attacked by militia, under Colonel Pickens of South Carolina; their leader was slain, and a large number were taken prisoners, five of whom were hanged for treason. Lincoln, in order to arrest the progress of Campbell, despatched about two thousand men, under General Ashe, who was surprised at Brier Creek, by Prevost. Of the Americans who escaped, less than five hundred ever reassembled.

3. Prevost next marched upon **Charleston**, South Carolina. Lincoln, as soon as he could recover from the disaster at Brier Creek, hastened to its relief, and Prevost retreated. The Americans pursued, and overtaking the enemy at **Stono Ferry**, June 20, engaged them, and were repulsed with considerable loss. The British, however, suffered severely, and continued their retreat, the main body returning to Georgia.

4. In September, D'Estaing suddenly appeared, with a large fleet, before **Savannah**, and prepared to coöperate with Lincoln for the recovery of the town. After a siege of more than two weeks, a disastrous assault was made by the combined forces, October 9, after which D'Estaing, himself wounded, in haste to return to the West Indies, where he had been cruising against the British, proposed to raise the siege. Lincoln was compelled to acquiesce, and retired to Charleston.

The allies lost more than one thousand men, while the loss of the British was not a hundred. The gallant Count Pulaski was mortally wounded.

5. In the mean time, in the north, Clinton had attempted nothing but to hold New York, and to send out a few plundering expeditions, while Washington could do but little more than to watch him.

6. In February, Tryon, with a large force, proceeded from Kingsbridge, into **Connecticut**, as far as Greenwich, where he plundered the inhabitants and destroyed their salt works. General Putnam, happening to be in the vicinity, hastily collected a small number of men, whom he employed at firing upon the enemy, with a couple of field-pieces, from the high ground near the meeting-house, till a detachment charged upon him. Ordering his men to make good their retreat, he himself put spurs to his

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the defeat at Brier Creek?—Give a more particular account of the English in Georgia. 3. Where did Prevost next march? How was Charleston relieved? Give an account of the affair at Stono Ferry. What did the British next do? 4. Give an account of the attempt to recover Savannah. 5. What of Clinton and Washington in the mean time? 6. Give an account of Tryon's expedition in Connecticut, and Putnam's escape.

horse, plunged down the precipice near the church, and escaped, uninjured by the many balls which were fired at him. In July, another predatory



Escape of Putnam.

excursion was led by Tryon, against the maritime parts of Connecticut, during which New Haven was plundered, and Fairfield and Norwalk were reduced to ashes. An expedition against **Virginia**, in May, plundered Portsmouth, Norfolk, and all the neighboring country.

**7.** On the night of July 16, General Anthony Wayne surprised and captured the British stronghold at **Stony Point**.

This post and Verplanck's Point, nearly opposite, had been recently taken from the Americans, and greatly strengthened by the British. Washington, however, determined to attempt its reduction. The enterprise was committed to General Wayne, who accomplished a march of fourteen miles over mountains, through deep morasses and difficult defiles, and at midnight reached the walls of the fort, in two columns, ready for the attack. The garrison opened a tremendous fire of musketry, but the Americans, pressing on, cleared their way with the bayonet, scaled the fort, and the two columns met in the centre of the works. The English lost six hundred men, most of whom were taken prisoners. The Americans lost one hundred. By Washington's orders the cannon and stores were removed, and the works destroyed. The British afterwards occupied the post. About a month after the storming of Stony Point, Major Henry Lee surprised and captured a British garrison at **Paulus Hook** (now Jersey City).

---

QUESTIONS.—What other places in Connecticut were plundered or burned by Tryon? What of a plundering expedition in Virginia? 7. When and by whom was Stony Point captured?—Give the particulars of its capture. What of the British garrison at Paulus Hook?

**8.** About the middle of August these successes were followed by a disaster. A fleet of nineteen armed vessels and twenty-four transports **1779.** ports sailed from Boston, to capture a British post at **Castine**, on the Penobscot, in Maine. While the Americans were investing the fort, a British fleet arrived, and either captured or destroyed the whole flotilla. Most of the men escaped, and made their way back through the woods.

**9.** In the summer of this year General Sullivan, with five thousand men, was sent to chastise the **Indians** (all the Six Nations but the Oneidas), who had joined with the Tories and English.<sup>1</sup> Sullivan penetrated as far as the Genesee, burned their villages, cut down their orchards, destroyed their fields of corn, and left their country a waste.

**10.** On the sea,<sup>2</sup> this year, American and French cruisers were inflicting great injury on English commerce. One of the most desperate naval combats on record was fought by the dauntless commander **John Paul Jones**, in which he captured, September 23, in sight of the British coast, two English frigates convoying a fleet of merchantmen.

Jones had three ships. Himself in the *Bon Homme Richard*, of forty-two guns, engaged the *Serapis*, of forty-four guns. The ships coming in contact, Jones lashed them together, and the battle raged with frightful slaughter for more than two hours. During the combat, which was in the night, both ships were on fire several times. At length the Serapis surrendered; the Richard sunk in the morning. Another of Jones's ships captured the consort of the Serapis.

**11.** This year the war was carried on under circumstances of great discouragement. The United States had hoped much from the French alliance, yet D'Estaing had accomplished but little. The Americans found still greater discouragement in the condition of their finances, and the daily depreciation of their bills of credit,<sup>3</sup> called *continental money*.

During the summer of 1779, **Spain** joined France in hostility to England. America derived some encouragement from this new party to the war. It was throwing one more obstacle in the way of her enemy.

**12.** In order to strengthen New York, which **Clinton** feared

<sup>1</sup> See p. 132, ¶ 34.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 130, ¶ 29.

<sup>3</sup> The first issue of these bills by Congress was in June, 1775, and then to the amount of two millions. By the year 1780, the amount in circulation was two hundred millions, and the depreciation fifty or sixty for one. The principal reason for this was the general want of confidence that the bills would ever be redeemed. In after years the depreciation was several hundreds for one. With such a currency it was impossible to carry on a war with energy.

QUESTIONS.—8. Give an account of the disaster which followed these successes. 9. Give an account of Sullivan's expedition against the Indians. 10. What of American and French cruisers? What naval victory by John Paul Jones?—Give a more particular account of this naval combat. 11. What is said of the French alliance? Of American finances?—What nation joined France in hostility to England? Effect? 12. What did Clinton first do?

might be attacked by D'Estaing, Newport<sup>1</sup> and the posts on the Hudson were evacuated. After the repulse of the French and American forces at Savannah, and the departure of D'Estaing<sup>2</sup> from the coast of America, the British commander-in-chief, leaving the Hessian general, Baron Knyphausen, at New York, sailed south, December 25, with seven thousand troops, and the fleet of Admiral Arbuthnot.

**13. Events of 1780.**—The war was now carried into the Carolinas. On May 12, Charleston was forced to surrender to the combined attack of the British army and navy.

General Lincoln had charge of the defenses of the city, in the rear of which Clinton began to erect batteries, early in April, and Arbuthnot, having succeeded in passing Fort Moultrie,<sup>3</sup> anchored his fleet within gunshot of the Americans. On the 14th, two regiments of provincials, stationed at **Monk's Corner**, to keep open communication with the country, were surprised and totally routed by British cavalry, under Colonel Tarleton. Charleston was now at the mercy of the besiegers, but not till after a fierce bombardment did Lincoln surrender.

Six thousand prisoners fell into the hands of the enemy. About two hundred and fifty were killed and wounded on each side.

**14. Measures** were immediately adopted for establishing the royal authority throughout South Carolina, and British garrisons were stationed in various parts of the state. Clinton then sailed for New York, with a large body of his troops, leaving Cornwallis in command of the forces in the south.

On the fall of Charleston, Clinton sent expeditions into the interior, one of which, led by Colonel Tarleton, pursued a body of American troops under Colonel Buford, and overtook them near **Waxhaw Creek**, not far from the northern boundary of the state. More than three hundred of the Americans were killed, wounded, and captured. A few escaped.

South Carolina was restive under the yoke, and bands of patriots, under Marion, Sumter, Pickens, and other daring leaders, were ever ready to pounce upon exposed parties of British and Tories.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 122, ¶ 6.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 134, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 118, ¶ 18.

**QUESTIONS.**—What did Clinton do after the repulse of the French and Americans at Savannah? 13. Where was the war carried in 1780? When was Charleston forced to surrender?—Give an account of the affair at Monk's Corner, and a more particular account of the attack upon Charleston. 14. What measures were immediately adopted? Where did Clinton go? Who was left in command of the British forces in the south?—What is said of expeditions sent into the interior, and of the affair near Waxhaw Creek?—What of bands of patriots and their leaders in South Carolina?

**15.** In July **General Gates**,<sup>1</sup> who had been appointed to the command of the southern forces was marching to the relief of the Carolinas. The British, on the approach of Gates, assembled their whole force at **Camden**, near which place a severe battle<sup>2</sup> was fought, August 16, and the Americans were defeated with great loss.

Gates had nearly three times as many troops as Cornwallis, but they were mostly militia. At the first onset a large body of Virginia and Carolina militia, under a charge with fixed bayonets, threw down their arms and fled. The Continentals, under De Kalb, bravely stood their ground, but were at length forced to yield. The loss of the Americans in killed was nine hundred, and as many more were taken prisoners. Baron De Kalb,<sup>3</sup> the second in command, was among the mortally wounded. The British loss was but little more than three hundred. By the disastrous defeat at Camden, Gates lost all the laurels he had won at Saratoga. A few days after this defeat, Sumter's troop was almost annihilated, at **Fishing Creek**, by Colonel Tarleton's cavalry.

**16.** Cornwallis was now undisputed master of **South Carolina**, and treated the Whigs with the greatest severity.

His tyranny, however, exasperated the people, and roused their spirit of resistance. Sumter soon collected another force. Marion had kept his together. These leaders did valuable service by cutting off straggling parties of the enemy, and keeping the Tories in check.

**17.** The British general next advanced into North Carolina. Colonel Ferguson, who led a body of invaders, consisting of Tories and regulars, was attacked, October 7, and utterly defeated at **King's Mountain**, when Cornwallis, alarmed, returned to South Carolina.

The patriot force at King's Mountain consisted of about a thousand mounted backwoodsmen, who had collected in various bodies, each under its own leader. The killed, wounded, and prisoners of the enemy exceeded eleven hundred, while but twenty of the backwoodsmen were killed.

Early in December **General Greene** assumed command in the south, in place of General Gates.

**18.** No important enterprise was undertaken in the **North-ern States** this year. The situation of General Washington — often, during the war, embarrassing — had been distressing,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 127, ¶ 20.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes called the battle of Sanders Creek.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 125, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—15. What is said of Gates?—What is said of the defeat of Gates at Camden? Give particulars of this battle. What happened a few days after this defeat? 16. What were now Cornwallis's position and course in South Carolina?—Effect of his tyranny? What of Sumter and Marion? 17. Where did the British general next advance? Give an account of the defeat of the British at King's Mountain?—What is said of the patriot force at King's Mountain? Loss to each side?—By whom was Gates superseded, and when? 18. What of the Northern States this year?

through the winter, in his encampment at Morristown. The cold was more intense than had ever been known in this climate. The winter, to this day, bears the epithet of the "hard winter." The army suffered extremely, and Washington often had the prospect before him of being obliged to break up his encampment and disband his soldiers. During the summer, predatory excursions were made into New Jersey, by the English, from New York. After plundering the country, and burning Springfield, the invaders retired before the Americans. New Jersey was not again molested by the enemy.

**19. Lafayette** had spent the previous winter in France, and had induced the king, Louis XVI., to send another French fleet and army to America. The fleet arrived at Rhode Island in July, under Admiral de Ternay, bringing six thousand troops, with Count de Rochambeau as commander-in-chief. The Americans placed great reliance on the assistance of so powerful an armament. But the English fleet, having been reënforced, held the French blocked up at Newport for some months.

**20. Arnold's Treason.** — To add to the embarrassments of this year, General Arnold, heretofore one of the most active and intrepid defenders of the patriot cause, entered into an arrangement with the enemy to surrender the fortress at West Point, where he then had command. The plot was discovered in time to prevent its accomplishment, but not in time to prevent the escape of the traitor to the British, from whom he received, as the reward of his treason, a large sum of money, and a commission as brigadier-general.<sup>1</sup>

The British agent in this affair was the young and accomplished **Major John André**, Clinton's adjutant-general. This officer met Arnold near West Point, and completed negotiations with him. On his way back to New York, he was seized, September 23, by three militia-

<sup>1</sup> An effort was made to capture Arnold, after his escape to the enemy. A Virginian, named John Champe, pretended to desert from the American army. Having joined Arnold's legion, then stationed at New York, he planned to seize him, and have him conveyed within the American lines. This plan fell through by Arnold's unexpectedly changing his quarters. Champe was obliged to serve with the enemy for some time, but at length made his escape, and joined his former comrades, who then first learned the cause of his supposed desertion. Washington rewarded him for his daring attempt, and lest some chance of war should throw him into the hands of the British, discharged him from the service. After the close of the war, the traitor Arnold, despised even by those whom he had served, dragged out a miserable life, till the year 1801, when he died in London.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of English predatory excursions in New Jersey? 19. What had Lafayette induced the King of France to do? When and where did a French fleet and army arrive, and under what commanders? How were the French prevented from aiding the Americans? 20. Give an account of Arnold's treason.—Give an account of André's connection with this affair, and of his seizure and execution.

men, John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart, who, spurning the large bribes by which he sought to secure his release, delivered him up to the military authorities. Soon after he was executed as a spy.



Capture of Major André.

**21. Events of 1781.** — This year opened with an event, which, for a time, seriously endangered the American cause. This was the revolt of the **Pennsylvania troops**, at Morristown, to the number of thirteen hundred. But the difficulty was speedily adjusted, and those whose terms of service had not expired returned to duty.

Great disorder pervaded the department of supplies for the army. Abuses had crept in. Frauds were practised. The soldiers had been unpaid for many months, and suffered for the want of clothing and provisions. Besides these hardships and privations, to which all the troops had been exposed, the Pennsylvanians had a special grievance, growing out of a misunderstanding as to the term of their enlistment. The mutineers<sup>1</sup> declared their intention of appearing before Congress to demand redress. At Princeton agents of Sir Henry Clinton offered them large rewards to join the British army. These emissaries they promptly arrested, and gave up to be treated as spies. Soon after Congress considered the complaints of the insurgents, and took measures for their relief.

**22.** A few weeks afterwards, the example of the **Pennsylvania troops** was followed by a part of the **New Jersey line**.

<sup>1</sup> General Wayne, who commanded these troops, used every exertion to restrain them. In his zeal he turned towards them, and cocked his pistol, when, instantly, a hundred bayonets were directed towards him, and the men cried out, "We love you, we respect you; but you are a dead man if you fire. Do not mistake us; we are not going to the enemy. On the contrary, were they now to appear, you should see us fight under your orders with as much resolution and alacrity as ever."

QUESTIONS.—21. Give an account of the revolt of the Pennsylvania troops. — Causes of this revolt? Course of the mutineers in obtaining redress? 22. Give an account of the revolt of the New Jersey line.

This mutiny was, however, quickly suppressed by the military power. These revolts roused the states and Congress to make greater exertions to provide for the necessities of the soldiers. Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, was appointed financial agent for the general government, and to his exertions was it largely owing that the country was enabled to continue the war with vigor.

**23.** In January, the traitor Arnold, with sixteen hundred Tories, and a number of armed vessels, invaded Virginia, and destroyed a large amount of property. To drive him back, Washington despatched Lafayette, with about twelve hundred men, whom the generous Frenchman clothed for the expedition, to join Steuben, already in Virginia. The French fleet from Rhode Island<sup>1</sup> was sent to cut off Arnold's retreat by water. This fleet engaged a pursuing squadron of the British off the capes of Virginia, was worsted, and returned to Newport. Reënforcements were now able to reach Arnold, under General Phillips, who took command, and continued to ravage the state.

**24. General Greene,**<sup>2</sup> who had superseded Gates, was, next to Washington, the ablest of the American generals. He found the army reduced to about two thousand men, of whom one half were militia, and not more than eight hundred fit for service. He first divided this force, small as it was. Sending a detachment, under General Morgan,<sup>3</sup> to the western part of the state, Greene encamped with the remainder on the Great

Pedee, where he was joined by new recruits. Cornwallis despatched Tarleton in pursuit of Morgan, who retreated to a place called the Cowpens, where, January 17, he gained a brilliant victory over his pursuer.



General Greene.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 139, ¶ 19.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 138, ¶ 17.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 128, note 2.

QUESTIONS.—Effect of these revolts? What is said of Robert Morris? 23. When and by whom was Virginia invaded? What was done to drive back the invader and cut off his retreat? What happened to the French fleet? Effect in Virginia? 24. What is said of General Greene? In what condition did he find the southern army? How did he dispose of this force? Give an account of the victory at the Cowpens.

Tarleton fled, leaving three hundred dead and wounded on the field; five hundred prisoners, all the baggage and artillery, fell into the hands of the victors. The loss of the Americans was less than eighty. The opposing forces were nearly equal, each near one thousand; but while more than half of Morgan's men were undisciplined militia, Tarleton's were all well-trained soldiers.<sup>1</sup>

**25.** Learning of Tarleton's defeat, Cornwallis started in pursuit of Morgan, who immediately fell back into North Carolina. Here Greene came to his aid, and assuming command, conducted a masterly retreat across North Carolina, into Virginia, closely followed by the British.

The whole American force being too weak to cope with Cornwallis, nothing remained but to retreat; and this was hazardous. The troops were poorly clad, almost without shoes, without sufficient food, and encumbered with the spoils of the recent victory. The British, having destroyed their heavy baggage, and divested themselves of everything that could impede their march, urged the pursuit with such rapidity, that when they reached the Catawba, the Americans had but just gained the opposite bank. Before the pursuers could cross, a heavy rain rendered the river impassable. Again, at the Yadkin the pursuit was so close, that the rear guard of the retreating army was attacked, and part of the baggage abandoned. Here again a sudden rise of the river detained the enemy. Greene now hastened to the Dan, and just as the last of his army was crossing, the British van appeared.

**26.** Here Cornwallis gave up the pursuit, and, turning south, took post at Hillsboro'. Greene in a few days turned back into North Carolina, and having received considerable accession from the militia, encountered Cornwallis, March 15, at **Guilford Court-House**. The British remained masters of the field, but at such a cost that they thought it prudent to withdraw to Wilmington.<sup>2</sup>

The English lost nearly six hundred men, the Americans less than three hundred; but after the defeat, many of the militia went home.

While General Greene was on his way to Guilford, Tarleton was beating up recruits for the royal cause. Colonel Henry Lee, pursuing him with

<sup>1</sup> In this engagement two of Morgan's officers greatly distinguished themselves, Colonels William A. Washington, a kinsman to General Washington, and John Eager Howard, a Marylander, afterwards distinguished as a statesman. To their gallantry the victory was largely owing. During the battle, Colonel Washington had a hand-to-hand conflict with Tarleton, and both were wounded. Some time afterwards Tarleton, speaking of him to a lady, said he was so ignorant that he could scarcely write his name—a charge by no means true. "Ah, well," replied the lady, glancing significantly at the wound inflicted by Washington, "you bear evidence that he can make his mark."

<sup>2</sup> The English statesman Fox, when the battle of Guilford was mentioned in the House of Commons as a victory, exclaimed, "Another such victory will ruin the British army."

QUESTIONS.—What more is said of the battle at the Cowpens. 25. What is said of Cornwallis and Morgan? Of Greene?—Give an account of Greene's retreat. 26. What was next the course of Cornwallis? Of Greene? What is said of the battle of Guilford Court-House?

a body of cavalry, fell in with some four hundred **Carolina Tories**, on their way to the English camp, and cut them to pieces without mercy.

**27.** The American general did not long remain inactive after the battle at Guilford Court-House, but advanced boldly into South Carolina, to attack the **British posts**<sup>1</sup> in that state.

He encamped on **Hobkirk's Hill**, near Camden, where was a large force of the enemy, under Lord Rawdon. The latter, April 25, made a furious attack upon the American camp. The superiority of British discipline was again manifested, and after a desperate struggle, in which the loss on each side was nearly equal, Greene was forced to retreat. But Rawdon soon after, learning that recruits were joining the Americans, and that Lee and Marion<sup>2</sup> were threatening his communications, withdrew towards Charleston. Greene next moved upon **Ninety-Six**, a strong post in possession of the Tories. But after four weeks of fruitless effort, he raised the siege, June 19, and retreated, pursued for a short distance by Rawdon, who had come to the relief of the besieged garrison. Ninety-Six was soon after deserted by the enemy, and Rawdon, leaving Colonel Stewart in command of the army, sailed for England.<sup>3</sup>

**28.** During the hot and sickly season, General Greene gave his forces rest among the high hills of Santee. Early in September he approached the enemy, concentrated at **Eutaw Springs**. Here, on the 8th, occurred a hard-fought battle, in which both sides claimed the victory.

After a sanguinary conflict, the Americans lost the field, but the English during the night retreated towards Charleston. In this battle the loss of the Americans was over five hundred, that of the enemy near seven hundred. Soon after, the British, weakened by victories not less than by defeats, and threatened by detachments, that scoured the country, under Lee, Pickens, Sumter, and Marion, were pushed out of the interior.

**29.** At the close of the year, of all their conquests in Georgia and the Carolinas, the English held only Savannah and Charleston. The battle of Eutaw Springs was the last general engagement of the war south of Virginia.

In Greene's campaign in the Carolinas, it is not a little singular to notice that the British retreated after each victory claimed, and only vigorously pursued after their single decided defeat at the Cowpens.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 137, ¶ 14.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 137, ¶ 14.

<sup>3</sup> One of the last acts of Rawdon, and one that greatly inflamed the southern Whigs against the enemy, was the sanctioning of the execution of Colonel Isaac Hayne, a distinguished citizen of South Carolina. Hayne had been taken prisoner at the capture of Charleston, and liberated on parole. Not long afterwards he was ordered to join the British standard. This he refused to do, and considering himself free from a parole which the enemy did not regard, joined the American army, and was taken prisoner. Without trial, he was sentenced to death by Colonel Balfour, the British commandant at Charleston, Rawdon consenting.

QUESTIONS.—What of Colonel Lee and the Carolina Tories? 27. What did the American general next do?—Give an account of the affair at Hobkirk's Hill. Of the attack upon Ninety-Six? 28. How did Greene pass the sickly season? What is said of the battle of Eutaw Springs? 29. What did the English hold in Georgia and the Carolinas at the close of the year?—What is singular to notice respecting Greene's campaign in the Carolinas?

30. We left Cornwallis<sup>1</sup> at Wilmington. He soon set out to invade Virginia, and, May 20, effected a junction with General Phillips, who had been ravaging the state. Lafayette<sup>2</sup> had two thousand militia, in addition to the troops he had brought from the north. Cornwallis endeavored to bring him to an engagement, but the prudent marquis would not hazard an encounter with the vastly superior force of the enemy. For some time the English general employed himself in destroying stores of public and private property, but at length collected his troops at Yorktown, which he began to fortify. He also took possession of Gloucester Point, nearly opposite.

31. Meanwhile Washington had concentrated his own immediate command, and the French under Rochambeau,<sup>3</sup> near New York, for an attack upon that city; but this plan was suddenly changed, on learning that a French fleet, under the Count de Grasse, would soon reach the Chesapeake. To destroy Cornwallis now became the object of the American commander, and, September 29, the combined forces appeared before Yorktown. De Grasse had already arrived, and blocked up the James and York Rivers.

32. Washington concealed his design from Clinton, in New York, till the allied armies were some distance on their way to Virginia. When, however, Sir Henry Clinton divined that Yorktown was the object of attack, hoping to draw away a part of the American forces, he sent the traitor Arnold, with a body of Tories and Hessians, into Connecticut. New London<sup>4</sup> was pillaged and burned. Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the river, was taken by assault, and the commander, Colonel Ledyard, and half the garrison, were butchered in cold blood.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 142, ¶ 26.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 141, ¶ 23.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 139, ¶ 19.

<sup>4</sup> Arnold had been recalled, some months before, from Virginia (see p. 141, ¶ 23). It is said that he watched, from a church tower, the burning of New London, almost in sight of Norwich, his native place.

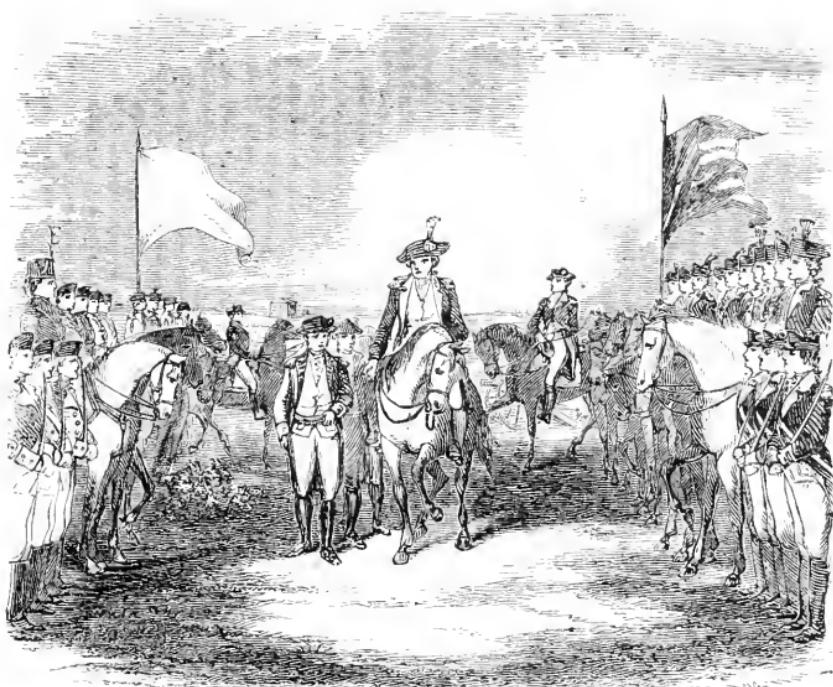
<sup>5</sup> After the fort had been carried, a British officer, entering, inquired who commanded. "I did," replied Colonel Ledyard, approaching, and presenting his sword, "but you do now." The officer seized the sword, and plunged it into the brave colonel's bosom. This was the signal for an indiscriminate massacre.

QUESTIONS.—30. What did Cornwallis do after leaving Wilmington? Why did Lafayette avoid an engagement? Where did Cornwallis at length collect his troops? 31. What had Washington done meanwhile? Why did he change his plan? What now became the object of the American commander? 32. Why did Clinton send Arnold into Connecticut? What was done by Arnold's troops?



Yorktown and Vicinity.

**33.** Yorktown was soon completely invested. The American and French troops numbered sixteen thousand. Cornwallis, with his garrison of less than eight thousand, could not hope to break through this formidable force: there was no escape by land. De Grasse had control of the river: there was no escape by sea. No alternative remained but to capitulate. Accordingly, October 19, the British army surrendered to Washington, the shipping to De Grasse.<sup>1</sup>



Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown.

**34.** The bombardment began on the evening of October 9, and from that time the besiegers made a continuous advance. Two of the outposts were carried by assault. A hundred pieces of heavy ordnance poured their terrible contents upon the fortifications with such effect as to level them, and dismount nearly every gun. Cornwallis now determined to

<sup>1</sup> "The combined army was drawn up in two lines, more than a mile in length, the Americans on the right side of the road, the French on the left. About two o'clock the British garrison sallied forth, and passed through with shouldered arms, slow and solemn step, colors cased, and drums beating a British march. They were led by General O'Hara, on horseback, who, riding up to General Washington, apologized for the non-appearance of Lord Cornwallis, on account of indisposition." Washington pointed to General Lincoln, who had given up his sword to Cornwallis at Charleston, as the officer appointed to receive the surrender of the British troops. By him they were conducted to a field, where they were to ground their arms.

QUESTIONS.—33. What is said of the investment of Yorktown and the surrender of Cornwallis? 34. Give a more particular account of the siege of Yorktown.

cross the river, and attempt to retreat by way of Gloucester, hoping to break through a body of French stationed in the rear of that place, and reach New York; but a storm arose on the night of the 16th,—the time appointed for the attempted escape,—and dispersed his boats, after one division had crossed the river. During the siege the English lost between five and six hundred men, the allies about three hundred. Five days after the surrender of Cornwallis, Sir Henry Clinton made his appearance off the Capes of Virginia, with a reinforcement of seven thousand men; but receiving intelligence of his lordship's fate, he returned to New York.

**35. At the news of this victory** exultation broke forth from one extremity of the country to the other. To the unanimous acclaim of the people Congress joined the authority of its resolves. It addressed thanks to the officers and soldiers, and went in procession to church to offer thanks to God for the recent triumph. The 13th of December was appointed as a day of national thanksgiving.

**36. Events of 1782 and 1783.**—The surrender of Cornwallis may be considered as substantially closing the war: occasional skirmishes alone indicated its continuance. New York, Charleston, and Savannah were the only places of importance still held by the enemy.

Soon after the capture of Cornwallis, a part of the French army reembarked, and Count de Grasse sailed for the West Indies. Count Rochambeau cantoned his army, for the winter, in Virginia; and the main body of the Americans returned to their former position near the Hudson. Difficulties with the Indians continued about a year longer—with the Creeks and Cherokees on the frontiers of Georgia and South Carolina, and with other tribes on the Ohio.

**37. The people of England** had grown tired of the war, and the following spring Parliament took measures for putting an end to it. The command of his majesty's forces in America was taken from Sir Henry Clinton, and given to Sir Guy Carleton, who was instructed to promote the wishes of Great Britain for an accommodation with the United States.<sup>1</sup>

**38. Commissioners**<sup>2</sup> on the part of the United States were appointed to meet others on the part of England at Paris, where, November 30, 1782, provisional articles of peace were signed.

<sup>1</sup> In accordance with these instructions, Carleton endeavored to open a correspondence with Congress; but that body would enter into no negotiations except in concert with France.

<sup>2</sup> The commissioners on the part of the United States were John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, Henry Laurens, and Thomas Jefferson. Jefferson did not serve. On the part of England, Richard Oswald signed the provisional articles, David Hartley the definitive treaty.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the attempt to rescue Cornwallis? 35. Effect of news of this victory? 36. How may the surrender of Cornwallis be regarded? What were the only important places held by the enemy?—What is said of the French army? Of the Americans? Of difficulties with the Indians? 37. What was done by Parliament to put an end to the war in America?—What endeavor did Carleton make? 38. When were the provisional articles of peace signed, and when was the definitive treaty signed?

The definitive treaty was signed, September 3, 1783, and at the same time Great Britain concluded treaties with France and Spain. The independence of the United States was acknowledged. The boundaries assigned were, on the east and north, essentially the same as at present; on the west, the Mississippi; on the south, Florida, which then extended west to the Mississippi, having, at that river, parallel 31° for its northern limit. Florida was reconveyed to Spain.<sup>1</sup>

**39.** The cessation of hostilities was formally proclaimed to the army, April 19, 1783, the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington. New York was evacuated by the British November 25, 1783, a day still celebrated in that city as Evacuation Day. Savannah and Charleston had been evacuated the previous year, the former in July, the latter in December. Arrangements had already been made for the exchange of prisoners. During the war the English treated with the most revolting cruelty the Americans they had captured. They kept them in unwholesome prisons, or in crowded, filthy, ill-ventilated prison ships, where thousands of them died from want of air, exercise, and proper food.

**40.** The 3d of November was assigned for disbanding the army<sup>2</sup> of the United States. On the day previous Washington issued his farewell orders, and bade an affectionate adieu to the soldiers who had fought and bled by his side. Soon after,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 12, § III., ¶ 1; p. 13, ¶¶ 3, 4; p. 68, ¶ 1; p. 80, ¶ 4; p. 94, ¶ 13; p. 162, ¶ 15, and note 5.

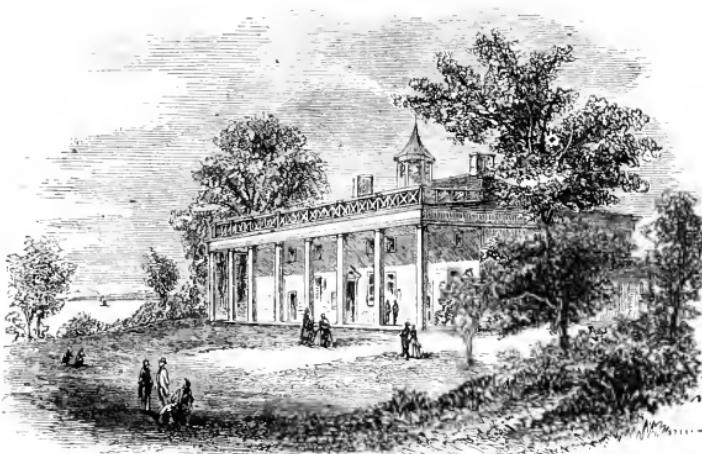
<sup>2</sup> The disbanding of the army involved considerations of the deepest interest. Thousands were to be thrown out of service—and what could they do? Neither officers nor soldiers, for a long time, had received any pay; and the state of the public finances rendered present payment impossible. In December, the officers in camp at Newburg, in behalf of the army, sent a memorial to Congress, representing the hardships of the case, and proposing that a specific sum should be given them for the money actually due, and in commutation of the half-pay for life, which Congress had promised to officers who should serve to the end of the war. The winter passed away, and Congress had taken no satisfactory action upon the memorial. In this state of the case, March 10, 1783, a very exciting appeal was made to the officers, in an anonymous letter, afterwards avowed by Major John Armstrong, at that time an aide-de-camp to General Gates. The writer recommended measures of redress, or a refusal to disband. It was an artful and eloquent address, and but for the firmness and prudence of Washington would have had its designed effect. The influence of that great man, however, prevailed. The officers decided, at a meeting which Washington called, and at which Gates presided, that they would do nothing which should tend to sully the glory they had acquired in their country's service. The subject was again taken up in Congress, and happily adjusted. Many of the officers at one time doubted that the states would ever be able to form an efficient government, and at their instigation, Colonel Lewis Nicola wrote to Washington, urging the establishment of a monarchy, and offering him the crown. Washington indignantly repelled the offer.

The states had furnished during the war the following number of soldiers for the regular army, reckoned in annual terms of service (from *Niles's Register*, July 31, 1830):—

New Hampshire,	12,497	Delaware,	2,386
Massachusetts,	67,907	Maryland,	13,912
Rhode Island,	5,908	Virginia,	26,678
Connecticut,	31,939	North Carolina,	7,263
New York,	17,781	South Carolina,	6,417
New Jersey,	10,726	Georgia,	2,679
Pennsylvania,	25,678		
Total,			231,771

**QUESTIONS.**—With what other nations did Great Britain conclude treaties? What boundaries were assigned to the United States by this treaty? 40. When was the cessation of hostilities proclaimed to the army? When was New York evacuated? When Savannah? When Charleston? What is said of the treatment of prisoners by the English? 41. What date was assigned for disbanding the army? What is said of Washington's farewell to his soldiers?

in New York, he took a final leave of his officers, greatly endeared to him by common sufferings and dangers. December 23, he appeared in the hall of Congress, at Annapolis, and resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States.



Mount Vernon.

The next morning he left Annapolis, and hastened to his home at Mount Vernon, a private citizen of the country whose liberties he had secured, bearing with him the love, devotion, and gratitude of his countrymen, and the admiration of the world.



### CHAPTER III.

#### THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

**1.** THE war of the Revolution was now closed. The colonies were free and independent; but it soon became apparent that the central government did not possess the requisite power, under the Articles of Confederation,<sup>1</sup> to administer the affairs of the nation. In May, 1787, delegates from all the states, except Rhode Island, convened in Philadelphia, and framed a constitution,<sup>2</sup> which was submitted to the several states, with the condition that in the states adopting it, it should go into effect after its adoption by nine states.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 128, ¶ 25.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 8.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Washington's farewell to his officers? Of the resignation of his commission? What more is said of Washington? Chap. III. 1. What soon became apparent? When, where, and for what purpose did a convention assemble? What states were represented? What was framed by this convention? When was the new constitution to go into effect?

**2.** By the **Articles of Confederation**, Congress had power to declare war and to contract debts. It had already contracted debts to a vast amount,<sup>1</sup> but it had no power to pay its debts. It could not raise money by taxation. It could advise the states to pay their respective shares of the national liabilities, but it could do no more. Some of the states attempted, in accordance with the advice of Congress, to bear their proportions of the public burdens, and to support their credit. This, in Massachusetts, produced, in the winter of 1786-7, the outbreak **1786-7.** called **Shays's Insurrection**, from its leader, Daniel Shays, formerly a captain in the continental army. In the western counties the courts of law were closed by armed mobs, the object being to prevent legal measures for the collection of debts and taxes. To suppress the insurrection, the governor called out four thousand militia, to serve under the command of General Lincoln. The insurgents were soon dispersed. Fourteen of the ringleaders were found guilty of treason and condemned to death, but all were ultimately pardoned.

**3.** Virginia advised a **convention** of delegates from the states, to meet at **Annapolis**, in September, 1786, to establish a better system of commercial regulations. Only five states were represented, and the convention adjourned, after having recommended that another convention be called to revise the Articles of Confederation. Accordingly, the next May a **convention**, in which all the states but Rhode Island were represented, met in the State House<sup>2</sup> in **Philadelphia**. This assembly was composed of the ablest men of the nation. General Washington, one of the delegates from Virginia, was chosen president. It was soon perceived that a mere revision of the Articles of Confederation would not suffice, and the convention addressed itself to the task of preparing a constitution. The convention came near dissolving without accomplishing its purpose; but at length the spirit of mutual compromise and concession prevailed, and after a session of four months, the instrument was adopted, and signed September 17.<sup>3</sup>

**4.** The **new constitution** met with a strong opposition. Many thought it gave too much power to the central government. The people were quickly divided into two parties, the *Federalists*, the supporters of the constitution, and the *Anti-Federalists*, its opponents. The opposition to it called forth an able defence, in a series of papers called the *Federalist*,

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not possible to ascertain with certainty the expense of the Revolutionary War. It has been estimated to have amounted, in specie, to about \$135,000,000. But the advances made from the treasury were principally in a paper medium, called *continental money*, and which, in a short time, depreciated (see p. 136, ¶ 11, and note 3). These advances have been estimated to have amounted to near \$360,000,000, in nominal value. Part of the continental money was funded at an immense depreciation, part of it became worthless in the hands of its holders.

<sup>2</sup> See p. II9, ¶ 2.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 15.

QUESTIONS.—2. What is said of the power of Congress under the Articles of Confederation? How was Shays's insurrection produced? How suppressed? 3. For what purpose did Virginia advise a convention to meet at Annapolis? What did this convention recommend? How was the assembly which met at Philadelphia composed? Its president? In what spirit was the new constitution agreed upon? After how long a session? 4. How were the people divided in regard to the new constitution? Names of its supporters and its opponents? What series of papers was written in defence of the constitution? By whom written?

written by Alexander Hamilton—who during the war had been the confidential aid of Washington—James Madison, and John Jay.

5. Early in the summer of 1788 it had received the assent of the requisite number of states. The rest soon gave in 1788. their adhesion to it.<sup>1</sup> George Washington was the unanimous choice of both parties for the first president under the new constitution, and John Adams was elected vice-president.<sup>2</sup>



## CHAPTER IV.

### CONDITION, AT THE CLOSE OF THIS PERIOD, OF WHAT IS NOW THE UNITED STATES.

1. THE boundaries of the United States at the close of this Period have already been given,<sup>3</sup> and most of the original thirteen states had taken their present limits.

**New Hampshire**,<sup>4</sup> for a long time claiming jurisdiction over Vermont,<sup>5</sup> had yielded her claim to New York, and taken the Connecticut as her western boundary. **Massachusetts**<sup>6</sup> still exercised jurisdiction over Maine,<sup>7</sup> but had arranged her western boundary with New York as at present, accepting, in satisfaction of the claim under her charter to territory farther west, the proprietorship of vast tracts of land in Western New York. **Rhode Island**<sup>8</sup> and **Connecticut**<sup>9</sup> had boundaries essentially the same as at present, the latter retaining, of all her claims under her charter, only a portion of territory on Lake Erie, known as the “Connecticut Reserve,” which now constitutes the north-eastern part of Ohio.<sup>9</sup> **New York**<sup>8</sup> claimed Vermont. **New Jersey**,<sup>8</sup> **Pennsylvania**,<sup>10</sup> **Delaware**,<sup>10</sup> and **Maryland**,<sup>10</sup> had boundaries as now. **Virginia**<sup>10</sup> included Kentucky,<sup>5</sup> and **North Carolina**,<sup>10</sup> Tennessee.<sup>11</sup> **South Carolina**<sup>10</sup> had her present limits, and **Georgia**,<sup>12</sup> claimed as much of the present Alabama<sup>13</sup> and Mississippi<sup>13</sup> as then belonged to the United States.

<sup>1</sup> The States ratified the new constitution in the following order:—

Delaware, . . . . .	December 7, 1787.	South Carolina, . . . . .	May 23, 1788.
Pennsylvania, . . . . .	December 12, 1787.	New Hampshire, . . . . .	June 21, 1788.
New Jersey, . . . . .	December 18, 1787.	Virginia, . . . . .	June 26, 1788.
Georgia, . . . . .	January 2, 1788.	New York, . . . . .	July 26, 1788.
Connecticut, . . . . .	June 9, 1788.	North Carolina, . . . . .	November 21, 1789.
Massachusetts, . . . . .	February 6, 1788.	Rhode Island, . . . . .	May 29, 1790.
Maryland, . . . . .	April 28, 1788.		

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 12, ¶¶ 1, 2, 3, Sec. I, Art. II., Const. U. S., and p. 16, Art. XII., Amendments Const. U. S.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 146, ¶ 38.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 73.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 160.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 76.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 190.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 77.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 165.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 78.

<sup>11</sup> See p. 163.

<sup>12</sup> See p. 79.

<sup>13</sup> See p. 190.

QUESTIONS.—5. When had the new constitution received the assent of the requisite number of states? Who was the first president under this constitution? Vice-president? Chap. IV. 1. What of the limits of most of the original states at the close of this Period?—What is said of New Hampshire? Massachusetts? Rhode Island and Connecticut? New York? New Jersey? Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland? Virginia? North Carolina? South Carolina? Georgia?

2. The territory north of the Ohio, claimed by different states, had been ceded to the United States, and, by an ordinance of Congress in 1787, it was organized into a territory, **1787.** called the **North-west Territory.** This vast region was secured to freedom by the ordinance which declared that "there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said territory, otherwise than in punishment of crimes."<sup>1</sup> **Territory since annexed** to the United States remained in general in the same condition as at the close of the last Period.

3. The population of the United States at the close of this Period was nearly four millions.

During the war there had been but little gain in the number of the inhabitants. Immigration nearly ceased. Many men had fallen in battle. Many Tories had left the country. After the close of the war the states began again to increase in population.

4. At the commencement of the Revolution the colonists of America were husbandmen, merchants, mechanics, and fishermen, who were occupied in the ordinary duties of their respective callings, and were sober, honest, and industrious. But when the struggle for independence began, new fields for exertion were opened, and a great change was suddenly wrought in the American people. Many who were before only known in the humble sphere of peaceful occupations, soon shone forth in the cabinet or in the field. The war, too, did much to wear away local peculiarities and prejudices. But the Revolution introduced, at the same time, greater looseness of **manners and morals.** An army always carries deep vices in its train, and communicates its corruption to society around it. Besides this, the failure of public credit so far put it out of the power of individuals to perform private engagements, that the breach of them became common, and at length was scarcely disgraceful. That high sense of integrity which had existed before, was thus exchanged for more loose and slippery notions of honesty and honor. The peace of 1783, however, tended, in a measure, to restore things to their former state. Those sober habits, for which the country was previously distinguished, began to return; business assumed a more regular and equitable character, and the tumultuous passions roused by the war subsided.

---

<sup>1</sup> This famous *anti-slavery proviso* was borrowed from a plan submitted to Congress three years before by Jefferson, for the government not only of the North-west Territory, but of other territory south of the Ohio and between the present western boundaries of Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, and the Mississippi River. The anti-slavery proviso was struck out; otherwise Jefferson's plan was adopted. Four slave states—Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi—were afterwards formed from the territory south of the Ohio.

QUESTIONS.—2. What was the North-west Territory? How was this vast region secured to freedom? What of territory since annexed to the United States? 3. What was the population of the United States at the close of this Period? — What of gain in population during the war? After the close of the war? 4. What is said of the colonists at the commencement of the Revolution? What changes in occupation were brought about by the war? In local peculiarities and prejudices? In manners and morals? How was the high sense of integrity, which existed before the war, impaired? What effect did peace have on manners and morals?

**5. Slavery**, although in opposition to the rights of man for which the war had been waged, and in violation of the principles enunciated in the Declaration of Independence, by which the revolt had been justified to the world, remained undisturbed in all the states till near the close of the war. Before the close of the Period, however, all the states, except South Carolina and Georgia, had prohibited the further importation of slaves, and the New England States and Pennsylvania had adopted measures for the final extinction of slavery—an example followed, not many years later, by New York and New Jersey. Indeed, the wisest and best men of the time, north and south, looked forward with confidence and hope to the speedy abolition of an institution so repugnant to the principles of Christianity, and so fraught with danger to society, religion, and the state. Unfortunately, however, the system became riveted on the states east of the Mississippi, and south of Delaware Bay, Mason and Dixon's line,<sup>1</sup> and the Ohio.

**6. Religion**.—The frequent intercourse between different parts of the country, promoted by the Revolutionary War, had softened sectarian asperities, and nearly worn away the spirit of intolerance. But for these advantages the Revolution brought with it great disadvantages to religion in general. The atheistical philosophy, which had spread over France, was thickly sown in the American army by the French, and tended to produce a serious declension in the tone of religious feelings among the American people. In addition to this, religious institutions, during the war, were much neglected; churches were demolished, or converted into barracks; public worship was often suspended. After the war, infidelity began to lose ground, and the cause of religion to revive. *Methodism* was introduced into the United States during this Period. It increased rapidly, especially in the Middle States.

**7. Education** suffered, in common with other kindred interests. In several colleges the course of instruction was suspended; the hall was exchanged for the camp, and the gown for the sword and epaulet. After the war, interest in education revived, and before the end of the Period several colleges and other institutions of learning were established in different sections of the country. This Period added much that is valuable to the political and other literature of our language.

**8. During the war, the commerce** of the United States was suppressed, but it revived on the return of peace; the greater part of the shipping belonging to the country was destroyed by the enemy, or perished by a natural process of decay. Our coasts were so lined with British cruisers, as to render navigation too hazardous to be pursued to any considerable extent. For the two years immediately following the close

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 61, note 4.

QUESTIONS.—5. What is said of slavery? Before the close of the war what states had prohibited the further introduction of slaves? What states had adopted measures for the extinction of slavery? What others soon followed their example? To what did the wisest and best men look forward? Upon what states did slavery become riveted? 6. How did the war affect sectarianism and intolerance? What disadvantages to religion had the war brought? What is said of religious institutions? Of Methodism? 7. What of education during and after the war? 8. What of commerce?

of the Revolution, the imports from England alone amounted to thirty millions of dollars, while the exports of the United States to that country were only between eight and nine millions.

**9. Arts and manufactures** made considerable progress in the United States during this Period. Cut off by the war from foreign sources of supply, the people of the United States had been obliged to look to their own industry and ingenuity to furnish articles needed in the struggle and for the usual occupations of life. On the return of peace, many branches of manufacture had become so firmly established that they held their ground, even against the excessive importations that immediately followed.

**10. Agriculture** was greatly interrupted, during the war, by the withdrawing of laborers to the camp, and by the distractions which disturbed all the occupations of society. But within a few years after peace was established, the exports of products raised in the United States were again considerable. Attention began to be paid to the culture of cotton, in the Southern States, about the year 1783, and it soon became a staple of that part of the country. About the same time, agricultural societies began to be formed in the United States.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What is said of arts and manufactures? 10. What of agriculture?



## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures in and at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

- 1764. Parliament first declared its intention of raising a revenue from America, 102.
- 1765. The Stamp Act was passed by Parliament, 102.  
The Colonial Congress met in New York, 104.
- 1767. A tax was imposed upon tea, and several other articles, 106.
- 1770. The affray known as the *Boston Massacre* took place, 107.
- 1773. Committees of Correspondence and Inquiry were appointed, 108.  
The tea was thrown into Boston harbor, 108.
- 1774. The Boston Port Bill was enacted, 108.  
The first Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, 109.
- 1775. (April 19.) The first blood of the Revolutionary War was shed at *Lexington*, 111.  
Royal authority terminated throughout the colonies, 114; Congress assumed the authority of a general government, 115; Washington was appointed commander-in-chief, 115.  
The battle of *Bunker Hill* was fought, 114.
- 1776. The British were driven from *Boston*, 117; and an attack on *Charleston*, South Carolina, was gallantly repulsed, 118.  
Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence (July 4), 119.  
The Americans were defeated on *Long Island*, 120; evacuated New York, and fought an indecisive battle at *White Plains*—Washington retreated through New Jersey, 121; took a thousand prisoners at *Trenton*, 122.
- 1777. The army with Washington routed the enemy at *Princeton*, 123; was defeated at the *Brandywine*, left Philadelphia to be occupied by the British, and was repulsed by them at *Germantown*, 125.  
In the north, the enemy were defeated at *Bennington*, 127; and their army, under Burgoyne, surrendered at *Saratoga*, after two severe battles, 128.  
Congress sent out for adoption the Articles of Confederation, 128.
- 1778. France entered into treaties of alliance and commerce with the United States, 130.  
The Americans were victorious at *Monmouth Court-House*, 131; the British took *Savannah*, 133.
- 1779. The Americans were defeated at *Brier Creek*, 134; the British at *Stony Point*, 135; and John Paul Jones captured two English frigates in one of the most desperate naval combats on record, 136.  
General Sullivan led an army into Western New York, to chastise the Indians, who had joined with the British and Tories, 136.
- 1780. *Charleston*, South Carolina, surrendered to the British, 137; the Americans were defeated at *Camden*, and the British at *King's Mountain*, 138.  
Arnold plotted to betray West Point to the enemy, 139.

1781. General Greene conducted his celebrated campaign in the Carolinas, 141; the Americans gaining a victory at the *Cowpens*, 141; being defeated at *Guildford Court-House*, 142; and engaging the enemy in a hard-fought but indecisive battle at *Eutaw Springs*, 143.  
 Washington, aided by the French fleet and army, captured the British army and fleet at *Yorktown* (October 19) — the last important event of the war, 145.
1783. The treaty of peace was signed at Paris, 147.
1788. The new Constitution, prepared the year before, received the assent of the number of states required in order to go into effect, 150.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

1763. Great improvement in pottery, by Wedgwood, in England.
- 1768-74. Turkey wages war with Russia for violating Turkish territory in pursuing the Poles.
1769. Machine for spinning by rollers invented by Arkwright. The next year Hargreaves receives a patent for the spinning-jenny.
1772. First partition of Poland between Russia, Prussia, and Austria. The second partition occurred in 1793, and the final partition in 1795.
1773. The Order of Jesuits abolished by Pope Clement XIV.
1774. Louis XVI. king of France. He was beheaded in 1793.
1778. Sandwich Islands discovered by Captain Cook.
1780. Armed neutrality between Russia, Sweden, and Denmark, for the protection of neutral flags against the right of search claimed by England. The league soon comprehended nearly the whole of Europe. The Gordon or "No Popery" riots in London.
- Hyder Ali conquers the Carnatic, and soon after is conquered by Sir Eyre Coote.
1782. Watt, after making many improvements in the steam engine, invents a double-acting or rotative engine.
1783. First ministry of William Pitt, the younger.
1785. Power-loom invented by Cartwright.
- 1787-92. War between Turkey and Russia — disastrous to the former. Austria takes part in the war as an ally of Russia.

Among the eminent men who closed their career during this Period were,

Hogarth, . . . . .	1764.	Wm. Pitt, Earl of Chatham, . . . . .	1778.
Swedenborg, . . . . .	1772.	Blackstone, . . . . .	1780.
Goldsmith, . . . . .	1774.	Metastasio, . . . . .	1782.
Robert Lord Clive, . . . . .	1774.	D'Alembert, . . . . .	1783.
Hume, . . . . .	1776.	Euler, . . . . .	1783.
Linnæus, . . . . .	1778.	Samuel Johnson, . . . . .	1784.
Rousseau, . . . . .	1778.	Gluck, . . . . .	1787.
Voltaire, . . . . .	1778.	Buffon, . . . . .	1788.

## A N A L Y S I S.

---

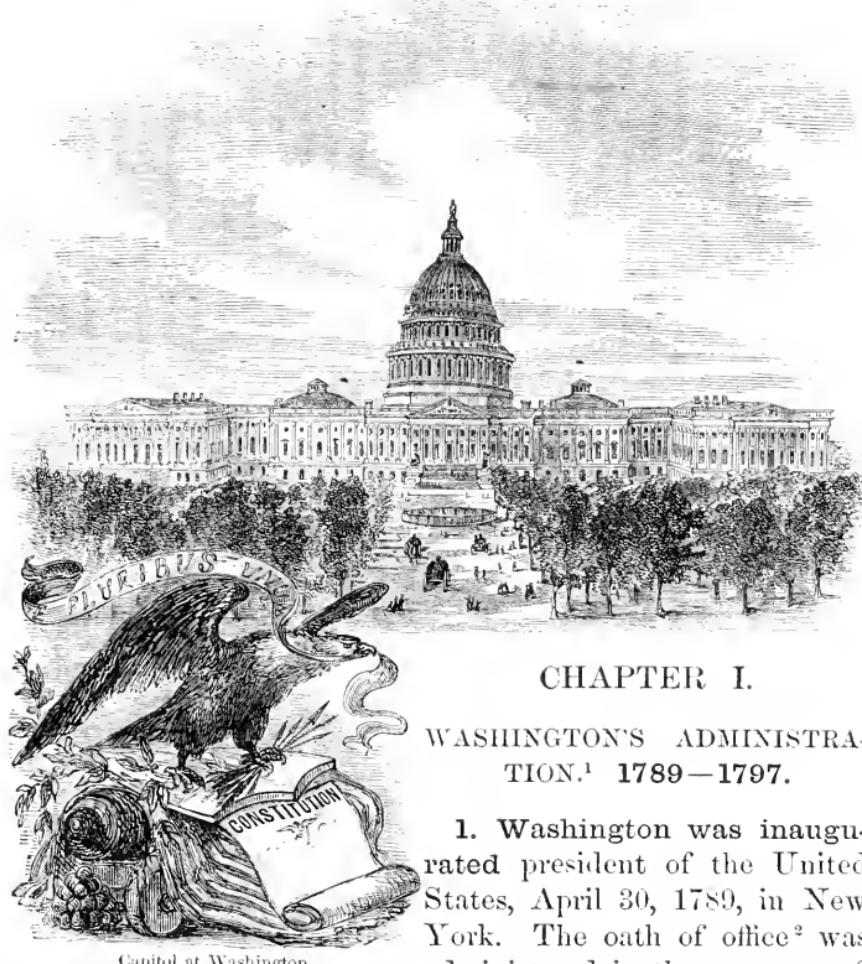
### PERIOD V.—NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT.

- Chapter I.—Washington's Administration, p. 157.  
 Chap. II.—Adams's Administration, p. 163.  
 Chap. III.—Jefferson's Administration, p. 165.  
 Chap. IV.—Madison's Administration.
- I. From the Beginning of the Administration to the Declaration of War with Great Britain, p. 169.
  - II. From the Declaration of War to the Battle of Plattsburg. War chiefly offensive, p. 171.
  - III. From the Battle of Plattsburg to the Close of the War. War chiefly defensive, p. 184.
  - IV. From the Close of the War with Great Britain to the Accession of Monroe, p. 189.
- Chap. V.—Monroe's Administration, p. 190.  
 Chap. VI.—John Quincy Adams's Administration, p. 193.  
 Chap. VII.—Jackson's Administration, p. 195.  
 Chap. VIII.—Van Buren's Administration, p. 201.  
 Chap. IX.—Harrison's and Tyler's Administrations, p. 203.  
 Chap. X.—Polk's Administration.
- I. From the Beginning of the Administration to the Declaration of War with Mexico, p. 207.
  - II. Plan of Operations. Operations of the Army under Taylor, p. 211.
  - III. Conquest of New Mexico and California, p. 213.
  - IV. Operations of the Army under Scott.—Peace, p. 214.
  - V. From the Close of the War with Mexico to the Accession of Taylor, p. 218.
- Chap. XI.—Taylor's and Fillmore's Administrations, p. 219.  
 Chap. XII.—Pierce's Administration, p. 222.  
 Chap. XIII.—Buchanan's Administration, p. 224.  
 Chap. XIV.—Condition of the United States at the Close of this Period, p. 230.
- Chronology, p. 233.

## PERIOD V.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT.

EXTENDING FROM THE INAUGURATION OF WASHINGTON, IN 1789, TO THE INAUGURATION OF LINCOLN, IN 1861.



#### CHAPTER I.

##### WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>1</sup> 1789—1797.

1. Washington was inaugurated president of the United States, April 30, 1789, in New York. The oath of office<sup>2</sup> was administered in the presence of

both Houses of Congress,<sup>3</sup> and a vast concourse of spectators.<sup>4</sup>

2. The first duty of Congress was to provide a revenue<sup>5</sup> for the support of government. For this purpose duties were laid on imported merchandise and on the tonnage of vessels.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 13, ¶ 8, Sec. I., Art. II., Const. U. S.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 8, Sec. I.; ¶ 1, Sec. II.; and p. 9, ¶ 1, Sec. III., Art. I., Const. U. S.

<sup>4</sup> The ceremony was performed in the open gallery of the old City Hall, repaired and renamed Federal Hall, fronting on Wall Street, on the site of the present Custom-House. The oath was administered by Robert R. Livingston, Chancellor of the State of New York.

<sup>5</sup> See Appendix, p. 10, ¶ 1, Sec. VII., and ¶ 1, Sec. VIII., Art. I., Const. U. S.

QUESTIONS.—1. When and where was Washington inaugurated? 2. What was the first duty of Congress? What was done to provide a revenue?

Three executive departments<sup>1</sup> were created, styled Department of Foreign Affairs (afterwards Department of State), of War, and of the Treasury. The heads of these departments were styled Secretaries, who, with the Attorney-General, constituted a council, called the president's *Cabinet*.<sup>2</sup>

3. A national judiciary,<sup>3</sup> also, was established, consisting of a Supreme Court, and Circuit and District Courts.



George Washington.

The Supreme Court had one chief justice and five associate justices. District courts were to consist of one judge in each state; circuit courts of two justices (afterwards one) of the Supreme Court, and the judge of the district in which the court might be held. This system has remained nearly the same till the present time. John Jay<sup>4</sup> was the first chief justice.

4. After the adjournment of Congress (September 29, 1789), **Washington** made a tour through the Eastern States. In the spring of the next year he made a similar tour through the Southern States. Everywhere he was received with the greatest enthusiasm.

5. On the reassembling of Congress (January, 1790), the secretary of the treasury, Alexander Hamilton,<sup>5</sup> in accordance with a resolution of the last session, submitted a plan for maintaining the public credit. Agreeably to his recommendation, measures were taken to pay the foreign and domestic debts of the United States, amounting to fifty-four millions of dollars, and to assume the debts of the states, contracted during the Revolutionary War, estimated at twenty-five millions. These

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 11, ¶ 18, Sec. VIII., Art. I., and p. 13, ¶¶ 1, 2, Sec. II., Art. II., Const. U. S.

<sup>2</sup> The Postmaster-General was made a cabinet officer at a later period. The Department of the Navy (see p. 164, ¶ 2,) and that of the Interior (see Appendix p. 20,) have since been added.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 13, Sec. I., Art. III., and p. 10, ¶ 9, Sec. VIII., Art. I., Const. U. S.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 162, ¶ 14, and notes 2, 3.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 4, and p. 167, ¶ 8.

QUESTIONS.—What executive departments were created? What were the heads of these departments styled? Who constituted the president's cabinet? 3. Of what was the national judiciary made to consist?—What is said of the Supreme Court? Of the District courts? Of the Circuit courts? 4. What is said of Washington's tours? 5. On the reassembling of Congress what plan was submitted by Hamilton? What measures were taken in accordance with this plan?

measures, the credit of which is due chiefly to Hamilton,<sup>1</sup> gave great confidence in the stability and integrity of the government, and laid the foundation of that unrivalled prosperity upon which the United States immediately entered.

To the assumption of the foreign debt there was no opposition; but the assumption of the domestic debt, and the full payment of the state debts, were strongly opposed, on the ground that many of the original holders of the securities would receive no benefit, having been obliged, in their poverty, to sell them to speculators for two or three shillings on the pound.

6. A national bank<sup>2</sup> (1791) and a mint<sup>3</sup> (1792), both located at Philadelphia, were also established during Washington's first term of office. New York was only temporarily the capital of the country. At the second session of Congress<sup>4</sup> an act was passed fixing the seat of government, for ten years, at Philadelphia, and after that, permanently on the Potomac. Under this act a tract of land ten miles square was ceded by Maryland and Virginia, and called the *District of Columbia*,<sup>5</sup> and a capital city was laid out, and named *Washington*.<sup>6</sup>

7. An Indian war broke out in 1790, on the north-western frontier, which was not brought to a close till 1795, **1790**. when, by treaty, the Indians ceded to the United States a vast tract of country in the North-west Territory, embracing more than half of the State of Ohio and part of Indiana.

<sup>1</sup> Said Daniel Webster, in deserved tribute to the ability of Hamilton, "He smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue burst forth. He touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprang upon its feet."

<sup>2</sup> The capital stock was ten millions of dollars, and the charter was to expire in 1811.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 10, ¶ 5, Sec. VIII., Art. I., Const. U. S. Branch mints have since been established at New Orleans; Charlotte, North Carolina; and Dahlonega, Georgia—all in 1835; at San Francisco, in 1852; at Denver, Colorado, 1862; at Carson City, Nevada, 1863; and an assay office at New York city, in 1853.

<sup>4</sup> See Appendix, p. 8, note 1.  
<sup>5</sup> See Appendix, p. II, ¶ 17, Sec. VIII., Art. I., Const. U. S. The part of this District on the Virginia side of the Potomac, containing forty square miles, has been ceded back to that state.

<sup>6</sup> The seat of government was transferred from Philadelphia to Washington in 1800.



Alexander Hamilton.

QUESTIONS.—Effect of these measures?—What is said of the assumption of the foreign debt? Why were the assumption of the domestic debt and the full payment of the state debts opposed? 6. When and where were a national bank and a mint established? What act was passed for fixing the seat of government? What was done under this act? 7. When and where did an Indian war break out? When was it brought to a close? What territory did the Indians cede?

On the breaking out of hostilities, the president attempted to restore peace by negotiation. Failing in this, he despatched **General Harmar** to reduce the hostile tribes to submission. This general came to an engagement with the Indians near Chillicothe, in which he was routed, with considerable loss. The command was then given to **General St. Clair**, governor of the North-west Territory, who, with a force of near two thousand men, marched from Fort Washington, now Cincinnati, September, 1791, into the Indian country, and, November 4, was surprised and defeated with the loss of six hundred men killed. **General Wayne**<sup>1</sup> was appointed to succeed St. Clair, and at the head of about three thousand men, he gained a complete victory over the hostile tribes, on the Maumee, August 20, 1794, and compelled them to sue for peace.

**8. During Washington's first term, Vermont<sup>2</sup> and Kentucky<sup>3</sup> were admitted into the Union as states; the former 1791-2. in 1791, the latter the next year.**

**Vermont** was settled at a much later period than any other of the Eastern States. The oldest English settlement is **Brattleboro'**, where a fort was erected in 1724. For many years, New York 1724. and New Hampshire laid claim to the territory; but New Hampshire surrendered her claim, and in 1790 the inhabitants purchased the interest of New York.

Virginia had previously exercised jurisdiction over **Kentucky**, and in 1776 erected it into a county. The territory was early known to the Indian traders. The first permanent settlement was made in 1775, 1775. by Daniel Boone and others, on the south side of the Kentucky. To this settlement was given the name of **Boonesboro'**. James Harrod, another bold backwoodsman, founded **Harrodsburg**, about the same time. During the Revolutionary War, the inhabitants suffered severely from the Indians, incited by agents of the British government.

**9. The measures of the administration caused party lines to be distinctly drawn. Of one party, called the *Republican* party, Jefferson, secretary of state, and Randolph, attorney-general, were the acknowledged leaders. Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and Adams, the vice-president, were at the head of the other party, called the *Federalist* party. On the meeting of the electors, in the autumn of 1792, Washington was again, however, their unanimous choice for **president**, and Adams was re-elected **vice-president**.**

<sup>1</sup> See p. 125, ¶ 15, and p. 135, ¶ 7.

<sup>2</sup> The name was derived from the French words *vert*, green, and *mont*, mountain. Vermont was named from the Green Mountains, its principal range.

<sup>3</sup> The name *Kentucky* means *the dark and bloody ground*—a name that that region earned from the aborigines, on account of the savage warfare of which it was the scene.

QUESTIONS.—Give a more particular account of this war. 8. What states were admitted to the Union during Washington's first term of office?—What can you tell of the early history of Vermont? Of Kentucky? 9. What is said of party lines? Name the two parties and their leaders. Result of the next presidential election?

10. In the early part of Washington's second term, the United States came near being drawn into a war with Great Britain, as an ally of France; but the firmness of Washington preserved the neutrality of the nation.

The **French Revolution**, then in progress, was remarkable for its political changes and its sanguinary violence. Monarchy had been abolished, Louis XVI. had fallen by the guillotine, a republic had been proclaimed, and the National Convention of France had made a proclamation of war against England, Holland, and Spain. These events excited the deepest interest in the United States. A large majority of the people, grateful for the aid of France in the American Revolution, fervently desired the success of the French Republic. The president, however, issued a proclamation of neutrality.<sup>1</sup>

11. The summer of 1794 was signalized by an insurrection in the western counties of Pennsylvania, commonly known as the **Whiskey Insurrection**. It had its origin in dissatisfaction with a law of Congress which imposed a <sup>1794.</sup> duty upon spirits distilled in the United States. It was quickly suppressed by the federal government.

Strong opposition to the law was early manifested, and armed resistance was made to the revenue officers while in the discharge of their duty. The president issued his proclamation, commanding the insurgents to disperse; and this not having the desired effect, he ordered out a body of militia, on whose approach the insurgents laid down their arms, and solicited the clemency of the government.

12. The same year a law was passed prohibiting the fitting out of ships in the United States for supplying any <sup>1794.</sup> foreign country with slaves. Congress did at this time all it constitutionally could to suppress the **slave trade**. It could not stop the importation of slaves till 1808.<sup>2</sup>

An exciting discussion on the subject of **slavery** had occurred in the national House of Representatives, in 1790,<sup>3</sup> growing out of petitions from the Quakers of several states for the abolition of the slave trade, and a petition on the same subject from the Pennsylvania Society for the Abolition

<sup>1</sup> The republic of France appointed, as its minister to the United States, Mr. Genet. Flattered by the manner in which he was received by the people, as well as by their professions of attachment to his country, Genet fitted out privateers from the ports of the United States, to prey upon British commerce, and in other ways infringed upon the neutrality proclaimed by the president. He also attempted to rouse the people against the government, because it did not second all his views. At length, at the request of the president, Genet was removed, and his successor instructed to assure the American government that France totally disapproved of the conduct of her minister. But the difficulties with French ministers did not end with Genet. See p. 164, ¶ 3. <sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 11, ¶ 1, Sec. IX., Art. I., Const. U. S.

<sup>3</sup> During the second session of the first Congress. See Appendix, p. 8, note 1.

QUESTIONS.—10. What happened during the early part of Washington's second term?—What is said of the French Revolution? What did a majority of the people of the United States desire? What course did the president take? II. Give an account of the whiskey insurrection. 12. What law in reference to the slave trade was passed in 1794? Out of what did an exciting discussion on slavery grow in 1790?

of Slavery. This last petition was signed by Dr. Franklin,<sup>1</sup> as president of the society, within a few weeks of the close of his long and eventful life. In the debate much bitter sectional feeling was manifested, chiefly by members from South Carolina and Georgia. The representatives from other states, north and south, generally leaned towards anti-slavery views. This was the first of the angry discussions on slavery which have occurred in Congress from time to time until the present day.

**13.** For some time the relations subsisting between the **United States and Great Britain** had been far from amicable, and a war between the two countries was imminent.

The principal causes of complaint were, on the part of the United States, the non-delivery of the western posts held by England, and the carrying off of slaves at the close of the Revolutionary War; on the part of Great Britain, the interposition, by the states, of legal impediments to the recovery of debts contracted before the war. Added to these sources of trouble, Great Britain was accused of exciting the hostility of the Indians on the northern frontier, of impressing American seamen, and capturing American trading vessels.

**14.** To avert the disastrous issue of war, Chief Justice Jay<sup>2</sup> was appointed envoy extraordinary to England, where he **1795.** negotiated a **treaty**, which was ratified in August, 1795.

The treaty provided indemnity for unlawful captures, but afforded no redress for the negroes carried away. The United States agreed to pay the debts contracted before the war, and the posts on the frontiers were to be evacuated by the British before June, 1796. The treaty met with great opposition.<sup>3</sup> The country was divided in regard to it; the cabinet were not united in its support; and the president was not entirely satisfied with it, but gave it his signature on its approval by the senate.<sup>4</sup> Contrary to the fears of its strong opposers, the treaty settled the difficulties between the two countries, and proved of advantage to the United States.

**15.** The same year the United States concluded a **treaty with Spain**, establishing the northern boundary of Florida,<sup>5</sup> and securing to both nations the free navigation of the Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 88, ¶ 7; p. 97, ¶ 6; p. 110, note 3; p. 131, ¶ 31; and p. 146, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 146, note 2; p. 150, ¶ 4; and p. 158, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> Meetings were held in Boston and other cities, and condemnatory resolutions were passed. In several places mobs threatened personal violence to the supporters of the treaty. Jay was burned in effigy, the British minister was insulted, and Hamilton, an advocate of the treaty, was stoned at a public meeting.

<sup>4</sup> See Appendix, p. 13, ¶ 2, Sec. II., Art. II., Const. U. S.

<sup>5</sup> The boundary of Florida by this treaty was the same as that agreed upon in the treaty with Great Britain in 1783 (see p. 147, ¶ 28), namely, parallel 31°, from the Mississippi to the Chattahoochee; that river to the mouth of the Flint; thence to the head of the St. Mary's; and that river to the ocean. See p. 170, ¶ 2, and p. 192, ¶ 6.

QUESTIONS.—What was manifested in debate? What further is said of this discussion? 13. What of the relations between the United States and Great Britain?—What were the principal causes of complaint on the part of the United States? On the part of Great Britain? What other sources of trouble? 14. What was done to avert war? When was a treaty ratified?—What were the terms of the treaty? How was the treaty regarded in the United States? What further is said of the treaty? 15. What other treaty was concluded this year? What of Florida in connection with this treaty? What of the Mississippi?

**16.** The admission of Tennessee,<sup>1</sup> in 1796, made the number of the United States sixteen. 1796.

Tennessee was ceded to the United States in 1789, by North Carolina,<sup>2</sup> emigrants from which state made the first permanent settlement on the Watauga, in 1768.<sup>3</sup> In 1790 the territory was organized 1768. as the Territory of the United States south of the Ohio.

**17.** The second presidential term was now drawing to a close, and Washington signified his intention to retire from public life.<sup>4</sup> The two great parties<sup>5</sup> into which the people had become divided, selected for their leaders John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. Adams, the Federalist candidate, was chosen president, and Jefferson, the Republican candidate, became vice-president.<sup>6</sup>

## CHAPTER II.

### ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>7</sup> 1797—1801.

**1.** THE condition of the country, on the accession of Mr. Adams, was one of great prosperity.

At home a sound credit had been established, an immense floating debt had been funded, and an ample revenue secured. Funds for the gradual payment of the debt had been provided, and a considerable part of it had been already discharged. The agricultural and commercial interests were flourishing. The western Indians were pacified. War with England had been averted. In one quarter only was the horizon darkened—our relations with France were still disturbed.

**2.** The misunderstanding which had arisen between France and the United States during the administration of Washington,<sup>8</sup> assumed a warlike aspect soon after the accession of Adams.

<sup>1</sup> Tennessee is an Indian word signifying the *river of the big bend*. The state is named from the River Tennessee. <sup>2</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> Fort Loudon was built by the English in 1756, on the Little Tennessee River, at its junction with the Tellico, about thirty miles from the present site of Knoxville. The fort was captured by the Indians, and the garrison massacred.

<sup>4</sup> As Washington was about to retire forever from public life, he felt it proper to express his views on some subjects connected with the vital interests and the future glory of his country. These he embodied in a Farewell Address, which for purity of language, beauty of conception, and soundness of political sentiments, has never been surpassed. It can never be read but to be admired. We cite only a single sentence. "The unity of government, which constitutes you one people, is dear to you. It is justly so; for it is the mainspring in the edifice of your real independence; the support of your tranquillity at home, your peace abroad; of your safety; of your prosperity; of that very liberty you so highly prize."

<sup>5</sup> See p. 160, ¶ 9. <sup>6</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 5, note 2. <sup>7</sup> See Appendix, p. 18. <sup>8</sup> See p. 161, ¶ 10.

QUESTIONS.—16. When was Tennessee admitted to the Union? What can you tell of the early history of Tennessee? 17. Who succeeded Washington as president? Who became vice-president? Chap. II. 1. What was the condition of the country on the accession of Mr. Adams? —What can you tell more particularly of the condition of the country? 2. What is said of the misunderstanding with France?

The army was increased, a naval armament prepared, and a *Department of the Navy* established. But in 1799

**1800.** Bonaparte took control of affairs in France, and a treaty was negotiated with him the next year.



John Adams.

"tribute," was the universal cry throughout the country. The government began to prepare for war. Washington was appointed commander-in-chief. **Hostilities** were, in fact, begun. The French frigate *Insurgente* captured the American schooner *Retaliation*; and the American frigate *Constellation*, under Commodore Truxton, afterwards captured the *Insurgente*. Overtures for renewing the **negotiations** were presently received from the French Directory, and were immediately responded to by the president, by the appointment of envoys for concluding a peace. On their arrival at Paris they found the Directory overthrown, and the government in the hands of Napoleon Bonaparte, as First Consul.

**4.** The party that elected Mr. Adams was fast losing its hold on the people, and probably no acts of his administration did so much to break it down as the passage of the **Alien and Sedition Laws**,<sup>3</sup> in 1798.

**5.** The *alien law* authorized the president to order any alien, whom he should judge dangerous to the United States, to leave the country.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 161, ¶ 10, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> The executive power of France at this time. These laws were advocated on account of efforts that foreign emissaries were then making to embroil the United States in European difficulties. They were opposed on the ground that they abridged personal liberty, and freedom of speech, and consequently were unconstitutional.

QUESTIONS.—What was done in preparation for war? How was war averted? 3. What is said of the conduct of French ministers? What of French cruisers? Of the French Directory? In anticipation of war, who was appointed commander-in-chief? What hostilities actually took place? What negotiations for peace? 4. What is said of the party that elected Mr. Adams? What of the alien and sedition laws? 5. What did the alien law authorize the president to do?

Under the *sedition law*, any person could be punished, by fine and imprisonment, for speaking, writing, or publishing anything false or malicious against the government, the president, or Congress. The legislatures of **Kentucky** and **Virginia**, in opposition to these laws, asserted that a state had a right to judge for itself how far the national authority should be considered binding. This was the first official expression of that dangerous doctrine that, one third of a century later, caused so much alarm, under the name of *nullification*,<sup>1</sup> and after the expiration of another third of a century, under the name of *secession*, forced the country into a civil war,<sup>2</sup> for the magnitude of which history affords no parallel.

6. Near the close of the century, the country was plunged into grief at the death of **Washington**. He died at Mount Vernon, the 14th of December, 1799. The whole nation mourned the loss of the man "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

7. At the next presidential election, the Federalists put in nomination President Adams and Charles C. Pinckney, of South Carolina; the Republicans, Mr. Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York. The Republican candidates received a majority of the votes, but as each had the same number, the election went to the House of Representatives, where Jefferson was elected president and Burr vice-president.<sup>4</sup>



### CHAPTER III.

#### JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>5</sup> 1801—1809.

1. THE commencement of Mr. Jefferson's administration was marked by the transfer of many offices of the government to the Republican party. Internal taxes were abolished, and several unpopular laws repealed.

2. **Ohio**<sup>6</sup> was admitted into the Union in 1802. 1802.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 198, ¶ 9. <sup>2</sup> See p. 227, ¶ 10. <sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 12, ¶ 3, Sec. I., Art. II., Const. U. S.

<sup>4</sup> As this was the first time that the election devolved upon Congress, a deep interest was taken in the subject. On the first balloting Jefferson had eight states, Burr six, and two divided, which result continued for thirty-five ballottings. The thirty-sixth resulted in the election of Jefferson. Burr was declared elected vice-president. The Republicans in the House generally supported Jefferson, the Federalists, Burr.

<sup>5</sup> See Appendix, p. 18.

<sup>6</sup> *Ohio*, the Indian name of the river which washes the southern border of the state, signifies the beautiful river.

QUESTIONS.—For what could a person be punished under the sedition law? What did Kentucky and Virginia assert in opposition to these laws? Under what name does the doctrine expressed by these states appear a third of a century later? After another third of a century? 6. When and where did Washington die? How was the whole country affected by his death? 7. At the next presidential election why did the election go to the House of Representatives? Who was elected president? Who vice-president? Chap. III. 1. What marked the commencement of Jefferson's administration? 2. When was Ohio admitted to the Union?

Ohio was a part of the North-west Territory,<sup>1</sup> another part of which had previously been organized as the Indiana Territory. To this last was now annexed the rest of the North-west Territory.<sup>2</sup> The first English settlement in Ohio was begun at **Marietta**, in 1788, under **1788.** General Rufus Putnam, from New England. For some years the settlement of the territory was retarded by wars with the Indians; but a general peace with the different tribes having been effected in 1795,<sup>3</sup> the population began to increase rapidly by emigration from New England and from Europe.



Thomas Jefferson.

**3.** In 1803 the United States, for fifteen millions of dollars, **1803.** purchased **Louisiana**<sup>4</sup> of France, to which country it had been previously ceded by Spain.

Besides acquiring a vast extent of territory, the United States thus obtained control of the Mississippi from its source to its mouth. The boundaries between Louisiana and the Spanish province of Mexico were not settled till 1821.<sup>5</sup> On the east, the United States, after a few years, claimed Florida as far as the Perdido River, that being the eastern limit of the old French province of Louisiana.

**4.** In the autumn of 1804 Jefferson was reelected president, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

**5.** In June, 1805, a war, which had continued for several years, between the United States and **Tripoli**, was **1805.** concluded, and a treaty of peace negotiated, by which American commerce gained some respite from the depredations of the Mediterranean pirates.<sup>6</sup>

**6.** A treaty of peace with the piratical **Barbary States** had been bought, during Washington's administration, by the payment of a heavy

<sup>1</sup> See p. 151, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 159, ¶ 7.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 170, ¶ 2.

<sup>5</sup> Then it was agreed that the dividing line should follow the Sabine, from its mouth to the thirty-second parallel, thence a meridian to the Red River, that river to the one hundredth meridian west from Greenwich, that meridian to the Arkansas, that river to its source, thence north to the forty-second parallel, and that parallel to the Pacific. The territory of the United States south of this line has since been acquired from Mexico (see p. 218, ¶ 7, and p. 222, ¶ 1, and Map, p. 209). For the northern boundary of the Louisiana purchase, see p. 192, ¶ 6, and p. 207, ¶ 1.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of the early history of Ohio? 3. When was Louisiana purchased? Of what nation, and for how much money?—What is said of the boundaries of Louisiana? 4. Who were chosen president and vice-president in 1804? 5. With what state had the United States been engaged in war? When was a treaty concluded, and the result to American commerce? 6. Give a more particular account of the war with Tripoli.

tribute. But in 1801, the Bashaw of Tripoli, for the purpose of obtaining a larger sum, declared war. The United States had already despatched Commodore Dale with a **squadron to repel hostilities**. More ships were sent out, and the Americans, under Dale, Preble, Rodgers, and Samuel Barron, were victorious in several gallant naval actions.<sup>1</sup> A successful **land attack** was also made, under the lead of William Eaton, an adventurous American. The reigning Bashaw of Tripoli had usurped the throne, and driven his elder brother, Hamet, the rightful heir, into exile. Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, concerted a plan with Hamet to expel the usurper. At the head of a few hundred men, recruited in Egypt, only nine of whom were Americans, Eaton marched from Alexandria across the desert to the Tripolitan city Derne. By a joint attack of this motley troop and an American squadron, the city was taken. This success, and the bombardment of Tripoli, brought the Bashaw to terms, and a treaty of peace was made. Prisoners were exchanged, and a ransom was given the Bashaw for the excess of Americans held by him.

**7.** On March 2, 1807, an act was passed, though not without strong opposition, forbidding the introduction of slaves into the United States after January 1, 1808. The year 1807 also witnessed the successful application of steam to purposes of navigation.

After several years of experiment, **Robert Fulton**,<sup>2</sup> an American engineer, launched a steamboat, in which he made a voyage from New York to Albany, in August of this year.

**8. Aaron Burr**,<sup>3</sup> who had fastened a quarrel upon Hamilton,<sup>4</sup> and killed him in a duel, July, 1804, became an object of general distrust, and failed to be re-elected vice-president. Having formed vast projects for power and empire in the west, in 1807 he was brought to trial at Richmond, on two charges: 1st, of treason against the United States,

<sup>1</sup> One of the boldest exploits was achieved by Lieutenant Decatur. Captain Bainbridge, in the Philadelphia, while chasing a cruiser into the harbor of Tripoli, grounded his vessel, and, with his crew, was taken prisoner. Decatur, with the consent of Preble, selected twenty men, concealed them in the bottom of a small vessel, and proceeded, on the approach of night, towards the frigate. On reaching it, Decatur, with his companions, leaped on board, swept every pirate from the deck, and set the frigate on fire. The Americans did not lose a man. For this gallant achievement Decatur received a captain's commission. See p. 188, ¶ 9.

<sup>2</sup> John Fitch constructed a boat, which was propelled by steam on the Delaware, in 1786. But Fulton first made steam-navigation practicable and profitable.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 165, ¶ 7.

Robert Fulton.



<sup>4</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 4, and p. 158, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—How was the bashaw brought to terms? Terms of the treaty? 7. What act was passed March 2, 1807? For what else is the year 1807 remarkable? —What is said of Robert Fulton? 8. What projects had Burr formed? On what charges was he brought to trial?

in attempting to revolutionize the territory west of the Alleghanies, and to establish an independent empire there, of which New Orleans was to be the capital, and himself the chief; 2d, of getting up an expedition against Mexico, then belonging to Spain, a nation with which the United States were at peace. The evidence against Burr was not sufficient to convict him, and he was set at liberty.

**9.** During Jefferson's second term, American commerce suffered severely from the *British Orders in Council*, and Bonaparte's *Berlin and Milan Decrees*.

France and England were at war, and to injure France and her allies, England issued, in May, 1806, orders in council, declaring the coast of Europe, from the Elbe, in Germany, to the Brest, in France, to be in a state of blockade. Bonaparte retaliated by a decree from Berlin, declaring the British Islands to be in a state of blockade. England, early the next year, by orders in council, prohibited coasting trade between the ports of her enemy, and, later, declared all vessels trading with France liable to be confiscated unless they had first paid tribute to England. In answer, Bonaparte issued from Milan a decree, confiscating every vessel found in his ports that had submitted to English search, or paid England tribute.

**10.** The aggressions committed by British cruisers, in executing the orders in council, in maintaining the *right of search*, and in the *impressment of seamen* from American vessels, led to a war with England during the next administration.

England claimed the right to search American vessels, and to take her native born subjects, wherever found, for her navy. Against this claim the American government remonstrated in vain. The ships of the United States were often robbed of their seamen by British men-of-war.

**11.** While France and England were engaged in their desperate commercial game, so ruinous to the rights of neutral powers, the feeling in America was still further exasperated against Great Britain by an unprovoked attack, June 22, 1807, of the English frigate **Leopard** upon the United States frigate **Chesapeake**.

Off the capes of Virginia, the captain of the British frigate Leopard demanded of Commodore James Barron, of the Chesapeake, permission to search his ship for seamen, claimed as deserters from the British service. This Commodore Barron refused, whereupon the Leopard opened fire. Unconscious of danger, and unprepared for action, the Chesapeake struck her colors, having received considerable damage, and lost several men. The commander of the Leopard then took from the Chesapeake four seamen, three of them being Americans by birth.

QUESTIONS.—9. From what did American commerce suffer during Jefferson's second term? — Give a more particular account of the British orders in council and Bonaparte's Berlin and Milan decrees. 10. What led to a war with England during the next administration? — What did England claim? 11. How was the feeling in America still further exasperated against Great Britain? — Give an account of the affair of the Chesapeake and Leopard.

**12.** The president immediately issued a **proclamation**, ordering all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States until England should make reparation for the outrage upon the American flag. Although the British government did not undertake to defend this outrage, yet reparation was withheld for more than four years.<sup>1</sup>

**13.** To such an extent did the course of England and France injure American commerce, that Congress decreed an **embargo** (December 22, 1807), which kept at home all vessels belonging to the United States that were then at home, called home all that were abroad, and prevented foreign vessels leaving ports of the United States with cargoes shipped after the passage of the act. At home the embargo produced great dissatisfaction and distress. It failed to bring about any change in the policy of England and France, and near the close of Jefferson's administration it was repealed, and in its place was passed a **non-intercourse act**, forbidding all intercourse with these countries till their offensive measures should be rescinded. Such was the posture of affairs when Jefferson retired from office. James Madison, of Virginia, was chosen to succeed him as **president**, and George Clinton was re-elected **vice-president**.

## CHAPTER IV.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>2</sup> 1809—1817.

**I. FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE ADMINISTRATION TO THE DECLARATION OF WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.—1.** In the early part of Madison's administration the **North-western Indians** became so hostile that at length General **1811.** William Henry Harrison,<sup>3</sup> governor of the Territory of Indiana,<sup>4</sup> marched against them, and routed them in a severe battle on the **Tippecanoe**, November 7, 1811.

<sup>1</sup> The British minister communicated to the secretary of state that the attack on the Chesapeake was unauthorized by his majesty's government; that the officer at that time in command on the American coast had been recalled; that the men taken from the Chesapeake should be restored; and that suitable pecuniary provision should be made for those who suffered in the attack, and for the families of the seamen who fell.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 19.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 203.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 4.

**QUESTIONS.**—12. What proclamation did the president immediately issue? What did the British government do? 13. Why and when was an embargo decreed? Effect of the embargo? Why was it repealed? What was substituted in its place? Who became president, and who vice-president, on the retirement of Jefferson? Chap. IV. I. What is said of the North-western Indians? By what general were they routed? In what battle, and when?

The tribes on the north-western frontier had been incited to acts of enmity by the famous chief Tecumseh and his brother "the Prophet," who attempted to unite them in a league to prevent the extension of white settlements in that quarter. It was believed that the hostile spirit of the Indians was also fomented by British agents.

**2. Louisiana took her place as one of the United States in 1812.** The state was formed from a part of the Louisiana Purchase.<sup>1</sup>

Soon after the cession of Louisiana to the United States, that part of the territory forming the present State of Louisiana was organized as the Territory of Orleans. West Florida,<sup>2</sup> as far as the Pearl River, was annexed to the state.

**3. At the beginning of Madison's term of office, the relations of the United States with England and France were**

becoming more and more unsatisfactory. At length, however, Bonaparte so modified his offensive edicts<sup>3</sup> that friendly intercourse was resumed with France. England refused to revoke her orders in council,<sup>4</sup> and sent armed vessels to intercept American merchantmen on the coast of the United States.

**4. In the midst of the excitement growing out of this state of affairs, May 16, 1811. Commodore Rodgers, in the United States frigate**

**1811. President,** hailed off the coast of Virginia a British sloop of

An engagement followed, and the Little Belt, was completely disabled, and thirty-two of her men were killed and wounded. The President was but slightly damaged, and had only one man wounded.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 67, ¶ 3; p. 80, ¶ 1; p. 94, ¶ 13; and p. 166, ¶ 3.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 162, ¶ 15, and note 5. While Florida was in possession of the English (see p. 94, ¶ 13), England extended its western boundary to Louisiana as ceded to Spain (see p. 94, ¶ 13, note 5), and divided the province into East and West Florida—the latter lying west of the Apalachicola.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 168, ¶ 9.

<sup>4</sup> The officers of the Little Belt assert that the President fired the first shot. This is, however, disproved by Commodore Rodgers, his officers and men.

QUESTIONS.—Who attempted to unite the Indians in a league against the whites? For what purpose? 2. When did Louisiana become a state?—What can you tell of the early history of Louisiana? 3. What is said of the relations of the United States with England and France? Why was friendly intercourse resumed with France? What course did England take? 4. Give an account of the affair between the President and Little Belt.



James Madison.

II. FROM THE DECLARATION OF WAR TO THE BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG.—WAR ON THE LAND CHIEFLY OFFENSIVE.<sup>1</sup>

Events of 1812.—1. There was now no hope of an accommodation with Great Britain, and in April, 1812, Congress established an embargo for ninety days, as preliminary to a declaration of war, which the president proclaimed June 19 of the same year. Major-General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief.

2. The people of the United States were not unanimously in favor of the declaration. Among the advocates of the war, Henry Clay,<sup>2</sup> of Kentucky, and John C. Calhoun,<sup>3</sup> of South Carolina, were conspicuous. The Federalists<sup>4</sup> for the most part opposed it. The country was but poorly prepared for the contest. To oppose the overwhelming power of Great Britain, the United States had, at the time of the declaration, an army of but about ten thousand effective men, a navy of ten frigates, a few smaller vessels, and a hundred and seventy useless gunboats. Measures were taken to increase the regular army to thirty-five thousand men, and the president was authorized to accept fifty thousand volunteers, and to call out one hundred thousand militia for the defence of the frontiers and sea-coast. The navy of Great Britain at that time included nearly a thousand vessels. Fortunately, however, the power of that country was chiefly absorbed in the European struggle.<sup>4</sup>

3. The want of officers properly trained was immediately felt, and led to the appointment (on a plan suggested by Washington fifteen years before) of permanent professors, at the West Point Military Academy, to give instruction in the art of war. The Academy had been established, on a very limited scale, ten years previously.

4. The opening of the war was signalized by an attempt to conquer Canada. General William Hull, the governor of Michigan Territory,<sup>5</sup> crossed from Detroit into Canada, July 12, but withdrew in about a month, and took shelter within the fortifications of Detroit. August 16, to the great indignation of his men, without any attempt at defence, he surrendered the garrison and the whole territory to General Isaac Brock, the British commander, who had pursued him on his retreat.

<sup>1</sup> See Maps, pp. 172, 173.

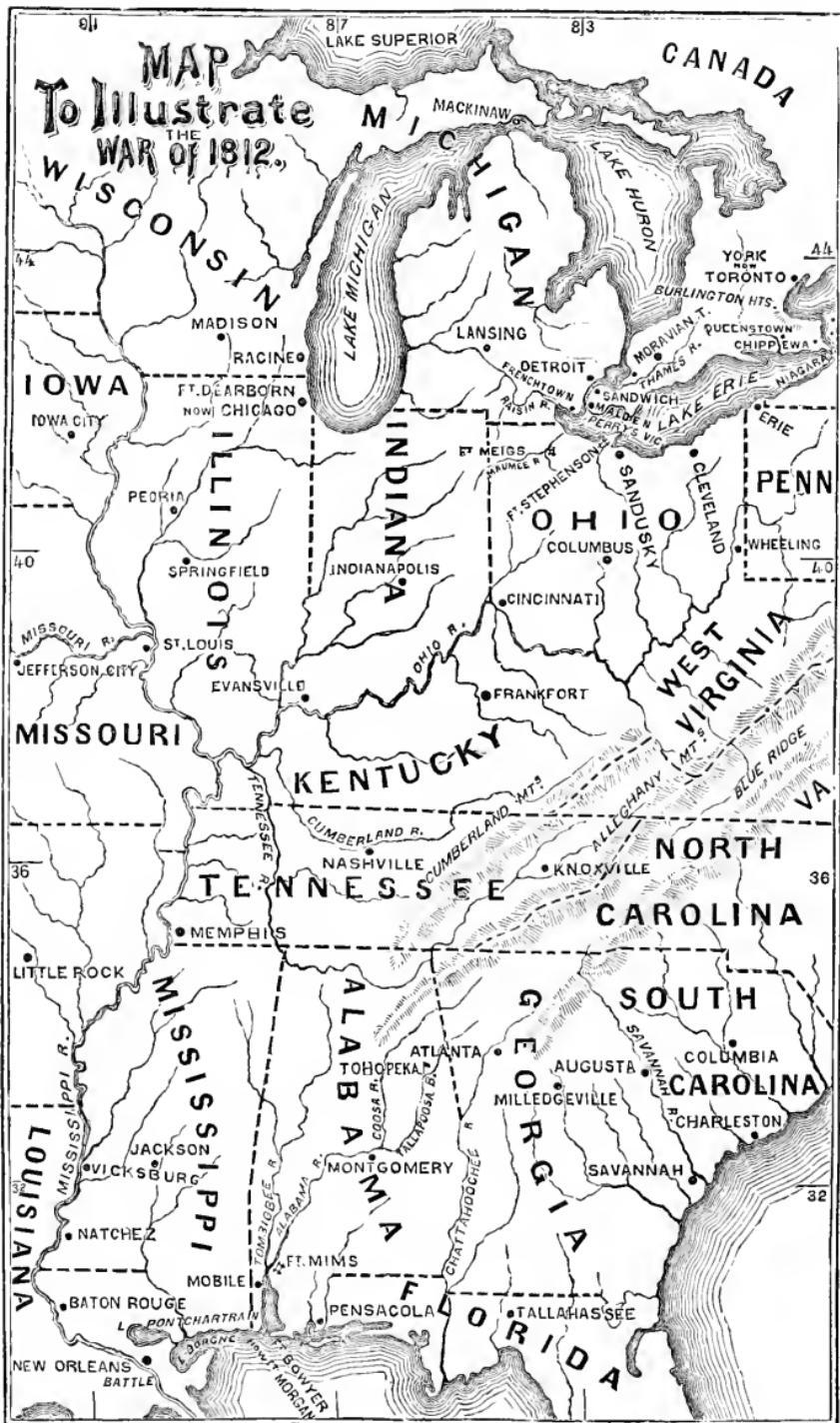
<sup>2</sup> See p. 220, ¶¶ 2, 3.

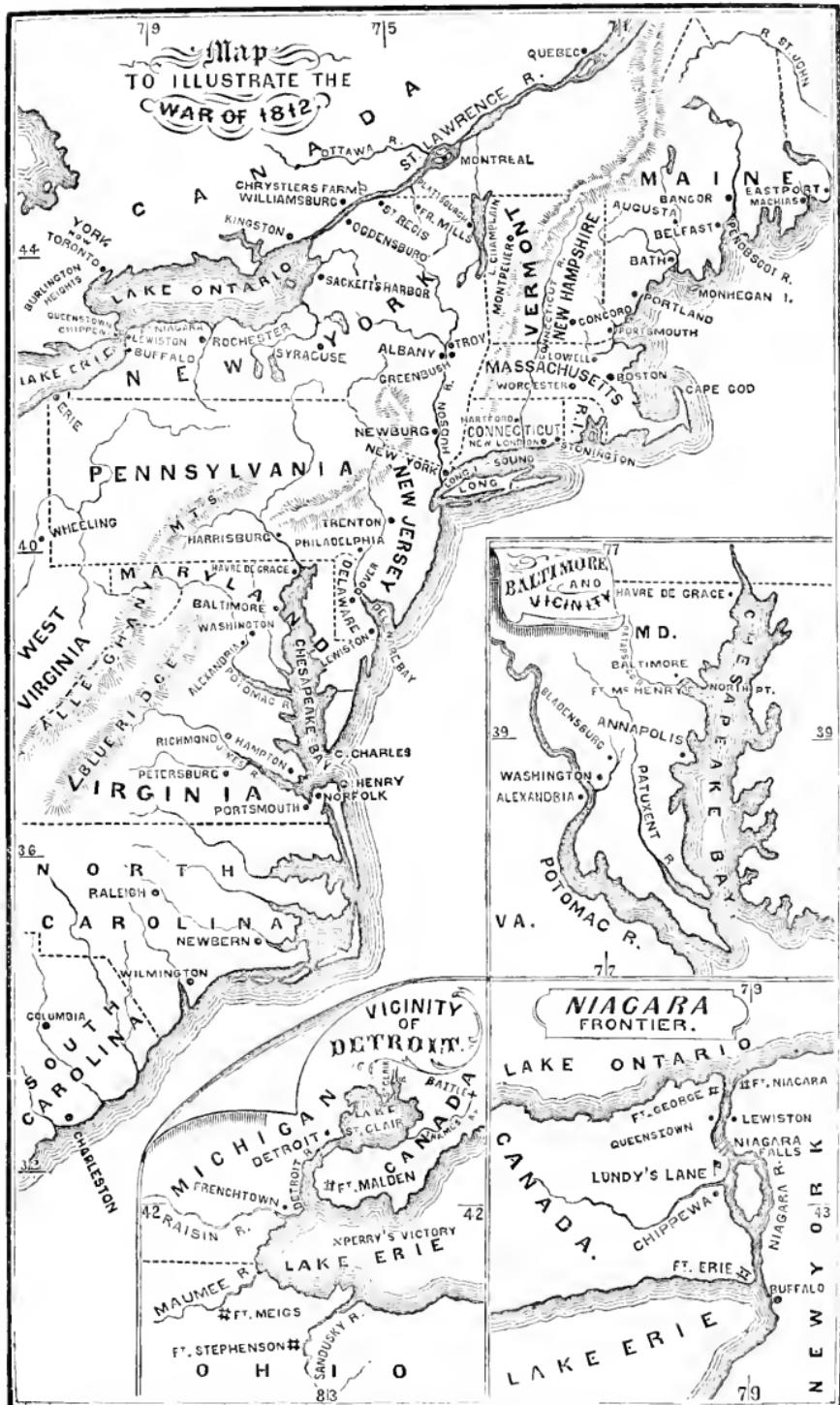
<sup>3</sup> See p. 160, ¶ 9.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 168, ¶ 9, and p. 182, ¶ 26, note 4.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 200, ¶ 15.

QUESTIONS.—1. For what purpose was an embargo established? When was war declared? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces? 2. How did the people of the United States regard the declaration of war? Who were conspicuous among the advocates of the war? Who for the most part opposed it? What is said of the preparation of the country for the war? Of the army? Of the navy? What measures for defence were taken? What is said of Great Britain? 3. What want was immediately felt? To what did this want lead? 4. How was the opening of the war signalized? Give an account of the invasion of Canada and the surrender of Detroit.





Hull crossed into Canada with about two thousand men, intending to attack Fort Malden; but learning that the fort had been reënforced, that reinforcements and supplies sent from Ohio had been cut off, **1812.** and that Mackinaw, a strong post on which he had relied to keep the northern Indians in check, had been surprised by a party of savages and English, and had surrendered, he abandoned the enterprise without striking a blow. Brock pursued him into Michigan, with about fourteen hundred men, nearly half of whom were Indians.

**5.** Hull's disaster did not prevent another attempt to invade Canada. General Stephen Van Rensselaer, who commanded a body of Americans on the Niagara frontier, sent a party across the river, October 13, to attack the British at **Queenstown Heights.** The invaders gained possession of a battery on the bank, but at length were compelled to surrender, the enemy having been reënforced, and many of the American militia refusing to cross over to aid their countrymen.

The Americans lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, more than a thousand. About one hundred of the British were killed, among whom was General Brock, their commander. Among the Americans who distinguished themselves were Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott<sup>1</sup> and Captain John Ellis Wool,<sup>2</sup> who were taken prisoners.

**6.** **Fort Dearborn,**<sup>3</sup> by order of General Hull, was evacuated the day before his surrender. The sound of war was heard all along the **northern frontier**, and the report of loss and disaster was lightened by tidings of no important American success.

General Harrison,<sup>4</sup> at the head of volunteers, chiefly from Kentucky, attempted to recover Detroit, but accomplished nothing. General Smyth, who succeeded Van Rensselaer, attempted an invasion of Canada from Buffalo, which resulted only in giving the British a few more prisoners. General Brown,<sup>5</sup> in command of the militia of Northern New York, repelled an attack on Ogdensburg. In the mean time General Dearborn,<sup>6</sup> with his immediate command, had reached the frontier by way of Lake Champlain; but, like the rest, he effected nothing towards the conquest of Canada.<sup>7</sup>

**7.** From disasters on land the Americans turned for encouragement to the exploits of their little **navy**, which was, almost without exception, successful on the ocean. Captain David Porter, in the frigate *Essex*, began that series of

<sup>1</sup> See p. 214, § IV., and p. 246, ¶ 13.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 211, ¶ 1, and p. 267, ¶ 29.

<sup>3</sup> Now Chieno.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 169, ¶ 1. One of Harrison's bravest officers was Captain Zachary Taylor (see p. 208, ¶ 4, and p. 249.)

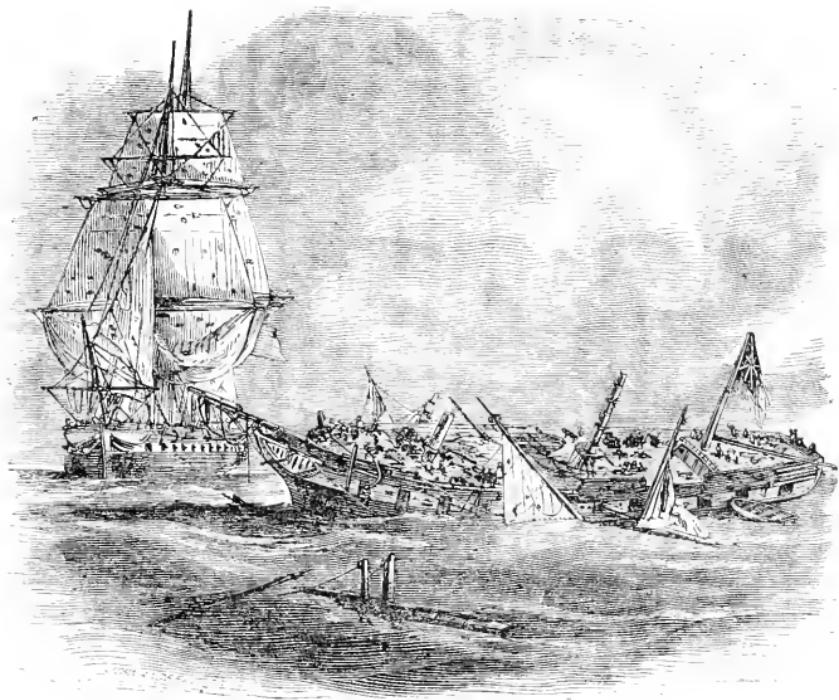
<sup>5</sup> See p. 182, ¶ 27.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 171, ¶ 1.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 176, ¶ 9.

QUESTIONS.—What further particulars of the invasion of Canada can you give? 5. Give an account of the attack upon Queenstown Heights. 6. What is said of Fort Dearborn? Of the war along the northern frontier?—What is said of General Harrison? General Smyth? General Brown? General Dearborn? 7. What is said of the exploits of the American navy? Of Captain Porter and the *Essex*?

American naval achievements for which the war was distinguished, by dashing into a British convoy and cutting out a transport filled with troops; August 13, he captured the British sloop of war *Alert*. On the 19th Captain Isaac Hull, of the



Constitution and Guerriere.

United States frigate *Constitution*,<sup>1</sup> encountered the frigate *Guerriere*, off the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and after a brief engagement compelled her to surrender. The British ship was so much damaged that the victors burned her. The Constitution was but slightly injured. Next followed, October 18, off the coast of North Carolina, a victory gained by the sloop of war *Wasp*, Captain Jacob Jones, over the British brig *Frolic*. In the afternoon of the same day both vessels were taken by the English seventy-four *Poictiers*. Just one week elapsed, when Commodore Stephen Decatur,<sup>2</sup> in the frigate *United States*, cruising south of the Azores,<sup>3</sup> captured the English frigate

<sup>1</sup> Familiarly known as *Old Ironsides*.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 167, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Islands in the Atlantic Ocean, about three fourths of the way from Virginia to Spain.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Captain Hull and the Constitution? Of Captain Jones and the Wasp? Commodore Decatur and the United States?

*Macedonian.* The last naval triumph of this year was the capture, December 29, off Brazil, of the British frigate *Java*, by the *Constitution*, then commanded by Commodore William Bainbridge.<sup>1</sup> Before the close of the year more than three

hundred prizes had been taken by American ships of war, and by privateers, which were preying upon British commerce in every sea. Meanwhile naval armaments were in preparation on the lakes, to aid in the conquest of Canada.<sup>2</sup>

8. In the autumn of this year the people of the United States set the seal of their approval on the war, by reelecting Mr. Madison president by a large majority. Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, was chosen vice-president.

9. **Events of 1813.**—At the beginning of 1813, the American forces on the **northern frontier**<sup>3</sup> were divided into three armies: the *Army of the West*, under General Harrison, near the head of Lake Erie; the *Army of the Centre*, under General Dearborn, on the Niagara frontier; and the *Army of the North*, under General Wade Hampton,<sup>4</sup> near Lake Champlain.

10. In January, General James Winchester advanced to the Maumee Rapids,<sup>5</sup> with a portion of the **Army of the West**, consisting of about eight hundred men, chiefly from Kentucky. He sent forward a detachment, which routed a body of Indians and British at **Frenchtown**, on the River Raisin, and soon followed with the rest of his force. Early in the morning of the 22d, he was attacked by a large number of British and Indians, under Colonel Proctor, and forced to surrender.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 167, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 19.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 22.

<sup>5</sup> Near Perrysburg.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 171, 4

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Commodore Bainbridge and the *Constitution*? Of American ships of war and privateers? Of naval armaments on the lakes? 8. In the autumn how did the people show their approval of the war? Who was chosen vice-president? 9. How were the American forces on the frontier divided at the beginning of 1813? Name the commanders of each division. 10. Give an account of the battle at Frenchtown.



Stephen Decatur.

Proctor promised to protect his prisoners from the Indians, but marched away, leaving the wounded to the mercy of his savage allies, who fell upon them and perpetrated the most inhuman butcheries. By this bloody tragedy all Kentucky was thrown into mourning, and "Remember the Raisin," became the war-cry of her sons.

**11.** At the time of this disaster, Harrison was on his way to aid Winchester. Learning of the surrender at Frenchtown, he established a post at the Rapids,<sup>1</sup> and named it, in honor of the governor of Ohio, **Fort Meigs.** Here, about the first of May, he was besieged by a large force of British and Indians under Proctor. But the siege was raised in a few days by the arrival of reinforcements from Kentucky, under General Greene Clay. Two months later Proctor again advanced upon the fort, but soon relinquished his designs upon that post, and proceeded against **Fort Stephenson**, at Lower Sandusky,<sup>2</sup> garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men, under Major George Croghan, then but twenty-one years old. To a summons to surrender, the gallant major replied, that he would defend the fort to the last man. The British and their allies made a vigorous onset, but were driven back with great loss, the Indians, as usual, deserting at the first repulse.

**12.** The enemy yet held Michigan and Lake Erie, and threatened Ohio; but a different face was put upon affairs in that quarter by **Perry's victory** on Lake Erie. On the 10th of September, Captain Perry, with a few vessels, encountered the British squadron, under Captain Barclay, off Sandusky, and the result was a complete victory for the Americans. "We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop," was Perry's laconic report to General Harrison.

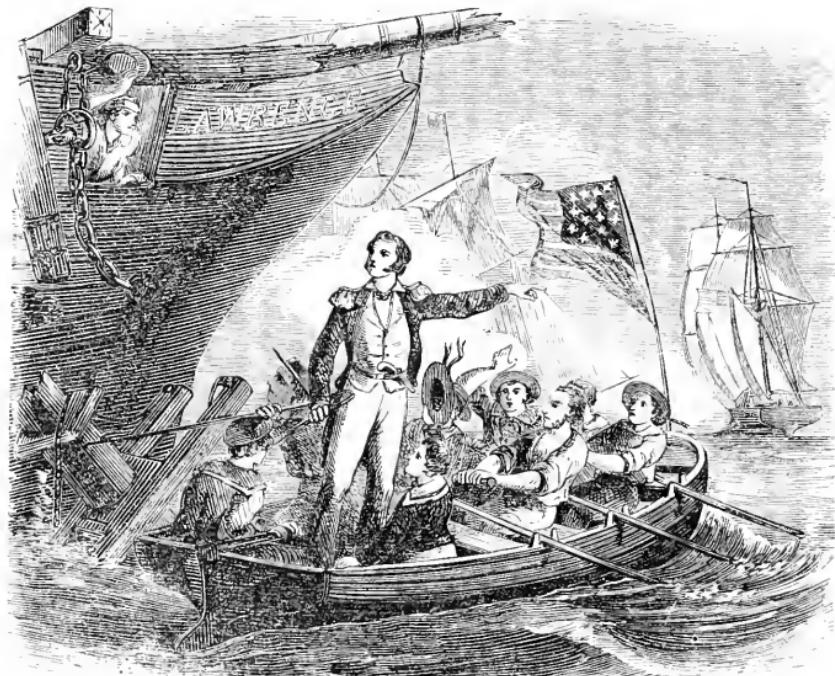
Commodore Isaac Chauncey,<sup>3</sup> who had been appointed to the command of the lakes, and who had already achieved some successes on Lake Ontario, sent Captain Oliver Hazard Perry to prepare a fleet and command it on Lake Erie. At Erie, a port in Pennsylvania, Perry fitted out his squadron—nine vessels, carrying fifty-five guns. The enemy had six vessels with sixty-three guns. Each fleet had about five hundred men. The fight began near noon. Compelled to abandon his flag-ship, the Lawrence, which had been completely disabled by the concentrated fire of the British fleet, Perry took to a boat, and through a storm of shot transferred his flag to another ship. Then breaking through the line of the enemy, he poured into their vessels a succession of broadsides with such terrific effect that the whole fleet surrendered.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 176, ¶ 10.

<sup>2</sup> Now Fremont.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 179, ¶¶ 16, 18.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the treatment of prisoners by the Indians? II. What fort did Harrison erect, and where? Give an account of Proctor's attempts upon this fort. Of his attempt upon Fort Stephenson. 12. Give an account of Perry's victory on Lake Erie.—Who had been appointed to the command of the lakes? Give further particulars of the battle.



Perry's Victory on Lake Erie.

13. Harrison hastened to profit by this victory. Embarking his troops on board the fleet, he crossed to Canada, and advanced upon Malden, only to find that the enemy had retreated. The Americans, pursuing, overtook Proctor at the Moravian town on the **Thames**, and gave battle, October 5. Nearly all of Proctor's command were captured; a few were killed; Proctor himself escaped with a small guard. Tecumseh,<sup>1</sup> who had for years been the chief instigator of Indian difficulties in the north-west, was slain.

At the beginning of the battle, Colonel Richard M. Johnson,<sup>2</sup> with his regiment of mounted Kentuckians, made a furious charge, from which the British could not recover. The Indians fought bravely till Colonel Johnson's pistol took off Tecumseh, when his savage followers fled.<sup>3</sup>

14. By this victory Ohio was saved, Michigan, except the extreme north, regained, Indian hostilities were suppressed, and the work of the Army of the West was completed. General

<sup>1</sup> See p. 170, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> Afterwards vice-president (see p. 201, ¶ 16).

<sup>3</sup> In this battle were retaken six field-pieces which had been surrendered by Hull (see p. 171, ¶ 4). On two of them was the inscription, "Surrendered by Burgoyne, at Saratoga."

QUESTIONS.—13. How did Harrison profit by this victory? Give an account of the battle on the Thames. What is said of Colonel Johnson? 14. Result of this battle?

Harrison sent home his volunteers, and, leaving General Lewis Cass<sup>1</sup> with a strong garrison for Detroit, embarked with the rest of his regulars for Buffalo, to join the Army of the Centre.<sup>2</sup> Harrison soon afterwards resigned his commission.

**15.** The Armies of the Centre and the North<sup>2</sup> accomplished but little this year. York,<sup>3</sup> the capital of Upper Canada, was captured, but soon abandoned; Fort George, and all the British posts on the Niagara, were occupied by the Americans, who, however, before the end of the year, were not only compelled to relinquish them, but also to surrender the forts on the American side of the river.

**16.** Late in April General Dearborn<sup>2</sup> embarked from Sackett's Harbor, with seventeen hundred men, on board the fleet of Commodore Chauncey,<sup>4</sup> for the purpose of attacking York, the great depository of British military stores. On the 27th a landing was effected, Colonel Scott, who had recently been exchanged,<sup>5</sup> leading the van. General Pike, to whom was intrusted the command, immediately led his troops to the assault. They met with but little resistance. The enemy fled, and the town capitulated, but not before two hundred Americans were killed or wounded by the explosion of a magazine. The brave General Pike was mortally wounded.

**17.** One month later, May 27, the fleet and army proceeded against Fort George. A landing was effected under the gallant Scott. The British abandoned the fort, and fled towards the head of the lake. A detachment of Americans, under Generals John Chandler and William Henry Winder, was sent in pursuit of the enemy. At Stony Creek the British made a night attack, June 6, upon their pursuers, and though repulsed with considerable loss, both the American generals fell into their hands. Another detachment of six hundred men, ordered to disperse a body of the enemy at the Beaver Dams,<sup>6</sup> was surrounded and compelled to surrender, June 24. After the fall of Fort George all the British forts on the Niagara were speedily evacuated.

**18.** To collect troops for his enterprise against Fort George, Dearborn had weakened the posts on Lake Ontario. Sir George Prevost, the British commander-in-chief in Canada, seized this opportunity to make a descent upon Sackett's Harbor, May 29. The British, though repelled by General Brown,<sup>7</sup> succeeded in getting command of the lake, and kept the Americans in a state of inactivity for the whole summer. At length Commodore Chauncey, after an indecisive action off York, September 28, drove the enemy's fleet into Burlington Bay, and held it there for some time blockaded.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 229, ¶ 15.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 174, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 176, ¶ 9.

<sup>6</sup> A few miles westerly from Queenstown.

<sup>3</sup> Now Toronto.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 177, ¶ 12.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 174, ¶ 6.

QUESTIONS.—How did General Harrison dispose of his army? 15. What is said of the armies of the centre and the north? Of York? Of Fort George and the British posts on the Niagara? 16. Give some particulars of the capture of York. 17. Of the capture of Fort George. Of the affair at Stony Creek? At Beaver Dams? 18. What is said of the attack on Sackett's Harbor? Of the Americans on the lake during the summer? What was done by Commodore Chauncey?

**19.** Early in November General James Wilkinson<sup>1</sup> having succeeded Dearborn in command of the Army of the **1813.** Centre,<sup>2</sup> set about the long proposed expedition against **Montreal**; but the lateness of the season, and want of support from the Army of the North,<sup>2</sup> caused the failure of the enterprise.

Wilkinson embarked, with seven thousand infantry, to descend the St. Lawrence. Five hundred cavalry advanced by land. Near Williamsburg he landed a body of men to disperse parties of British on the Canada shore, that were hovering near his flotilla. November 11, an indecisive action took place, known as the battle of **Chrystler's Farm.**<sup>3</sup> The Americans lost severely. Wilkinson proceeded as far as St. Regis, where he expected Hampton<sup>2</sup> to meet him with troops from the northern army. This, however, Hampton declined to do, and the expedition against Montreal was given up. Wilkinson went into winter quarters at French Mills, Hampton at Plattsburg. The latter was soon succeeded by General Izard.

**20.** Tidings from the **Niagara frontier** but added to the mortification at the failure of the expedition under Wilkinson. General George McClure, who had been left in command in that quarter, destroyed Fort George, with the neighboring village of Newark, and abandoned the Canada shore early in December. Before the end of the month, parties of British and Indians crossed the river, took Fort Niagara, and, in revenge for the burning of Newark, laid waste the New York border, as far as Buffalo, with fire and sword. The invaders then retired, except from Niagara, which they held until the end of the war.<sup>4</sup>

**21.** The British, during this year, held in close **blockade** the Atlantic coast from the Mississippi to Cape Cod, and made many **forays** upon exposed places.

Lewiston, on Delaware Bay, was bombarded; Havre de Grace, and several other villages on the Chesapeake, were plundered and burned. The enemy were repulsed in an attempt to capture Norfolk and Portsmouth, in Virginia; but landing at Hampton, they perpetrated the grossest outrages. They then sailed along the Carolina coast, robbing the people of their crops, live stock, and slaves. The name of Cockburn, the commander of the British blockading squadron, became another term for cruelty.

**22.** The career of the **American navy**,<sup>5</sup> this year, though not so brilliant as that of 1812, was very creditable. So strict was the blockade that cruisers found great difficulty in getting to sea.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 182, ¶ 26.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 182, ¶ 27.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 176, ¶ 9.

<sup>3</sup> Called also the battle of Williamsburg.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 174, ¶ 7, and p. 177, ¶ 12.

QUESTIONS.—19. What is said of the expedition against Montreal?—Give some particulars of this expedition. 20. Meanwhile what had been done by General McClure on the Niagara frontier? How was the burning of Newark avenged? 21. What is said of the British blockade this year?—What of Lewiston? Of Havre de Grace, and other villages on the Chesapeake? Of Hampton? Of the Carolina coast? What is said of Cockburn? 22. What is said of the career of the American navy this year?

February 24, the United States sloop-of-war *Hornet*, Captain James Lawrence, encountered the British brig *Peacock*, off the coast of Guiana. After an action of fifteen minutes the Peacock struck her colors, and soon sunk, carrying down nine of her own crew and three Americans who had gone to their rescue. After his return to the United States, Captain Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, then lying in Boston Harbor. June 1, with a raw crew, and short of officers, he put to sea to engage the British frigate *Shannon*, which was lying off the harbor inviting an attack. Early in the action the Chesapeake became exposed to a raking fire from the Shannon, and in a few moments every officer on deck was killed or wounded. The enemy immediately boarded and hoisted the British flag. Captain Lawrence, as he was carried below, mortally wounded, issued his last heroic order, "*Don't give up the ship.*"

**23.** The American brig *Argus*, Captain Allen, after a cruise on the English coast in which she had made prizes of more than twenty merchantmen, was herself captured, after a severe fight, August 14, by the British brig *Pelican*, of superior force. September 5, victory returned to the American flag. The British brig *Boxer*, Captain Blythe, surrendered to the American brig *Enterprise*, Lieutenant Burrows, after a hot engagement of little more than half an hour, off Monhegan,<sup>1</sup> on the coast of Maine. Both commanders fell in the action, and were buried with the honors of war in Portland.<sup>2</sup>

**24.** In December, a new Congress (the thirteenth) assembled. In this Congress the peace party had increased, though the war party was still largely in the majority. Daniel Webster<sup>3</sup> began his congressional career this session as a Federalist representative from New Hampshire. There was a growing opposition to the war<sup>4</sup> in New England and the other commercial states. Massachusetts, though not going to the extent of nullification, took the lead against the war, considering it ruinous to the interests of the country, wrong in its origin, and in its progress characterized by the grossest mismanagement. She even refused to join in votes of thanks to the victorious heroes of the American navy.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 36, ¶ 2, note 4.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 187, ¶ 9.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 221, ¶ 5.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 184, ¶ 3.

QUESTIONS.—What of Captain Lawrence and the Hornet? Give an account of the engagement between the Chesapeake and Shannon. 23. What of Captain Allen and the Argus? Of the engagement between the Boxer and the Enterprise? 24. What of the peace and war parties in the thirteenth congress? Where was there a growing opposition to the war? What was the course of Massachusetts?

**25. Events of 1814.**—On the 27th of March General Andrew Jackson,<sup>1</sup> with an army of volunteers, completely broke the power of the **Creeks**, in a battle fought at **Tohopeka**, or Horse-shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa River.

The fall of Tecumseh has already been noticed.<sup>2</sup> That chieftain's influence was felt beyond the tribes of the north-west. He had stirred up the Creeks to war. The inhabitants of Southern Alabama took refuge in forts, one of which, **Fort Mims**, was surprised and captured, August 30, 1813. Nearly four hundred men, women, and children were consigned to death within its walls. Volunteers from all quarters flocked in to avenge this horrid massacre. The principal body of these was from Tennessee, under Jackson, whose standard was also joined by friendly Indians. In a **series of conflicts**, beginning with the early part of November and ending with the battle of Tohopeka, the Creeks were defeated, yet at a great sacrifice of life to the victors. The next August Jackson concluded a **treaty** with them, by which they surrendered a large part of their territory.

**26.** In March General Wilkinson<sup>3</sup> attempted to enter **Canada** by way of Lake Champlain, but was repulsed, and soon after resigned his command. The abdication of Napoleon,<sup>4</sup> in April, left **England** at liberty to bring several thousand veteran troops from the European struggle to America, and with the exception of some brilliant exploits on the Niagara frontier, the **United States** acted mainly on the defensive for the rest of the war.

**27.** Early in July General Brown,<sup>5</sup> who had reached the Niagara frontier<sup>6</sup> from Sackett's Harbor, crossed the river with two brigades, commanded by Generals Scott<sup>7</sup> and Ripley, and captured **Fort Erie**. He then proceeded down the river, General Scott leading the advance, and on the 5th gained a brilliant victory over the enemy, strongly intrenched behind the **Chippewa**, under General Riall. The latter withdrew to the shore of Lake Ontario, where he was joined by a large force under Lieutenant-General Drummond, who, taking the command, marched against the Americans. Near sunset, July 25, he met them at **Lundy's Lane**, advancing, led by General Scott.

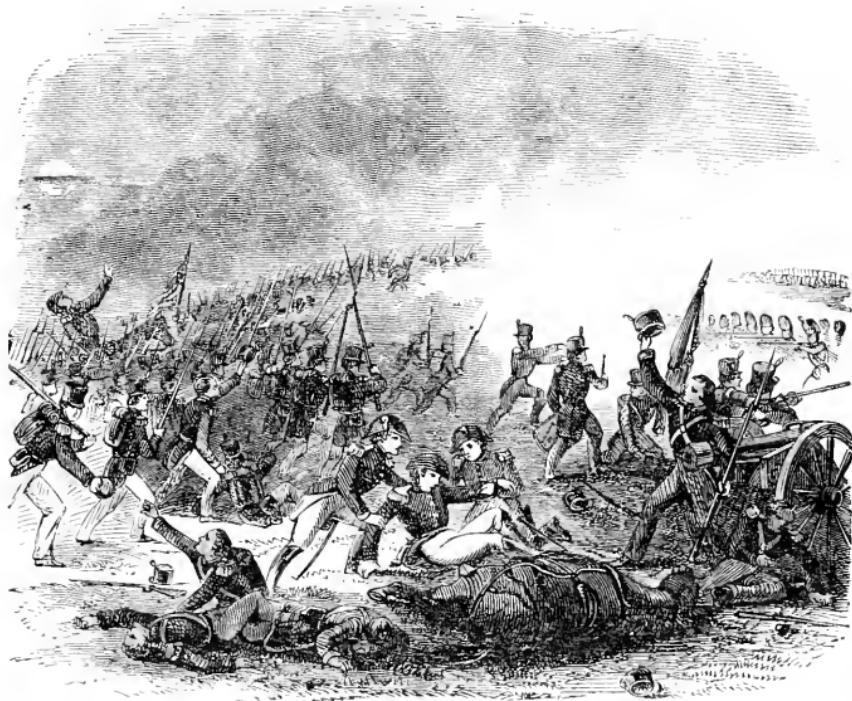
<sup>1</sup> Jackson, at the early age of fourteen, first took up arms for his country under Sumter (see p. 157, ¶ 4), in the war of the Revolution. See p. 195.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 178, ¶ 13. <sup>3</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 19.

<sup>4</sup> Napoleon (see p. 164, ¶ 2, and 171, ¶ 2), as consul and emperor, enjoyed sovereign power in France from 1799 till 1814, when a combination against him, consisting of Great Britain and all the principal European states, compelled him to abdicate the throne, and retire to the Island of Elba. <sup>5</sup> See p. 179, ¶ 18. <sup>6</sup> See pp. 179, 180. <sup>7</sup> See p. 179, ¶ 16.

QUESTIONS.—25. Give an account of the battle of Tohopeka.—Who had excited the Creeks to war? Give an account of the massacre at Fort Mims. Effect of this massacre? What is said of the series of conflicts which Jackson carried on against the Creeks? Of the treaty concluded with them? 26. What did Wilkinson attempt in March? How did the abdication of Napoleon affect the conflict in America? How did the United States mainly act during the rest of the war? 27. Give an account of the capture of Fort Erie. Of the battle of the Chippewa. Of the battle of Lundy's Lane.

A battle ensued, which lasted till midnight, and was one of the most obstinate of the war.<sup>1</sup> The Americans were left in possession of the field.



Battle of Lundy's Lane.

The enemy's artillery was captured in a gallant charge by Colonel James Miller.<sup>2</sup> Three times were the British repulsed in their efforts to recover their guns. After holding the field a short time the Americans retired to their camp, and as they had not the means of removing the captured artillery, the enemy soon took possession of it. The British force was much superior to that of the Americans, the latter numbering less than three thousand. Each army lost over eight hundred men. Generals Drummond and Riall were both wounded, and the latter was taken prisoner. Generals Brown and Scott were among the Americans wounded. General Ripley, who was left in command, returned to Fort Erie. In August this fort was invested by Drummond, but after a siege of more than a month, in which he lost about two thousand men, he was obliged to retire beyond the Chippewa.

<sup>1</sup> This battle is also known as the battle of Bridgewater; also as the battle of Niagara Falls.

<sup>2</sup> Colonel Miller, being asked by his commanding officer if he could capture the enemy's battery, replied, "*I'll try, sir!*" which words were afterwards, by order, put on the buttons of his regiment.

**III. FROM THE BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG TO THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.—WAR CHIEFLY DEFENSIVE.—Events of 1814 and 1815.**—**1.** In November Fort Erie was destroyed by the Americans, who then withdrew from the Canada shore. Meanwhile the American army at **Plattsburg**, under General Macomb, and the fleet on **Lake Champlain**, under Captain McDonough, gained, September 11, a decisive victory over a vastly superior land and naval force of the British.

General Izard<sup>1</sup> had been ordered to Sackett's Harbor with the greater part of his army. Only fifteen hundred effective men remained at Plattsburg. The American squadron on the lake consisted of fourteen vessels, carrying eighty-six guns and eight hundred and fifty men. Early in September General Prevost<sup>2</sup> confronted Macomb with more than twelve thousand veteran troops,<sup>3</sup> and on the 11th the British squadron under Captain Downie, consisting of sixteen vessels, carrying ninety-five guns and one thousand men, bore down upon the American fleet lying off Plattsburg. An engagement followed, which lasted more than two hours, when the entire fleet of the enemy was captured, with the exception of some small gunboats, which stole away after hauling down their flags. When the naval battle began, Prevost advanced upon Macomb, whose little army, reënforced by about three thousand neighboring militia, kept him at bay till the battle on the lake had ended. Prevost then abandoned the assault upon Plattsburg, and that night began a hasty and disorderly retreat, leaving behind his sick and wounded, and vast quantities of military stores. This fruitless attack by land and water cost the enemy, in killed, wounded, and missing, more than twenty-five hundred men. The Americans lost about two hundred. The brilliant successes at Plattsburg and on the lake diffused the greatest joy throughout the land.

**2.** The British **blockade** this year was made to include the whole New England shore.<sup>4</sup> Eastport, Machias, and Belfast, in Maine, were taken. Stonington, in Connecticut, was **1814.** bombarded. The seaboard states and cities began to take measures for their own defence.

**3. Hartford Convention.**—The dissatisfaction of the Eastern States<sup>5</sup> increased, and December 15, at the suggestion of Massachusetts, delegates from that state, from Connecticut and Rhode Island, with partial representation from New Hampshire and Vermont, met at Hartford to consider the condition of the states represented, their relation to the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 19.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 21.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 179, ¶ 18.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 182, ¶ 26.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 181, ¶ 24.

**QUESTIONS.—1.** What happened in November? What is said of the victory at Plattsburg and on Lake Champlain?—Give a more particular account of this victory. What was the effect of these successes? **2.** How was the British blockade extended this year? What places in Maine were taken? What of Stonington? What did the seaboard states and cities begin to do? **3.** What is said of the dissatisfaction of the Eastern States? What was done on the suggestion of Massachusetts?

war and to the general government. Nothing came of this convention.<sup>1</sup> Soon after its adjournment, the legislatures of **Connecticut** and **Massachusetts** passed laws directly in opposition to the statute of the United States providing for the enlistment of minors. These state laws subjected to fine and imprisonment those engaged in carrying out the national statute. The return of peace prevented any direct collision between the nation and the states.

4. Cockburn<sup>2</sup> continued his depredations on the **Chesapeake**. In August a British fleet entered the Patuxent, and landed about five thousand men, under the command of General Robert Ross, who immediately marched for **Washington**, by way of Bladensburg. Meeting with but little resistance, the British on the 24th entered the capital of the United States, then a straggling village of eight thousand inhabitants, burned the Capitol and other public buildings, the libraries, valuable records, and works of art, belonging to the government, together with several private dwellings and warehouses.<sup>3</sup> The British then hastily returned to their ships.

5. This was one of the most disgraceful events of the war—as disgraceful to the inefficient Americans as to the marauding enemy. From the first landing of the British, the authorities in Washington presented but a pitiable spectacle of indecision and helplessness. When the invaders reached **Bladensburg** they were almost ready to drop, from the excessive heat and fatigue; but General Winder,<sup>4</sup> in command there, could not infuse into the raw militia courage enough to oppose the drooping, faltering foe. Only Captain Barney, with about five hundred sailors and marines from the **Chesapeake** flotilla, which had been destroyed on the approach of the enemy, made a stand, and they were too few to serve any efficient purpose. Cockburn was the ruling spirit of the invasion, and in keeping with his general reputation, the presiding genius of the ruthless destruction in Washington. A part of the British fleet, in the mean time, went up the Potomac, and compelled **Alexandria** to purchase safety by giving up its shipping and merchandise.

<sup>1</sup> The delegates simply suggested that the general government be requested to permit the states represented to assume their own defence, and recommended several alterations in the constitution of the United States. The war closed before any action could be taken on the propositions for defence, and the proposed amendments of the constitution were not viewed with favor.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 180, ¶ 21.

<sup>3</sup> The enemy pleaded in excuse for this vandalism the burning of the Parliament House, at the capture of York (see p. 179, ¶ 15), which, however, General Dearborn believed to have been done by disaffected Canadians.

<sup>4</sup> Winder had but recently been released from captivity. See p. 179, ¶ 17.

QUESTIONS.—What did the Hartford Convention meet to consider? Result? What laws were passed by Connecticut and Massachusetts? How was collision between the nation and the states prevented? 4. Where did Cockburn continue his depredations? Give an account of the march of the British upon Washington, and of their proceedings in that city. 5. What is said of this event? Of the authorities in Washington? What resistance did the British meet? How was part of the British fleet employed in the mean time?

**6. Baltimore** was next attacked. Landing at North Point, **1814.** September 12,<sup>1</sup> the enemy encountered a brave resistance from a detachment of militia, which, however, was forced to retire within the defences of the city. The British advanced, but finding the besieged well prepared to receive them, withdrew during the night of the 13th, and went on board their fleet, a part of which, for a day and a night, had kept up an ineffectual bombardment of Fort McHenry.<sup>2</sup>

In this unsuccessful attempt the assailants lost General Ross and three hundred men. After this, Cockburn returned to the congenial occupation of plunder, on the Carolina and Georgia coast.

**7.** While **Jackson**, who had been appointed to command in the south, was arranging a treaty with the Indians,<sup>3</sup> a British squadron arrived at Pensacola, and, with the consent of the Spanish authorities, made it the headquarters for arming fugitive Creeks, and preparing expeditions against the United States. September 15 the enemy made an attack upon Fort Bowyer,<sup>4</sup> but were repulsed with a loss of one ship of war and more than two hundred men. Jackson, after remonstrating in vain with the Spanish authorities for sheltering the enemies of a country with which Spain was at peace, seized **Pensacola**, and expelled the British from Florida. He then hastened to put New Orleans in a position of defence against an expected attack. He erected fortifications, organized the militia, called in volunteers, invited “the noble-hearted, generous, free men of color” to join his army, and proclaimed martial law.

**8.** The last important engagement of the war on the land was **1815.** fought in defence of **New Orleans**, January 8, 1815. In this battle, General Jackson,<sup>5</sup> with less than six thousand Americans, mostly militia, repulsed with great slaughter Sir Edward Pakenham, who advanced with twelve thousand troops, the flower of the British army, to assault the works thrown up to protect the city.

In December a fleet of the enemy, conveying Pakenham with his army, entered **Lake Borgne**, and on the 14th captured the American flotilla, after a severe conflict, in which the British lost a greater number than there were Americans engaged. A portion of the enemy, having landed, repelled, on the night of the 23d, an attack upon their camp. On the 24th, Jackson collected his army for the defence of **New Orleans**.

<sup>1</sup> The day after the victories at Plattsburg. See p. 184, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> During the night of this bombardment, the song of the “*Star-spangled Banner*” was written by Francis S. Key, who was detained on board a British ship, whether he had gone to procure the release of some captive friends.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 182, ¶ 25.  
<sup>4</sup> Now Fort Morgan. Fort Bowyer was captured by the British on their return after the defeat at New Orleans, on the same day that news of peace reached New York, February 11, 1815.

QUESTIONS.—6. Give an account of the attack upon Baltimore.—What was the British loss in this attack? 7. Why did Jackson seize Pensacola? What did he next hasten to do? 8. Give an account of the battle of New Orleans.—Of the conflict on Lake Borgne.

He took position a few miles below the city, on a neck of land lying between the Mississippi and an impenetrable swamp, and there threw up intrenchments. The British moved upon this position December 28, and again January 1, but were repulsed, only, however, to prepare for the grand assault. On the 8th, the English troops, regardless of the fatal fire of the American artillery, advanced, in solid columns, till they approached within range of the Kentucky and Tennessee marksmen, when the whole American line became one sheet of flame, and from musket and rifle poured into the foe an unceasing storm of death. The advancing columns faltered. Attempting to urge them on, Pakenham fell. Generals Gibbs and Keene were wounded—the former, second in command, mortally. The enemy broke and fled in dismay. After two more unsuccessful attempts to storm the works, General Lambert, on whom the command now devolved, retreated to his ships. He also recalled a detachment which had succeeded in dislodging a party of Americans from a position on the other side of the Mississippi. The American loss on both sides of the river was seventy-one. Of these only seven were killed and six wounded in the principal action. The loss of the British was near twenty-five hundred.



New Orleans and Vicinity.

**9.** The little navy<sup>1</sup> of the United States had won imperishable renown in the first two years of the war, but in 1814 had become well-nigh exhausted. The government had **1814.** been slow to recognize its merits, slower to add to its strength. Few vessels were now at sea. The smaller had been captured, the larger were held in the grasp of the blockade. The *Essex*, Captain Porter, after a successful cruise in the Atlantic, made great havoc among British whalers in the Pacific; but, March 28, she fell a prey to a sloop of war and a frigate off Valparaiso. The sloop of war *Peacock*, Captain Warrington, captured the British brig of war *Eperier*,<sup>2</sup> April 29, off Florida. The Peacock afterwards made prizes of fourteen merchantmen. The sloop of war *Wasp*, Commander

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 180, 181, and p. 184, ¶ 1.<sup>2</sup> With \$118,000 in specie on board.

QUESTIONS.—Where did Jackson take position to defend New Orleans? Give a more particular account of the battle of New Orleans. State the losses on each side. 9. What is said of the American navy? What is said of Captain Porter and the Essex? Of Captain Warrington and the Peacock? Of Commander Blakely and the Wasp?

Blakely, captured the sloop of war *Reindeer*, June 28, the *Avon*, September 1, and after taking several prizes, was lost at sea. After the disappearance of the *Wasp*, for a time the American flag ceased to wave from the mast-head of any national vessel. Commodore Decatur,<sup>1</sup> in the frigate *President*, attempting to get to sea from New York, was taken, January 16, by a British squadron off Long Island. The *Constitution*,<sup>2</sup> Captain Stewart, was more fortunate in escaping the blockade at Boston. Off Lisbon, February 20, she engaged the two British sloops of war *Cyane* and *Levant*, and took them both. March 23, the *Hornet*, Captain Biddle, captured the British brig of war *Penguin*, off Tristan d'Acunha.<sup>3</sup>

**10.** A treaty of peace was signed at Ghent,<sup>4</sup> December 24, 1814, by American and British commissioners.<sup>5</sup> Tidings of this treaty reached the United States about a month after the battle of New Orleans.

Late at night, on the 11th of February, a British sloop of war arrived in New York, bringing a treaty of peace, already ratified by England. The cry of *Peace, peace*, ran through the city. As if by one impulse the houses were illuminated, and the citizens, without distinction of party, thronged the streets to congratulate each other. The news was sent in every direction, and everywhere was received with the liveliest demonstrations of joy. The treaty was ratified by the Senate, February 17, 1815.

**11.** The treaty provided for the suspension of hostilities, the exchange of prisoners, the restoration of territories and possessions obtained by the contending powers during the war, the adjustment of unsettled boundaries, and for a combined effort to put an end to the slave trade. It made no mention of the causes of the war. Peace between the powers of Europe had removed the occasion of difficulties. Notwithstanding the successes at Plattsburg, at Baltimore, and at New Orleans, affairs wore a gloomy aspect. Commerce was annihilated,<sup>6</sup> every branch of industry depressed, the treasury empty, and public credit destroyed. Moreover, a ravaged seaboard, a great national debt,<sup>7</sup> and a want of unanimity among the states,<sup>8</sup> were sources of deep concern to thoughtful men in America.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 175, ¶ 7, p. 167, note 1, and p. 189, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 175, ¶ 7.

<sup>3</sup> The principal island of a group in the South Atlantic Ocean, not quite half way from the Cape of Good Hope to South America.

<sup>4</sup> A city on the River Scheldt, in Belgium.

<sup>5</sup> The American commissioners were John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russell, and Albert Gallatin.

<sup>7</sup> About one hundred and twenty millions of dollars.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 184, ¶ 2.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 184, ¶ 3.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Commodore Decatur and the President? Of Captain Stewart and the *Constitution*? Of Captain Biddle and the *Hornet*? 10. When and where was the treaty of peace signed?—Give some account of the reception of the news of peace. 11. For what did the treaty provide? What is said of the aspect of affairs?

**IV. FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN TO THE ACCESSION OF MONROE.**—**1.** From 1795 to 1812, the United States had paid an annual tribute to the Dey of **Algiers** to protect American vessels from seizure by the Algerines. During the troubles with England the Dey had improved his opportunity to make aggressions on American commerce, and had reduced the crew of a captured vessel to slavery. After the ratification of peace with England, a squadron, under Commodore Decatur, sailed for the Mediterranean, and captured two Algerine ships. Decatur next appeared before Algiers, June 28, and dictated terms to the frightened Dey. By this treaty the Dey stipulated to indemnify the Americans for their losses in the war with him, to surrender without ransom their countrymen held as prisoners, to abandon the practice of enslaving them, and to renounce all claim of future tribute from them. Decatur then proceeded to **Tunis** and **Tripoli**, and exacted payment for American vessels which these powers had permitted the British to capture in their ports. The United States were the first nation that effectually resisted the outrageous claim of the Barbary pirates for tribute.<sup>1</sup>

**2.** In the early part of 1816 a new bank, called the **Bank of the United States**, was incorporated, to continue twenty years, with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars.

The charter of the former bank had expired in 1811.<sup>2</sup> The new bank was made the depository for the public moneys, unless the secretary of the treasury should otherwise direct.

**3.** In the presidential election of 1816 James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen **president**, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, **vice-president**. 1816.

**4. Indiana**<sup>3</sup> was admitted as a state in 1816. 1816.

In 1800 Indiana Territory was set off from the North-west Territory.<sup>4</sup> It afterwards was made to include all the latter except Ohio,<sup>5</sup> but in 1809 it had become reduced to the limits of the present state.<sup>6</sup> This region was first discovered by the French. **Vincennes**, one of the oldest towns, was settled by a party of French Canadians about 1705. 1705.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 166, ¶¶ 5, 6.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 159, ¶ 6, note 2, and p. 199, ¶ 10.

<sup>3</sup> The name is derived from the word *Indian*.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 151, ¶ 2.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 165, ¶ 2.

<sup>6</sup> By setting off the Territory of Michigan (see p. 200, ¶ 15), in 1805, and the Territory of Illinois (see p. 191, ¶ 2), in 1809.

**QUESTIONS.**—1. How did the difficulties with the Dey of Algiers originate? How was the Dey brought to terms? What did he stipulate in the treaty? What was exacted of Tunis and Tripoli? 2. What is said of the Bank of the United States? 3. Who were elected president and vice-president in 1816? 4. When was Indiana admitted to the Union?—Give some account of the early history of Indiana.

## CHAPTER V.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>1</sup> 1817—1825.

James Monroe.

admitted during this administration, making the whole number **1817-21.** twenty-four: **Mississippi, 1817; Illinois, 1818; Alabama, 1819; Maine, 1820; and Missouri, 1821.**<sup>2</sup>

De Soto<sup>3</sup> was the first European who visited the soil of **Mississippi**, which afterwards became a part of Louisiana,<sup>4</sup> and partook of the history of that province till 1763. The claim of Georgia<sup>5</sup> west of her present limits was ceded by her to the United States, and erected into the Territory of Mississippi. Just before the war of 1812, the United States took possession of that part of Florida between the Perdido<sup>6</sup> and Pearl Rivers, and this having been annexed to the Mississippi Territory, gave it the Gulf of Mexico for a southern boundary. The western part of this territory became the state of the same name. **Alabama** includes the rest of Mississippi Territory, and on the admission of Mississippi, was organized as the Territory of Alabama. These states were first settled by the French.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup> The whole number of electoral votes at this time was two hundred and thirty-five. But one electoral vote was thrown against Mr. Monroe, fourteen votes were thrown against Mr. Tompkins, and three of the electors did not vote either for president or vice-president.

<sup>3</sup> Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Missouri, derive their names, which are of Indian origin, from rivers of the same names. Mississippi, according to some, means *the father of waters, rest*; Missouri, *muddy water*. For Maine, see p. 42, note 5.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 13, ¶ 3.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 67, ¶ 3.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 1.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 80, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the country on the accession of Mr. Monroe? What is said of party spirit? How was the period of this administration known? 2. Name the states admitted during this administration, with the dates of their admission.—Give some account of the early history of Mississippi and Alabama.

**Illinois**, too, was once a part of the French possessions in America,<sup>1</sup> and the French first established settlements within its limits about the year 1682, at **Kaskaskia**, the oldest European settlement in the valley of the Mississippi. It was a part of the North-west, **1682**, then of the Indiana Territory,<sup>2</sup> and in 1809 of the Territory of Illinois.<sup>3</sup>

The previous history of **Maine** has already been given.<sup>4</sup>

**Missouri** was part of the Louisiana Purchase,<sup>5</sup> and, with all that vast country north of the present State of Louisiana<sup>6</sup> (at first organized as the Territory of Orleans), was called the *District of Louisiana*, and placed under the jurisdiction of Indiana Territory.<sup>7</sup> After the Territory of Orleans had been admitted as the State of Louisiana, the District of Louisiana, already organized as a separate territory, took the name of Missouri Territory, a part of which became the State of Missouri. Its oldest town is **Saint Genevieve**, founded by the French in **1755**.

3. When the admission of Missouri was proposed, violent debate arose on the question whether it should be a slave or a free state. It was finally agreed, in 1820, that Missouri **1820** might come in a slave state, but that slavery should be prohibited in all other territory, belonging to the United States, west of the Mississippi, and north of parallel  $36^{\circ} 30'$ . This agreement is known as the *Missouri Compromise*.

4. In the latter part of 1817, a war with the **Seminole Indians** broke out. General Jackson was sent against them, and speedily brought them to terms. **1817.**

The Seminoles,<sup>8</sup> who had harbored hostile Creeks<sup>9</sup> and runaway negroes, at length began a series of murderous assaults upon the inhabitants of Southern Georgia. Jackson, still in command of the southern department, soon took the field at the head of a considerable force, a large part of which consisted of friendly Creeks. Believing that the hostile Indians were protected by the Spanish authorities, Jackson marched into Florida. He destroyed the Indian village near Tallahassee, took the Spanish fort at St. Marks, and drove out the authorities at Pensacola. He also burned a town on the Suwanee, inhabited principally by runaway negroes.<sup>10</sup>

5. In 1818 Congress granted a pension to the few surviving **officers and soldiers of the Revolution**. Subsequently, the widows and children of deceased officers were included in the provision.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 67, Chap. XII.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> The Territory of Illinois included, north of the state, a region which, on the admission of the state, was attached to Michigan Territory. See p. 200, ¶ 15.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 41, ¶ 2.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 4.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 22, note (IV.).

<sup>8</sup> During this invasion Jackson seized two British subjects, Alexander Arbuthnot, and Robert C. Ambrister, who, on the charge of having excited the Indians to hostilities, were tried by court martial, condemned, and executed.

QUESTIONS.—Give some account of the early history of Illinois.—Of Maine.—Of Missouri. 3. What is meant by the Missouri Compromise, and when was it agreed to? 4. What war broke out in 1817? Who was sent against the Indians, and with what result?—Give some further account of this war. 5. To whom was a pension granted in 1818? Who were subsequently included in the provision?

**6.** In 1819 a convention with Great Britain was ratified, securing to citizens of the United States, with some restriction, the right of fishing on the coast of British America, and establishing parallel 49° north as the **boundary** between the United States and British America, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains. The same year Spain agreed to relinquish **Florida**<sup>1</sup> to the United States, on the condition that the American government should pay to citizens of the United States five millions of dollars, due them from Spain, **1821**. Two years later, Spain ratified the treaty, and at the same time the boundary between the **Louisiana Purchase**<sup>2</sup> and the Spanish province of Mexico was defined.

**7.** The president, in his annual message to Congress, December, 1823, alluding to the Spanish colonies of America, recently recognized as sovereign powers, declared that "the American continents, by the free and independent position which they have assumed and maintain, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers." He also declared that it is impossible for the powers of Europe to "extend their political system to any portion of either continent without endangering our peace and happiness," and that "it is equally impossible, therefore, that we should behold such interposition, in any form, with indifference." This has since been known as the **Monroe doctrine**, the authorship of which, however, belonged to the secretary of state, John Quincy Adams.

**8.** In August, 1824, **Lafayette** came to the United States as the guest of the nation whose independence he had assisted in gaining with his blood and his fortune. He visited each of the twenty-four states, and was everywhere received with enthusiastic greetings of gratitude and joy. He remained in the country a little more than a year, and when ready to return, the president<sup>3</sup> placed at his disposal a frigate, named, in compliment to him, Brandywine,<sup>4</sup> to carry him back to France. Congress manifested still further their appreciation of his services by voting him a township of land and two hundred thousand dollars.

**9.** When the time came to choose a successor to Mr. Monroe, four candidates were in the field, neither of whom received a majority of the electoral vote. The choice then

<sup>1</sup> See p. 206, ¶ 13, and note 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> John Quincy Adams, who had succeeded to the presidency during Lafayette's visit.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 125, ¶ 14.

QUESTIONS.—6. What convention was ratified with England in 1819? What was secured and what established by this convention? When did Florida come into the possession of the United States? On what condition? What boundary was defined at the same time? 7. What is the Monroe doctrine? 8. What can you tell of Lafayette's visit to the United States? 9. At the next presidential election how many candidates were in the field?

devolved on the House of Representatives,<sup>1</sup> and that body elected John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, president. John Caldwell Calhoun,<sup>2</sup> of South Carolina, was chosen vice-president by the electors.

The candidates were General Jackson, then a United States senator, Mr. Adams, secretary of state, William H. Crawford, secretary of the treasury, and Henry Clay, the speaker of the House of Representatives.<sup>3</sup>

## CHAPTER VI.

### JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>4</sup> 1825—1829.

**1.** EARLY in this administration the question of the supremacy of the nation over the state—a question that frequently meets us during this period<sup>5</sup>—was again forced upon the people, by a controversy with Georgia concerning the Creek lands.

In pursuance of a treaty, obtained, without the consent of the Creeks, from a few of their chiefs, Georgia determined to remove these Indians by force from the lands they occupied, and in 1827 declared her intention to resist the authority of the United States, which had been interposed, by the president, to protect the Creeks. The difficulty was, however, adjusted for the time, the Indians consenting to remove beyond the Mississippi, in consideration of a large annuity to be paid them from the national treasury.

**2.** The fiftieth anniversary of the national independence, July 4, 1826, was made specially memorable by the deaths of **John Adams** and **Thomas Jefferson**, which occurred on that day. The **1826**. coincidences of the lives of these eminent patriots were strikingly com-

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 16, Art. XII., Amendments Const. U. S.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 171, ¶ 2.

<sup>3</sup> They had respectively, ninety-nine, eighty-four, forty-one, and thirty-seven electoral votes. In the House of Representatives, thirteen states voted for Mr. Adams.

<sup>4</sup> See Appendix, p. 19.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 165, ¶ 5; p. 185, ¶ 3; p. 197, ¶ 8; p. 198, ¶ 9; p. 227, ¶ 10, and p. 232, ¶¶ 5, 6.

QUESTIONS.—Who was elected president for the next term? Vice-president? What is said of Mr. Adams's election? Chap. VI. 1. What question was forced upon the people early in Adams's administration? By what controversy?—Give an account of this controversy and its adjustment? 2. For what is the fiftieth anniversary of the national independence memorable?



John Quincy Adams.

pleted in the coincidence of their deaths. Both were early enlisted in their country's cause. Both were bold, ardent, unyielding patriots. Where others doubted, they were resolved; where others hesitated, they pressed forward. They were both members of the committee to prepare the Declaration of Independence, and they constituted the sub-committee appointed by the other members to make the draught of it. Jefferson was the author of the Declaration; Adams its great supporter on the floor of Congress. Both had been ministers abroad; both vice-presidents, and both presidents; both had lived to a great age.<sup>1</sup>

**3.** The policy of protecting home manufactures, by imposing heavy duties upon articles of the same kind imported, was carried to its height, under the name of the **American system**, **1828.** by the tariff of 1828. All assent to the propriety of levying duties for *revenue* merely, but the principle of a *protective tariff*, nearly ever since the passage of this act, has been a subject of contention between political parties. Having the most of its friends in the manufacturing Northern and Middle States, and the most of its enemies in the agricultural South, it has proved a fruitful source of sectional strife.

**4.** This administration, more than any preceding it, fostered measures of **internal improvement**. State and individual enterprise took the same direction. While Mr. Adams was president the first railroad in the United States was completed;<sup>2</sup> and New York, chiefly through the exertions of her distinguished son, De Witt Clinton, opened the Erie Canal, which became the highway to the grain fields of the west.

**5.** The country had never enjoyed greater prosperity than during the presidency of Mr. Adams. The national debt was rapidly diminishing, and the national treasury held a surplus of over five millions of dollars. Yet Mr. Adams failed of a reëlection. The era of good feeling had passed away, and **party spirit** again burst forth with increased bitterness.

At the next presidential election, Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, after a contest of unexampled violence, was chosen **president**, and Mr. Calhoun was reëlected **vice-president**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Adams was nearly ninety-one, Jefferson nearly eighty-three.

<sup>2</sup> The first railroad in the United States was in Quincy, Massachusetts, and was completed in 1827. The first steam locomotive used in the United States was put on the road from Carbondale to Honesdale, Pennsylvania, by the Delaware and Hudson Canal Company, in 1829.

QUESTIONS.—What coincidences of the lives of Adams and Jefferson can you mention? 3. What is meant by the American system? To what do all assent? What has been the subject of contention between political parties? Why was the protective tariff a source of sectional strife? 4. What is said of internal improvement? 5. Of the country during Mr. Adams's presidency? Of party spirit?—Who were elected president and vice-president for the next term?

## CHAPTER VII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>1</sup> 1829—1837.

**1. PRESIDENT** Jackson, on entering upon the duties of his high position, removed from office<sup>2</sup> many of those who had opposed his election, and appointed his political adherents in their stead; thus giving his administration, at the outset, a more strictly party character than had been attempted by his predecessors. This has continued to be the policy of each new administration.

**2. In his domestic policy,** Jackson was opposed to devoting the public revenue to internal improvements, and in several instances interposed his veto<sup>3</sup> to arrest congressional appropriations for that purpose, believing them to be unconstitutional and inexpedient. His foreign policy was bold and vigorous.

The payment of indemnities for spoliation of American commerce<sup>4</sup> was secured, and, except from France, without difficulty. This nation had acknowledged the justice of the American claim to five millions of dollars, but refused to make appropriation for payment. At this, the president proposed that reprisals should be made upon French property till the American claim was liquidated. Affairs seemed threatening, when both nations agreed to accept the proffered mediation of Great Britain. Meanwhile, France appropriated the money, and the claim was paid.

**3. The subject of Indian removals<sup>5</sup>** had not ceased to disturb the country. First a difficulty arose between Georgia



Andrew Jackson.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup> During the first year of this administration, there were nearly seven hundred removals from office, not including subordinate clerks. During the forty years preceding, there had been sixty-four.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 10, ¶ 2, Sec. VII., Art. I., Const. U. S.

<sup>4</sup> By Denmark, Naples, Portugal, Spain, and France.

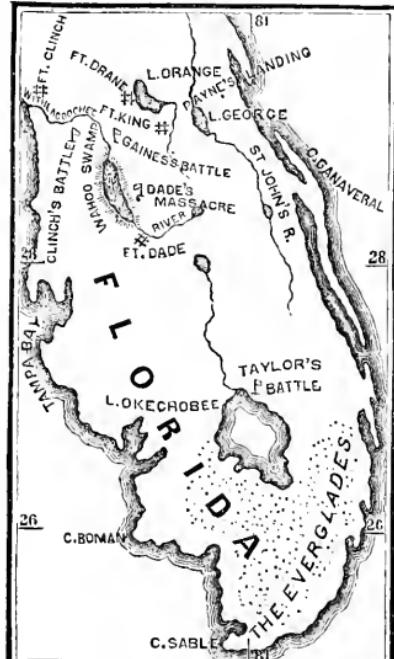
<sup>5</sup> See p. 193, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did Jackson, at the outset, give his administration a party character? 2. What is said of Jackson's domestic policy? Of his foreign policy? — What trouble arose with France? What did the president propose? How was the trouble settled? 3. What is said of Indian removals? What difficulty first arose?

and the Cherokees<sup>1</sup> within her borders, which was not finally adjusted till the next administration.

These Indians had made considerable advance in civilization. Contrary to law, as interpreted by the Supreme Court,<sup>2</sup> Georgia attempted to drive them from their lands. The president and Congress sided with the state. The agent sent to aid in the removal of the Indians was General Scott, who, by his conciliatory policy, induced them to migrate peaceably.

**4.** In the spring of 1832, a war, known as the **Black Hawk war**,<sup>3</sup> broke out on the north-western frontier, with some tribes led by the celebrated Black Hawk, a chief of the Sac.<sup>4</sup> This war resulted in the removal of the Indians farther westward.



Map of Florida.

A campaign against them, by United States troops and Illinois militia,<sup>5</sup> under Generals Scott and Atkinson, gained for the United States a large portion of the present Iowa and Wisconsin, and drove the Indians beyond the Mississippi. Black Hawk was taken prisoner.

**5.** Near the close of 1835 arose a war with the Seminoles,<sup>6</sup> under the famous warrior Osceola—a war more formidable than any in which the United States had ever engaged with the Indians. It was seven years before the savages were subdued.<sup>6</sup>

The cause of the war was an attempt to remove the Seminoles, in Florida, to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with a treaty, the validity of which the Indians denied. The war extended its ravages into Georgia and

Alabama. Many of the Creeks joined the Seminoles. From their skulking-places in the swamps and the Everglades, where poisonous vapors and venomous reptiles defended them from pursuit, they would dash upon the settlements to rob, murder, and destroy.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 23, note (Sec. V.).

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 13. Secs. I., II., Art. III., Const. U. S.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 22 note (See II., 12).

<sup>4</sup> In this war Abraham Lincoln was captain of a company of Illinois volunteers, Jefferson Davis a lieutenant in the United States regulars. See p. 227, ¶¶ 9, 11.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 22, note (Sec. IV., 2).

<sup>6</sup> In 1842, during Tyler's administration.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of this difficulty and its settlement? 4. What war broke out in 1832, and where? Result?—What farther is said of this war? 5. What war arose in 1835? Under what famous warrior? What is said of this war?—Cause of the war? Where did its ravages extend?

6. At the opening of the war (December 28), Major Dade and more than a hundred men were waylaid near the **Wahoo Swamp**, and all but four killed. On the same day, the United States agent, General Thompson, and five others, in view of the garrison at **Fort King**, were set upon, slain, and scalped, by Osceola and a party of Indians. Osceola thus satiated his revenge for an imprisonment he had suffered at the hands of the agent. Soon after, General Clinch marched from **Fort Drane** against the Indians, and, after defeating them, returned to the fort. The next February, General Gaines came to his assistance, and another action took place, in which the savages were again worsted, near Clinch's battle-ground. The following summer, General Scott marched into the **Creek Country**, subdued the Indians there, and sent several thousands of them beyond the Mississippi. The Seminoles continued the war. In October, 1837, General Jessup, then in command in Florida, seized the treacherous **Osceola**, whom no oath could bind nor treaties restrain, while approaching the American camp under a flag of truce, and sent him a prisoner to Fort Moultrie.<sup>1</sup>

The capture of their leader, though a severe blow to the Seminoles, did not end the war. Colonel Taylor<sup>2</sup> pursued them into their almost inaccessible hiding-places, and beat them in a hard-fought battle, December 25, 1837, near **Lake Okeechobee**, in the southern part of Florida. After this, several able officers took their turns in pacifying and fighting the Seminoles, before they were brought to terms.<sup>3</sup>

7. In 1832, that terrible pestilence, the **Asiatic cholera**, made its first appearance in America, beginning in Canada, and thence sweeping over the United States.

8. This administration was more severely tried than any that had preceded it, by the dangerous dogma of **state rights**.

The relative powers of the nation and the state came up for discussion in Congress during the winter of 1829-30. Daniel Webster,<sup>4</sup> then a



Daniel Webster.

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 137.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 174, note 4, and pp. 208-213.

<sup>3</sup> Colonels Taylor and Worth, and Lieutenants Robert Anderson, J. E. Johnston, and George H. Thomas were among those promoted for gallantry in this war.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 181, ¶ 24.

QUESTIONS.—6. Give an account of the massacre near Wahoo Swamp. Near Fort King. Of the action near Fort Drane. What was done by General Scott in the summer? What was done by General Jessup in 1837? What by Colonel Taylor? What further is said of the war? 7. What is said of the Asiatic cholera? 8. How was this administration severely tried?

senator from Massachusetts, and Robert Y. Hayne, from South Carolina, were the leading disputants. The latter maintained the state-rights doctrine,—that is, the right of a state to determine for itself how far it would yield obedience to the laws of the United States. The former, in a masterly oration, established, as far as argument could, the sovereignty of the general government, and that the Supreme Court was the proper tribunal to decide cases of conflict between the state and nation.

**9.** Late in 1832, **South Carolina**, asserting the principle of a protective tariff to be unjust and unconstitutional, issued an ordinance of **nullification**,<sup>1</sup> declaring the tariff laws<sup>2</sup> **1832.** *null* and void, and prepared to resist the enforcement of them in that state. Civil war was imminent; but that calamity was averted by the promptitude and decision of the president, and by a compromise tariff passed by Congress.



John C. Calhoun.

The **tariff of 1828** was the subject of loud and bitter complaint; and though it was modified, with a view of making it more acceptable to its opponents, yet, as it still adhered to the principle of protection, it failed to satisfy them. The strongest opposition was in Virginia, Georgia, and South Carolina. The last alone, in 1832, went to the length of *nullification*,—that is, of annulling an act of Congress,—threatened secession,<sup>3</sup> and prepared to resist the authority of the federal government. Calhoun resigned the vice-presidency,<sup>4</sup> to advocate, on the floor of the Senate, the policy of South Carolina, of which he was, in fact, the author.

Jackson, with characteristic energy and firmness, proclaimed his determination to enforce the laws of the United States, and sent General Scott to Charleston, to maintain the national authority. The **unflinching**

<sup>1</sup> This nullifying ordinance was passed by a state convention, November 24, 1832, and was to take effect February 1, 1833; but just before that day it was resolved, at a meeting, in Charleston, of the leading nullifiers, to postpone action.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 194, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> The ordinance declared that if the government of the United States should attempt to enforce the tariff laws by its army or navy, South Carolina would no longer consider herself a member of the Federal Union.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 194, ¶ 5, and p. 193, ¶ 9.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the discussion by Webster and Hayne? 9. What course did South Carolina take in regard to the tariff? What did the ordinance of nullification declare? How was civil war averted? On what ground was the tariff objected to? In what states was the strongest opposition? To what length did South Carolina go? What is said of Calhoun? What course did Jackson take? Effect?

**attitude of the executive**

made the state pause. Out of South Carolina party strife was postponed. All united to support the president, and that state, taking advantage of a **tariff compromise**, passed by Congress, receded from her defiant position. This compromise, the work of Henry Clay,<sup>1</sup> provided for a gradual reduction of duties on imports till 1843, when none should exceed twenty per cent.

**10.** Jackson's financial policy constituted a prominent feature of this administration. In 1832, **1832.** he vetoed a bill

passed by Congress to renew the charter of the United States Bank,<sup>2</sup> and the bank ceased to be a national institution when the charter expired.

**11.** The election in the autumn made Jackson president for another term, by a greatly increased majority. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected vice-president. Thus supported in his policy by the people, and believing the public moneys no longer safe in the keeping of the United States Bank, Jackson proceeded to sever the connection between the government and that institution; and by his order, in 1833, the secretary of the treasury transferred the **1833.** **national deposits**<sup>2</sup> to certain state banks.

The federal House of Representatives supported the president in his war upon the bank; but the Senate passed a resolution censuring his course, which resolution was expunged from the journal of the Senate a few years after, through the exertions of Thomas H. Benton, of Missouri.

**12.** The removal of the deposits made it necessary for the bank to contract its loans. Money became scarce. Debtors throughout the country were unable to meet their liabilities, and the result was **great commercial distress.**

<sup>1</sup> See p. 188, note 5, and p. 171, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of a compromise tariff? 10. What is said of Jackson's financial policy? What bill did he veto in 1832? 11. Result of the election that autumn? What further steps did Jackson take against the United States Bank, and for what reason?—How was the president's course regarded by the two Houses of Congress? 12. How did the removal of the deposits cause great commercial distress?



Henry Clay.

This, to his friends, seemed but to prove the wisdom of Jackson's policy in curbing the career of an institution which held such power over the moneyed interests of the country, and which, they maintained, by an unnecessarily sudden contraction of the currency, had caused this distress in order to make the people dissatisfied with the administration.

**13.** Soon the state banks holding the public funds were enabled largely to increase their loans. The country was flooded with paper money. Business revived from its late depression, and there was, in appearance, the greatest prosperity; but it was in appearance only. Thousands plunged wildly into over-trade and speculation, on capital borrowed without regard to the means of payment. But two measures, in the latter part of Jackson's presidency, cut short their career. One of these was the specie circular, issued by order of the president, requiring payment for public lands to be made in gold and silver; and the other was an act of Congress, ordering the surplus revenue, excepting a reserve of five millions of dollars, to be withdrawn from the banks and distributed among the states.<sup>1</sup> Again there was a great contraction of bank circulation, and unparalleled commercial distress was left as a legacy to the next administration.<sup>2</sup>

**14.** On the night of December 16, 1835, a destructive conflagration occurred in the city of New York, which swept through the business part of the city, destroying more than six hundred of the most valuable stores, and property to the amount of eighteen millions of dollars.

**15.** The original number of states was doubled during Jackson's term of office, by the admission of Arkansas<sup>3</sup> in 1836-7, Michigan<sup>4</sup> the next year.

**Arkansas** was part of Missouri Territory, but in 1819 was set off as a distinct territory, including, besides the present state, a part of what is now the Indian Territory. It was first settled at **Arkansas Post**, by the French, in 1685. **Michigan**, first a part of the North-west Territory,<sup>5</sup> then of Indiana Territory,<sup>6</sup> was organized as a separate territory in 1805, with limits much more extended than those of the present state.<sup>7</sup> **Detroit**, its oldest permanent European settlement, was founded by the French in 1701.

<sup>1</sup> The amount actually divided among the states was over twenty-eight millions of dollars.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 201, ¶ 1. <sup>3</sup> The state takes its name from a now extinct tribe of Indians.

<sup>4</sup> The name *Michigan* is supposed to be derived from two Indian words signifying *great lake*.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 151, ¶ 2. <sup>6</sup> See p. 189, ¶ 4. <sup>7</sup> See p. 206, ¶ 13, and p. 218, ¶ 3.

QUESTIONS.—What did this seem to prove to Jackson's friends? 13. What were the state banks soon enabled to do? Result? What is said of over-trade and speculation? What two measures are mentioned, and their result? 14. What is said of the conflagration in New York in 1835? 15. When were Arkansas and Michigan admitted to the Union?—What can you tell of the early history of Arkansas? Of Michigan?

16. Party spirit, which we have seen springing up during the presidency of John Quincy Adams, assumed definite form under Jackson. Those who supported the administration, and opposed the United States Bank and a tariff for protection, were called *Democrats*. Those who opposed the administration, and advocated a bank and protective duties, were, after some changes of name, called *Whigs*.

At the next election, the democrats made their candidate, Martin Van Buren, of New York, president. Richard M. Johnson,<sup>1</sup> of Kentucky, was chosen vice-president by the Senate, no choice having been effected by the people.<sup>2</sup>



## CHAPTER VIII.

### VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>3</sup> 1837—1841.

1. SCARCELY had Mr. Van Buren succeeded to the presidency, when the financial storm,<sup>4</sup> which we have seen gathering, burst upon the country with great violence.

During March and April, the failures in the city of New York alone were estimated at more than one hundred millions of dollars. Confidence and credit were destroyed. Not a few who retired at night in affluence awoke in the morning penniless. The banks suspended specie payment. The government found it impossible to call in its deposits, or collect its dues in specie. The national treasury, recently full to overflowing, was exhausted. Many of the states had vied with individuals in extravagant expenditure. Eight of them,<sup>5</sup> either wholly or in part, failed to meet their engagements. Mississippi and the Territory of Florida repudiated their debts.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 178, ¶ 13.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 20.

<sup>5</sup> Arkansas, Illinois, Indiana, Louisiana, Maryland, Michigan, Mississippi, and Pennsylvania.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 16, Art. XII., Amendments Const. U. S.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 199, 200, ¶¶ 12, 13.

QUESTIONS.—16. What is said of party spirit? Who were called democrats? Who whigs?—Who succeeded to the presidency, and who to the vice-presidency? Chap. VIII. 1. What is said of the financial storm in the early part of Van Buren's presidency?—What is said of failures and their results? Of bank suspensions and the result? Of many of the states?



Martin Van Buren.

**2.** The great financial measure of this administration was an act establishing the *independent treasury*.<sup>1</sup> This **1840.** provided that the public funds should be kept, subject to the order of the secretary of the treasury, in the treasury at Washington, and in sub-treasuries located in some of the principal cities of the nation, under the care of federal officers called assistant treasurers.

This measure, though urged upon Congress by the president in his first message, failed to become a law till 1840. It was argued that, by thus keeping the public funds *independent* of the banks, the government would escape a repetition of losses such as it had recently suffered by their failure.

**3.** A **rebellion in Canada**, against the government of Great Britain, broke out in 1837, and enlisting the sympathies of many of the Americans, threatened to disturb the peaceful relations between England and the United States. The danger was averted by a proclamation of the president refusing the protection of the government to citizens of the United States who should aid the insurgents, and by the efforts of General Scott, who was sent to the frontier to preserve neutrality.<sup>2</sup>

**4.** The **north-eastern boundary** of the United States had never been definitely settled. Disputes had arisen in regard to it, and the inhabitants of Maine and New Brunswick determined to appeal to arms, to uphold their respective territorial claims. In this state of affairs, General Scott was sent to the scene of strife, and his wise and conciliatory course preserved the public peace. The question was settled, in 1842,<sup>3</sup> by a treaty negotiated by Daniel Webster on the part of the United States, and Lord Ashburton on the part of Great Britain, establishing the boundary as it now runs. This treaty also provided for the suppression of the African slave trade.

At the election in 1840, after a most exciting campaign, William Henry Harrison,<sup>4</sup> of Ohio, the candidate of the Whigs, was elected **president**, and John Tyler, of Virginia, **vice-president**.

<sup>1</sup> This act was repealed in 1841, during Tyler's administration, but the *independent treasury* was again established in 1846, during Polk's administration.

<sup>2</sup> A party of Americans and Canadians, supplied with provisions and cannon, took possession of Navy Island, in Niagara River, and belonging to Canada. The insurgents hired a steamboat, called the Caroline, to transport men and munitions of war from the American shore to the island. On the night of the 29th of December, a detachment of British cut this steamboat from her fastenings at Schlosser, set her on fire, and let her drift over the falls. One American was killed, and others were reported to have been lost in the boat. This added greatly to the excitement in the United States, and rendered it more difficult to prevent the Americans from aiding the Canadians in their insurrection.

<sup>3</sup> In Tyler's administration.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 169, ¶ 1, and p. 179, ¶ 14.

QUESTIONS.—2. What was the great financial measure of this administration? What did this provide?—What further is said of this measure? 3. What rebellion broke out in Canada, and when? How did this affect the United States? How was the danger averted? 4. Give an account of the difficulty with respect to the north-eastern boundary. When and how was the question settled? For what else did this treaty provide?—Who were elected president and vice-president in 1840?

## CHAPTER IX.

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS.<sup>1</sup> 1841—1845.

1. Soon after the accession of **Harrison**, he issued a call for an extra session of Congress, to consider "matters connected with the finances of the country;" but he did not live to see it assemble. He died just one month after his induction into office, and, by the constitution,<sup>2</sup> the vice-president, **John Tyler**, became president, April 6, 1841.

2. The extra session of Congress, called by President Harrison, commenced May 31. The great object of the session was the establishment of a national bank.<sup>3</sup> Two bills, passed for this purpose, were vetoed by President Tyler, greatly to the chagrin of the party that elected him, and to the disgust of his cabinet, every member of which resigned except Mr. Webster,<sup>4</sup> secretary of state, who felt that public interests demanded that he should for a time remain at his post. A general bankrupt law was enacted this session, for the relief of those whom the late financial convulsions had hopelessly embarrassed.<sup>5</sup>

3. In 1842 an **exploring expedition**, fitted out by the government four years before, under Lieutenant Charles Wilkes,<sup>6</sup> returned from a cruise, chiefly in the Pacific and Antarctic Oceans, of about ninety thousand miles, more than two thousand of which had been along the coast of the hitherto unknown *Antarctic continent*.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 20.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 201, ¶ 16.

<sup>3</sup> This law was repealed before the close of Tyler's term of office, when the necessity for it had passed away.

<sup>4</sup> Several volumes containing the history of the expedition, with its observations and researches, have been published at the national expense.

<sup>5</sup> See Appendix, p. 12, ¶ 6, Sec. 1, Art. II., Const. U. S.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 202, ¶ 4, p. 181, ¶ 24, and p. 197, ¶ 8.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 286, ¶ 78.

QUESTIONS.—1. For what purpose did Harrison call an extra session of Congress? When did Harrison die? Who succeeded to the presidency? 2. What was the great object of the extra session of Congress? What bills did Tyler veto? What is said of his party and his cabinet? What is said of a general bankrupt law? 3. What can you tell of the exploring expedition under Lieutenant Wilkes?



William Henry Harrison.



John Tyler.

4. The charter, and the laws enacted under it, by which Rhode Island had been governed for nearly two centuries,<sup>1</sup> had become obnoxious to the masses of the people, who were deprived of the right of suffrage. An attempt to form a new constitution resulted in the division of the people into two parties, each having in view essentially the same objects. One—the *Suffrage party*—attempted to introduce the desired reforms without regard to the existing laws, and, in 1842, elected as governor Thomas Wilson Dorr, who had taken the lead in the demand for reform. The other—called the *Law and Order party*—wished to

accomplish their purpose under the sanction of the established authorities. The Suffrage party attempting to carry their point by force, the authority of the United States was invoked to sustain “law and order.” Dorr was taken prisoner, tried, convicted of treason, and condemned to imprisonment for life. In the mean time, the constitution under which the state is now governed was adopted. Dorr was subsequently released and reinstated in his civil rights by the legislature.

5. During this administration, disturbances in New York, known as the **anti-rent difficulties**, menaced the peace of the community. Many, who held lands under lease from the large-landed proprietors,<sup>2</sup> in 1844, combined to resist by force of arms the officers sent to collect the rent, killed some of them, and mobbed their fellow-tenants who had yielded to the demands of the patroons. These disturbances, beginning in Rensselaer County, extended into others, where land was held under like tenure. They were quelled, two years later, by the governor's calling out the military to assist the civil authority.

6. In the year 1844, an **electro-magnetic telegraph**, the invention of Samuel Finley Breese Morse, was first put in operation between Baltimore and Washington.

7. On the 1st of March, 1845, the president signed a resolution of Congress, permitting, on certain conditions,<sup>3</sup> the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 51, ¶¶ 1, 3.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 53, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> To this resolution there were three conditions: The first was, that Texas should adopt a constitution, and lay it before Congress on or before the 1st day of January, 1846; second, that all mines, minerals, fortifications, arms, navy, &c., should be ceded to the United States; third, that new states might hereafter be formed out of said territory.

QUESTIONS.—4. Give an account of the difficulties in Rhode Island. 5. Give an account of the anti-rent difficulties in New York. 6. When and where was an electro-magnetic telegraph put in operation? Whose invention was it? 7. When and how was Texas annexed to the United States?

**annexation of Texas to the United States.** Texas accepted the conditions of annexation the next 4th of July, and became one of the United States the next December. **1846.**

The permanent occupancy of Texas may be dated from the year 1715, when the Spaniards, alarmed at the vigorous movements of the French in Louisiana,<sup>1</sup> established several posts and missions in Texas.<sup>2</sup> **1715.** **San Antonio**<sup>3</sup> is one of the oldest towns. Before the purchase of Florida,<sup>4</sup> Texas was claimed by Spain as a part of Mexico, and by the United States as a part of Louisiana.<sup>5</sup> The United States yielded her claim to Spain as a part of the price paid for Florida. In 1821, Mexico, including Texas, declared herself independent of Spain. The new government adopted a liberal system of colonization, and a strong tide of emigration set towards Texas from the United States.

**8.** After a succession of revolutions in Mexico, **Santa Anna** became president of that distracted country, under a constitution modelled after that of the United States. But in 1835 he abolished the constitution, and the Texans refused to submit to his authority. Santa Anna attempted to subdue them. They resisted, and at **Gonzales** **1835.** (October 2) repulsed their invaders. Before the close of the year they took from the Mexicans the strong fort of **Goliad**, and the citadel of **San Antonio**, called the *Alamo*, where one thousand Mexicans were unable to withstand the assault of half their number of Texans.

**9.** The next year Santa Anna invaded Texas with a numerous army. He retook Goliad and the Alamo, and put their brave garrisons to the sword, even murdering the captured sick and wounded. **1836.** The **Texans**, March 2, declared themselves **independent** of Mexico, and organized a government. General Samuel Houston was in command of the Texan army, which numbered less than eight hundred men. Managing to divide the Mexican force, he at length gave battle, April 21, at the **San Jacinto**, to an advanced division commanded by Santa Anna in person. The Texans gained a complete victory, capturing and slaying more than double their own number. Among the prisoners was Santa Anna, who, to purchase his liberty, ordered the invading army to retire beyond the Rio Grande, and acknowledged the independence of Texas. Mexico, although refusing to confirm this act of Santa Anna, made no vigorous effort for the conquest of the province. Texas now sought annexation to the United States; but the proposition was not favorably

<sup>1</sup> See p. 80, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> As early as 1690 the Spaniards established forts and missions in Texas, but they were soon abandoned. <sup>3</sup> Called, also, Bexar, and San Antonio de Bexar. <sup>4</sup> See p. 192, ¶ 6.

<sup>5</sup> In 1685, La Salle (see p. 67, ¶ 3), with a colony destined for the mouth of the Mississippi, landed by mistake at Matagorda Bay. Though the colony was soon broken up by the Indians, the French claimed the country as long as they held Louisiana.

**QUESTIONS.** — When and by whom was Texas first permanently occupied? Before the purchase of Florida, by what nations was Texas claimed? How did Spain acquire the claim of the United States? What happened in 1821? What is said of emigration from the United States? 8. Why did the Texans revolt against Mexico? What did Santa Anna attempt? What is said of conflicts at Gonzales, Goliad, and the Alamo? 9. What did Santa Anna do the next year? When did the Texans declare themselves independent of Mexico? Give an account of the battle of San Jacinto. Result of this battle?

entertained by the latter country. In 1844, however, President Tyler proposed annexation, by a treaty which the Senate refused to ratify.

**10.** The question of annexation went before the people in the presidential contest of 1844, and the Democratic candidate, James Knox Polk, of Tennessee, who favored the measure, was elected president, over the Whig candidate, Henry Clay, who opposed it. George Mifflin Dallas, of Pennsylvania, was elected vice-president, on the same ticket with Mr. Polk.

Finding the measure thus indorsed by the people, Tyler pressed forward the work of annexation, which was consummated among the last acts of his administration.

**11. Annexation** was advocated and opposed chiefly with reference to its supposed influence upon the institution of slavery. Anti-slavery men opposed it on the ground that as Texas was slave territory, to annex that country would extend the area of slavery. On the other hand, leading statesmen of the south did not hesitate to avow themselves in favor of it, as necessary to the security of that institution.

**12.** In the free states there had for years been forming, against the extension of slavery, a strong sentiment, which had found expression in the organization, on that issue, of a party called the **Liberty Party**. The bold stand taken by southern statesmen in favor of annexing Texas, as a slavery measure, served to swell the ranks of this party at the north.

**13.** On the last day of his administration Tyler signed a bill for the admission of **Florida** and **Iowa** to the **1845-6. Union**. The former became a state on the passage of the act, the latter not till the next year.

**Florida**<sup>1</sup> became a territory soon after its acquisition from Spain. **Iowa**,<sup>2</sup> successively a part of Missouri, Michigan, and Wisconsin<sup>3</sup> Territories, was erected into a separate territory in 1838, with an area much more extended than that of the state. The act of admission gave the state its present boundaries. The first permanent settlement was made at **1833. Burlington**, in 1833, by emigrants from Illinois. **Dubuque** was settled later the same year.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 192, ¶ 6; p. 170, ¶ 2, and note 2; p. 162, ¶ 15, and note 5; p. 147, ¶ 13, and note 1.

<sup>2</sup> It gets its name from that of a tribe of Indians, and signifies *the drowsy ones*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 200, ¶ 15; p. 190, ¶ 2; p. 218, ¶ 3.

<sup>4</sup> In 1788, Julien Dubuque, a French Canadian, built a small fort at Dubuque, where he carried on the mining of lead, and trade with the Indians, for more than twenty years.

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken for the annexation of Texas to the United States, and the result? 10. How did the question of annexation enter into the next presidential election, and who were elected president and vice-president? How did the result of this election affect annexation? 11. With reference to what was annexation advocated and opposed? On what ground did anti-slavery men oppose it? On what ground did southern statesmen favor it? 12. What can you tell of the rise of the Liberty Party? What served to swell the ranks of this party at the north? 13. When did Florida and Iowa become states of the Union?—What is said of Florida? Give an account of the early history of Iowa.

## CHAPTER X.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>1</sup> 1845—1849.

I. FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE ADMINISTRATION TO THE DECLARATION OF WAR WITH MEXICO.—1. When Mr. Polk became the chief magistrate, both the United States and Great Britain claimed the region called **Oregon**, extending from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific, and north from Mexico<sup>2</sup> (parallel 42°) to parallel 54° 40'. The adjustment of these rival claims had long been a subject of negotiation, and now threatened to disturb the peaceful relations of the two countries. In 1846, however, a treaty was agreed upon, which established the present boundary between the possessions of the United States and Great Britain, from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific. The name of Oregon<sup>3</sup> was retained by the portion of the territory that fell to the United States.

2. The **coast of Oregon** was visited by several of the early navigators,<sup>4</sup> and, after ages of neglect, interest in that region was again revived by Captain Robert Gray, who entered the Columbia in 1792, giving to the river the name of his ship. During Jefferson's presidency, the United States sent an **expedition across the continent**, under Captain Lewis and Lieutenant Clark, which, in 1804–5, traced the Missouri to its source, and descended the Columbia to the Pacific. On this expedition and that of Captain Gray, as well as on the purchase from Spain of her



James Knox Polk.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 20.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> By some it is supposed that the name *Oregon* was invented by Captain Jonathan Carver, who explored this region (1766–8); but according to others, it is derived from the Spanish *oregano*, wild marjoram, which grows in abundance on the Pacific coast.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 14, ¶ 5, and p. 16, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—1. What nations claimed Oregon at the beginning of Polk's administration? Extent of Oregon? What is said of these rival claims? When was a treaty agreed upon, and what did it establish? 2. What is said of the coast of Oregon? How was interest in that region revived? What is said of the expedition of Lewis and Clark? On what was the claim of the United States to Oregon based?

rights in that territory,<sup>1</sup> the claim of the United States was based. The English founded their claim upon the operations of British fur companies within the territory subsequent to the explorations of Lewis and Clark.

**1811.** The first settlement in Oregon was begun near the mouth of the Columbia, in 1811, by the American Fur Company, and named **Astoria**, from John Jacob Astor, of New York, the leading member of the company.

### 3. The annexation of Texas<sup>2</sup> led to a war with Mexico.

Texas had maintained her independence for nine years, and had been recognized as an independent power by several European nations, as well as by the United States. Yet Mexico claimed that province, and declared that its annexation to the United States would be considered an act of war. Accordingly, on the passage of the resolution of annexation,<sup>3</sup> Mexico broke off diplomatic relations with the government at Washington. Moreover, the western boundary of Texas was in dispute. Texas claimed, and the United States assumed, that the Rio Grande separated that state from Mexico. Mexico, on the other hand, contended that the region between the Rio Grande and the Nueces had never been a part of her revolted province.

**4.** When the rupture between the two countries became imminent, General Taylor<sup>4</sup> received orders from Washington to advance into Texas, to protect that state from invasion. Accordingly, in August, 1845, he encamped with a detachment of the regular army, at Corpus Christi.<sup>4</sup>

While affairs were in this position, the United States sent a minister to Mexico authorized to arrange the subjects in dispute; but he was refused a hearing.

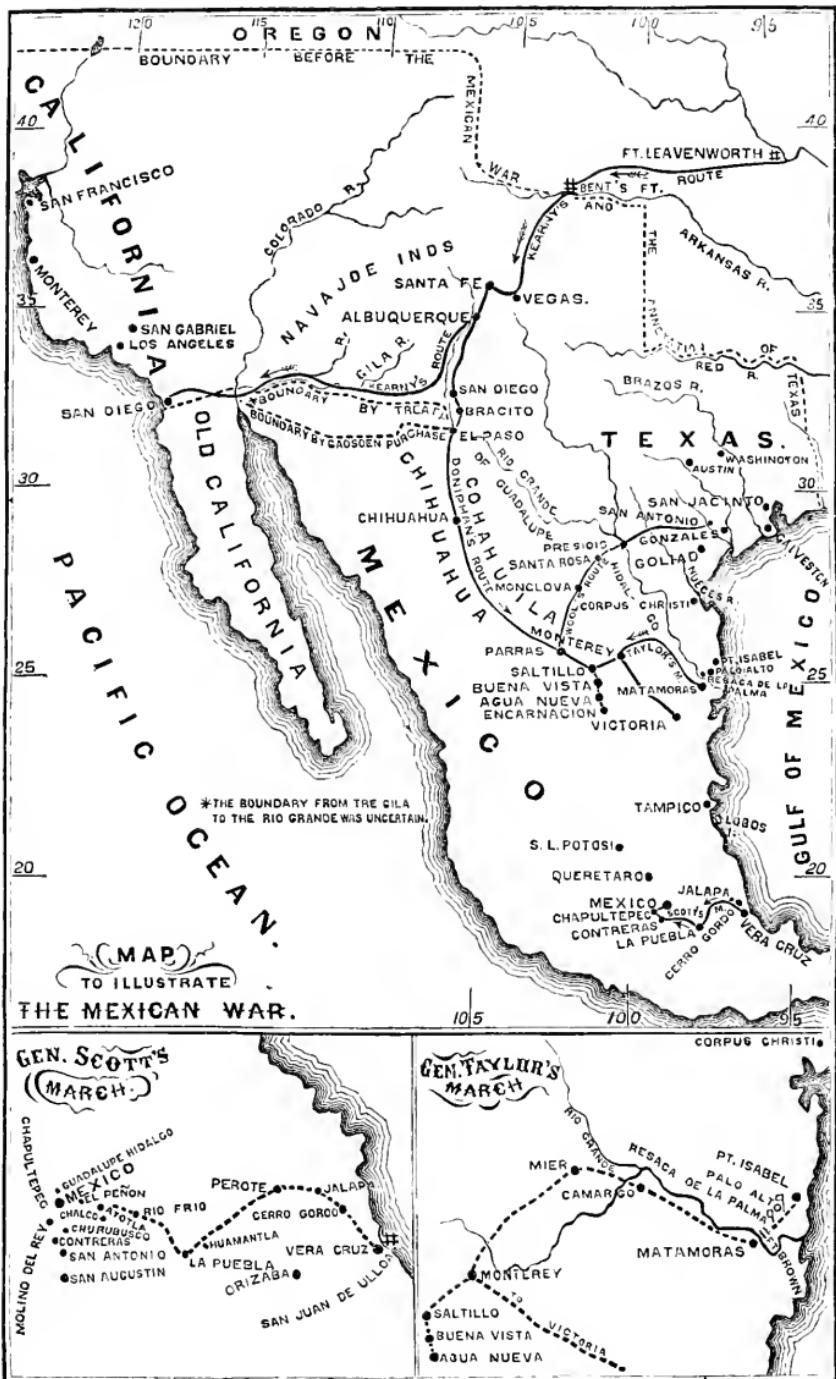
**5.** Early the next year, Taylor was ordered to move to the Rio Grande. Having established a depot of supplies at Point Isabel, he took position opposite Matamoras, and erected a fort, afterwards named *Fort Brown*.<sup>5</sup> Learning that the Mexicans were preparing to cross at points higher up the river, he sent Captain Thornton, with sixty-three dragoons, to reconnoitre. This party was surprised, April 26, and after a loss of sixteen men, was compelled to surrender. This was the *first fight of the war*.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 192, ¶ 6.  
<sup>4</sup> *Body of Christ.*

<sup>2</sup> See p. 205, ¶ 7.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 197, ¶ 6, and notes 2, 3.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 210, ¶ 7, and note 4.

**QUESTIONS.** — On what did the English found their claim? What is said of the first settlement in Oregon? 3. What led to a war with Mexico? — How long had Texas maintained her independence? What is said of her recognition as an independent power? What did Mexico claim, and what declare? What was done by Mexico on the passage of the resolution of annexation? What dispute was there in reference to the western boundary of Texas? 4. What course was taken by the United States when a rupture became imminent? Where did Taylor encamp? — What was now done to arrange the subjects in dispute? 5. What order was given to Taylor, and what was done by this general? Give an account of the first fight of the war.



6. A few days later, Taylor received intelligence that a large force of Mexicans was threatening Point Isabel. He immediately marched to strengthen that place, leaving a small garrison, under Major Brown, to guard the fort on the Rio Grande. After making Point Isabel secure, he set out on his return, and, May 8, with little more than two thousand men, encountered about three times as many Mexicans at **Palo Alto**,<sup>1</sup> under General Arista. An action ensued, which lasted from noon till night, when the Americans remained in possession of the field. In the morning Taylor found the enemy, strongly reënforced, at **Resaca de la Palma**,<sup>2</sup> but after a severe contest, the Mexicans were routed, and fled beyond the Rio Grande.

7. Among the mortally wounded at Palo Alto was **Major Ringgold**,<sup>3</sup> whose efficient battery contributed largely to gain the day. At Resaca de la Palma, **Captain May**, at the head of a body of dragoons, was ordered to charge upon a Mexican battery, which, directed by General La Vega, was doing great execution. In the face of a murderous fire, the brave men followed their heroic leader, drove away or cut to pieces the cannoneers, and took La Vega prisoner at his guns. The Mexican loss, in the two engagements, is estimated at fifteen hundred; that of the Americans was about one hundred and seventy. The next day Taylor returned to **Fort Brown**, which had sustained, for three days, an almost uninterrupted cannonade, though with but small loss, except that Major Brown was killed by the bursting of a shell.<sup>4</sup>

8. On the 18th, **General Taylor** crossed the **Rio Grande**, and took possession of Matamoras, where he waited for reënforcements.<sup>5</sup> During the summer, several Mexican towns near the Rio Grande yielded to the Americans without resistance.

9. Intelligence of the capture of Captain Thornton's party<sup>6</sup> produced great excitement throughout the United States, notwithstanding great difference of opinion prevailed as to the justice and expediency of the war. In a few weeks, more than two hundred thousand men had volunteered to rescue the little army under General Taylor, which was supposed to

<sup>1</sup> *Tall Timber.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ravine of palms.*

<sup>3</sup> "Leave me alone," said the heroic major, to the officers who crowded around him as he fell, mortally wounded; "you are wanted at the front."

<sup>4</sup> The fort was named in honor of this gallant officer, who lost his life in its defence.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 211, ¶ 2.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 208, ¶ 5

QUESTIONS.—6. Where did Taylor march, and for what purpose? Give an account of the battle of Palo Alto. Of the battle at Resaca de la Palma. 7. What is said of Major Ringgold and his battery? Of Captain May and his dragoons? What was the loss of each army? What of Fort Brown in the mean time? 8. What did Taylor next do? What happened during the summer? 9. What effect did news of the capture of Captain Thornton's party produce in the United States?

be in great danger. **Congress** declared that "war existed by the act of Mexico," made appropriations for carrying it on, and authorized the president to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers, one half of whom were to be sent to the field, the other half to be kept as a reserve. **Mexico**, considering the occupation of the territory between the Nueces and the Rio Grande as an invasion of her soil, declared war in May.

**II. PLAN OF OPERATIONS.—OPERATIONS OF THE ARMY UNDER TAYLOR.**—**1.** The government at Washington, by the advice of General Scott,<sup>1</sup> determined on a comprehensive **plan of operations**. One squadron of the *navy* was ordered to join the fleet already in the Pacific, in an attack upon the Mexican ports of California; another to operate in the Gulf of Mexico. An *Army of the West* assembled at Fort Leavenworth, under General Stephen W. Kearny, to invade New Mexico, and proceeding westward, to coöperate with the Pacific fleet. General Wool<sup>1</sup> collected at San Antonio another force, which constituted the *Army of the Centre*, and was to invade Mexico from that quarter. Heavy reënforcements were sent to the army under General Taylor,<sup>2</sup> known as the *Army of Occupation*.

**2.** The latter part of August, General Taylor was prepared to advance, and marched against **Monterey**. This city, strong in its natural defences, strong in its fortifications, and garrisoned by ten thousand men, under General Ampudia, yielded to General Taylor's army, numbering but little more than six thousand men, September 24, after a siege of four days, and a series of assaults.

General Taylor was assisted by Generals Worth, Quitman, Butler, and other able officers. The engineers, under Major Mansfield,<sup>3</sup> enabled the besiegers to overcome the almost impassable mountains and ravines which environed the city. When the soldiers had forced their way into the city, they avoided the barricaded streets, by passing upon the house-tops, or digging their way through massive stone walls, from house to house.<sup>4</sup>

**3.** About the time of the fall of Monterey, General Wool moved, with a force of three thousand men, from San Antonio,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 174, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 210, ¶ 8.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 273, ¶ 45.

<sup>4</sup> By the terms of surrender, Ampudia was permitted to withdraw his troops from Monterey with the honors of war, and at the same time an armistice was agreed upon, which, by order of the American government, was terminated in seven weeks.

QUESTIONS.—What was done by Congress? What by Mexico? II. 1. What plan of operations was determined on by the government at Washington? 2. What can you tell of the capture of Monterey?—What further is said of this capture? 3. Give an account of General Wool's operations.

intending to penetrate the province of Chihuahua. After a laborious march of six weeks, he reached Monclova. There having received orders to abandon the proposed expedition, he turned southward, and, December 5, encamped at Parras, within supporting distance of General Taylor, to whose command the Army of the Centre was now joined.

**4.** Taylor next sent forward a portion of his army, under Worth, to **Saltillo**, and leaving General Butler with a garrison at Monterey, himself marched southward, designing to **1847.** extend a line of defence to **Tampico**, which city had been captured by the American fleet. Early in January, 1847, he entered **Victoria**, already occupied by an advance division, under General Quitman. About this time, a large part of Taylor's best troops, with many of his most experienced officers, were withdrawn to aid General Scott,<sup>1</sup> who had been ordered to enter Mexico by way of **Vera Cruz**.<sup>2</sup>

**5.** Soon intelligence reached Taylor that Santa Anna,<sup>3</sup> who had again been placed at the head of affairs in Mexico, taking advantage of the reduction of the American forces in the north, was marching with a large army upon Saltillo. The American general immediately gathered, at Agua Nueva,<sup>4</sup> all the disposable troops in his command, in number less than five thousand, and these chiefly undisciplined volunteers. February 21, Santa Anna approached, with an army nearly five times as large, and Taylor retired to a narrow pass, called, by the Mexicans, **La Angostura**,<sup>5</sup> near the plantation of **Buena Vista**.<sup>6</sup> This pass was protected on one side by rugged mountains, and on the other by deep ravines. Santa Anna followed, and on the afternoon of the 22d,<sup>7</sup> a battle began by some skirmishing of the light troops. Early the next day the battle opened anew, and raged with great fury till night, when the Mexicans made a precipitate retreat.

The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and missing, was about seven hundred and fifty; that of the Mexicans is believed to have been more than two thousand. Never before had an American army contended against such odds. The battle was a series of encounters, from each

<sup>1</sup> See p. 214, § IV.  
<sup>5</sup> *The Narrow Pass.*

<sup>2</sup> *True Cross.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Fine View.*

<sup>3</sup> See p. 205, ¶ 9.  
<sup>7</sup> Washington's birthday.

<sup>4</sup> *New Water.*

QUESTIONS.—4. Give an account of the operations of the army under Taylor. Why were many of Taylor's best troops withdrawn? 5. What intelligence soon reached Taylor? What did he do in consequence? Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista.—What further is said of this battle?

of which the Mexicans would fall back out of danger, and re-form for another attack; the Americans being unable to pursue, from the smallness of their number and want of cavalry.<sup>1</sup>

**6. The victory at Buena Vista** broke the Mexican power in the north, and closed the brilliant military career of General Taylor, who, a few months afterwards, leaving the command to General Wool, returned to the United States, where his grateful countrymen received him with every mark of respect, and soon bestowed upon him the highest honors in their gift.<sup>2</sup>

### III. CONQUEST OF NEW MEXICO AND CALIFORNIA.—

**1.** While Taylor was delayed at Matamoras, in the summer of 1846,<sup>3</sup> General Kearny,<sup>4</sup> with eighteen hundred men, set out on his expedition against **New Mexico**. After 1846. a march of a thousand miles through the wilderness, he entered Santa Fé, the capital, in August, and took possession of the whole province without opposition. Having established a government, he left the principal part of his force, under Colonel Doniphan, and himself, with a squad of cavalry, pushed on across the continent to **California**.

**2.** Agreeably to the orders of General Kearny, Doniphan, having subdued the Navajo Indians, who were plundering the New Mexicans, left a guard at Santa Fé, and with less than a thousand men, directed his course towards **Chihuahua**. On his march he gained two victories over greatly superior forces, the first at **Bracito**, December 25, and the second at the **Sacramento**, February 28, 1847, which placed at his 1847. mercy the province and rich city of Chihuahua.

He then proceeded to Saltillo, and as the term of service for which his men were enlisted had expired, he took them to New Orleans and discharged them — a force enlisted, disciplined, marched more than three thousand miles, chiefly through a hostile and unknown country, and discharged, in less than a year.

<sup>1</sup> To General Wool belongs much of the credit of this victory. He selected the position, arranged the plan of battle, and during part of the time was in chief command. On more than one occasion, Colonel Jefferson Davis, with his unflinching Mississippians, and Captains Thomas W. Sherman, Braxton Bragg, and George H. Thomas, with their batteries, held the enemy back from victory. Among the other brave officers who won distinction under Taylor, and have since become famous in the military history of the country, were Lieutenants Irvin McDowell, William B. Franklin, Robert S. Garnett, Joseph Hooker, George G. Meade, John C. Pemberton, John Pope, and John F. Reynolds.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 210, ¶ 8.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 211, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—**6.** Result of the victory at Buena Vista? What is said of General Taylor?

**III. 1.** Give an account of Kearny's expedition against New Mexico. Under whom did he leave the principal part of his force after reaching Santa Fé? What did he do with the remainder?

**2.** Give an account of Colonel Doniphan's operations.

3. Kearny had advanced but a few days on his march to the Pacific, when he learned from a messenger that **1846.** the conquest of California had been accomplished by Captain John C. Frémont,<sup>1</sup> of the army, and Commodores Sloat and Stockton, of the navy.

The winter before the breaking out of the war, **Frémont**, then a captain in the corps of topographical engineers, was in California with about sixty men on an expedition to discover a new route to Oregon. Having been informed that the Mexican commandant on the Pacific intended to attack his party, and to expel the American settlers, he made common cause with the latter, and, after a few conflicts, though news of the war had not reached him, put an end to Mexican authority in Northern California. Early in July, **Commodore Sloat**, then commander of the Pacific fleet,<sup>2</sup> having received intelligence that war had broken out between Mexico and the United States, took possession of Monterey, on the Pacific. A little later, **Stockton** superseded Sloat in command, took San Diego, and, in conjunction with Frémont, Los Angeles. By the end of August, the whole of Upper California was in the possession of the Americans.

**4.** Such was the condition of affairs when General Kearny, after having experienced great hardships, and having narrowly escaped being cut off by superior numbers, reached the Pacific slope in season to take part in the battle of **San Gabriel**, **1847.** January 8, 1847, which established the authority of the United States in California.

#### IV. OPERATIONS OF THE ARMY UNDER SCOTT.—PEACE.—

1. Meanwhile **General Scott**<sup>3</sup> had collected an army of twelve thousand men, with the design of penetrating Mexico to its capital. He landed his army near **Vera Cruz**, March 9, 1847, and soon had completely invested the city. After a furious

<sup>1</sup> See p. 224, ¶ 6, and p. 271, ¶ 30.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 211, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 246, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did Kearny learn soon after he started for the Pacific?—What particulars can you give of the conquest of California? 4. What further can you say of General Kearny? IV. 1. Give an account of the investment and capture of Vera Cruz.



Winfield Scott.

bombardment of four days, in which the fleet, commanded by Commodore Matthew C. Perry, also joined, Vera Cruz, and the strong castle of San Juan de Ulloa, with all the armaments and munitions of war, surrendered, March 29.

After the fall of Vera Cruz, **the fleet** took several Mexican ports on the Gulf, which were thrown open to commerce, duties on imports being imposed for the benefit of the American government. This "was, in effect, the seizure of the public revenues of Mexico," the object being "to compel the enemy to contribute, as far as practicable, towards the expenses of the war."



Bombardment of Vera Cruz.

2. About a week after the capture of Vera Cruz, General Scott began his march for the city of Mexico. At the mountain pass of **Cerro Gordo**<sup>1</sup> he met Santa Anna, who, since his defeat at Buena Vista, had collected another army, with which he was guarding the pass. The Americans carried by assault every position of the enemy, April 18.

The American force was less than nine thousand, the Mexican over twelve thousand. The loss of the former was little more than four hundred in killed and wounded; that of the latter, over a thousand, besides three thousand prisoners, among whom were five generals.<sup>2</sup> Santa Anna escaped on a mule, but left behind him his equipage, private papers, and

<sup>1</sup> Great Hill.

<sup>2</sup> Among the prisoners was General La Vega, who had been captured at Resaca de la Palma.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the fleet? Of duties on imports? 2. Give an account of the battle of Cerro Gordo.—What was the number of the forces in this battle? Results of the battle?

his cork leg. The Mexican army was completely dispersed, yet the Mexican **1847.** government declared its determination to carry on the war, and never make peace with the United States of the north.

**3.** After this victory, the Americans, without resistance, took possession of **Jalapa**, of **Perote**, guarded by the strongest fortress in Mexico after San Juan de Ulloa, and of **Puebla**, a city second only in importance to the capital. Here Scott waited nearly three months to replenish his army.

Santa Anna, meanwhile, was planning new means for the defence of the capital. He organized bands of guerrillas to cut off the communication of the Americans with Vera Cruz, and with surprising energy, in the face of many difficulties, raised another army to oppose their advance.

**4.** Scott resumed his march towards the capital, August 7, after having received reinforcements.

In three days the army had passed the crest of the Cordilleras, when the grand valley of Mexico burst upon their gaze. Lakes, plains, cities, and cloud-capped mountains spread around and beneath. "Far to the left was descried the giant peak of Popocatapetl; before them lay the Lake Tezcuco; and beyond, the domes and towers of the Montezumas."<sup>1</sup> But in the path of the invaders lay more than thirty thousand Mexican troops, and strong fortifications to be overcome.

**5.** The Americans advanced cautiously, and met with no opposition till the 19th, when they found their march impeded by the fortified camp of **Contreras**, fourteen miles from the city of Mexico. The next morning the camp was assaulted and carried. This success was followed, the same day, by the forcing of **San Antonio**, and the brilliant victory of **Churubusco**, and the whole Mexican army was driven back upon the city.

In these engagements nine thousand Americans had routed more than three times as many Mexicans, with a loss to the vanquished of seven thousand, including among the prisoners eight generals. The loss of the Americans was little more than one thousand in killed and wounded. After these victories General Scott granted an **armistice** to Santa Anna for the purpose of negotiating a peace. Perceiving, however, that negotiations would be of no avail, and that the treacherous Mexican was strengthening his defences, hostilities were resumed.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Montezumas were a race of native kings that occupied the throne of Mexico before the conquest by Cortez (see p. 12, ¶ 2).

QUESTIONS.—**3.** After this victory, of what places did the Americans take possession? How long and for what purpose did Scott wait at Puebla?—How was Santa Anna employed meanwhile? **4.** When did Scott resume his march towards the capital?—What lay in the path of the invaders? **5.** When and where did the Americans find their march impeded? What was done on the morning of the 20th? What other successes followed the same day?—What further is said of these engagements? What of an armistice?



General Scott entering the City of Mexico.

**Santa Anna** fled from the city, and collected a portion of his demoralized army; but his efforts were ineffectual, and the vanquished chief soon after escaped from the country.

<sup>1</sup> *The King's Mill.*

<sup>2</sup> In this series of battles, Generals Twiggs, Worth, Pillow, Shields, Cadwalader, Colonel Harney, and other brave and efficient officers, nobly seconded their able commander-in-chief. Among the gallant officers who won brevets at Contreras, Churubusco, and Chapultepec, were Captain Robert E. Lee, Lieutenants P. G. T. Beauregard, Daniel H. Hill, Thomas J. Jackson, and George B. McClellan. Lieutenants Don Carlos Buell, James Longstreet, Nathaniel Lyon, Earl Van Dorn, John Sedgwick, and Captain Philip Kearny, at Contreras and Churubusco, and Captains Joseph Hooker and Jesse L. Reno, at Chapultepec, also gained brevet rank. Among the officers brevetted for gallant conduct in the storming of Molino del Rey and at Chapultepec, was Lieutenant Ulysses S. Grant, who had served with great credit in the army under Taylor, from the opening of the war through the siege of Monterrey, and with Scott thus far in his campaign. Captains Robert Anderson, James Longstreet, and Lieutenant-Colonels Edwin V. Sumner, and Joseph E. Johnston, also obtained brevets for gallantry.

QUESTIONS.—6. What is said of the fall of Molino del Rey and Chapultepec? When did the Americans enter the city of Mexico?—What further is said of Santa Anna?

7. The fall of the capital may be considered as closing the war. A treaty was concluded, February 2, 1848, at **Guadalupe Hidalgo**, and peace was proclaimed by President Polk the next 4th of July. By this treaty the United States gained a vast expanse of territory, extending south to the River Gila and west to the Pacific,<sup>1</sup> and stipulated to pay Mexico fifteen millions of dollars, and to assume her debts to American citizens to the amount of over three millions more.

V. FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR WITH MEXICO TO THE ACCESSION OF TAYLOR.—1. The territory acquired from Mexico proved to be a subject of contention. As early as 1846. August, 1846, when it became evident that the war would result in the acquisition of territory, David Wilmot, a representative in Congress from Pennsylvania, introduced a proposition, known as the **Wilmot Proviso**, by which slavery was to be excluded from all territory acquired of Mexico. Although the proviso did not become a law, it brought the subject of slavery before Congress and the people, for violent debate, and still further strengthened the anti-slavery sentiment in the north. The party opposed to the extension of slavery took the name of the *Free Soil party*.<sup>2</sup>

2. A little before the conclusion of a treaty with Mexico, gold was found to abound in California.<sup>3</sup> News of this discovery caused a wonderful tide of emigration from all parts of the civilized world to set towards the land of gold.

3. In 1848 **Wisconsin**<sup>4</sup> was admitted to the Union.

1848. Wisconsin, a part of the Territory of Illinois,<sup>5</sup> was attached to the Territory of Michigan<sup>6</sup> in 1818, and became a separate territory in 1836. As a territory it included a part of the Louisiana Purchase north of Missouri.<sup>7</sup> **Green Bay** was founded in 1745, by the French, 1745. who had, many years before, established a mission, trading-post, and fort here, as well as at **Prairie du Chien** and **La Pointe**. French missionaries and traders explored portions of Wisconsin as early as 1639.

<sup>1</sup> The boundary between Mexico and the United States was to be the Rio Grande, from its mouth to New Mexico; thence to the River Gila; that river to its junction with the Colorado; thence in a straight line to the Pacific, at a point ten miles south of San Diego.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 206, ¶ 12.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 214, ¶¶ 3, 4.

<sup>4</sup> The state is named from the River Wisconsin. The name signifies "the gathering of the waters."

<sup>5</sup> See p. 191, ¶ 2, and note 3.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 200, ¶ 15.

<sup>7</sup> See Iowa, p. 206, ¶ 13, and Minnesota, p. 225, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—7. When and where was a treaty concluded? By this treaty what did the United States gain and what stipulate? V. 1. What is said of the territory acquired from Mexico? What is the Wilmot Proviso? What was the result of its introduction into Congress? What was the party opposed to the extension of slavery named? 2. What was found to abound in California? Effect of news of this discovery? 3. When was Wisconsin admitted to the Union? — Give an account of the early history of Wisconsin.

4. At the presidential election in 1848, the Whig candidates, Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, for president, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for vice-president, were elected.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.<sup>1</sup> 1849-1853.

1. GENERAL TAYLOR found the government surrounded by difficulties which threatened the disruption of the Union. The questions relating to slavery added the bitterness of sectional controversy to the strife of party. 1st. The majority in the slave states contended that the territory acquired from Mexico by the blood and treasure of the whole Union should be open to the people of every section of the country, with all their property, including slaveholders with their slaves; and it was proposed to extend the line of the Missouri Compromise<sup>2</sup> to the Pacific, prohibiting slavery north of the line, and permitting it south of it. In the free states slavery was generally believed to be an evil and a sin, and there was a large and growing party<sup>3</sup> which, although it had no disposition to molest the institution where it already existed, would not consent to its extension to territory then free, and such, by the laws of Mexico, was the condition of the territory recently acquired. 2d. California formed a constitution, and petitioned to be admitted to the Union as a free state, with her present boundaries. Since a part of this territory extended



Zachary Taylor.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 20.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 191, ¶ 3.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—4. Who were elected next president and vice-president? Chap. XI. 1. What was the condition of the government on the accession of Taylor? How did sectional controversy arise in regard to territory acquired from Mexico? In regard to the admission of California?

south of the proposed line of compromise, to grant the petition would exclude slavery from a region into which slaveholders maintained that they had a right to remove with their slaves. 3d. Petitions had for years been pouring in upon Congress, praying that the slave trade and slavery might be abolished in the **District of Columbia**. 4th. The south had also found cause of complaint in the fact that **fugitive slaves** had been assisted to escape by people in the free states. 5th. To add to these sources of sectional animosity, **Texas** set up a claim to a part of the acquired territory, which, should it be allowed, would consign to slavery the region claimed.

2. Under the lead of John C. Calhoun,<sup>1</sup> attempts were made to induce the people of the south to accept no compromise on the sectional issues before the country. The more violent urged **secession** from the Union and the establishment of a Southern Confederacy,<sup>2</sup> but more moderate counsels prevailed.

3. In the midst of these dangers to the republic, a committee<sup>3</sup> was appointed in the United States Senate to devise a plan for the settlement of the difficulties. Henry Clay,<sup>4</sup> himself a slaveholder, but opposed to the extension of slavery, 1850. was chairman, and in May, 1850, made a report, embracing several measures, known as the **Omnibus Bill**, and designed to arrange the subjects in dispute by compromise.

4. Pending the discussions on Mr. Clay's report, the nation was called a second time<sup>5</sup> to mourn the death of its chief magistrate. **President Taylor** died July 9, 1850.

Called to his high station from a life of active service in the camp, without any experience in the administration of civil affairs, he had shown himself equal to the position, and the confidence reposed in his integrity and patriotism by the people of all sections of the country, caused his death, at this time of national peril, to be felt as an irreparable calamity.

5. **Millard Fillmore**, the vice-president, now became president, and was inaugurated the day after the death of General Taylor.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 198, ¶ 9.

<sup>2</sup> Henry S. Foote, at that time senator from Mississippi, is evidence that Calhoun prepared a constitution for such a confederacy.

<sup>3</sup> The committee consisted of thirteen members. Besides the chairman, Mr. Clay, there were six from free and six from slave states.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 199, ¶ 9.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 203, ¶ 1.

QUESTIONS.—How in regard to the District of Columbia? In regard to fugitive slaves? In regard to the claim set up by Texas? 2. What attempts were made under the lead of Mr. Calhoun? What was urged by the more violent? 3. For what purpose was a committee appointed in the United States Senate? Who was chairman of the committee? What bill did he report, and what did it embrace? 4. What melancholy event occurred during the discussions on Mr. Clay's report?—What further is said of President Taylor? 5. Who now became president?

The cabinet having resigned, Mr. Fillmore nominated another, at the head of which, as secretary of state, was Daniel Webster,<sup>1</sup> who, as United States senator, had thrown the whole weight of his powerful influence in favor of Mr. Clay's report.

6. The compromise measures reported by Mr. Clay passed Congress, but not as a single bill, and received the president's signature in September 1850. They provided,

- 1st. For the admission of California<sup>2</sup> as a free state.
- 2d. For establishing the boundary of Texas, as at present, and paying that state ten millions of dollars to relinquish all claim to additional territory.
- 3d. For the organization of territorial government in the remainder of the region acquired from Mexico, without any provision for or against slavery.
- 4th. For prohibiting the slave trade in the District of Columbia; and,
- 5th. For the enactment of a Fugitive Slave Law, to enable masters to recover their slaves escaping to a free state.

7. The fugitive slave law met with great opposition in the north, and several instances of its execution created intense excitement. In the south a convention of disunionists met at Nashville for the purpose of encouraging the slave states to secede; but before Fillmore retired from the presidency, the people of both sections had generally acquiesced in the compromise measures.

8. In 1852, Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, was elected president, and William Rufus King,<sup>3</sup> of Alabama, vice-president. They were the candidates of the Democratic party, and friendly to the compromise measures.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 203, ¶ 2.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 14, ¶ 5; p. 68, ¶ 2; p. 214, and p. 218, ¶¶ 7, and 2

<sup>3</sup> Mr. King never took his seat as president of the Senate. By special act of Congress the oath of office was administered to him in Cuba (whether he had gone for the benefit of his health) by the American consul-general at Havana. He died in April, 1853, soon after his return to Alabama.

QUESTIONS.—Who was at the head of the new cabinet? 6. For what did Mr. Clay's compromise measures provide? When did they receive the president's signature? 7. What is said of the fugitive slave law? Of a convention of disunionists? Of the people of both sections before the close of the administration? 8. Who became the next president and vice-president?



Millard Fillmore.

## CHAPTER XII.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>1</sup> 1853—1857.

Franklin Pierce.

Commodore Matthew C. Perry, succeeded in negotiating a treaty which secured to the United States the advantages of trade with that distant empire. During this administration other enterprises were undertaken which reflect great credit upon the enlightened policy of the government — one to explore the tributaries of **La Plata River**, another to explore the **North Pacific**. Expeditions were also sent to ascertain the most practicable route for a **railroad to the Pacific**.

3. The sectional feeling which had prevailed since the annexation of Texas had subsided, and on the accession of Mr. Pierce, the country bade fair to enjoy a second *era of good feeling*;<sup>4</sup> but the political calm was not of long continuance. In 1854. January, 1854, a bill known as the **Kansas-Nebraska Bill** was brought forward in the national Senate by Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, providing for the organization of two

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 21.

<sup>3</sup> This region is often called the Gadsden Purchase, from General James Gadsden, the United States minister, who negotiated the treaty. It was purchased for \$10,000,000.

<sup>4</sup> Though neither section was entirely satisfied with the compromise measures of 1850, both the north and the south looked upon them as a final settlement of the questions in dispute.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo? How was the question growing out of it settled? 2. What is said of the expedition to Japan? What other expeditions are mentioned? 3. What was the state of the country on the accession of Pierce? What was the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and by whom was it brought forward?

<sup>2</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 7.

territories, one to be named *Kansas*, and the other *Nebraska*,<sup>1</sup> and leaving the question whether they should be slave or free to be determined in each territory by its inhabitants.<sup>2</sup> The passage of this bill would, in effect, repeal the Missouri Compromise.<sup>3</sup> At the north the proposition was vehemently opposed as a breach of compact. A renewal of heated discussions on questions pertaining to slavery followed. But notwithstanding strenuous opposition, in and out of Congress, the measure became a law in May.

4. An intense rivalry now sprang up between the pro-slavery men in the south and anti-slavery men in the north, in regard to colonizing Kansas, the former being determined to secure that territory to slavery, and the latter to freedom. Each party sent out emigrants prepared to carry out its views, and hostile encounters were the natural result. Elections to organize a territorial government were conducted with great irregularities. Armed bands of pro-slavery marauders, chiefly from the neighboring counties of Missouri, took possession of the polls, prevented the free state settlers from voting, and forced their own votes into the ballot-boxes. Settlements were attacked and pillaged, and for a few years Kansas was made the scene of lawless violence and civil strife.

5. The rescinding of the Missouri Compromise,<sup>3</sup> and the angry excitement which followed, and which was kept alive by the disturbances in Kansas, had a controlling influence in the reorganization of parties. The *Whig party*<sup>4</sup> ceased to exist as a national organization. The *Democratic party* gained almost unopposed control in the Southern States, while in the free states the organization opposed to the extension of slavery<sup>5</sup> became powerful under the name of the *Republican party*.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Kansas agreed in latitude with the present state; in longitude it extended 4° 30' farther west. Nebraska extended from Kansas north to British America, and from the Rocky Mountains east to the White Earth and Missouri Rivers.

<sup>2</sup> This was called *popular sovereignty*; also nicknamed *squatter sovereignty*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 191, ¶ 3.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 201, ¶ 16.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 1.

<sup>6</sup> Another party, calling itself the *American party*, but generally known as the *Know-Nothing party*, was, in 1853, secretly organized on the principle of opposition to foreign influence. Its development was rapid and powerful, and for a time it triumphed in many of the state elections, but its decline was as sudden as its growth. At the next presidential election the candidate of the American party received the vote of one state—Maryland. A party called the *Native American party*, and advocating the same principles, had been formed in 1844-5.

QUESTIONS.—What would the passage of this bill in effect do? How was the proposition regarded at the north? What followed? When did the measure become a law? 4. Give an account of the rivalry in colonizing Kansas. How were elections for organizing a territorial government disturbed? What was the state of affairs in Kansas for a few years? 5. What had a controlling influence in the reorganization of parties? What is said of the Whig party? Of the Democratic party? Of the Republican party?

**6.** In the presidential election of 1856 the Democrats elected James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, president, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, vice-president.

These candidates received the electoral vote of five free and fourteen slave states. The Republicans supported for president John C. Frémont,<sup>1</sup> of California, who received the electoral vote of eleven free states. At no previous election had the opponents of slavery carried a single state.



## CHAPTER XIII.

### BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.<sup>2</sup> 1857—1861.



James Buchanan.

**1.** SOON after the inauguration of Mr. Buchanan, the anti-slavery sentiment of the north was still further roused by a decision of the Supreme Court of the United States, delivered by Chief Justice Taney, in the **Dred Scott case**. The decision declared that the Missouri Compromise<sup>3</sup> was unconstitutional; that, under the Constitution, slave owners have a right to hold their slaves in the territories; and

that neither negro slaves, nor their descendants, slave or free, can become citizens of the United States.<sup>4</sup>

**2.** The legislatures of several of the free states passed or revived enactments called **Personal Liberty Laws**, designed

<sup>1</sup> See p. 214, ¶ 3.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 21.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 191, ¶ 3.

<sup>4</sup> Scott, a slave, was carried by his master into a free state, and then into United States territory north of the Missouri Compromise line, where he married his wife, also a slave, who had been brought by her master to the same place. Some time afterwards they were taken to Missouri, at that time a slave state, and they and their children held as slaves. They claimed their freedom on the ground that they had been carried by their master where slavery was forbidden. Their claim was not allowed, but the points stated above were not directly before the court, and the decision excited great opposition. The administration and the Democrats sustained it because it was a decision of the Supreme Court of the United States; the Republicans opposed it on the ground of its intrinsic wrong, and because it included points not properly before the court. A minority of the court gave opinions adverse to that of the chief justice.

QUESTIONS.—6. Who were elected the next president and vice-president?—How was the electoral vote of the free and slave states distributed in this election? Chap. XIII. 1. What effect was produced by the decision of the Supreme Court in the Dred Scott case? What did the decision declare? 2. By what legislatures were the personal liberty laws enacted, and for what purpose?

to guard against abuse in the execution of the fugitive slave law,<sup>1</sup> or to render inoperative some of its obnoxious provisions. These laws gave great offence to the people of the south, who considered that they betrayed a want of good faith in carrying out the compromise of 1850.

3. In the latter part of the year 1857 a most disastrous financial convulsion swept over the United States. 1857.

It probably grew out of excessive speculation in western lands and railroads. The successive failures of crops tended to aggravate the evil. Bankruptcies and failures became the order of the day, banks suspended specie payment, and there was a general depression of business, which prevailed throughout the ensuing year.

4. A body of men styling themselves **Mormons**,<sup>2</sup> or "Latter-Day Saints," had, after various wanderings, settled in the valley of the Great Salt Lake, in **Utah**, a territory organized in 1850. Here they refused to obey any authority unless sanctioned by Brigham Young, their leader. Under him they set at nought the laws of the United States. Polygamy and other practices revolting to the moral sentiments of Christendom were common among them. In 1857, the president appointed Alfred Cumming governor of the territory, and sent him to Utah, supported by a body of United States troops. At first the Mormons prepared to resist, but at length were induced to submit, and the governor entered the valley, without bloodshed, the next spring.

5. Three new states were added to the Union during the presidency of Mr. Buchanan—**Minnesota**, in 1858, '59, '61. **Oregon**, in 1859; and **Kansas**, in 1861.<sup>3</sup>

**Minnesota**, embracing nearly twice the area of the present state, was made a territory in 1849, with the Missouri and White Earth Rivers for its western boundary. The portion of the territory east of the Mississippi had belonged to Wisconsin,<sup>4</sup> and the portion west to Iowa.<sup>5</sup> This region

<sup>1</sup> Some of the provisions of the fugitive slave law were especially obnoxious to the people of the free states. The alleged fugitive was not allowed the right of trial by jury, and all good citizens were commanded to assist in the prompt and efficient execution of the law, whenever the process should be resisted.

<sup>2</sup> The Mormons are a sect founded by Joseph Smith, a native of Vermont. In 1830 he published the *Book of Mormon*, which he pretended was a special revelation from heaven of a new religion, and instituting a new church, of which he was to be the head. Smith, with a few followers, settled first in Ohio, then in Missouri, and afterwards in Illinois, on the banks of the Mississippi, where he began to build the city of Nauvoo. Here the Mormons increased rapidly, and, after a time, set at defiance the laws of the state. In 1845, Smith having been killed by a mob of enraged citizens, the Mormons sold out their possessions in Nauvoo and migrated westward. In 1848, under the lead of Brigham Young, who had succeeded Smith, they reached Salt Lake, where they have built Salt Lake City, and brought under cultivation large tracts of land. Their numbers in Utah are variously estimated at from fifty thousand to a hundred thousand, and there are about a hundred thousand Mormons in other parts of the world.

<sup>3</sup> *Minnesota* is the Indian name of the river, also named St. Peter's, and signifies *cloudy water*. *Kansas* is the name of a river, and of a tribe of Indians, and is said to signify *smoky water*. For Oregon, see p. 207, note 3. <sup>4</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 3. <sup>5</sup> See p. 206, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—What was the effect in the south of the personal liberty laws? 3. What can you tell of the financial convulsion of 1857? 4. What is said of the Mormons, and of their difficulties with the United States? 5. Name the states admitted to the union during the presidency of Mr. Buchanan, with the dates of their admission.—Give an account of the early history of Minnesota.

**1846.** was penetrated by La Salle as early as 1680.<sup>1</sup> St. Paul was settled in 1846, by emigrants from the Eastern States.

**Oregon**<sup>2</sup> was organized in 1848 as a territory, including all the possessions of the United States west of the Rocky Mountains and north of parallel 42°. In 1853 its northern boundary was made the Columbia and parallel 46°. When it became a state it was reduced to its present limits. Since 1845 there has been a feeling of hostility between the whites and **Indians** of Oregon. This feeling broke out in open war in 1855, and again three years later. In these wars there was some loss of life and property, but no general battle.

**6.** In Kansas the struggle between the pro-slavery men and the anti-slavery men continued.<sup>3</sup> The president, in violation of the provisions of the Kansas-Nebraska bill, lent his influence to support the policy of the former, though it was against the wishes of a majority of the actual settlers. But so powerful a stream of immigration had been flowing in from the free states, that it was found impossible, either by fair means or by fraud and violence, to fasten slavery upon the territory, and Kansas entered the Union as a free state, but not till six years of angry agitation had endangered the harmony of the country, and done much to change the political parties of the nation.

**7.** In October, 1859, an event occurred which created great excitement throughout the country, and added to the sectional animosity which already prevailed to an alarming extent at the south. This was a mad attempt of **John Brown** to free slaves in Virginia and Maryland.

John Brown had been prominent among the free-state men of Kansas as a bold and resolute leader, and had suffered deeply from pro-slavery invaders of that territory. On the night of October 16, with twenty-one associates,<sup>4</sup> he seized the United States arsenal at **Harper's Ferry**, intending to arm from its stores such slaves as might be induced to join him. He, however, failed to excite a revolt, and was overpowered by the militia of the neighborhood and a party of United States marines, under the command of Colonel Robert E. Lee. Of the insurgents, thirteen were killed, two escaped, and the rest, with their leader, were tried, condemned, and executed, at Charlestown, Virginia. Many persons in the south believed that Brown was merely the agent of a large number at the north, who had conspired to create an insurrection among the slaves. At the next session of Congress, the Senate appointed a committee to investigate the subject; but no evidence was elicited to implicate any one in the scheme except Brown and his immediate associates.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 68, Chap. XII., ¶ 3.

<sup>4</sup> Sixteen white men, three of whom were his own sons, and five colored men.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 207, ¶¶ 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 223, ¶ 4.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the early history of Oregon. What is said of the state of feeling between the whites and Indians of Oregon? 6. What is said of the struggle between the pro-slavery and the anti-slavery men in Kansas? Course of the president? Effect of immigration to Kansas from the free states? 7. What event occurred in October, 1859, which increased sectional animosity at the south?—Give an account of the attempt of John Brown to free slaves.

8. Besides this attempt to liberate slaves, several other causes operated to keep alive and increase the bitterness of sectional feeling. The principal of these were the Dred Scott case,<sup>1</sup> the Personal Liberty Laws,<sup>2</sup> and the civil war in Kansas.<sup>3</sup> The division of parties had now become in a still greater degree sectional.<sup>4</sup>

9. Such was the state of affairs in the autumn of 1860, when the Republican party<sup>5</sup> elected Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, president, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, vice-president. These candidates received all the electoral votes from the free states excepting three from New Jersey, but none from the slave states.

10. As soon as the result of the election was known, the political leaders in several of the southern states set in motion a plot, already prepared, for withdrawing their states from the Union. South Carolina took the lead in secession; Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, and Louisiana followed. Delegates from these six states met in convention at **1861.** Montgomery, Alabama, February 4, 1861. Delegates from Texas joined them soon after.<sup>6</sup>

11. The members of this **convention** proceeded to organize a government for the rebellious states, under the name of the *Confederate States of America* adopted a flag,<sup>7</sup>—which, like

<sup>1</sup> See p. 224, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 224, ¶ 2.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 222, ¶ 3, and 226, ¶ 6.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 223, ¶ 4.

<sup>5</sup> The *Republicans* took the position that Congress has the right to exclude slavery from the territories. The *Democrats* had two candidates for the presidency, Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The former represented the doctrine that Congress has no power over slavery in the territories, but that the people of any territory have a right to exclude it or to adopt it, as they choose. The latter represented the doctrine that neither Congress nor any territorial legislature can exclude slavery from a territory, and that Congress is bound to protect slaveholders in the use of their slaves, in any territory, regardless of the wishes of the people of said territory. John Bell, of Tennessee, was the candidate of a third party, called the *Union party*, whose platform was "The Constitution, the Union, and the Enforcement of the Laws," without any special mention of the questions then agitating the public mind. Douglas received all the electoral votes of Missouri, and three from New Jersey. Kentucky, Tennessee, and Virginia gave their electoral votes for Bell. All the other slave states gave their votes for Breckinridge.

<sup>6</sup> The secession ordinances in these seven states were passed as follows: in 1860, South Carolina, December 20; in 1861, Mississippi, January 9; Florida, January 10; Alabama, January 11; Georgia, January 18; Louisiana, January 26; Texas, February 1. These were followed later in the same year by Virginia, April 17; Arkansas, May 6; Tennessee, May 7; North Carolina, May 20. These ordinances were passed by conventions, excepting in the case of Tennessee, in which state it was passed by the legislature. See p. 241, ¶ 5.

<sup>7</sup> In place of the stars and stripes of the American flag, they adopted a blue union with a circle of seven stars, and three bars, the upper and lower red, the middle one white. As other states seceded it was intended to add stars to represent them.

QUESTIONS.—8. Name the principal causes which kept alive and increased sectional feeling. 9. Who were elected the next president and vice-president, and by what party? From what states did these candidates receive electoral votes? 10. What happened as soon as the result of the election was known? What state took the lead in secession? What states followed? When and where did delegates from these states meet in convention? By what delegates were they soon joined? 11. What did this convention proceed to do?

their constitution,<sup>1</sup> was borrowed from that which they had deserted,—and elected Jefferson Davis,<sup>2</sup> of Mississippi, president, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, vice-president.

12. The rebellious states seized the forts, arsenals, mints, ships, and national property of whatever description within



Jefferson Davis.

their boundaries, and made them over to the Confederacy. There remained in the possession of the United States only Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, and the forts on Key West and the Tortugas.<sup>3</sup> The first two were saved by the gallantry and patriotism of the brave officers, Major Robert Anderson, and Lieutenant Adam J. Slemmer, in command of small garrisons, the former at Charleston, and the latter at Pensacola.

13. Major Anderson occupied Fort Moultrie.<sup>4</sup> Fearing the excited secessionists in Charleston might surprise and overpower him, he withdrew his command, on the night of December 26, to **Fort Sumter**, situated on an island in the harbor, and supposed to be impregnable. This step caused great indignation among the South Carolinians, who immediately took possession of Fort Moultrie and Castle Pinckney (a small fort near the city), began to strengthen these posts, and to erect batteries for the reduction of Sumter. Major Anderson was forbidden by the authorities in Washington to interfere with these hostile proceedings. Early in January the administration attempted to reinforce Sumter; but the Star of the West, an unarmed steamship, bearing troops and supplies, when within sight of the fort, was fired upon from the rebel batteries, and obliged to turn back. No effort was made by the government to wipe out this insult to the national flag. Lieutenant Slemmer, at Pensacola, seeing indications that an attack was about to be made upon him by Florida and

<sup>1</sup> The convention at first adopted a provisional constitution, which was superseded, March 11, by a permanent one (see p. 254, ¶ 3). These constitutions were formed on the basis of the Federal Constitution, but they differed from that instrument in some important particulars.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 213, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> See Maps, pp. 262, 263.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 118, ¶ 18, and note 3.

QUESTIONS.—Who were chosen president and vice-president of the so-called Confederate States? 12. What was done by the rebellious states? What forts in these states remained in possession of the United States? How were Forts Sumter and Pickens saved to the Union? 13. What further is said of Major Anderson and Fort Sumter? Of Lieutenant Slemmer and Fort Pickens?

Alabama troops, transferred his garrison from Fort McRae, an untenable position, to **Fort Pickens**, one of the strongest fortifications on the whole coast, where he defied the rebel force brought against him.

**14.** General Twiggs was in command of the military department of **Texas**, and even before that state had completed her act of secession, he basely surrendered his entire army, about twenty-five hundred men, and all the posts and munitions of war in his department. The troops could not be seduced from their allegiance, and were permitted to return to the loyal states.

**15.** In Washington but little was done to stem the tide of treason. The president was not equal to the emergency. Some of his cabinet were disloyal, and the public offices were full of conspirators. Most of the members of Congress from the seceding states resigned their seats, and, defiantly exulting in their treason, would listen to no terms of accommodation.

General Cass, the secretary of state, resigned, disgusted with the inactivity of the executive: the secretary of the treasury, Howell Cobb, of Georgia; the secretary of war, John B. Floyd, of Virginia; and the secretary of the interior, Jacob Thompson, of Mississippi, resigned from sympathy with secession, and were permitted, like the rebel delegations in Congress, to leave Washington and return to their own states, to plot treason there. The postmaster-general, Joseph Holt, of Kentucky, became secretary of war; John A. Dix, of New York, secretary of the treasury;<sup>1</sup> and Edwin M. Stanton, of Pennsylvania, attorney-general.<sup>2</sup> By their patriotic efforts a little vigor was infused into the administration, but too late to remedy the evil. Congress was disposed to make **concessions**. With the aid of Republican votes, governments not excluding slavery were arranged for the new territories — thus placing the question at issue in Mr. Lincoln's election<sup>3</sup> beyond his control. Both Houses of the national legislature adopted a resolution proposing an amendment to the Constitution, by which Congress was to be forever prohibited from interfering with slavery in the states, and prominent Republicans professed a willingness to aid in bringing about a repeal or a modification of the Personal Liberty Laws, but all to no purpose.

**16.** At the suggestion of Virginia, a convention, known as the **Peace Congress**, met in Washington, February 4. This convention, represent-

<sup>1</sup> One of the orders of the new secretary of the treasury, given when treason was rife among the officers of the government, found a thrilling response in every loyal heart. The captain of a revenue cutter at New Orleans having revealed himself to be a rebel, Secretary Dix telegraphed an order for the lieutenant to arrest the captain, and assume command of the cutter, and added, "*If any one attempts to haul down the American flag, shoot him on the spot.*"

<sup>2</sup> In the place of Jeremiah S. Black, who was transferred to the state department.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 227, note 5.

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of the baseness of General Twiggs? 15. What was done in Washington? What of the president, some of his cabinet, and the public offices? Of members of Congress from the seceding states?—What is said of the secretary of state? What secretaries resigned from sympathy with secession? How was a little vigor infused into the administration? What concessions were made by Congress? What of prominent Republicans and the Personal Liberty Laws? Result? 16. Give an account of the Peace Congress.

ing twenty-one states,<sup>1</sup> with a view to avert the threatened dangers, proposed certain amendments to the Constitution, which, however, did not meet the approval of the national Congress, and had no practical result.

**17.** Meanwhile a plot was laid to assassinate the president elect while passing through Baltimore, on his way to the national capital; but the plot was foiled. Mr. Lincoln, taking an earlier train than the one he had been expected to take, reached Washington without molestation. It was even feared that the new president could not be inaugurated without bloodshed. Washington was full of secessionists, and surrounded by a population of their sympathizers. But a military force was collected by the timely precaution of General Scott, the public peace was preserved, and the new administration inaugurated without disturbance.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### CONDITION OF THE UNITED STATES AT THE CLOSE OF THIS PERIOD.

**1.** In the seventy-two years that have passed since the organization of the government,<sup>2</sup> the United States have enjoyed a degree of material prosperity without a parallel in the history of nations.

The number of states, from thirteen, has become thirty-four, and the area of the **national domain** has been expanded by purchase, annexation, and conquest, nearly four-fold,<sup>3</sup>—from about eight hundred thousand to more than three millions of square miles. The **population** has increased eight-fold,<sup>4</sup>—from less than four millions at the time of the first census, in 1790, to nearly thirty-two millions in 1860. A liberal government, cheapness of land, and of all the means of subsistence, have drawn to America an immense **immigration** from the Old World, amounting, in one year (1854), to about four hundred thousand souls.

**2.** In **commerce and trade** the country has gained in a still greater ratio. The amount of shipping is more than five and a half million tons. In less than three quarters of a century the United States have become, in the extent of their commerce, the successful rival of the most powerful nations on the globe. **Manufactures** have increased to such an extent

<sup>1</sup> The states not represented were the seven states in secession (see p. 227, ¶ 10), Arkansas, which afterwards joined the Confederacy, and the loyal states Michigan, Wisconsin, Minnesota, California, and Oregon.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 157, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3; p. 192, ¶ 6; p. 204, ¶ 7; p. 218, ¶ 7; p. 222, ¶ 1.

<sup>4</sup> The population of the United States, by the census of 1860, was as follows: whites, 26,957,471; free colored, 488,070; slaves, 3,953,760; civilized Indians, 44,020;—being in the aggregate 31,443,221 persons (see Appendix, p. 22). There were also 295,400 Indians living in tribes.

QUESTIONS.—17. What is said of the plot to assassinate the president elect? What is said of the inauguration of President Lincoln? Chap. XIV. 1. What is said of the material prosperity of the United States during this Period?—What has been the increase in the number of states, and in the **national domain**? In population? What is said of immigration? 2. What is said of commerce and trade? Of shipping? Of manufactures?

that the United States, except as to articles of mere ornament and luxury, are not necessarily dependent on foreign industry. The manufactures in one year have amounted in value to near two thousand millions of dollars. **Agriculture**, now, as formerly, the leading branch of industry, has become a still more fruitful source of national and individual wealth. The value of **real and personal property** in the country has increased about sixteen-fold during the Period, having reached an aggregate, according to the census of 1860, of more than sixteen thousand millions of dollars.<sup>1</sup> By their **inventions and discoveries** the people of the United States have contributed much to increase the power, wealth, and comfort of their nation and the world. During this Period, the railroad,<sup>2</sup> the steamboat, and the electro-magnetic telegraph<sup>4</sup> have come into common use in the United States.

**3.** This Period has witnessed, too, a wonderful advance in the **intellectual and moral growth** of the country.

At its close more than forty thousand clergymen minister to the spiritual wants of fifty thousand **churches**. The interests of **education** are especially cherished. The common school system<sup>5</sup> has been adopted in most of the states, and several states and cities have established normal schools<sup>6</sup> for the training of teachers. Two hundred and forty colleges supply to the young the means of sound scholarship; and there are numerous academies and schools for professional and special instruction. The United States have a Military Academy at West Point,<sup>7</sup> a Naval Academy at Annapolis, and, at Washington, the Smithsonian Institution,<sup>8</sup> "for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men." There are about five thousand five hundred **newspapers and periodicals** published in the United States; and in every department of science and literature, of art and culture, the American mind is honorably represented.

**4.** But all sections of the Union have not prospered to the same degree. The constitution was formed and adopted in the hope that **slavery**<sup>9</sup> would be abolished in all the states at no distant day; and the terms *slave* and *slavery* are not directly named in the constitution, because the framers of that instrument "did not choose to admit the right of property in man." This hope has been so far realized that, of the original thirteen states, only the six southernmost retain slavery, and of the thirty-four states forming the Union at the close of this Period, fifteen are slave and the rest free.<sup>10</sup> In the early part of the present century, the profits of slave labor in the

<sup>1</sup> This return is probably less than the truth by at least one third.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 194, ¶ 4, and note 2.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 167, ¶ 7, and note 2.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 204, ¶ 6.

<sup>5</sup> In 1860 there were more than five million pupils attending common schools in the U. S.

<sup>6</sup> The oldest state institution of this kind is that now (1867) located in Framingham, Massachusetts, which was opened in Lexington in 1839. The largest is in Millersville, Pennsylvania.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 171, ¶ 3.

<sup>8</sup> Named for James Smithson, an Englishman, who gave more than half a million dollars to found it.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 152, ¶ 5.

<sup>10</sup> See Appendix, p. 22.

**QUESTIONS.** — What is said of agriculture? Of real and personal property? Of inventions and discoveries? 3. What is said of the intellectual and moral growth of the country during this Period? Of clergymen and churches? Of education? Of the common school system? Of normal schools? Of colleges and other institutions of learning? Of newspapers and periodicals? 4. With what hope was the constitution adopted? How far was this hope realized?

Southern States were greatly increased,<sup>1</sup> and the interests of slaveholders prompted them to look about for means to strengthen and perpetuate the institution. Efforts in this direction raised up a party at the north determined to limit its extension.<sup>2</sup> The census revealed that the slave states were becoming, as compared with the free states, weaker in wealth, population, congressional strength, and electoral vote.<sup>3</sup> Immigration, that was flowing into the Northern and Western States, avoided slave soil. The sparse population of the slave states tended to exclude schools and churches from the rural regions of the south, white labor was degraded, and a large class, known as **poor whites**, existed there, sunk in a condition of misery, ignorance, and depravity, but little removed from that of the slave.

**5.** From the origin of the government the people had not been agreed as to the dividing line between **national and state authority**.<sup>4</sup> Gradually opinion in this respect became sectional. The people of the free states looked upon the Union as indissoluble, and upon the national authority as supreme. At the south the belief was prevalent that the state had a right at will to sever its connection with the Union, and that the allegiance which the citizen owed to his state was paramount to that which he owed to the nation.

**6. Secession.**—Asserting that the institution of slavery was in danger, and accepting the doctrine of state as opposed to national sovereignty, some of the southern states resolved to secede from the Union, and take up arms, if need be, in defence of **slavery and state rights**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nothing was more conducive to this result than the invention of the cotton gin, by Eli Whitney, in 1792-3. By this machine the expense of separating the seed from cotton was lessened to such a degree as to vastly increase the profit of the production of cotton, and make that commodity the great staple of the south.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 206, ¶ 12; p. 218, ¶ 1; p. 223, ¶ 5.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix, p. 22.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 193, ¶ 1, and note 5.

QUESTIONS.—What prompted slaveholders to endeavor to strengthen and perpetuate slavery? What was the effect in the north of their efforts in this direction? What did the census reveal? What is said of immigration? Of the sparse population of the slave states? Of poor whites? 5. In regard to what had the people not been agreed? How did the people of the free states look upon the Union and the national authority? What belief was prevalent at the south? 6. What did some of the southern states resolve to do, and why?

## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures in and at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

~~See~~ For the admission of the states in chronological order, see Appendix, p. 22.

- 1789.** **Washington** became president, 157. He served two terms.

During this administration the government was organized, 158; party lines (*Republican* and *Federalist*) began to be distinctly drawn, 160; and the United States came near being involved in a war with Great Britain, as an ally of France, 161.

1790. A war broke out with the Indians north of the Ohio, 159.

1794. The Whiskey Insurrection broke out in Pennsylvania, 161.

- 1797.** **Adams** became president, 163. He served one term.

During this administration war with France became imminent, 163.

1798. The passage of the Alien and Sedition Laws excited great opposition, and gave occasion for the first official expression of the State-Rights heresy, 164.

- 1801.** **Jefferson** became president, 165. He served two terms.

1803. Louisiana was purchased of France, 166.

1805. A peace, which concluded a war with Tripoli, was negotiated, 166.

1807. Fulton successfully applied steam to navigation, 167.

- 1809.** **Madison** became president, 169. He served two terms.

1811. General Harrison gained a victory at *Tipppecanoe*, 169.

1812. British aggressions on American commerce, begun in Jefferson's administration (168), continuing in this (170), led to a declaration of war with Great Britain, 171.

The Americans surrendered *Detroit*, 171; were defeated at *Queenstown*, and evacuated *Fort Dearborn*; but they were, almost without exception, victorious on the ocean, 174.

1813. The Americans at *Frenchtown*, at first victorious, were afterwards defeated, 176; took *York*, 179; gained, under Perry, a decisive victory on *Lake Erie*; defeated, under Harrison, the British and Indians on the *Thames*, 178; undertook an unsuccessful expedition against *Montreal*, 180; and before the end of the year were driven from their posts on the *Niagara*, 179.

The British held the *Atlantic coast* of the United States, except of New England, in blockade, yet the career of the Americans on the ocean was creditable, 180.

1814. The Americans, under Jackson, broke the power of the *Creeks*. In the north they took *Fort Erie*, were victorious at the *Chippewa*, held the field after the severe battle of *Lundy's Lane* (182), and closed the war in the north by the decisive victory on *Lake Champlain*, and at *Plattsburg*, 184.

The British blockaded the whole *Atlantic coast* of the United States, burned *Washington* (185), but were compelled to retire from before *Baltimore*, 186. The little navy of the United States had become well nigh exhausted, 187.

1815. Jackson gained a decisive victory at *New Orleans*, 186.  
News of a treaty of peace, signed at Ghent the previous year, reached the United States. After this the Americans made some captures on the ocean, 188.  
The claims of the Barbary States to tribute were effectually resisted, 189.
- 1817.** **Monroe** became president, 190. He served two terms.  
The period of this administration is known as the *Era of Good Feeling*, 190.
1817. A war with the Seminole Indians broke out, 191.
1819. The northern boundary of the United States was established from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, 192.  
Florida was purchased of Spain, and the boundary between the United States and Spanish America was settled by a treaty ratified two years afterwards, 192.
1820. The Missouri Compromise was adopted, 191.
- 1825.** **John Quincy Adams** became president, 193. He served one term.  
A controversy in regard to the Creek lands forced upon the people the question of the supremacy of the nation over the state, 193.  
The *American System* became the policy of the government, internal improvement was fostered, and party spirit again burst forth with intense bitterness, 194.
- 1829.** **Jackson** became president, 195. He served two terms.
1832. The Black Hawk war broke out, 196. South Carolina opposed the tariff laws, and issued an Ordinance of Nullification, 198.
1835. A war, which continued seven years, arose with the Seminoles, 196.  
The great fire occurred in New York, 200.
1837. The original number of states was doubled, by the admission of Michigan, 200.  
The policy of devoting the public revenue to internal improvements was opposed by the president (195), who also inaugurated a new financial policy by his opposition to the United States Bank, 199.  
During this administration the *Democratic* and *Whig* parties were organized, 201.
- 1837.** **Van Buren** became president, 201. He served one term.  
A financial storm swept over the country, 201; and the Independent Treasury was established, 202.
- 1841.** **Harrison** became president. He died one month after his inauguration, and Vice-President **Tyler** became president for the rest of the term, 203.
1842. The north-eastern boundary was established, 202.  
The Dorr Rebellion broke out in Rhode Island, 204.
1844. Morse's electro-magnetic telegraph was put in operation between Baltimore and Washington, 204.
1845. Texas was annexed to the United States, 205.  
During Tyler's administration the *Liberty Party* was organized, 206.

- 1845.** **Polk** became president, 207. He served one term.
1846. The boundary between the United States and British America, from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific was established, completing the northern boundary as at present, 207. (See pp. 147, 192, 202.) War with Mexico broke out, 208. Taylor gained victories at *Palo Alto* and *Resaca de la Palma* (210), and captured *Monterey*, 211. Kearny, after taking possession of *New Mexico*, pushed across the continent to California, having detached Doniphan, who, early the next year, conquered *Chihuahua*, 213.
1847. The battle of *San Gabriel* established the authority of the United States in California, which had been virtually conquered the year before by Captain Frémont, of the army, and Commodores Sloat and Stockton, of the navy, 214. Taylor broke the Mexican power in the north, by the signal victory at *Buena Vista*, 212. Scott conducted his victorious campaign, taking *Vera Cruz* (214), defeating the Mexicans at *Cerro Gordo* (215), gaining brilliant victories at *Contreras* and *Churubusco* (216), *Molino del Rey*, and *Chapultepec*, and entering in triumph the city of *Mexico*, 217.
1848. The treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo ended the war, and gave the United States large accessions of territory, 218. During this administration the *Free Soil Party* was organized, and gold was discovered in California, 218.
- 1849.** **Taylor** became president, 219. He died July, 1850, and Vice-President **Fillmore** became president for the rest of the term.
1850. The Compromise Measures allayed for a time sectional strife, 220-1. The Mormons settled in Utah, 225.
- 1853.** **Pierce** became president, 222. He served one term.
1853. The United States purchased of Mexico the region including the Mesilla Valley, thus completing the southern boundary as at present, 222. (See pp. 147, 162, 166, 192, 218.)
1854. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed, and in effect repealed the Missouri Compromise, 223. During this administration parties were reorganized, and the *Republican Party* was formed, 223.
- 1857.** **Buchanan** became president, 224. He served one term.
1857. A disastrous financial convulsion swept over the United States, 225.
1859. John Brown made a mad attempt to free slaves in Virginia, 226. During this administration the Dred Scott Decision, the Personal Liberty Laws, and other causes, roused an intense excitement on the subject of slavery, 227. Secession was organized, and treason crept into places of influence, 227-9.
1860. South Carolina took the lead in secession, 227.
1861. Before March six states followed the lead of South Carolina, and sent delegates to Montgomery, where a government was organized for the seceding states, under the name of the *Confederate States of America*, 227.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

1789. The French Revolution. Meeting of the States-General. Destruction of the Bastile.
1793. Execution of Louis XVI. of France, and inauguration of the Reign of Terror.
1796. Bonaparte's first Italian campaign.
1798. Battle of the Pyramids and battle of the Nile.
1800. Parliamentary union of Great Britain and Ireland.
1804. Bonaparte Emperor of France.
1805. Battle of Trafalgar and battle of Austerlitz.
1806. End of the German Empire, after having lasted 1006 years (from the beginning of the Empire of the West under Charlemagne).
1808. Bonaparte compelled Ferdinand of Spain to abdicate.
1812. Bonaparte's invasion of Russia, and his disastrous retreat from Moscow.
1814. Abdication of Bonaparte. He retired to Elba.
1815. Battle of Waterloo. Bonaparte banished to St. Helena, where he died in 1821.
1821. Mexico declared herself independent of Spain.
1822. Brazil independent of Portugal. Don Pedro I. first emperor.
1827. Battle of Navarino, and the establishment of Greek independence.
1829. The Roman Catholic Emancipation Act repealed the laws imposing civil disabilities on Catholics in Great Britain.
1830. A year of revolutions — Revolution of July in France, Revolutions in Belgium, Germany, and Poland.
1832. The Reform Bill passed the British Parliament.
1833. Act passed by Parliament to provide for the Abolition of Slavery in the British Colonies.
1837. Accession of Queen Victoria.
1841. Union of the Canadas.
1847. The surrender of Abd el Kader completed the conquest of Algiers by the French.  
Famine in Ireland.
1848. A year of civil commotions in Europe. A revolution drove Louis Philippe from the throne of France. Insurrections in Italy, Prussia, Austria, Spain, and Ireland.
1851. The Great Exhibition in London.  
*Coup d'état* of Louis Napoleon.
- 1853-6. The Crimean War. Russia against Turkey, France, England, and Sardinia.
1857. The Sepoy rebellion in India against the English.
1859. The Italian War. Sardinia and France against Austria. Battle of Solferino.

Among the eminent persons who closed their career during this Period were,

Mozart, . . . . .	1792.	Felicia Dorothea Hemans, .	1835.
Gibbon, . . . . .	1794.	Marshall, . . . . .	1835.
Burns, . . . . .	1796.	Bowditch, . . . . .	1838.
Burke, . . . . .	1797	Wm. Ellery Channing, . .	1842.
Kant, . . . . .	1804.	Sismondi, . . . . .	1842.
Nelson, . . . . .	1805.	Washington Allston, . . .	1843.
Schiller, . . . . .	1805.	Joseph Story, . . . . .	1845.
Charles James Fox, . . .	1806.	Thomas Chalmers. . . . .	1847.
William Pitt, . . . . .	1806.	Kent, . . . . .	1847.
Haydn, . . . . .	1809.	Mendelssohn, . . . . .	1847.
Canova, . . . . .	1822.	Wordsworth, . . . . .	1850.
Sir William Herschel, . . .	1822.	Sir Robert Peel, . . . . .	1850.
Byron, . . . . .	1824.	Adoniram Judson, . . . .	1850.
Laplace, . . . . .	1827.	J. Fenimore Cooper, . . .	1851.
Beethoven, . . . . .	1827.	Wellington, . . . . .	1852.
Pestalozzi, . . . . .	1827.	Arago, . . . . .	1853.
Sir Humphry Davy, . . .	1829.	Sir William Hamilton, . .	1856.
Sir Walter Scott, . . . .	1832.	Macaulay, . . . . .	1859.
Cuvier, . . . . .	1832.	Humboldt, . . . . .	1859.
Goethe, . . . . .	1832.	Washington Irving, . . . .	1859.
Wilberforce, . . . . .	1833.	Prescott, . . . . .	1859.

## A N A L Y S I S.

---

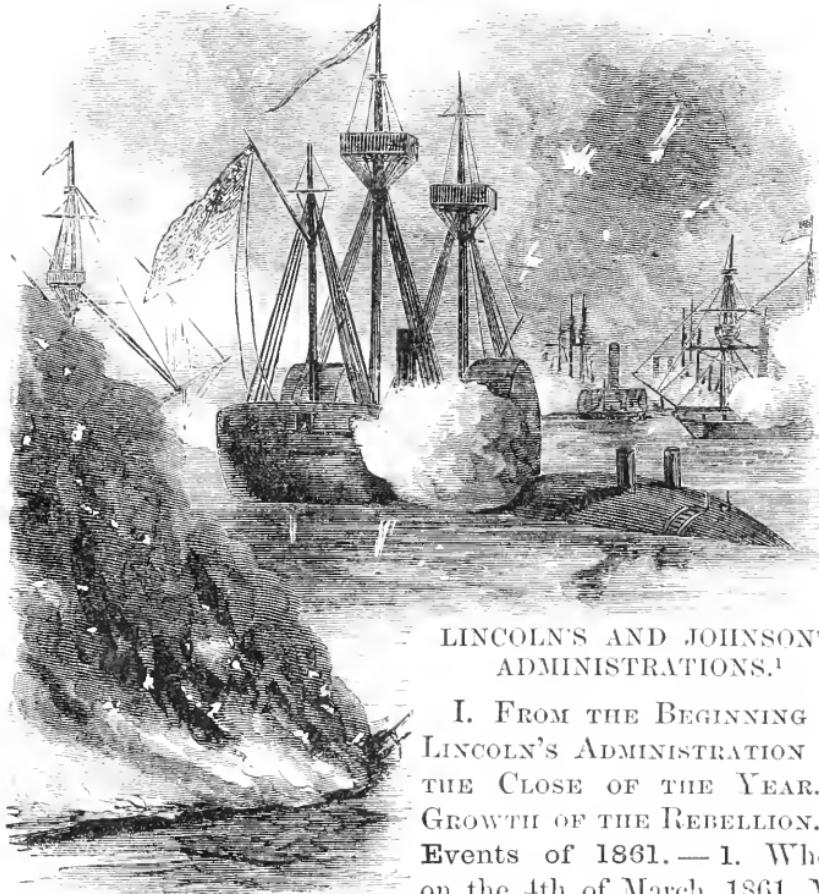
### PERIOD VI.—THE GREAT REBELLION.

- I. From the Beginning of Lincoln's Administration to the Close of the Year.—The Growth of the Rebellion.  
Beginning of hostilities, and preparation for war, p. 239.  
Operations in Virginia and West Virginia, p. 242, ¶ 8. —west of the Mississippi, p. 248, ¶ 18. —in Kentucky and Tennessee, p. 250, ¶ 26. —on the Mississippi and in the Gulf States, p. 251, ¶ 29. —on the Atlantic seaboard, p. 251, ¶ 31.  
Naval affairs, p. 252, ¶ 32. European powers, p. 252, ¶ 34.
- II. From the Beginning of the Year 1862 to the Close of the Year 1863.—The Rebellion in its Strength.  
The Federal and Confederate governments and armies, p. 253, ¶ 1.  
Operations in the West, east of the Mississippi, p. 254, ¶ 4, and p. 275, ¶ 52. —west of the Mississippi, p. 258, ¶ 15, and p. 278, ¶ 59. —on the Mississippi and in the Gulf States, p. 259, ¶ 18, and p. 279, ¶ 61. —on the Atlantic seaboard, p. 264, ¶ 24, and p. 282, ¶ 69. —in Virginia and West Virginia, and invasions of the loyal states, p. 266, ¶ 27, and p. 282, ¶ 71.  
Naval affairs, p. 274, ¶ 48, and p. 285, ¶ 77. The Sioux War, p. 274, ¶ 49. The Emancipation Proclamation, p. 275, ¶ 51. Opposition to the draft, and review of the year 1863, p. 286, ¶ 79.
- III. From the Beginning of the Year 1864 to the Close of the War.—The Rebellion in its Decline.  
Earlier Operations of 1864, p. 287, ¶ 1.  
Preparations for the final struggle—armies—situation at the beginning of 1865, p. 290, ¶ 8, and p. 303, ¶ 38.  
Grant's campaign in Virginia, and coöperative movements—third invasion of the loyal states—surrender of Lee, p. 291, ¶ 11, and p. 306, ¶ 48.  
Operations in the West and South, east of the Mississippi—Sherman's famous march to the sea, and through the Carolinas, p. 296, ¶ 23, and p. 304, ¶ 40. Operations west of the Mississippi, p. 301, ¶ 33.  
Naval affairs, p. 301, ¶ 34.  
Reëlection of Lincoln, p. 303, ¶ 36. Assassination of Lincoln, and accession of Johnson, p. 308, ¶ 54.  
Close of the war—cost of the war—financial matters—prisoners—charities, p. 309, ¶ 56.
- IV. From the Close of the War to the Close of the Period.—Peace.—Reconstruction, p. 314.  
Chronology, p. 317.

## PERIOD VI.

### DISTINGUISHED FOR THE GREAT REBELLION.

EXTENDING FROM THE INAUGURATION OF LINCOLN, IN 1861, TO THE CLOSE OF THE THIRTY-NINTH CONGRESS, 1867.



Fight with the Forts and Fleet defending New Orleans.

#### LINCOLN'S AND JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.<sup>1</sup>

I. FROM THE BEGINNING OF LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.—GROWTH OF THE REBELLION.—Events of 1861.—1. When, on the 4th of March, 1861, Mr. Lincoln became president of the United States, he found himself

in the midst of difficulties greater than had ever before beset any chief magistrate of the nation.<sup>2</sup>

The treasury was embarrassed; the little army was on the remote frontiers, and the navy chiefly in foreign seas, both too far away to aid the government. Large transfers of arms had been made from northern to southern arsenals, where they fell into the hands of the secessionists.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, p. 21; and Maps, pp. 244, 262, and 263.

<sup>2</sup> In his inaugural the president declared that he had neither the right nor the inclination to interfere with slavery in the states; that no state could secede from the Union, and that ordinances to that effect were void. He also expressed his determination to faithfully execute the laws of the Union in all the states, using every proper effort to avoid irritating the disaffected.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of the difficulties which surrounded Mr. Lincoln?—What of the treasury? The army? The navy? Transfers of arms?

2. The rebel government<sup>1</sup> had organized an army, officered, in large part, by persons who had abandoned the Federal service.<sup>2</sup>

**1861.** One of these, Pierre G. T. Beauregard,<sup>3</sup> commissioned brigadier-general, was in command of several thousand insurgent troops about Charleston, South Carolina. Learning that the Federal government intended to send supplies to **Fort Sumter**, he demanded its surrender. Major Anderson<sup>4</sup> refusing, Beauregard opened upon it from the forts in the harbor, and from

powerful batteries which had been thrown up on all sides. Anderson made a spirited defence; but after withstanding a furious bombardment of more than thirty hours, his provisions nearly exhausted, his ammunition nearly expended, his men worn out by constant labor, the officers' quarters and the barracks on fire, he capitulated, April 13. The next day he evacuated the fort, and embarked for New York.<sup>5</sup>

3. Hitherto the president had hoped for reconciliation; but now accepting the issue of war thus forced upon the country, he called, April 15, for seventy-five thousand troops, to serve three months, and summoned Congress to assemble, July 4, in extra session.<sup>6</sup> News of the fall of Sumter excited throughout the free states sentiments of the most enthusiastic loyalty, and the response to the president's call was prompt, patriotic, and cordial.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 227, ¶ 11.

<sup>2</sup> Young men of the north had been more inclined to seek the employments of lucrative industry than offices in the army and navy, in time of peace. Hence both these branches of public service were, in great proportion, officered by natives of the south, many of whom, now in sympathy with the rebellion, resigned, that they might aid the foes of the government which they had sworn to protect; and though announcing their intended treason, their resignations were accepted and they honorably discharged by Secretaries Floyd and Toucey (see App., p. 21).

<sup>3</sup> See p. 217, note 2, and p. 305, ¶ 42.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 197, note 3; p. 228, ¶ 12; and p. 305, note 3.

<sup>5</sup> Notwithstanding the severity of the cannonade, not a man was killed on either side, during the bombardment. One Federal soldier was killed, and several were wounded, from the explosion of a gun, while saluting the flag, which was lowered as the garrison left the fort.

<sup>6</sup> See Appendix, p. 13. See, III., Art. II., Const. U. S.

QUESTIONS.—2. How was the rebel army officered? Who was in command of insurgent troops about Charleston? Give an account of the attack upon Fort Sumter. 3. What did the president now do? What effect was produced throughout the free states by news of the fall of Sumter?



Abraham Lincoln.

Party spirit was for a time forgotten. Within two weeks three hundred thousand men offered themselves to preserve the integrity of the Union, and to defend the honor of the flag. The whole north became one vast camp of preparation.

4. Patriotic **individuals** and **associations** came forward to relieve, with their time and their money, the overtaxed energies of the government. The **loyal states** made liberal appropriations for the public defence. Troops began to gather in Boston on the evening of the 15th, and the next day, one regiment, the Sixth Massachusetts, was on its way to answer to the president's call. Scarcely less prompt were the other loyal states. The national capital was in danger,<sup>1</sup> and the volunteers rushed to protect it. A few companies of Pennsylvania troops were the first to reach Washington, April 18. The next day (the anniversary of the battles of Lexington and Concord<sup>2</sup>) the Sixth Massachusetts, on its way through **Baltimore**, was attacked by a rebel mob, which killed three and wounded others, one mortally. The soldiers fired a few scattering shots into the crowd, killing nine and wounding several. The mob next attacked a body of unarmed troops from Pennsylvania, and compelled them to return to Philadelphia. Other troops were crowding to the defence of the capital. All were expecting a bloody battle in the streets of Baltimore; but this was avoided by General Benjamin F. Butler,<sup>3</sup> who, embarking his men at Havre de Grace, reached Washington by way of Annapolis.

5. The action of the **slave states** in this emergency of the government was not uniform. *Delaware* promptly ranged herself with the loyal north. *Maryland* would at first furnish troops only for the defence of the capital; but the schemes of the secessionists in Baltimore were thwarted by General Butler,<sup>3</sup> who took possession of Federal Hill, which, with Fort McHenry,<sup>4</sup> commands the city and its approaches, and the state was not long in deciding to support the Federal government. The other slave states refused to furnish troops at the president's call. *Virginia*, *Arkansas*, *Tennessee*, and *North Carolina* joined the Confederacy.<sup>5</sup> Virginia troops seized the United States armory at Harper's Ferry (April 18), and the navy yard at Norfolk (April 21), the Union troops having evacuated these posts,

<sup>1</sup> Leroy Pope Walker, the rebel secretary of war, said, on learning of the fall of Fort Sumter, "I will prophesy that the flag [the secession flag] that now flaunts the breeze here, will float over the dome of the Capitol at Washington before the 1st of May."

<sup>2</sup> See p. III.    <sup>3</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 40.    <sup>4</sup> See p. 186, ¶ 6.    <sup>5</sup> See p. 227, note 6, and p. 314, ¶ 2.

QUESTIONS.—4. What was done by patriotic individuals and associations? What by the loyal states? What is said of the national capital? What troops first reached Washington for its protection? Give an account of the attack made by the mob in Baltimore upon the Sixth Massachusetts regiment? Upon unarmed troops from Pennsylvania? Where was it expected that a bloody battle would take place? How was this avoided? 5. What is said of Delaware? Of Maryland? Of the other slave states? Which of them joined the Confederacy? What was seized by Virginia troops?

after destroying such of the public property as they could, to prevent its falling into the hands of the enemy. **1861.** Fortress Monroe remained in the possession of the Federal government. *Kentucky*<sup>1</sup> at first determined to side with neither party, but finally took a firm stand in favor of the Union. *Missouri*<sup>2</sup> was saved from secession by the efficient support given to her loyal people by Captain Nathaniel Lyon,<sup>3</sup> who commanded the Federal arsenal at St. Louis. In Missouri, as in several other slave states, the majority of the people were loyal, but the plotters of treason had managed to secure a governor and other high officers who were in league with the secessionists.

**6.** The news of the fall of Fort Sumter also roused a high degree of military enthusiasm in the Confederate States.<sup>4</sup> Already the rebels had a large force in the field. Now they urged forward troops towards Virginia, where they soon held an irregular line from a point opposite Williamsport, on the Potomac, to the James River, near Fortress Monroe. They also erected batteries at various points on the Virginia side of the Potomac, rendering the navigation of that river perilous. **Richmond** was made the rebel capital, and there the Confederate Congress assembled on the 20th of July.

**7.** As an offset to President Lincoln's call for troops, Jefferson Davis issued, April 17, a proclamation, offering letters of marque and reprisal to all who would prey upon the commerce of the United States. In response, President Lincoln proclaimed the rebel ports in a state of blockade.<sup>5</sup> In May, additional volunteers were called for,<sup>6</sup> to serve in the army as well as to man the navy, which was rapidly preparing from steamers and vessels of every description, built, purchased, and chartered for the emergency.

**8.** The veteran **Scott**<sup>7</sup> was general-in-chief of the Union forces. To defend the line of the Potomac, and to penetrate

<sup>1</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 26. <sup>2</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 18. <sup>3</sup> See p. 217, note 2, and p. 249, ¶ 21. <sup>4</sup> See p. 227, ¶ 11.

<sup>5</sup> The blockade was proclaimed April 19, and extended April 27. See p. 252, ¶ 32.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 311, note 1.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 230, ¶ 17.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Kentucky? How was Missouri saved from secession? 6. What effect was produced in the Confederate States by news of the fall of Sumter? What line did rebel troops soon hold in Virginia? Where did they erect batteries? What city became the rebel capital, and when did the Confederate Congress assemble there? 7. What did Jefferson Davis do as an offset to the president's call for troops? How did the president respond to Davis's proclamation? When and for what purpose did the president call out additional volunteers? 8. Who was general-in-chief of the Union forces?

Virginia from that quarter, troops were collecting at Fortress Monroe, at Washington, and on the Upper Potomac.

General Butler<sup>1</sup> took command at Fortress Monroe. Before the end of May he had advanced a force a few miles up the James River, and formed an intrenched camp at Newport News. He also suggested that slaves who had escaped from rebel owners be regarded as contraband of war — a suggestion not without its influence upon the government in its treatment of fugitive slaves, and which gave them their popular designation of *contrabands*. On the 10th of June some Union troops in this department were repulsed in an attack upon the rebel works at Big Bethel.<sup>2</sup>

**9.** Federal troops crossed from Washington into Virginia on the night of the 23d of May, and took possession of Arlington Heights, opposite the capital, and of Alexandria, in which place was captured a small body of rebel cavalry.<sup>3</sup> The troops on the Upper Potomac crossed the river at Williamsport.

**10.** Early in July the opposing forces were confronting each other at various points on a line extending from Maryland westward beyond the Mississippi. But all eyes were now turned towards the Potomac. Congress assembled, agreeably to the president's call,<sup>4</sup> and its action would determine the measures to be taken for crushing the rebellion. It was evident, too, that in that neighborhood was to be the first great shock of arms.

**11.** About the middle of the month, General Irvin McDowell,<sup>5</sup> with the troops opposite Washington, began his march to attack the main body of the southern army, near Manassas Junction, commanded by General Beauregard.<sup>6</sup> He found the enemy intrenched beyond Bull Run. Here a desperate battle was fought, July 21. It began a little before noon; at two victory seemed secure for the Federals, but later in the afternoon the enemy were largely reënforced, and the tide of battle turned: the Union army was thrown into disorder, and retreated panic-stricken to the fortifications opposite Washington.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 241, ¶¶ 4, 5.

<sup>2</sup> In addition to a loss of about fifty men this disaster cost the Union cause the brave officers Major Theodore Winthrop and Lieutenant John T. Greble, who were killed.

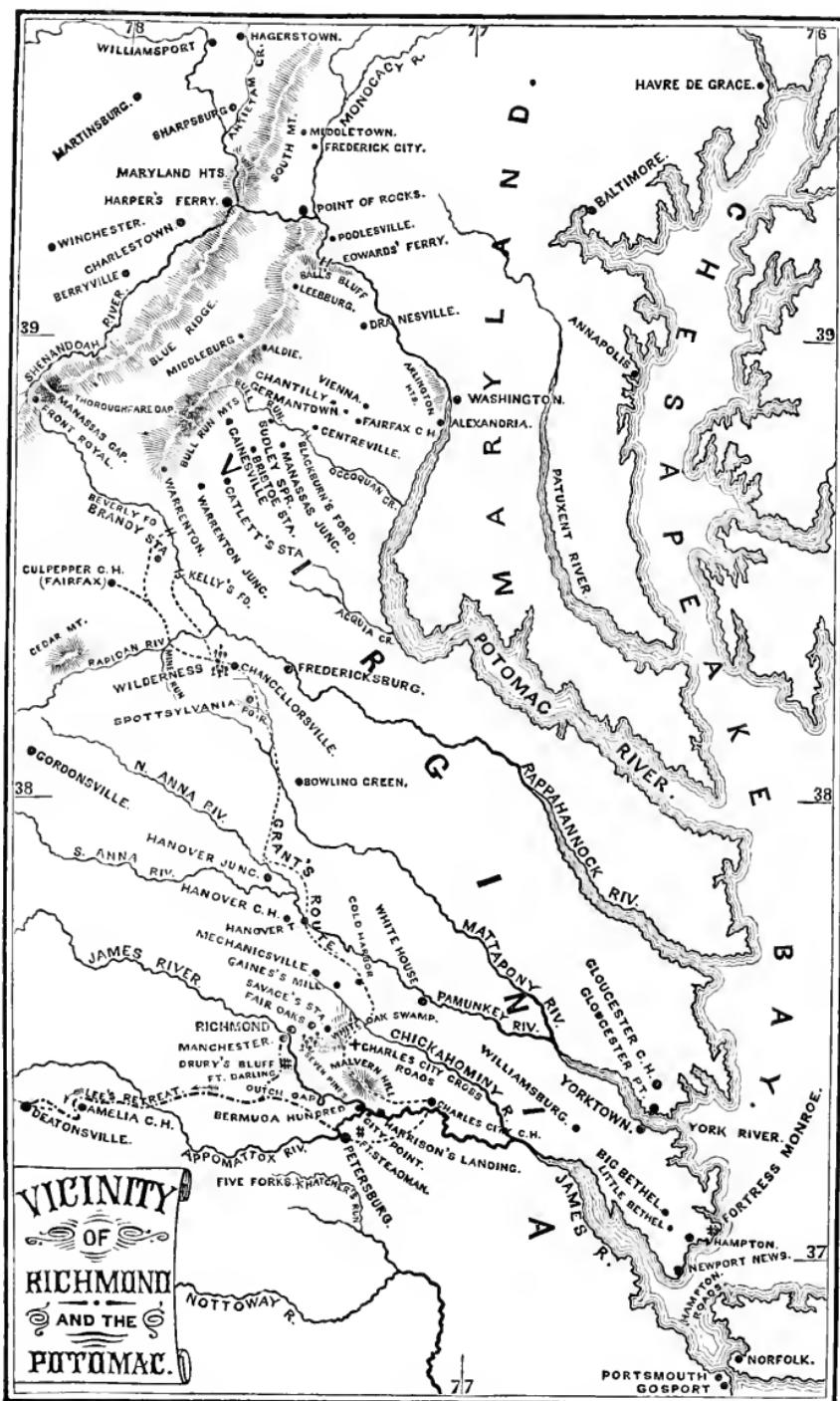
<sup>3</sup> Soon after entering Alexandria, the brave Colonel Ephraim E. Ellsworth was shot while in the act of taking a secession flag from a tavern on which it had been displayed.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 240, ¶ 3.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 213, note 1, and p. 271, ¶ 39.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 240, ¶ 2.

**QUESTIONS.** — Where were Union troops collecting to enter Virginia from the East? — Who took command at Fortress Monroe? Where did he form an intrenched camp? What suggestion did he make concerning slaves who had escaped from rebel owners? What is said of the repulse of Union troops at Big Bethel? 9. When did Federal troops cross from Washington? Of what did they take possession? Where did troops on the Upper Potomac cross? 10. What is said of the opposing forces early in July? Why were all eyes turned towards the Potomac? 11. Who led the troops opposite Washington to attack the southern army? Where did McDowell find the enemy, and by whom commanded? Give an account of the battle of Bull Run.



**12.** McDowell set out with about thirty-five thousand men, and occupied Fairfax Court House and Centreville, the rebels withdrawing at his approach. But little resistance was encountered till the 18th, when the advance found a rebel force at **Blackburn's Ford**, on Bull Run. After a sharp conflict the Federals fell back upon Centreville, but resumed their march early on the 21st. On reaching **Bull Run**, McDowell's army, by the necessity of keeping open his line of communication, and by the return of three months' men<sup>1</sup> whose term of service had expired, was considerably reduced. Beauregard had in all about thirty thousand men. At eleven the battle was opened by a Union division, under Colonel David Hunter,<sup>2</sup> who had crossed Bull Run at Sudley Spring. Soon the cannonade extended to Blackburn's Ford, some five miles down the stream. The principal action was near Stone Bridge, about two miles south of Sudley Spring. The rebels at first broke and fell back in disorder; but General Joseph E. Johnston<sup>3</sup> brought reinforcements from the Shenandoah Valley to the battle-field in season to turn a Federal victory into a Federal rout. The Union loss was about three thousand men, besides—either captured or abandoned in the retreat—twenty-seven cannon and a large amount of small arms, ammunition, tents, and supplies. The Confederates lost about two thousand men, and were in no condition to pursue their demoralized enemy.<sup>4</sup>

**13.** Though the people of the loyal states were astounded at news of this disaster they were not discouraged. They learned by this severe lesson the necessity of suitable preparation, and roused themselves to fresh exertions. Congress appropriated five hundred millions of dollars for carrying on the war, and authorized the president to raise five hundred thousand men. The next day after the battle General George B. McClellan,<sup>5</sup> who had been conducting a brilliant campaign in West Virginia, was summoned to take command of the army on the Potomac. This army attempted no military operations of importance till the next year.<sup>6</sup> Meanwhile it was assuming formidable proportions, and acquiring that perfection of discipline essential to success. The rebels, whose flag for a long time flaunted in sight of the national capital, were gradually pushed back till the Federal troops occupied the positions they had held before the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 240, ¶ 3.    <sup>2</sup> See p. 294, ¶ 17.    <sup>3</sup> See p. 197, note 3; p. 217, note 2; and p. 309, ¶ 56.

<sup>4</sup> "In our condition," said the Confederate General Johnston, "pursuit could not be thought of; for we were almost as much disorganized by our victory as the Federals by their defeat. Next day, many, supposing the war was over, actually went home. A party of our soldiers, hearing that a friend lay wounded twenty miles off, would start out to go and see him; or that another acquaintance was dead, they would go and bury him." — *Swinton*.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 217, note 2; p. 247, ¶ 16.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 28.

QUESTIONS.—12. What particulars can you give of the advance, and the affair at Blackburn's Ford? Of the main action? 13. What effect had news of this disaster on the people of the loyal states? What did Congress do? Who was appointed to the command of the army on the Potomac? What of this army for the rest of the year?

battle of Bull Run. Lieutenant-General Scott,<sup>1</sup> weighed down by age and infirmities, retired from active service, and, **1861.** November 1, General McClellan succeeded him as general-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

**14.** There was in this, as in all the military departments throughout the rest of the year, much skirmishing between outposts. Scarcely a day passed when there were not somewhere on the extended line of operations<sup>2</sup> one or more encounters which resulted in considerable loss. Indeed, this characterized the war throughout its whole duration. Only the more important of these conflicts can be mentioned in this history.



George B. McClellan.

**15.** On the Potomac, above Washington, General Charles P. Stone was in command of a Union army at Poolesville. Wishing to make a demonstration upon the enemy at Leesburg, he sent about two thousand men across the river at **Ball's Bluff**, October 21. This force was overpowered, and not having sufficient means for recrossing the river, lost nearly half its number. The commander of the expedition, Colonel Edward D. Baker, senator from Oregon, was among the killed. The loss of the enemy was less than one third that of the Federals.<sup>3</sup> Two

months later General Edward O. C. Ord routed the rebels at **Dranesville** (December 20), in which direction he had moved for the double purpose of procuring forage for his horses and of pressing back the enemy.<sup>4</sup>

**16.** Meanwhile important events had been taking place in **West Virginia.** The people of this section of the state, strongly loyal, had called a convention at **Wheeling**, disavowed the

<sup>1</sup> For more than half a century General Scott had taken a prominent part in public affairs, and in prosecuting war and negotiating peace had proved his right to rank with the first commanders and the first statesmen of the age. On his retirement from office he received the most signal marks of public affection and veneration. He died at West Point, New York, in 1866, full of years and honors. See pp. 242, ¶ 8; 214, ¶ 1; 211, ¶ 1; 202, ¶¶ 3, 4; 198, ¶ 9; 197, ¶ 6; 196, ¶ 4; 182, ¶ 27; 179, ¶ 16; 174, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 243, ¶ 10.  
<sup>3</sup> The battle at Ball's Bluff is known also as the battle of *Leesburg Heights*, and as the battle of *Edwards' Ferry*.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 27.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Generals Scott and McClellan? 14. What is said of skirmishing in this and other departments? Of encounters? 15. Give an account of the action at Ball's Bluff. At Dranesville. 16. Meanwhile what had the people of West Virginia done?

ordinance of secession, established a loyal government, and taken steps to be admitted to the Union as a separate state. Late in June General McClellan<sup>1</sup> took command here in person, and in a vigorous campaign of less than a month, drove from intrenchments ten thousand insurgent troops, and left the inhabitants free to organize for the Union.

The soil of West Virginia was early stained by the blood of civil war. Colonel Kelley<sup>2</sup> occupied Grafton, May 30, the rebels deserting the place on his approach, and four days later, assisted by Colonel Lander,<sup>3</sup> routed near a thousand of them at Philippi. Colonel Wallace<sup>4</sup> made a dash into Romney, and dispersed a rebel force which had been stationed there. After McClellan took command, Colonel William S. Rosecrans<sup>5</sup> routed, in a severe fight, July 11, a body of rebels under Colonel Pegram, intrenched at Rich Mountain, near Beverly. This action put the Confederate forces in that region on the move to escape. McClellan directed a hot pursuit, and they were overtaken on the 13th at Carrick's Ford. An engagement followed, in which they were put to flight, and their general, Robert S. Garnett, was slain. Another rebel force was in the Kanawha Valley, near Charleston, under General Wise. General Jacob D. Cox<sup>6</sup> was sent into that region, and in a short time cleared it of armed rebels. In this short campaign the Union forces killed in battle two hundred and fifty insurgents, and took a thousand prisoners and large quantities of spoils.

**17. General Rosecrans**<sup>5</sup> succeeded McClellan in command in West Virginia, where the rebels soon reappeared under General Robert E. Lee,<sup>7</sup> Virginia's ablest soldier, and General John B. Floyd.<sup>8</sup> The Union arms were successful in almost every encounter, and before the end of the year this region, for the most part, had been again cleared of Confederate troops.

On the 10th of September Generals Rosecrans and Benham attacked Floyd, strongly posted near Carnifex Ferry. A spirited action ensued, and was ended by the darkness, under cover of which Floyd evacuated his position, and retreated across the Gauley River, leaving to the victors camp equipage, baggage, and small arms. General Lee, who had recently been appointed to the chief command in West Virginia, failing to dislodge the Union troops, under General Joseph J. Reynolds, at Cheat Mountain,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 273, ¶ 46.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 17.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 27.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 295, ¶ 19.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 33.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 273, ¶ 47.

<sup>7</sup> Robert E. Lee had remained in the favor and confidence of the Federal government till the Virginia convention passed a secession ordinance. He then took command of the state forces of Virginia, in opposition to the nation which had educated, trusted, and honored him, and which he had sworn to support. See p. 217, note 2; p. 226, ¶ 7; and p. 308, ¶ 52.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 240, note 2, and p. 255, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—Who took command in West Virginia, and when? What is said of McClellan's campaign and its results?—Give some account of the earlier military operations in West Virginia. Of military operations in this region after McClellan took command. 17. Who succeeded McClellan in command in West Virginia? Under whom did the rebels soon reappear? Results of operations in this region for the rest of the year?—Give some particulars of military operations in West Virginia after General Rosecrans took command.

about the middle of September joined Floyd and Wise, in the Kanawha Valley, making their united force twenty thousand strong. Early in October, Reynolds inflicted considerable loss upon a detachment of the enemy encamped on **Greenbrier River**; and near the end of the month General Benjamin F. Kelley<sup>1</sup> fell upon a force of Confederates a few miles from **Romney**, and compelled them to beat a precipitate retreat. On the approach of winter most of the Confederates were withdrawn from West Virginia. Floyd was transferred to Tennessee.<sup>2</sup>

**18.** In **Missouri**<sup>3</sup> the struggle between loyalty and secession began early in the year. The governor, Claiborne F. Jackson, was determined to take the state out of the Union, in opposition to the wishes of a majority of its people. But the energy of Lyon<sup>4</sup> foiled his design.

To accomplish his treasonable purpose Jackson established camps of instruction in different parts of the state. One of these, near St. Louis, was named **Camp Jackson**, and here had been gathered twelve hundred troops, armed by the Confederate government. On the 10th of May Captain Lyon, with a body of home-guards, suddenly surrounded the camp and took the whole force prisoners. A mob followed Lyon, and making a violent demonstration against his men, the latter fired into the crowd, killing and wounding a number of persons. Jackson next attempted to carry out his design from Jefferson City, the capital of the state. He issued a proclamation calling out the militia to repel Federal invasion. A rebel force was entering the state from Arkansas, to assist him.

**19.** Lyon gave the governor no time to prepare. With three thousand such troops as he could collect, he started for Jefferson City. Jackson fled, but made a stand with his adherents near **Booneville**. On the 18th of June Lyon was upon him, and after a sharp engagement put him again to flight towards the south-western part of the state, where the insurgents were collecting in considerable numbers. The Federal Colonel Franz Sigel,<sup>4</sup> with about fifteen hundred men, had been despatched to meet the enemy in that quarter. After gaining some advantages Sigel found himself confronted, July 5, near **Carthage**, by a superior and increasing force of the enemy, and, after a gallant contest, retreated and rejoined Lyon.

**20.** Near the end of July General John C. Frémont<sup>5</sup> assumed chief command in Missouri. He immediately set about organizing an army and preparing a fleet of gunboats and mortar-boats to operate on the Mississippi and its tributaries. Bands of rebel marauders were forming in different parts of the state.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 16.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 273, ¶ 47.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 242, ¶ 5.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 214, ¶ 3, and p. 271, ¶ 39.

QUESTIONS.—18. What is said of the struggle in Missouri?—Give an account of the capture of Camp Jackson? What did Governor Jackson next do? 19. Give an account of Lyon's movements and the engagement near Booneville. Give an account of Colonel Sigel's operations near Carthage. 20. When did Frémont assume command in Missouri? What did he set about doing? What is said of rebel marauders?

General John Pope<sup>1</sup> was sent into North Missouri, and quickly restored order in that region. An insurgent army, full twenty thousand strong, under Generals Price<sup>2</sup> and McCulloch,<sup>3</sup> soon gathered around Lyon, who had pressed the rebels to the south-western part of the state.

**21.** In this emergency, Lyon,<sup>4</sup> though outnumbered four to one, advanced against the enemy, and, August 10, attacked them at their camp on **Wilson's Creek**, where was fought, except that at Bull Run, the severest battle of the year. After a conflict of six hours, in which the enemy were repeatedly driven from the field, the Union troops fell back, thus leaving South-western Missouri open to the rebels.

In this battle General Price was in command of disloyal Missourians; General McCulloch, of rebel invaders from Arkansas. After the conflict had raged for some time with varying success, Lyon ordered a bayonet charge. Putting himself at the head of a body of troops who had lost their leader, he exclaimed, "Come on, brave men! I will lead you." The charge was made, and the enemy again fled; but during the struggle the heroic Lyon was slain. The loss was severe on both sides.

**22.** The last of the same month Frémont proclaimed **martial law** in Missouri, and declared the slaves of rebels freemen — a declaration which the president modified so as to restrict its operation to slaves actually assisting the rebellion. **Lexington** fell into the hands of the enemy, September 20, after a gallant defence by Colonel James A. Mulligan, who, with but little more than twenty-five hundred men, behind intrenchments, held out four days against ten times as many men, under General Price, and only surrendered after he had exhausted his ammunition, and the supply of water had been for three days cut off from the brave garrison.

**23.** In October Frémont, with an army of thirty thousand men, took the field in person, and marched towards Springfield in pursuit of the foe.<sup>5</sup> Early the next month he was relieved, General Hunter<sup>6</sup> taking his place. Later in the month,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 213, note 1; and p. 275, ¶ 50.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 258, ¶ 15.

<sup>3</sup> One of the most brilliant exploits of the war was a charge made by one hundred and sixty horsemen of a body of cavalry known as *Frémont's Body-guard*, under Major Zagonyi, an Hungarian refugee. On the 25th of October, perceiving the rebels, estimated at two thousand, drawn up ready to receive them, near Springfield, the charge was sounded. On rushed the body-guard, in the face of a murderous fire, with irrepressible enthusiasm, shouting, "Frémont and the Union!" The enemy were routed, and fled in every direction.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 245, ¶ 12.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 33.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 18.

QUESTIONS.—Who was sent to North Missouri, and with what result? Around whom did a large insurgent army gather, and under what generals? Where was Lyon? 21. Give an account of the battle on Wilson's Creek. — What further particulars can you give of this battle? 22. What is said of Frémont's proclamation of martial law? What is said of the defence and surrender of Lexington? 23. What further is said of Fremont? By whom was he relieved, and who, later in the month, took command in the department?

**General Henry W. Halleck**<sup>1</sup> arrived and took command in the department. Before the end of the year the rebels were in full retreat towards the Arkansas border.

**24.** Meanwhile the enemy had fortified a camp at **Belmont**, nearly opposite Columbus,<sup>2</sup> Kentucky. General Ulysses S. Grant<sup>3</sup> transported from Cairo, Illinois, nearly three thousand men to the Missouri shore, and, November 7, attacked the Confederate works. The rebels were at first driven from their camp, and their camp equipage was destroyed; but reinforcements reaching them from Columbus, the Union troops withdrew to their transports, and, protected by gunboats, returned to Cairo.

**25.** In **New Mexico** Major Isaac Lynde followed the example set by Twiggs<sup>4</sup> months before, and disgracefully surrendered to the Confederates **Fort Fillmore**,<sup>5</sup> with about seven hundred men. The rebel leaders had stirred up sedition among the *Indians* on the south-western frontier, and added the scalping-knife of the savage to the horrors of civil war.<sup>6</sup>

**26. Kentucky**<sup>7</sup> was always loyal by a great majority, but the secessionists within her borders had influence enough to hold her neutral for a time. As was the case with all the border states, she had citizens enlisted both in the national and the Confederate armies. Early in September the Confederates, under General Leonidas Polk,<sup>8</sup> took possession of *Hickman* and *Columbus*; and General Grant,<sup>9</sup> with national troops from the camp at Cairo, occupied *Paducah*. Kentucky now unreservedly espoused the Union cause.<sup>10</sup>

**27.** General Anderson,<sup>11</sup> the hero of Fort Sumter, first appointed to command in this state, was soon compelled, on account of ill health, to give place to General William T. Sherman,<sup>12</sup> who was succeeded by General Don Carlos Buell.<sup>13</sup> Meanwhile rebel troops had been pouring into the State from Tennessee. On the 21st of October, General Zollicoffer,<sup>14</sup> who had invaded it by way of Cumberland Gap, attacked the Unionists at **Camp Wildcat**, under General Schoepf, and was repulsed with severe loss. Early the next month General William Nelson<sup>15</sup> came upon the Confederates at **Piketon**, thoroughly routed them, and frustrated their designs in Eastern Kentucky. In the central portion of the state, General Buckner,<sup>16</sup> a disloyal Kentuckian, was in command of a large rebel army.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 271, ¶ 39. <sup>2</sup> See ¶ 26, below. <sup>3</sup> See p. 217, note 2; 308, ¶ 52. <sup>4</sup> See p. 229, ¶ 14.

<sup>5</sup> In New Mexico, on the east side of the Rio Grande, near the boundary line of Texas.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 238, ¶ 15.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 242, ¶ 5.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 297, ¶ 24.

<sup>9</sup> The late vice-president, John C. Breckinridge (see p. 224, ¶ 6), finding that he could not carry his state to the Confederacy, openly joined the rebels, with whom he had all along been plotting.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 240, ¶ 2.

<sup>11</sup> See p. 309, ¶ 56.

<sup>12</sup> See p. 217, note 2, and p. 238, ¶ 14.

<sup>13</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 5.

<sup>14</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 6.

<sup>15</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 54.

QUESTIONS.—What of the rebels before the end of the year? 24. Give an account of Grant's attack upon Belmont? 25. What happened this year in New Mexico? What among the Indians? 26. What is said of Kentucky? What of her citizens in common with those of all the border states? What is said of the Confederate occupation of Kentucky? Of the Federal occupation? What did Kentucky soon do? 27. Who were successively appointed to command in this state? Give some further particulars of military operations in Kentucky.

**28.** Tennessee had been dragged into secession by the complicity of her rulers with treason. But in East Tennessee<sup>1</sup> the Confederates could not crush out the devoted loyalty of the people, even with the iron hand of military despotism.

Squads of rebel cavalry and infantry scoured this region, destroying the crops and other property, and inflicting upon the inhabitants every species of indignity; arresting those suspected of attachment to the Union, and dragging them off to rebel camps, or giving them up to rebel mobs.<sup>2</sup>

**29.** The rebels had got control of the Mississippi River, from Columbus<sup>3</sup> to its mouth, by seizing the forts, and erecting batteries at commanding points. The national government had in view the opening of this highway, thus severing the Confederacy.

In September a Union force landed on Ship Island,<sup>4</sup> and made it the base of operations on the Lower Mississippi. The next month the Confederates made an attempt to destroy the blockading vessels at the entrance of the Mississippi. An iron-plated ram, attended by gunboats and fire-ships, came down from New Orleans before daylight. The Union vessels, though taken by surprise, moved out of the way of the fire-ships, and with but little damage to themselves beat off the ram and gunboats.

**30.** In October a body of Confederates surprised a Union camp on Santa Rosa Island, and plundered and destroyed it; but, assistance being sent from Fort Pickens,<sup>5</sup> they were driven off, with severe loss. The latter part of the next month Fort Pickens opened fire upon Fort McRae, and other forts and batteries, and the navy-yard, then in the hands of the Confederates. The bombardment continued through the next day, silencing Fort McRae, seriously damaging the navy-yard, and nearly destroying the adjoining village of Warrington.<sup>6</sup>

**31.** During the summer and autumn of this year the national government gained a foothold on the coast of both the Carolinas and of Georgia. On the 29th of August a military and naval expedition, under General Butler<sup>7</sup> and Commodore Stringham, captured the Confederate works<sup>8</sup> at Hatteras Inlet, with their garrisons and munitions of war. On the 7th of November a powerful Federal fleet, commanded by Commodore Du Pont, captured the forts<sup>9</sup> at Port Royal Entrance. The fleet was

<sup>1</sup> That part of the state east of the Cumberland Mountains.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 26.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 261, ¶ 21.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 228, ¶ 12.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 23.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 243, ¶ 8.

<sup>8</sup> Forts Clark and Hatteras.

<sup>9</sup> Forts Beauregard and Walker.

QUESTIONS.—28. What is said of Tennessee? Of East Tennessee?—Of the operations of rebel cavalry and infantry in this region? 29. What is said of the rebels on the Mississippi? What had the national government in view?—When and why was a Union force landed on Ship Island? Give an account of the attempt to destroy the blockading vessels at the entrance of the Mississippi. 30. Of the affair on Santa Rosa Island. Of the bombardment by Fort Pickens. 31. Where did the national government gain a foothold? Give an account of the capture of the works at Hatteras Inlet. Of the forts at Port Royal Entrance.

accompanied by an army, under General Thomas W. Sherman,<sup>1</sup> who immediately occupied the forts. A few days later **1861.** Du Pont took possession of *Tybee Island*, at the mouth of the Savannah.

**These successes**, besides gaining important bases for future operations, gave control of much of the coast of North Carolina, of the town of Beaufort and the best harbor on the South Carolina coast, of the mouth of the Savannah, and of the islands where is cultivated the valuable staple known as Sea-Island cotton.<sup>2</sup>

**32.** At the beginning of the struggle there were but twelve ships of war available for service at home.<sup>3</sup> Before the end of the year the **Federal navy** had become sufficiently powerful to guard the whole Gulf and Atlantic coast of the rebellious states, three thousand miles in length, and render efficient aid in the restoration of the national authority; yet vessels freighted with valuable cargoes would frequently elude the vigilance of the blockade,<sup>4</sup> and run into Confederate ports.

**33.** A few **Confederate vessels** got to sea, and, as **privateers**,<sup>5</sup> inflicted great injury on **Federal commerce**.

**These rovers**, without a harbor at home into which they could enter, found protection in foreign ports,—England setting the example,<sup>6</sup>—the same as if they belonged to a recognized power. The first privateer to get to sea was the schooner *Savannah*, from Charleston (June 2). She was captured after she had been out but a day or two, and had taken but a single prize. Another from the same port, the *Petrel*, bore down upon the United States frigate *St. Lawrence*, supposing her to be a large merchant-vessel. When the privateer came within fair range, the frigate gave her a broadside with such effect that she sunk in a few moments. The last day of June the steamer *Sumter*, Captain Raphael Semmes,<sup>6</sup> escaped from New Orleans, and began to capture and burn American merchant-vessels. But early the next year her piratical career came to an end. Having run into the Bay of Gibraltar, she was closely blockaded there by a national gunboat, and being unable to escape, she was sold in port.

**34.** Russia alone, of European powers, extended to the Federal government sympathy in its struggle for life with armed treason. England, and following her lead, France and Spain, acknowledged the rebellious states as *belligerents*.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 213, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 24.  
<sup>3</sup> Of the forty-two vessels in commission March 4, 1861, only twelve were at home, and but four of these were in northern ports. See p. 239, ¶ 1.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 242, ¶ 7.

<sup>5</sup> See ¶ 34, below.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 34.

QUESTIONS.—What of Tybee Island?—What is said of these successes? 32. What is said of the navy at the beginning of the war? Yet what would frequently happen? 33. What is said of Confederate vessels?—Where did these rovers find protection? What is said of the Savannah? Of the Petrel? Of the Sumter? 34. What of European powers with reference to the rebellion?

Thus the Confederacy was put, as a war power, on the same footing with the national government, and the insurgents were encouraged to hope for assistance from foreign powers.

**35.** An occurrence, known as the **Trent affair**, for a time gave the Confederates high hopes of foreign aid. Messrs. Mason and Slidell were appointed commissioners by the rebel government, the former to Great Britain, the latter to France. Having run the blockade, they embarked, November 7, at Havana, on board the British mail-steamer *Trent*. The next day Captain Charles Wilkes,<sup>1</sup> in the United States steamer *San Jacinto*, intercepted the *Trent*, took from her the rebel commissioners, and brought them as prisoners to the United States. News of this affair created great excitement in England, and there was danger of war with that country. But the prudence of Mr. Seward, the secretary of state, warded off this calamity. The commissioners were surrendered to the British government, and amicable relations restored. Still the loyal people generally approved at once the diplomacy of Mr. Seward and the act of Captain Wilkes, who was received with acclamations of gratitude.

## II. FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE YEAR 1862 TO THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR 1863.—THE REBELLION IN ITS STRENGTH.—

**Events of 1862.**—**1.** The **Federal government** this year prohibited *slavery* in all the territories of the United States; abolished it in the District of Columbia, giving compensation to loyal owners of slaves; and authorized the enlistment of *colored troops*.<sup>2</sup> A *test oath* was also enacted, which required every person appointed to office under the national government to swear that since being a citizen of the United States he had never voluntarily aided or encouraged any hostile combination or government, and that he would support and defend the Constitution against all enemies, foreign and domestic.

**2.** At the beginning of 1862 the **Federal armies** in the field numbered more than five hundred thousand men,<sup>3</sup> who confronted the enemy from the Potomac to Kansas. This number was more than kept good by repeated calls<sup>2</sup> of the president for additional troops.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 203, ¶ 3, and p. 286, ¶ 78.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 311, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Not far from two hundred thousand of the Federal troops were under the immediate command of General McClellan, and chiefly in the vicinity of Washington. In Central and Eastern Kentucky General Buell had about one hundred thousand men. In Western Kentucky, at Cairo, and in Missouri, General Halleck had about as many more, the portion east of the Mississippi being under the immediate command of General Grant. The remainder of the whole force was in South Carolina, under General Thomas W. Sherman; at Fortress Monroe, under General Wool; on the Lower Potomac, under General Hooker; on the Upper Potomac, under General Kelley; in West Virginia, under General Rosecrans; and in garrisons or organizing for expeditions on the Atlantic coast, and on the western frontier.

**QUESTIONS.**—35. Give an account of the Trent affair and its settlement. II. 1. What was the action of the Federal government in regard to slavery? In regard to colored troops? In regard to a test oath? 2. What is said of the number and position of Federal troops at the beginning of the year? How was this number more than kept good?

If the troops called for should not be promptly supplied by volunteers, the president was authorized to order a draft to make up the deficiency.

**1862.** Owing, however, to the efforts made to obtain volunteers, especially to the high bounties paid by states, towns, and individuals, to all who would enlist, comparatively few troops were raised this year, or indeed throughout the war, by draft.

**3.** The Confederate government, at first provisional, was organized in February, with the same president and vice-president, under a constitution adopted the preceding year.<sup>1</sup> The Confederate armies numbered not far from three hundred and fifty thousand men, and were increased by a sweeping conscription,<sup>2</sup> during the year, so that early in the next year they were larger than at any previous or subsequent period.

The Confederates held nearly all of Virginia, a part of West Virginia south of the Kanawha River, half of Kentucky, part of Missouri, and all the rest of the Southern States except Fort Pickens, the Tortugas, and Key West, and such portions of the Atlantic coast as were gained by the expeditions<sup>3</sup> of the preceding year.

**4.** The first operations in the west, east of the Mississippi,<sup>4</sup> had for their object the driving of the rebels from Kentucky. This was effected by a series of brilliant successes, beginning with a victory gained over the Confederates, January 19, at *Mill Springs*,<sup>5</sup> by General George H. Thomas,<sup>6</sup> who commanded an advance division of the army now under General Buell.<sup>7</sup> Next followed the capture of *Fort Henry*, on the Tennessee River, February 6, by a fleet of gunboats,<sup>8</sup> under Commodore Andrew H. Foote.<sup>9</sup> Ten days afterwards, *Fort Donelson*, on the Cumberland River, surrendered its strong garrison to the army under General Grant,<sup>10</sup> after a bombardment of three days. *Bowling Green* was evacuated by the rebels during the siege of Fort Donelson, and *Columbus* shortly afterwards.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 228, ¶ 11, and note 1.

<sup>2</sup> In April a conscription act went into effect in the Confederacy, which declared that, with few exceptions, all between the ages of eighteen and thirty-five should be held in the military service till the end of the war, and annulled all former contracts with those who had enlisted for a limited time. This extreme and despotic measure met with much opposition in the south. Still harsher laws were afterwards enacted to obtain soldiers. Before the close of the war all between the ages of seventeen and fifty were held to military service.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 251, ¶ 31.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 250, ¶ 26—251, ¶ 28.

<sup>5</sup> The battle fought here is variously known as the battle of *Mill Springs*, *Logan Cross Roads*, *Webb's Cross Roads*, *Fishing Creek*, and *Somerset*.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 197, note 3; p. 213, note 1; and p. 306, ¶ 47.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 27, and p. 253, note 3.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 20.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 260, ¶ 19.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 250, ¶¶ 24, 26.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of obtaining Federal troops by draft? 3. What is said of the Confederate government? Of the Confederate armies at the beginning and close of this year? —What did the Confederates hold? 4. What was the object of the first operations in the west, east of the Mississippi? How was this effected? What can you tell of the victory at Mill Springs? Of the capture of Fort Henry and Fort Donelson? What of Bowling Green and Columbus?

5. In Kentucky, the insurgents, at the beginning of the year, occupied Paintville, and held strong positions on a line of defence extending from Mill Springs, through Bowling Green, to Columbus. Early in January a body of Union troops, under Colonel James A. Garfield, forced the Confederates to retire from **Paintville** and Eastern Kentucky. Next followed the battle of **Mill Springs**, which resulted in the total rout of the enemy, who numbered with their killed Felix Zollicoffer,<sup>1</sup> one of their generals. At the reduction of **Fort Henry**, the general in command of the garrison, Lloyd Tilghman, his staff and some sixty men, were taken prisoners, but the main body of the enemy escaped to **Fort Donelson**, twelve miles distant. The investment of this fort, where Generals Floyd,<sup>2</sup> Pillow,<sup>3</sup> and Buckner<sup>1</sup> had collected a large garrison, began on the 13th. On the night of the 15th, finding it impossible to hold out against the fierce onsets of the Union troops, who had already got possession of the outer works, Floyd and Pillow stole away, with a number variously estimated at from twenty-five hundred to five thousand men, leaving Buckner to surrender the next morning, the survivors of the garrison remaining with him, some ten thousand men.<sup>4</sup> The gunboats entered into the action, but were forced to retire, and leave to the army the honor of completing the capture.

6. After the fall of Fort Henry, **Federal gunboats** proceeded up the Tennessee, and penetrated Northern Alabama as far as Florence, seizing or destroying steamers and other property belonging to the enemy. The capture of Fort Donelson led, in a few days, to the occupation of **Nashville**, by Federal troops under General Nelson.<sup>1</sup> Soon after, Andrew Johnson,<sup>5</sup> alone faithful of the United States senators from the rebel states, was appointed military governor of Tennessee.

7. Grant<sup>6</sup> next embarked his victorious army, now increased to nearly forty thousand men, on board steamers, and moved them up the Tennessee to **Pittsburg Landing**.<sup>7</sup> Early on the morning of April 6, over forty thousand Confederates, under Generals Albert Sydney Johnston and Beauregard,<sup>8</sup> made a sudden attack upon them, encamped near the landing, and, during the day, drove them back to the river with great slaughter, and an immense loss in prisoners and material of war.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 27.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 17.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 217, note 2.

<sup>4</sup> Buckner addressed a note to the Federal general, proposing an armistice to agree upon terms of surrender, to which Grant replied, "No terms other than an unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted. I propose to move immediately upon your works." Which reply has given to U. S. Grant the popular sobriquet, Unconditional Surrender Grant.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 309, ¶ 55.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 4, and p. 253, note 3.

<sup>7</sup> The battle fought here is also called the battle of *Shiloh*.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 243, ¶ 11.

QUESTIONS.—5. What was the condition of the insurgent troops in Kentucky at the beginning of the year? From whence were they first forced to retire? What more is said of the battle of Mill Springs? Of the reduction of Fort Henry? Of Fort Donelson? 6. What was done by Federal gun-boats after the fall of Fort Henry? To what did the capture of Fort Donelson lead? Who was appointed military governor of Tennessee? 7. Give an account of the battle of Pittsburg Landing.

Here, with the aid of the gunboats, the enemy were held at bay. **1862.** But during the night Buell<sup>1</sup> arrived with fresh troops for Grant's crippled and exhausted army. The next morning the battle was resumed, and, after a desperate struggle, the Confederates gave way, and retreated to Corinth, Mississippi.

**8.** Some time before the battle, Buell, at Nashville, had been ordered to join his forces to Grant's. Learning this, the Confederates determined to destroy the army at Pittsburg Landing before it should be reënforced. The plan nearly succeeded. But on the second day the enemy were driven from the field, leaving behind them most of the spoils taken the day before. The Federal loss, in killed and wounded, was nearly ten thousand; in missing and prisoners, nearly four thousand. The Confederate loss was somewhat greater in killed and wounded, but in prisoners was less than one thousand. Each army lost a general mortally wounded—General William H. L. Wallace, of the Union army, and General Albert Sydney Johnston, commander-in-chief of the Confederate forces in the west. When Buell left Nashville to join Grant, he sent General Ormsby McKnight Mitchel, with a division, southward. Mitchel marched to Huntsville, Alabama, and took possession of many miles of the Memphis and Charleston Railroad.

**9.** Soon after the battle of Pittsburg Landing, General Halleck<sup>2</sup> assumed command in person, and having received reinforcements which brought up his army to more than one hundred thousand men, he slowly advanced upon the enemy, strongly intrenched at Corinth. This position the rebels evacuated, after destroying a vast amount of stores, and, May 30, the Union army took possession. The victors found, within the defences, a deserted camp and a burning town.

**10.** In July General Halleck was called to Washington as general-in-chief of the Federal armies, leaving General Grant<sup>3</sup> in command at Corinth. The next month the Confederates, under Generals Van Dorn<sup>4</sup> and Price,<sup>4</sup> began to make a vigorous attempt to retake this place. Part of the force destined for this purpose was attacked and routed at Iuka, September 19, by General Rosecrans,<sup>5</sup> who had been transferred from West Virginia to a command under Grant; and, October 4, the same general repulsed and put to flight, with frightful slaughter, a Confederate force, which, outnumbering him nearly two to one,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 4.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 7.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 23, and p. 253, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 258, ¶ 15.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 17.

QUESTIONS.—8. What further particulars of the battle of Pittsburg Landing can you give? What is said of Mitchell's expedition to Alabama? 9. Give an account of the capture of Corinth. 10. To what position was General Halleck soon called? Who took command at Corinth? Give an account of the battle of Iuka. Of the rebel attack upon Corinth.

attacked him in the strong defences of **Corinth**. In these two battles the rebels lost probably more than ten thousand men. The Union loss was about three thousand.

**11.** After the fall of Corinth, Buell<sup>1</sup> returned eastward to protect **East Tennessee** and **Kentucky**, where the Confederates soon began to make strenuous exertions to regain what they had lost. General Braxton Bragg<sup>2</sup> was placed in East Tennessee, in command of a rebel army of forty-five thousand men. One corps, under General E. Kirby Smith,<sup>3</sup> moved into Kentucky from Knoxville, defeated a Federal force near *Richmond*, August 30, and soon after entered *Lexington* and *Frankfort*, and threatened Cincinnati. About the same time, Bragg, with the rest of his army, moved north from Chattanooga. Buell did but little more than to watch and defend Nashville and Louisville. Advancing into *Northern Kentucky*, the Confederate commander sent out foraging parties to ravage the country and collect supplies. The invaders had hoped to find the people in sympathy with their cause, but in this they were disappointed, and soon turned southward.

**12.** On his northward march Bragg met loyal troops in several engagements. The most important of these was at **Munfordsville**, before which, defended by Colonel John T. Wilder, a part of his army appeared, September 13, and demanded its surrender. But the gallant colonel did not yield till the 17th, when he found his garrison of four thousand men surrounded by an army of twenty-five thousand. The invasion of Kentucky was preceded and accompanied by raids made by **guerrillas**, under Morgan,<sup>4</sup> Forrest,<sup>5</sup> and other chiefs. These desperadoes, sanctioned by the Confederate government, overran Central and Eastern Tennessee and Kentucky, sacking towns and outraging Union people. They even crossed the Ohio, and plundered Newburg, Indiana.

**13.** Bragg, on his southward march, was followed by the Union army. At **Perryville**<sup>6</sup> he made a stand, and on the 8th of October, hurled the main body of his army upon one corps of the pursuing Federals, which, commanded by General Alexander McD. McCook, stubbornly maintained the unequal contest, almost unaided, till night. The Confederates then

<sup>1</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 7.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 213, note 1, and p. 275, ¶ 52.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 309, ¶ 56.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 47.

<sup>6</sup> The battle fought here is also called the battle of *Chaplin Hills*.

QUESTIONS.—Result of these two battles? 11. After the fall of Corinth, in what direction did Buell move, and for what purpose? Who had command of the rebel army in East Tennessee? Describe the movements of Smith's corps of this army. Of the rest of the army under Bragg. 12. Give some further particulars of Bragg's northward march. Of the operations of guerrillas. 13. Give an account of the battle of Perryville.

resumed their retreat, and escaped with their immense booty.<sup>1</sup>

**1862.** The losses were not far from four thousand on each side. Bragg's operations compelled the Union troops to evacuate the important post of **Cumberland Gap**.

**14.** Late in October Buell<sup>2</sup> was superseded by **General Rosecrans**,<sup>3</sup> who closed the campaign of this year, in Tennessee, by a dearly-bought victory over General Bragg, near **Murfreesboro'**.<sup>4</sup> The battle began December 31, and lasted three days.

There had been skirmishing several days before the general battle began, as there was January 3, on the night of which day the Confederates retired. The Federal loss was fully twelve thousand; that of the rebels somewhat less. The Union troops numbered about forty-five thousand men. Careful estimates make the number of the enemy greater.<sup>5</sup>

**15. West of the Mississippi**<sup>6</sup> General Halleck had given General Samuel R. Curtis<sup>7</sup> the command in south-western Missouri; and this officer, about the middle of February, pushed Price<sup>8</sup> across the **Arkansas** border. The rebels now made the most zealous efforts to support Price, and there were speedily collected twenty thousand men, the whole under Earl Van Dorn.<sup>9</sup> Curtis had but little more than one half that number, and it was now his turn to stand on the defensive. He selected a position on *Pea Ridge*. Here a battle was fought, March 7 and 8, resulting in the defeat of the enemy, who were compelled to retreat southward.

The rebels had enforced a rigorous conscription in Arkansas; General Pike had scoured the Indian Territory for savage allies; General McCulloch had brought in reinforcements. The Union General Sigel<sup>10</sup> had occupied an advanced position before the battle of **Pea Ridge**.<sup>11</sup> While he was withdrawing towards the main body, on the 6th, the enemy endeavored to overwhelm him; but he beat off their assaults with his artillery, handling his six hundred men so skilfully that Van Dorn reported them as seven thousand. In this battle the national loss was over thirteen hundred men; the Confederate loss was much greater.<sup>12</sup> Among the killed were

<sup>1</sup> Bragg's spoils are said to have loaded nearly four thousand wagons; and besides, he drove off thousands of cattle, mules, and sheep. According to a statement in the *Richmond Examiner*, E. Kirby Smith alone had a wagon train of plunder forty miles long.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 257, ¶ 11.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 10.

<sup>4</sup> Called also the battle of *Stone River*.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 275, ¶ 52.

<sup>6</sup> See pp. 248, ¶ 18—250, ¶ 25.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 33.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 249, ¶ 20.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 217, note 2; and p. 276, ¶ 53.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 19.

<sup>11</sup> Sometimes called the battle of *Elkhorn*.

<sup>12</sup> "But," says an historian, "their shattered battalions can never furnish a correct report of their killed and wounded."

QUESTIONS.—What further result of Bragg's operations is mentioned? 14. Who superseded Buell? How did Rosecrans close the campaign in Tennessee?—What further particulars can you give of the battle of Murfreesboro'? 15. What is said of operations west of the Mississippi? Give an account of the battle of Pea Ridge. What is said of Sigel's skilful retreat to the main army? Give further particulars of the battle of Pea Ridge.

the rebel Generals McCulloch<sup>1</sup> and McIntosh. After this, Curtis sent a large part of his army to assist at the siege of Corinth,<sup>2</sup> and led the rest to Helena, on the Mississippi.

**16.** For some time after this battle no important military operations were undertaken in **Arkansas** or **Missouri**. But in the latter part of the year the rebel General Hindman gathered a large army in the former state. His troops, poorly armed and disciplined, were encountered and defeated, December 7, by a smaller army under Generals Blunt and Herron, at *Prairie Grove*.<sup>3</sup> The battles of Pea Ridge and Prairie Grove determined the fate of Missouri and Arkansas. These states, however, continued for a long time to be the theatre of a devastating guerrilla warfare.

**17.** Far to the west of Arkansas the war extended, and **New Mexico** was the scene of desperate fighting. The rebels were victorious, February 21, in the battle of *Valverde*, near Fort Craig, and soon after captured *Santa Fé*. But they were unable to maintain themselves there, and in April they were forced to evacuate the territory.<sup>4</sup>

**18.** Meanwhile the rebel posts on the **Mississippi River**<sup>5</sup> were falling into the hands of the national forces. *Columbus*, *Hickman*,<sup>6</sup> *New Madrid*, *Island No. 10*,<sup>7</sup> *Fort Pillow*, *Fort Randolph*,<sup>8</sup> and *Memphis* successively yielded to Federal arms or to Federal strategy.

After the surrender of Fort Donelson,<sup>9</sup> **Columbus** and **Hickman** were no longer tenable; and, on the approach of the Federal gunboats, their garrisons evacuated them and fortified Island No. 10 and New Madrid. To General Pope<sup>10</sup> and Commodore Foote<sup>9</sup> was assigned the duty of reducing these posts. Pope first secured a position on the river, which cut off reinforcements and supplies from below, and then laid siege to **New Madrid**, which, after one day's fierce bombardment, was evacuated on the night of March 13, the garrison fleeing across the river. Two days later, Foote, approaching from above with his flotilla, began a severe cannonade upon **Island No. 10**, which continued till Pope could cross the river, and bring up his army on the Tennessee side, so as to cut off the retreat of the garrison. This took three weeks of almost

<sup>1</sup> See p. 249, ¶ 20.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 9.

<sup>3</sup> Near Fayetteville. The battle fought here is also called the battle of *Crawford's Prairie*.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 278, ¶ 59. <sup>5</sup> See p. 251, ¶¶ 29, 30. <sup>6</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 26.

<sup>7</sup> The islands in the Mississippi below the junction of the Ohio with that river are numbered in their order, from the junction.

<sup>8</sup> Twelve miles below Fort Pillow.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 4.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 249, ¶ 20.

**QUESTIONS.** — 16. What is said of military operations in Arkansas and Missouri after the battle of Pea Ridge? What of General Hindman and the battle of Prairie Grove? What did the battles of Pea Ridge and Prairie Grove determine? What of guerrilla warfare in Missouri and Arkansas? 17. What can you tell of the war in New Mexico. 18. What is said of the rebel posts on the Mississippi? — What rendered Columbus and Hickman no longer tenable? Give an account of the capture of New Madrid. Of Island No. 10.

incredible toil.<sup>1</sup> The crossing was made April 7, on which day the island was surrendered<sup>2</sup> to Commodore Foote. Most of the garrison attempted to escape, but were pursued and captured the next day by Pope's army. About five thousand prisoners, several steamers, and a vast quantity of military stores fell to the Federals. No battle-field had hitherto yielded so valuable spoils of war as this bloodless victory.

**19.** Pope now went, with the larger part of his army, to take part in the siege of Corinth.<sup>3</sup> The flotilla immediately moved down to **Fort Pillow**, and kept its garrison employed till after the evacuation of Corinth, when it, as well as **Fort Randolph**, was evacuated on the night of June 4. Foote<sup>4</sup> had been obliged to leave the service on account of a wound received at Fort Donelson, and his command devolved on Captain Charles H. Davis,<sup>5</sup> who, June 6, attacked the rebel fleet defending **Memphis**. In an hour all the rebel gunboats but one were captured or destroyed, and Memphis was in Federal power. The Mississippi was now open from its source to **Vicksburg**. In the latter part of December an unsuccessful attempt was made by Generals Grant<sup>6</sup> and William T. Sherman<sup>7</sup> to capture this position, which had then become one of immense strength. Sherman placed his troops in the rear of the Confederate works, and made an assault which was defeated with heavy loss. Grant was marching down from the north to coöperate with him, when a Federal garrison left at **Holly Springs** to protect his supplies collected there, disgracefully surrendered, and made it necessary for him to fall back; and Sherman, finding the works too strong for him alone, gave over the attempt.

**20.** The effort to open the Mississippi was not confined to the operations above Vicksburg. Early this year a naval armament, under Commodore David G. Farragut,<sup>8</sup> was prepared to act in concert with an army under General Butler,<sup>9</sup> for the reduction of **New Orleans**. About seventy-five miles below the city, Fort Jackson, and nearly opposite, Fort St. Philip, guard the approach from the Gulf. Farragut, having, with little effect, bombarded these forts for six days, ran the principal vessels of his fleet past them, April 24, and the next day appeared before the city. The Confederate forces fled, and New Orleans was at the mercy of the Federal gunboats. On the 28th, the forts yielded to the mortar-boats of the fleet,

<sup>1</sup> Transports for crossing the river had to be obtained from Foote's flotilla. This was accomplished by cutting a canal, twelve miles long, across the tongue of land formed by the bend in the river, near the island. One half of it was cut through heavy timber standing in the water, by sawing off the trees four and a half feet below the surface. The remainder of the canal ran through bayous filled with tangled brush.

<sup>2</sup> The same day that Island No. 10 was surrendered, the battle of Pittsburgh Landing, more than a hundred miles distant, was gained. See p. 255, ¶ 7. <sup>3</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 9.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 259, ¶ 18. He died in June, 1863. <sup>5</sup> He had been raised to the rank of rear admiral.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 62.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 10.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 27.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 32. <sup>9</sup> See p. 251, ¶ 31.

QUESTIONS.—19. What is said of Forts Pillow and Randolph? Of the capture of Memphis? Of the attempt to take Vicksburg? 20. Give an account of the capture of New Orleans.

under Commander David D. Porter.<sup>1</sup> Butler took military possession of the city, and quickly brought its treason into subjection to the national authority. The capture of New Orleans was the severest blow yet inflicted upon the rebellion.

**21.** Ship Island was the rendezvous for the expedition against **New Orleans**.<sup>2</sup> The fleet consisted of forty-six vessels, carrying near three hundred guns. The army under Butler numbered fourteen thousand men. No event of the war exhibits greater coolness and daring than the passage of the forts by the fleet. They sent forth a continuous storm of shot and shell upon the passing ships, which, with difficulty avoiding the fire-rafts of the enemy, encountered and destroyed the Confederate squadron of rams, gunboats, and floating batteries. When the rebel soldiers fled from the city they destroyed a great number of ships, steamers, and store-houses, and a vast amount of cotton and other property.

**22.** After the surrender of the city, the fleet, proceeding up the river, took **Baton Rouge** and **Natchez**. Farragut kept on as far as Vicksburg, and running past the batteries there, joined the Union fleet above. Here the rebel ram **Arkansas**, darting out from the Yazoo River, inflicted considerable damage upon the fleet, and took refuge under the guns of Vicksburg. Finding that this stronghold could not be reduced without the coöperation of an army, Farragut returned to New Orleans. On the 5th of August the Confederates, under General Breckinridge,<sup>3</sup> made an attack on **Baton Rouge**. After a bloody contest the assailants were repulsed by the Federal troops, commanded by General Thomas Williams, who, in the conflict, fell, shot through the heart. The Arkansas came down to take part in the action; but her engines gave out, and her crew set her on fire and abandoned her. Soon afterwards the Federal troops evacuated the city. Late in October General Godfrey Weitzel led an expedition into the **Lafourche district**, to the south-west of New Orleans, defeated the rebels there, and took possession of the district. The property of disloyal citizens was confiscated, by order of General Butler.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 40.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 251, ¶ 29.

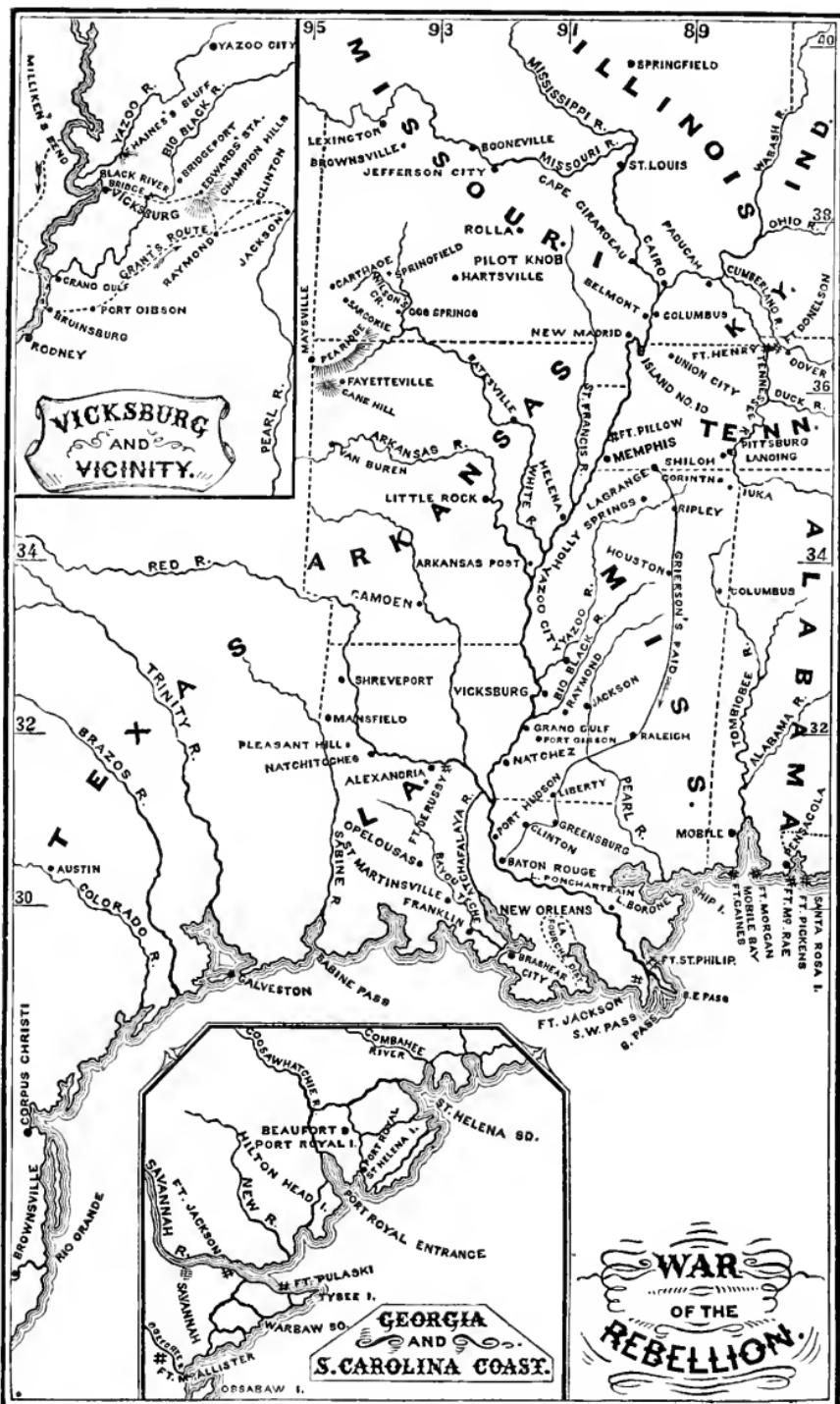
<sup>3</sup> See p. 250, note 9.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 61.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of General Butler? 21. Give further particulars of the capture of New Orleans. 22. What did Farragut next do? What is said of the rebel ram **Arkansas**? What can you tell of the battle of Baton Rouge, and of the fate of the ram **Arkansas**? Of operations in the Lafourche district?



David G. Farragut.





**23.** The Confederates evacuated *Pensacola*,<sup>1</sup> May 9, after setting fire to the navy-yard, and all property, public and private, within their reach. On the Texan shore of the **Gulf, 1862.** Commander Renshaw approached *Galveston*, with four steamers, in October, and took the city. It was recaptured by the Texans on the first day of the next year.<sup>2</sup>

**24.** On the **Atlantic coast**,<sup>3</sup> the national forces gained a foothold in *Eastern Florida*; and, April 11, *Fort Pulaski*, commanding the mouth of the *Savannah*, yielded to Union troops.

Expeditions for these purposes were fitted out at Port Royal. In March Fernandina, Jacksonville, and several other places along the **eastern coast of Florida** were taken. To reduce **Fort Pulaski**, batteries were erected on Tybee Island by Captain Quincy A. Gillmore.<sup>4</sup> After a bombardment of a day and a half, the fort, with its immense stores, surrendered to General Hunter,<sup>5</sup> who then had command in that department. The next month Hunter issued a proclamation declaring South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida under **martial law**, and the slaves in these states, consequently, free. This declaration the president overruled, as he had done in the case of Frémont's proclamation<sup>6</sup> in Missouri.

**25.** A land and naval expedition, under General Ambrose E. Burnside<sup>7</sup> and Commodore Louis M. Goldsborough, sailing from Fortress Monroe, entered Hatteras Inlet, **North Carolina**, dispersed the rebel fleet in the Sound, and captured the forts on *Roanoke Island*, February 7 and 8, after a severe fight.<sup>8</sup> The fleet pursued the Confederate flotilla, captured or destroyed it, and with the army took many settlements on the Sound, and kept the rest in continual alarm. *Newbern*, after a hot engagement, was taken, March 14. *Beaufort* yielded, without resistance, on the 25th; and a month later *Fort Macon* surrendered,<sup>9</sup> after a bombardment of several hours. Nearly the whole coast of North Carolina thus lay at the mercy of the victors.

**26.** On the 8th of March<sup>10</sup> the rebel iron-clad ram *Merrimac*, steaming out from Norfolk, made a descent on the national fleet

<sup>1</sup> See p. 251, ¶ 30.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 67.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 251, ¶ 31.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 43.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 249, ¶ 23.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 249, ¶ 22.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

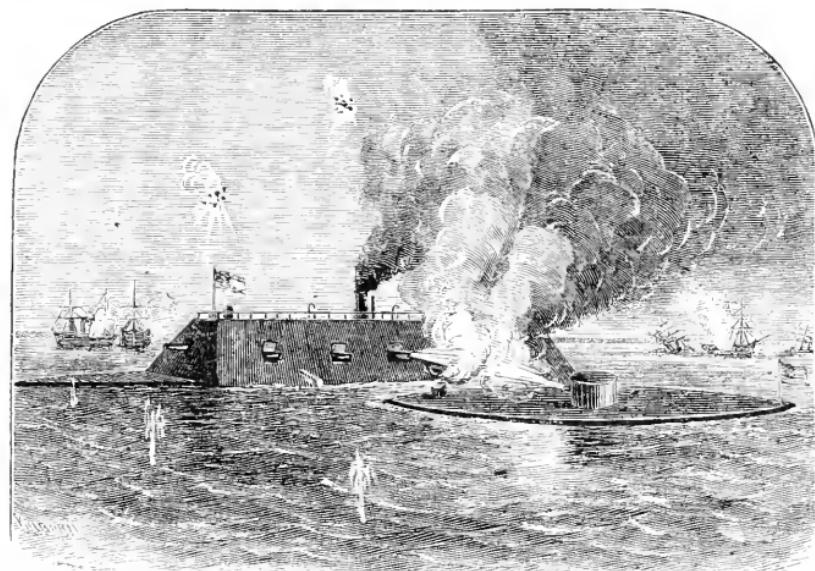
<sup>8</sup> The fight began the day after the capture of Fort Henry. See p. 254, ¶ 4.

<sup>9</sup> The day on which Farragut appeared before New Orleans. See p. 260, ¶ 20.

<sup>10</sup> The day on which was decided the battle of Pea Ridge. See p. 258, ¶ 15.

QUESTIONS.—23. Give an account of the evacuation of Pensacola. Of the operations at Galveston. 24. What did the national forces gain this year in Eastern Florida, and what at the mouth of the Savannah?—What more can you tell of the expedition to Florida? Of the reduction of Fort Pulaski? What proclamation did Hunter issue? 25. Give an account of the capture of Roanoke Island, and of other operations on the coast of North Carolina. 26. What can you tell of the operations of the Merrimac and Monitor in Hampton Roads?

in Hampton Roads, destroyed two large vessels of war, and at evening seemed only to wait for the dawn of another day to complete the destruction of the whole fleet. But during the night the Union floating battery *Monitor* opportunely arrived, and the next morning attacked the Merrimac, and drove her, considerably injured, back to Norfolk.



Fight between the Merrimac and the Monitor.

When the Federals abandoned the navy-yard at Norfolk,<sup>1</sup> they scuttled and sunk the **Merrimac**, one of the finest frigates of the American navy. This ship was afterwards raised by the rebels, cut down nearly to the water's edge, plated with iron, armed with ten heavy guns, and named the *Virginia*. As she approached, the national vessels fired upon her, but their shot glanced harmless from her iron roof. At the close of her day's havoc, the greatest consternation prevailed at Fortress Monroe and in the Union fleet. The rebel monster had already sunk the sloop of war *Cumberland*, captured and destroyed the frigate *Congress*, and disabled other Union vessels. The Cumberland, fighting to the last, went down with her flag still flying; and the Congress surrendered only after resistance was hopeless. But a new actor now came upon the scene. At night there entered the harbor a vessel which seemed to be a small raft, with a round tower in the centre. This was an iron-clad battery called the **Monitor**, constructed on a new principle, by Captain John Ericsson. The tower contained

<sup>1</sup> See p. 241, ¶ 5.

her armament of two powerful guns. When the Merrimac advanced in the morning, assured of an easy victory, the little Monitor steamed **1862.** boldly out to meet her. For four hours the battle raged, when the Merrimac withdrew from the contest. The Union fleet was saved by the Monitor. Her brave commander, Lieutenant John L. Worden,<sup>1</sup> was severely injured in the eyes by the concussion of a shot which struck the pilot-house.<sup>2</sup>

**27.** In Virginia<sup>3</sup> events of the deepest moment occurred during this year. Early in February General Lander<sup>4</sup> expelled the Confederate troops from the *Upper Potomac*; and later in the same month General Nathaniel P. Banks,<sup>5</sup> crossing from Maryland, pressed the rebels, under General Thomas J. Jackson, popularly known as Stonewall Jackson,<sup>6</sup> up the *Valley of the Shenandoah*. General Shields,<sup>4</sup> in command of Banks's advance, having enticed the rebel chief back to **Winchester**, fell upon him, March 23, and drove him back with severe loss.<sup>7</sup> Jackson was pursued up the valley by Banks.

**28.** The greater part of the **Army of the Potomac**, under General McClellan,<sup>8</sup> had for several months remained inactive opposite Washington, to be disciplined, armed, and instructed. Early in March McClellan advanced, and on the 10th took possession of **Manassas**, which had been evacuated by the rebels. On the next day he was relieved of his duties as general-in-chief, and permitted to give his undivided attention to the Army of the Potomac. General Frémont<sup>9</sup> took command of the troops in **West Virginia** and **East Tennessee**, General Banks of those in the **Valley of the Shenandoah**, and General McDowell<sup>10</sup> of those on the **Rappahannock**.

**29.** General McClellan embarked his troops at Alexandria for Fortress Monroe, intending to advance upon Richmond from that point. On the 4th of April he began his march up the peninsula formed by the James and York Rivers. Finding

<sup>1</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 77.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 69.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 242, ¶ 8—248, ¶ 17.

<sup>4</sup> Lander (see p. 247, ¶ 16) died March 2, 1862, of congestion of the brain, induced by over-exertion while still suffering from a wound received in battle. His division was joined to Banks's corps, and put under the command of General Shields (see p. 217, note 2, and p. 269, ¶ 34).

<sup>5</sup> See p. 288, ¶ 4.

<sup>6</sup> Jackson was in command of a brigade at the battle of Bull Run, which was reported, at a critical moment, to have "stood like a *stone wall*." (See p. 217, note 2, and p. 283, ¶ 72.)

<sup>7</sup> The action fought here is also called the battle of *Kernstown*.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 246, ¶ 13.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 248, ¶ 20.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 243, ¶ 11.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of the Monitor and the second day's fight? 27. What is said of events in Virginia during the year 1862? Of operations on the *Upper Potomac*? In the *Shenandoah Valley*? Of the battle at **Winchester** and its result? 28. What is said of the **Army of the Potomac**? When did McClellan advance, and of what did he take possession? What change was made in McClellan's command? Who took command in **West Virginia** and **East Tennessee**? Who in the *Shenandoah Valley*? Who on the *Rappahannock*? 29. What did McClellan next do, and with what intention?

the rebels in force behind very strong works at **Yorktown**, he laid siege to that place. His army, before the close of the siege, numbered considerably more than a hundred thousand effective men. The rebels held out for a month, when they evacuated Yorktown, and retreated towards Richmond. They were overtaken, May 5, at **Williamsburg**, and after a severe fight, again retreated. A few days later General Wool<sup>1</sup> took possession of **Norfolk**, and the Confederates destroyed the **Merrimac**,<sup>2</sup> to prevent her from falling into loyal hands. Soon after, the national gunboats attempted to reach Richmond, by the James, but were repulsed at **Fort Darling**.

**30.** McClellan moved forward towards Richmond, and establishing his base of supplies at White House, on the Pamunkey, threw the left wing of his army across the Chickahominy. This wing was attacked by the Confederates, May 31, near **Seven Pines** and **Fair Oaks**. The battle raged part of two days, when the rebels, foiled of their object, hurried in disorder back to Richmond. The Confederate commander, General Joseph E. Johnston,<sup>3</sup> was so severely wounded that he was relieved from active duty, and General Robert E. Lee<sup>4</sup> took command of the Confederate army in front of Richmond.

About thirty thousand national troops, belonging to the corps of Generals Keyes and Heintzelman, had crossed the Chickahominy. General Johnston, with near fifty thousand men, fell upon this part of the Union army, hoping to annihilate it before aid could reach it from the other side of the river. The attack was made in front of **Seven Pines**. The Federals fought bravely, but were forced back before the overpowering numbers of the enemy. McClellan's left wing seemed doomed, when the day was saved by the promptitude of General Sumner,<sup>5</sup> who threw General Sedgwick's<sup>6</sup> division of his command across from the north side of the river just in time to meet near **Fair Oaks Station**, and hurl back a fresh column of the enemy coming down upon the hard-pressed forces of Heintzelman and Keyes. Night closed the battle. The next day (June 1) a rebel division engaged a portion of Sumner's line, but was repulsed, when the whole Confederate army withdrew. The Union loss was less than six thousand; that of the rebels greater.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 253, note 3; p. 213, ¶ 6, and note 1; and p. 174, ¶ 5.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 26.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 245, ¶ 12.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 17.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 217, note 2, and p. 270, ¶ 38.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 217, note 2.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the capture of Yorktown. Of the battle of Williamsburg. What did General Wool do a few days afterwards? What is said of the destruction of the Merrimac? Of the Federal repulse at Fort Darling? **30.** Advancing towards Richmond, where did McClellan establish his base of supplies? What did he do with the left wing of his army? Give an account of the battles of Fair Oaks and Seven Pines. Who now took command of the Confederate army?—Give further particulars of the battles of Seven Pines and Fair Oaks.

**31.** Strenuous efforts throughout the revolted states had now increased and were still increasing the rebel army, while **1862.** McClellan's effective force had become considerably diminished by the necessity of keeping open his communications, by sickness, continual skirmishing, and the battles since leaving Yorktown. His great reliance was on being reënforced by McDowell,<sup>1</sup> from Fredericksburg, and in preparation for this junction he had sent forward a column under General Fitz-John Porter,<sup>2</sup> who routed a body of the enemy at **Hanover Court House**, May 27.

**32.** But the Confederate general, before the battle of Fair Oaks, had taken steps to prevent the junction of McDowell with McClellan. Stonewall Jackson, in the **Shenandoah Valley**,<sup>3</sup> had been reënforced to twenty thousand men, and ordered to attack Banks,—then at Strasburg, with a command reduced to less than six thousand men,—threaten Washington, and oblige McDowell to turn his attention northward. This plan Jackson carried out with consummate skill, and his campaign may be considered the most brilliant and successful thus far of the war. Having compelled Banks to retreat across the Potomac, the rebel leader so skilfully manœuvred his force that he completely neutralized the three armies of Frémont, Banks, and McDowell, together amounting to more than sixty thousand men.

**33.** Jackson, with the design of getting in Banks's rear, and cutting off his retreat, first fell upon and overwhelmed a small force at **Front Royal**, May 23. But Banks, too quick for his nimble foe, immediately began a masterly **retreat down the Valley**. He marched fifty-three miles in two days, continually skirmishing with his pursuers. At **Winchester** he turned upon and confronted them in a conflict of several hours, and then resumed the retreat. He finally reached the Potomac, opposite Williamsport, where, by noon of the 26th, his wearied army had crossed, having lost less than a thousand men, and but a few wagons of an immense train.

**34.** The retreat of Banks created great **alarm** throughout the loyal states. Washington was thought to be in danger; and McDowell was drawn away from reënforcing McClellan.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 28.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 270, ¶ 37.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 27.

QUESTIONS.—31. What is said of the numbers in the rebel army? How was McClellan's effective force diminished? Upon what did he rely? What is said of the action at Hanover Court House? 32. What had the Confederate general already taken steps to prevent? Give an account of Stonewall Jackson's brilliant campaign in the Shenandoah Valley. 33. What was Jackson's first movement, and with what design? What can you tell of Banks's retreat down the valley? 34. What was the result of Banks's retreat?

**Jackson**, having given his wearied army but a single day's rest, began a rapid retreat, and, though hotly pursued by the Federals, now concentrating upon him, escaped with his prisoners and booty to join Lee before Richmond.

Frémont from the west, and Shields<sup>1</sup> (now under McDowell) from the east, set out to intercept Jackson at Strasburg; but he slipped between them, and hurried on up the valley, closely followed and harassed by a superior force. Banks, too, joined in the pursuit. At **Cross Keys**, June 8, the Confederate chief turned upon Frémont's army, and held it in check while he crossed the Shenandoah and burned the bridge. The next day he defeated the advance of Shields, at **Port Republic**. The pursuit of Jackson was then given over.

**35.** It was nearly a month after the battle of Fair Oaks before McClellan was ready to advance upon Richmond. But on the very day fixed upon for this movement, Lee, now joined by Jackson, attacked the Union troops on the north side of the Chickahominy, threatened their communications with White House, and determined McClellan to make a **change of base**, and transfer his army to the banks of the James.

This change of position offered several **advantages** to the Union commander. It would remove his army from the unhealthy swamps of the Chickahominy, bring him near his base of supplies, give him the protection of the Federal gunboats, and secure for him a safe line of retreat in case of defeat. McClellan had been taught the possible **necessity** of this change by a raid made by the Confederate General Stuart,<sup>2</sup> about the middle of June. Stuart, starting north from Richmond, with fifteen hundred cavalry, passed entirely round the Union army, having destroyed some of the Federal stores near White House and taken a number of prisoners, with the loss of but a single man.

**36.** McClellan's movements were attended by a succession of terrible battles, which continued through seven days, known as the **Seven Days before Richmond**, and which culminated, July 1, in the disastrous repulse of the Confederates at *Malvern Hill*. These battles cost the Union army more than fifteen thousand men, and the Confederates more than nineteen thousand. The contending forces numbered about one hundred thousand effective men on each side. McClellan took position at Harrison's Landing; Lee led his army back to Richmond.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 27.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 292, ¶ 13.

QUESTIONS.—What did Jackson now do? Give a more particular account of Jackson's retreat up the valley. **35.** When was McClellan ready to advance upon Richmond? Why did he change his plans, and what change of base did he determine upon?—What were the advantages of this change of position? How had McClellan been taught the possible necessity of this change? **36.** What can you tell of the Seven Days before Richmond?

**37.** The movements before Richmond were begun by General Hooker,<sup>1</sup> who, June 25, advancing his line in front of Fair Oaks, met with a stubborn resistance from the enemy. An action, known as the battle of Oak Grove, ensued.<sup>2</sup> The next day the Confederates attacked General McCall's division, north of the Chickahominy, near Mechanicsville, and were repulsed with heavy loss.<sup>3</sup> During the night, however, the Union troops were withdrawn from this position to Gaines's Mill, where, June 27, General Porter,<sup>4</sup> with thirty-five thousand men, made

a stand against nearly twice his number,<sup>5</sup> while his trains were transferred across the Chickahominy, on their way to the James, a change of base having now been decided upon. Meanwhile General Magruder, with another part of the Confederate army, held the Union troops south of the river from properly supporting Porter. The latter maintained the unequal struggle till night, when he crossed the river and joined the main army. During the next day the rebels remained in doubt as to McClellan's purposes, and thus gave him a day's start of them, which he improved by moving the principal part of his army across White Oak Swamp.

Robert E. Lee.

**38.** On the morning of the 29th, the intention of the Union commander having become known, Lee began to cross the river in pursuit. Magruder attacked the rear guard under Sumner, at Savage's Station. Sumner maintained his ground till dark, when he, too, withdrew across the swamp, having secured a safe passage to the Union artillery and trains. The Confederate pursuit was in two columns: one, led by Jackson, followed in the track of the national troops; the other, under Longstreet,<sup>6</sup> passed around to the south of the swamp, in order to attack them on the flank. But General Franklin,<sup>7</sup> confronting Jackson on the 30th, held him back at White Oak Swamp, while, at no great distance, Generals McCall, Sumner, Hooker, and Kearny<sup>8</sup> stubbornly beat back the impetuous charges of Longstreet, at Charles City Cross-Roads.<sup>9</sup> During the night, the troops

<sup>1</sup> See p. 213, note 1; p. 217, note 2; p. 253, note 3, and p. 277, ¶¶ 55, 56.

<sup>2</sup> This action is also called the battle of King's School-House.

<sup>3</sup> This action is also called the battle of Beaver Dam Creek.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 268, ¶ 31.

<sup>5</sup> This action is also called the battle of Cold Harbor.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 217, ¶ 2, and p. 278, ¶ 57.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 213, note 1, and p. 281, ¶ 68.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 217, note 2, and p. 272, ¶ 42.

<sup>9</sup> This action is called variously Glendale, White Oak Swamp, Frazier's Farm.

QUESTIONS.—37. When and by whom were the movements before Richmond begun? In what action did they result? What can you tell of the battle at Mechanicsville? Of the battle at Gaines's Mill? How were the Union troops south of the river kept from supporting Porter? 38. What can you tell of the Federal retreat and the attack upon the rear guard at Savage's Station? Of the Confederate pursuit and the action at Charles City Cross-Roads?



that had held Jackson and Longstreet in check joined the rest of the army at **Malvern Hill**. The rebels charged upon this strong position, July 1, but were mowed down by artillery, and fearfully repulsed. At a heavy cost, Lee had raised the siege of the rebel capital.

**39.** During these operations near Richmond, the armies under Frémont,<sup>1</sup> Banks,<sup>1</sup> and McDowell<sup>1</sup> were consolidated (June 27) as the *Army of Virginia*, and placed under General Pope.<sup>2</sup> Upon this Frémont resigned, and was succeeded by Sigel.<sup>3</sup> In the latter part of July General Halleck<sup>4</sup> arrived in Washington to take the position of general-in-chief of the armies of the Union.

**40.** Lee next turned his attention to the **Army of Virginia**, which was threatening Richmond from the north. A campaign ensued, and continued through the month of August, in which, after several sanguinary actions, beginning with one at *Cedar Mountain*, and ending with a series of battles fought near the old battle-ground of *Bull Run*, the Union army was outnumbered, and driven to the intrenchments opposite Washington. In this campaign Pope was aided by troops recalled from the Carolinas and West Virginia. McClellan also brought up his army from the James, but too late effectually to stem the tide of disaster. The loss on each side was severe.<sup>5</sup>

**41.** Lee began his operations against Pope by sending forward a strong column under Jackson, who met the Union advance, commanded by General Banks, near **Cedar Mountain**, August 9. A severe action followed, in which Jackson, though more than doubly outnumbering his antagonist, failed to gain any decisive advantage. Pope now moved his whole command to the Rapidan. The Confederates fell back across that river to await the approach of Lee, who was urging forward his main army to overwhelm Pope before he could be reinforced. Perceiving his danger the Union general withdrew to the north bank of the **Rappahannock**, where he successfully resisted every attempt of the Confederate army to cross till the 24th. Meanwhile General Stuart, with rebel cavalry, made a dash upon **Catlett's Station**, thirteen miles in Pope's rear, and seized prisoners, horses, and the baggage of General Pope and his staff.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 28.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 259, ¶ 18.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 258, ¶ 15.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 256, ¶¶ 9, 10.

<sup>5</sup> "Probably the entire rebel loss from Cedar Mountain to Chantilly did not fall short of fifteen thousand men; while Pope's, if we include stragglers who never rejoined their regiments, must have been fully double that number." — *Greeley's American Conflict*.

QUESTIONS.—What of the final repulse of the pursuers at Malvern Hill? **39.** How was the army of Virginia formed and under whom placed? Who was appointed general-in-chief of the armies of the Union? **40.** To what did Lee next turn his attention? What can you tell of the campaign that ensued? **41.** How did Lee begin his operations against Pope? What can you tell of the battle near Cedar Mountain? Why was Lee urging forward his main army? Where did Pope make a stand? What is said of Stuart's dash upon Catlett's Station?

**42.** On the 26th, Jackson, having crossed the river at a point farther up than the Union army could guard, made his way through Thoroughfare Gap, and severed Pope's railroad communications with Washington.

**1862.** The Federal commander immediately fell back from the Rappahannock. On the 27th, General Hooker's division engaged the Confederate troops, under General Ewell, near **Kettle Run**,<sup>1</sup> and drove them from the field. Then followed heavy battles on the plains of Manassas. At **Groveton**, August 29, a battle was begun, which was renewed the next day on the field of **Bull Run**,<sup>2</sup> when Pope was again forced to fall back. Two days later occurred the last battle of this campaign, at **Chantilly**, in which among the Federal killed were the able Generals Stevens and Kearny.<sup>3</sup> The Union troops now sought the defences of Washington. For two weeks they had been marching and fighting almost incessantly, and were worn down with fatigue and hunger.

**43.** Pope soon after, at his own request, was relieved from command, and his exhausted army, united with what was left of the Army of the Potomac, was placed under the command of McClellan, for the defence of Washington.Flushed with success, Lee now pushed north, crossed the Potomac near Point of Rocks, for the invasion of Maryland, and entered Frederick. McClellan started at once to meet him, so marching as to protect both Washington and Baltimore. On the 14th of September his advance overtook the rear of the Confederates, already on their way to the Cumberland Valley, at **South Mountain**, and drove them across the mountain, after a battle which lasted the whole day.

**44.** The next day **Harper's Ferry**, with a garrison of near twelve thousand men, shamefully surrendered to a detachment under General Jackson, after but a feeble resistance. The Federal cavalry, over two thousand men, broke through the rebel lines before the surrender and escaped. Jackson immediately joined Lee, who, after the battle of South Mountain, had taken position west of Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg. Here, September 17, was fought the great battle of **Antietam**,<sup>4</sup> which raged furiously from daylight till dark, and compelled Lee to recross the Potomac.

<sup>1</sup> Near Bristoe Station.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 243, ¶ 11.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 270, ¶ 38.

<sup>4</sup> Also called the battle of *Sharpsburg*.

QUESTIONS.—42. What did Jackson do on the 26th, and what movement did Pope make in consequence? What is said of the engagement the next day near Kettle Run? What can you tell of the battles which followed? What was the condition of the Union troops when they reached Washington? 43. With what was Pope's army united, and under whose command? What can you tell of the invasion of Maryland, and the battle of South Mountain. 44. Give an account of the surrender of Harper's Ferry. Of the battle of Antietam.

**45.** Lee entered Maryland, hoping to find the people ready, when supported by his army, to join in the rebellion; but they gave him a cold reception. This invasion created great excitement and alarm throughout Pennsylvania, especially in the southern counties of the Cumberland and Susquehanna valleys. The men sent their wives and children and movable property farther north, while they themselves hastened to take up arms to repel the invaders. McClellan's army numbered nearly ninety thousand men. It is probable that Lee's army was about one third less. In this campaign, lasting two weeks, the rebels give their loss in killed and wounded as more than eleven thousand men. They also lost more than six thousand prisoners.<sup>1</sup> The Federal loss, not including the garrison at Harper's Ferry, was near fifteen thousand. Among these fell General Reno, at South Mountain, and Generals Mansfield,<sup>2</sup> Richardson, and Rodman, at Antietam.

McClellan did not immediately pursue the Confederates. While he remained in Maryland the rebel **General Stuart**,<sup>3</sup> already famous for his bold cavalry raids, dashed across the Potomac, and penetrated as far as Chambersburg, Pennsylvania. Sweeping entirely round the Union army, he recrossed into Virginia.

**46.** The administration expressed much dissatisfaction at the inactivity of McClellan,<sup>4</sup> who did not cross into Virginia till the latter part of October. Early the next month an order reached him, near Front Royal, to surrender his command to **General Burnside**.<sup>5</sup> This general, about the middle of the month, concentrated his forces on the Rappahannock, opposite **Fredericksburg**, intending to march upon Richmond from that point. The Union troops crossed the river, and, December 13, were signally defeated in an attempt to carry the Confederate works in the rear of the city. On the night of the 15th, Burnside recrossed the river, before Lee was aware of his intention.

By some mismanagement in supplying Burnside with pontoons for crossing the Rappahannock, he was obliged to wait opposite Fredericksburg. This delay gave the rebels time to secure and fortify the heights in the rear of the city. The Federal army lost, in this attack, fourteen thousand men; the Confederates not much more than one third as many.

**47.** When Pope was attacked by the rebel army, General Cox,<sup>6</sup> with troops from **West Virginia**, was called to his assistance. This left that region open to a body of rebels, who entered the Kanawha valley, and occupied Charleston. In November, however, Cox returned with national troops, and the rebels retired.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To these losses may be added thousands who according to the rebel General Hill, straggled from the army. <sup>2</sup> See p. 211, ¶ 2. <sup>3</sup> See p. 271, ¶ 41; and p. 269, ¶ 35.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 266, ¶¶ 28, 29. <sup>5</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 25. <sup>6</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 16. <sup>7</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 71.

QUESTIONS.—45. What further particulars can you give of Lee's invasion of Maryland?—What is said of General Stuart's raid? 46. Who superseded McClellan, and when? What is said of the battle of Fredericksburg?—Give some further particulars. 47. What is said of operations in West Virginia?

**48.** This year the **Federal blockade**<sup>1</sup> of the southern ports had become still more effective. The rebels made great efforts **1862.** not only to prepare a **navy** at home, but to procure abroad vessels to prey upon northern ships. In this they were so far successful that the commerce of the United States was, in a great measure, driven from the seas, except when it could be under the protection of armed vessels.

The **Oreto**,<sup>2</sup> and later, the **Alabama**, built in England, were permitted by the British government to pass into rebel hands. Unable to enter any Confederate port, and forbidden to take their prizes into the ports of any nation, they usually burned the ships which they captured, and the principal part of their cargoes.<sup>3</sup>

**49. The Sioux War.**—The summer of 1862 was sadly distinguished in Minnesota by frightful massacres perpetrated by some bands of Sioux Indians, under Little Crow and other chiefs. They began their outrages about the middle of August, and kept them up for more than a month, when they were driven into Dakota, except several hundred who were captured, thirty-eight of whom were hung in punishment for their murders. It has been estimated that more than seven hundred whites were slain, and twenty-five thousand were driven from their homes; and, for some time, a third of this number was dependent upon charity for support. The next summer the savages renewed their outrages, which were not suppressed till after a tedious campaign, lasting into September.

**50.** For a long time the **Indians** had been dissatisfied. They especially complained of the course pursued by the traders, and of the delay of the national government in making the annual payment due them by treaty. On the 17th of August a party of Indians murdered some whites near the town of Acton, and this taste of blood was followed the next day by a general massacre of the settlers on the **Upper Minnesota River**. Successful in an encounter with a few troops who first went against them, the savages urged on the work of death throughout the whole western part of the state, and in Iowa and Dakota. Every species of fiendish atrocity was perpetrated on their victims. A fierce attack made upon **New Ulm**, an isolated town containing some fifteen hundred persons, was repulsed with difficulty. The place was then abandoned by its

<sup>1</sup> See p. 252, ¶¶ 32, 33.

<sup>2</sup> Afterwards called the *Florida*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 77. Occasionally a prize was released on a bond, signed by the captain, to pay a certain sum of money after the independence of the Confederacy had been established.

QUESTIONS.—48. What is said of the Federal blockade? Of efforts made by the rebels to prepare a navy? How far were they successful in this?—What is said of the rebel privateers Oreto and Alabama? 49. What can you tell of the Sioux war in Minnesota? 50. Of what had the Indians complained? What can you tell of their massacres on the 17th and 18th of August? Of their first encounter with troops, and of their atrocity? Of their attack upon New Ulm?

inhabitants. **Fort Ridgely**, after enduring a siege for several days, was relieved by Colonel (since General) Henry H. Sibley, who led an expedition up the Minnesota Valley to suppress the ravages of the Indians. After some fighting, Little Crow and his followers fled far into Dakota. Meanwhile General Pope<sup>1</sup> was sent to take command in this department. Renewing their outrages the next year, the savages were hunted down; their chief, Little Crow, was killed; and an expedition, under General Sibley, pursued the hostile tribes, and, after considerable fighting, drove them across the Missouri River. Yet the Indians remained restive and troublesome, and ready for another outbreak.

**51. Events of 1863.**—President Lincoln signalized the opening of the new year by issuing an **Emancipation Proclamation**,<sup>2</sup> which declared forever free all slaves in the insurgent states, except in such parts of Louisiana and Virginia as were under national authority.

This proclamation was not issued without due deliberation. Many had urged the earlier adoption of such a policy, believing that it would give to the Union cause strength at home and sympathy abroad; but the president had resisted every attempt to move him faster in this direction than he believed necessary in order to prosecute the war to its legitimate issue of subduing the rebellion.<sup>3</sup> He was especially desirous of having the support of the people in this step, and he therefore delayed taking it until he saw that the public mind was fully prepared for it.

**52. In Tennessee,**<sup>4</sup> at the beginning of the year, the great battle of Murfreesboro' was concluded by the success of the Federal arms. Bragg,<sup>5</sup> after his defeat, retreated south, and took position at Tullahoma and along Duck River. Rosecrans<sup>6</sup> remained at Murfreesboro' till the latter part of June, when he began a series of movements, which, in a brief campaign of nine days, and with small Union loss, compelled the enemy to abandon Middle Tennessee, and retreat over the Cumberland Mountains to Chattanooga. Before the Union advance was made, there were frequent reconnoissances, raids, and expeditions of minor importance from both armies.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 272, ¶ 43, and p. 271, ¶ 39.

<sup>2</sup> One hundred days before (September 22), the president had issued a proclamation, which declared that the slaves of those in rebellion on the 1st of January, 1863, should be free. The proclamation of the latter date designated the states in rebellion, and was confirmatory of the first.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 254, ¶ 4—258, ¶ 14.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 257, ¶ 11.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 258, ¶ 14.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of the siege of Fort Ridgely? Of the pursuit of the Indians into Dakota? Of operations against them the next year? In what condition did they continue? 51. How did President Lincoln signalize the opening of the new year? What did the Emancipation Proclamation declare?—What is said of the course of the president in regard to issuing this proclamation? 52. How was the beginning of the year marked in Tennessee? What was the position of the opposing armies after the battle of Murfreesboro'? Give an account of Rosecrans's nine days' campaign. What took place before the Union advance?

**53.** Early in February a detachment of rebels was repulsed in an assault on **Fort Donelson**. On the 5th of March, Colonel Coburn, with about two thousand men, was surrounded by a greatly superior force **1863.** of rebels, under General Van Dorn,<sup>1</sup> at **Spring Hill**, and, after a severe conflict, more than two thirds of his whole command were captured. Soon afterwards, General Philip H. Sheridan<sup>2</sup> chased Van Dorn back to the rebel camp on Duck River. About two weeks later, Colonel Hall, while on a reconnoissance, encountered the rebel General Morgan,<sup>3</sup> and defeated him near **Milton**.<sup>4</sup> In the latter part of April, Colonel Streight, with about sixteen hundred men, set out on a **raid into Northern Georgia**. Having penetrated as far as Cedar Bluff, he was forced to surrender to a body of cavalry, under the rebel General Forrest.<sup>5</sup>

**54.** About the middle of August, Rosecrans again moved, and, by threatening Bragg's communications with the south, compelled him to retreat. The Union general occupied Chattanooga, September 9. Leaving a force here, he pressed on after the enemy, who, being reënforced, outnumbered their pursuers, and turned upon them near the **Chickamauga**. A battle followed, September 19 and 20, in which the Federal army was beaten and forced to fall back to Chattanooga. General Thomas's<sup>6</sup> corps alone held its ground, and saved the army from total defeat.

This battle took place on West Chickamanga Creek, about ten or twelve miles south of Chattanooga. Rosecrans had about fifty-five thousand troops. Bragg had been reënforced by Longstreet,<sup>7</sup> from Lee's army, by troops from Johnston<sup>8</sup> in Mississippi, by Buckner<sup>9</sup> from East Tennessee, and by prisoners taken at Vicksburg<sup>10</sup> and Port Hudson,<sup>11</sup> who, in violation of their parole, had been forced to serve in the field, so that his army numbered about seventy thousand men. The rebels gained the battle, but not the prize for which they were fighting, namely, Chattanooga, the key to East Tennessee. Rosecrans lost more than sixteen thousand men; the Confederates more than eighteen thousands.

**55.** The Federal army was now shut up in Chattanooga by the enemy, who had intrenched themselves on the mountain ranges near the town. So confident did Bragg feel of his prey that he sent Longstreet,<sup>6</sup> with his command, against Knoxville.<sup>12</sup> Soon the besieged were in danger of starvation. Their critical situation gave the national government great anxiety, and all possible efforts were made to sustain them. Grant<sup>9</sup> was appointed

<sup>1</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 10.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 308, ¶ 52.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 257, ¶ 12.

<sup>4</sup> Twelve miles north-east of Murfreesboro'.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 254, ¶ 4.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 75.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 280, ¶ 66.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 57.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 61.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 67.

QUESTIONS.—53. Give some account of the more important of these expeditions. 54. What can you tell of Rosecrans's second movement, and of the battle near the Chickamauga?—What further particulars can you give of this battle? 55. What was now the condition of the Federal army? Against what place did Bragg send Longstreet? What changes in command were made?

to the chief command of all the armies of the west east of the Mississippi, his previous command devolving upon Sherman.<sup>1</sup> Rosecrans was superseded by Thomas, to whose aid came Sherman from Vicksburg, and Hooker<sup>2</sup> with troops from the Army of the Potomac. Grant directed the operations in person, and in a three days' battle, beginning November 23, drove the enemy from their strong positions with great loss, and forced them to retreat southward.

**56.** Bragg's army extended from the vicinity of the Tennessee River above Chattanooga, along Missionary Ridge, across the Chattanooga Valley and Lookout Mountain, and west of the last to the Tennessee, below the town. Grant first drove the enemy back from the river, south of Chattanooga, thus opening a free passage for supplies. He next prepared for a general advance, and on the 23d of November Thomas captured the strong works of the enemy on **Orchard Knob**, in Chattanooga Valley. The next day Sherman seized a position on their right, above the town, while Hooker, on their left, sealed the heights of **Lookout Mountain**, and far up its rugged sides fought a battle which forced the rebels to abandon the summit. On the 25th, Sherman began the attack on **Missionary Ridge**. Finally the whole army pressed up the steep mountain side, in the face of a murderous fire, and swept the rebels from their intrenchments. The battle was won. The raising of the siege of Chattanooga, when we consider the strength of Bragg's positions and the rapidity and completeness of his defeat, has scarcely a parallel in history. The Union loss was over five thousand killed and wounded; that of the rebels was less in killed and wounded, but they lost more than six thousand prisoners. Two days after this victory a pursuing column, under Hooker, attacked the foe in a strong position at **Ringgold**, and suffered severe loss. The enemy were, however, compelled to continue their retreat.

**57.** In Kentucky General Gillmore<sup>3</sup> routed a strong rebel force near *Somerset*, March 30. Later in the spring, Burnside<sup>4</sup> was appointed to command in this department. In coöperation with Rosecrans's movement upon Chattanooga, he entered **East Tennessee**, where he was joyfully welcomed by the Unionists, who had been so long oppressed in that region. On the 1st of September he occupied **Knoxville**, the rebels, under Buckner,<sup>5</sup> retreating, at his approach, to join Bragg.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 280, ¶ 66.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 71.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 75.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 24.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—What reinforcements were brought to the besieged? What is said of the battle before Chattanooga? 56. Describe the position of the besieging army. What did Grant first do? What can you tell of the capture of Orchard Knob? Of the sealing of Lookout Mountain? Of the final assault on Missionary Ridge? What is said of the raising of the siege of Chattanooga? Of the losses on each side? Of the attack at Ringgold? 57. When and where did General Gillmore rout a rebel force? Who was appointed to command in Kentucky later in the spring? Give an account of Burnside's movements in coöperation with Rosecrans.

A few days afterwards he seized *Cumberland Gap*, with its garrison of two thousand men. About the middle of November he was besieged in Knoxville by Longstreet.<sup>1</sup> After the victory of Chattanooga, Sherman was sent to aid Burnside. Learning this, Longstreet made a desperate assault upon the place, was repulsed, and returned to Lee in Virginia.

**58.** About the time of Rosecrans's advance from Murfreesboro', the Confederate ranger General Morgan,<sup>2</sup> with three thousand cavalry and a battery of artillery, made a daring raid through Kentucky into Indiana and Ohio. Crossing the Ohio at Brandenburg, he swept eastward, destroying property and levying contributions on the inhabitants. The militia rose to repel the invaders, and Burnside sent a detachment in pursuit of them. Morgan attempted to recross the Ohio a little above Pomeroy, but was driven back, and in less than a month after he set out on his raid his whole band was killed, scattered, or captured. Among the captured was Morgan himself.<sup>3</sup>

**59.** In Missouri and Arkansas<sup>4</sup> the rebels maintained a restless activity this year, but accomplished little.

The rebel General Marmaduke, with a part of the army which had been defeated at Prairie Grove, appeared before **Springfield**, Missouri, January 8, but was beaten and driven back. He experienced a like fate at **Hartsville** three days later, and at **Cape Girardeau**, April 26, where was a large depot of stores for Grant's army. Many of the Federal troops having been transferred to aid in the siege of Vicksburg,<sup>5</sup> the rebel General Holmes seized the opportunity to attack General Prentiss, in command of the Union garrison at **Helena**,<sup>6</sup> Arkansas, but he was repulsed with heavy loss, July 4.

**60.** After the fall of Vicksburg,<sup>5</sup> General Frederick Steele<sup>7</sup> was sent, in command of an army, to suppress the rebellion in Arkansas. On the 10th of September he took *Little Rock*, and the whole state was soon restored to Federal authority, except the western part, over which bands of guerrillas continued to roam in their plundering excursions into Missouri and Kansas. These bands made frequent dashes into towns, and robbed and murdered loyal soldiers and citizens.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 276, ¶¶ 54, 55.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 258, ¶ 15—259, ¶ 17.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 53.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 61.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 259, ¶ 15.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 287, ¶ 1.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 289, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the siege of Knoxville by Longstreet, and the raising of the siege. 58. Give an account of Morgan's raid north of the Ohio. 59. What is said of affairs in Missouri and Arkansas this year?—What can you tell of the rebel Marmaduke at Springfield, Hartsville, and Cape Girardeau? Of the rebel repulse at Helena? 60. What can you tell of Steele's operations in Arkansas? Of guerrilla excursions west of the Mississippi?

One of the most atrocious outrages of the war was perpetrated, August 21, by a band of these outlaws from Western Missouri, under the notorious Quantrell.<sup>1</sup> In the early morning, they entered the thriving city of Lawrence, Kansas, and murdered in cold blood one hundred and forty of its unarmed inhabitants. Houses, stores, and churches were burned, and other property was stolen or destroyed, the whole estimated at two millions of dollars in value. The guerrillas were pursued and some of them were slain, but the greater part escaped, laden with their plunder.<sup>2</sup>

**61.** But the great enterprise in the west this year was the opening of the Mississippi,<sup>3</sup> and the most important step towards the accomplishment of this object was the capture of Vicksburg. General Grant,<sup>4</sup> after a series of brilliant victories, invested this stronghold, and, July 4, received its surrender. In this campaign Grant took more than thirty thousand prisoners, including the rebel commander, General John C. Pemberton, and fourteen other general officers, together with arms and munitions of war for an army of sixty thousand men.

**62.** After the failure of the attack upon Vicksburg<sup>4</sup> in December, 1862, General John A. McClernand took command, in place of Sherman. While waiting for Grant to get his forces ready for a second attack, he, in conjunction with Admiral Porter,<sup>5</sup> captured a large rebel garrison at Arkansas Post,<sup>6</sup> January 11. Vicksburg is situated on a high bluff, on the east bank of the Mississippi, about four hundred miles above New Orleans. Formidable batteries and forts crowned the bluff for miles, and completely commanded the river. Farragut,<sup>7</sup> with a fleet from below, and Davis,<sup>4</sup> from above, bombarded the city during the spring and early summer of 1862, but with little effect. In front of Vicksburg the river makes a bend, forming a tongue of land opposite the city. Grant attempted to cut a canal across this tongue, and thus open a new channel for the river beyond the reach of the rebel batteries. This and other attempts, both to pass the city in front and to get to its rear, failed.

**63.** When the season had so far advanced that the low marshy ground west of the river became passable for troops, Grant suddenly marched his army from Milliken's Bend, above Vicksburg, to a point on the river below, while Porter, under cover of night, ran past the batteries with gun-boats and transports. Grant crossed the river at Bruinsburg on the last day of April, and then, by a succession of rapidly executed movements,

<sup>1</sup> Quantrell was but an assumed name of this bandit.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 259, ¶ 18—264, ¶ 23.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 289, ¶ 5, and p. 301, ¶ 33.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 260, ¶ 19.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 261, ¶ 20.

<sup>6</sup> The rebels had a fort here, called *Fort Hindman*, which commanded the Arkansas River.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 261, ¶ 22, and p. 260, ¶ 20.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the guerrilla attack on Lawrence. 61. What was the great enterprise in the west this year? What was the most important step towards the opening of the Mississippi? Give an account of the capture of Vicksburg. 62. What can you tell of the capture of Arkansas Post? What of the situation of Vicksburg, and of the earlier attempts to capture it? 63. How were the army and fleet brought below Vicksburg?

defeated the enemy at **Port Gibson**, May 1; at **Raymond**, May 12; and, two days later, at **Jackson**, where he met and worsted a rebel army under General Johnston,<sup>1</sup> who retreated northward. Abandoning Jackson, Grant turned westward and was victorious at **Champion Hills**,<sup>2</sup> May 16, and at **Black River Bridge**, on the next day. By these movements he compelled the evacuation of **Grand Gulf**, prevented the forces of Johnston and Pemberton from uniting, and drove the latter, who had sallied out to oppose him, back within the intrenchments of Vicksburg.

**64.** Grant then laid **siege** to the city, which, with the aid of the gunboats, he soon completely invested. For more than six weeks the besiegers kept up an almost incessant bombardment. Assistance and escape were alike impossible to the doomed garrison. Failing in two attempts to carry the works by storm, Grant was making ready for a third assault, when (July 3) Pemberton asked for an armistice to arrange terms of capitulation, and later in the day, the two generals met between the lines to confer about the **surrender**, which took place the next morning. The prisoners were paroled. The Union loss, from the crossing at Bruinsburg to the fall of Vicksburg, was about eight thousand men.

**65.** A **cavalry raid**, by Colonel Benjamin H. Grierson,<sup>3</sup> facilitated Grant's operations before Vicksburg. This officer, leaving La Grange, Tennessee, swept southward through the interior of Mississippi, breaking the enemy's communications, destroying railroad bridges, rolling-stock, and military supplies, and reached Baton Rouge, May 2, having, with about a thousand men, traversed six hundred miles of hostile territory in little more than two weeks. While the siege of Vicksburg was in progress a rebel force of some twenty-five hundred men attacked (June 6) the camp at **Milliken's Bend**, garrisoned by a thousand effective troops. After a desperate engagement, the garrison being assisted by two gunboats, the assailants were driven off with severe loss.

**66.** During the siege of Vicksburg **General Johnston**<sup>1</sup> had been hovering in the rear of Grant's army. Immediately after the surrender Sherman<sup>4</sup> went in pursuit of him, and pressed him back to Jackson, from which place he was a second time driven, and retreated eastward. He afterwards sent part of his force to aid Bragg, in Northern Georgia.<sup>5</sup> **General Grant** also sent expeditions to various points on both sides of the river, wherever opportunity offered to capture Confederate troops or guerrilla bands, to destroy or seize Confederate supplies, or to cut Confederate communications. When Grant and Sherman took a large part of the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 267, ¶ 30.

<sup>2</sup> The battle fought here is also called the battle of *Edwards Station*, and the battle of *Baker's Creek*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 31.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 260, ¶ 19.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 54.

**QUESTIONS.** — What further can you tell of Grant's movements before he laid siege to the city? What did Grant accomplish by these movements? **64.** What further can you tell of the siege of the city and its surrender? **65.** Give an account of Grierson's raid. Of the attack upon Milliken's Bend. **66.** What is said of General Johnston, and of Sherman's pursuit of him? Where did Grant send expeditions, and for what purpose?

army from Vicksburg to East Tennessee,<sup>1</sup> General James B. McPherson<sup>2</sup> was left in command of the remainder, and he actively followed up the work of destroying the enemy's transportation and resources.

**67. Port Hudson**, the last rebel obstruction on the Mississippi, was made untenable by the fall of Vicksburg, and, July 8, its garrison of over six thousand men, under General Frank Gardner, surrendered to General Banks, who had for some weeks been investing it. General Banks<sup>3</sup> had superseded General Butler in New Orleans in the latter part of 1862.

Soon after assuming command, Banks despatched troops to **Galveston**,<sup>4</sup> Texas. On the night of January 1, after a part of them had reached their destination, the rebels made an attack by land and water, retook the city, killing or capturing its garrison of about three hundred men, and seizing some of the government shipping in the harbor. Early in the year, Banks swept over the wealthy country bordering on the **Atchafalaya**, defeating the enemy under General Richard Taylor<sup>5</sup> and others, at various points, and, May 8, entered **Alexandria**, which place had been captured the day before by Admiral Porter,<sup>6</sup> with his gunboats. Banks returned to the Mississippi, and invested **Port Hudson** in the latter part of May, Farragut<sup>6</sup> coöperating with the fleet. Two general assaults were made, in which the troops of Banks's command, both white and colored, showed great bravery, but the works were too strong to be carried by storm. The Union army entered this stronghold July 9. The Mississippi was now opened to the Gulf, and the Southern Confederacy was cut in two. During this siege Taylor reoccupied **Alexandria**, and, swooping down west of the Mississippi, captured the garrison at **Brashear City**, which, however, with the whole region east of the Atchafalaya, he hastened to abandon after the fall of Port Hudson.

**68.** After the opening of the Mississippi, General Banks sent General William B. Franklin,<sup>7</sup> in command of an expedition in transports, aided by gunboats, to seize **Sabine Pass**, Texas. But two of the gunboats, being disabled in an attack upon the enemy's batteries, September 8, surrendered, and the rest of the expedition returned. In October, Banks planned an expedition to break up the extensive trade which had been carried on across the Rio Grande at Brownsville. Troops were landed on the Texas shore of that river, and in November, **Brownsville** and the river thence to its mouth were held by the national forces, who subsequently occupied more than half of the coast of the state.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 55.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 309, ¶ 56.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 298, ¶ 26.  
<sup>6</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 62.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 271, ¶ 39.  
<sup>7</sup> See p. 270, ¶ 38.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 23.  
<sup>8</sup> See p. 288, ¶ 4.

QUESTIONS.—When did McPherson take command at Vicksburg, and how did he employ himself? 67. Give an account of the fall of Port Hudson. When did Banks take command in New Orleans?—What can you tell of operations at Galveston? In the country bordering on the Atchafalaya? At Alexandria? What further particulars can you give of the siege and fall of Port Hudson? What is said of the operations of General Taylor? 68. Give an account of the reverse at Sabine Pass. Of the Federal movements on the Rio Grande and the Texan coast.

**69.** The withdrawal of many of the troops from the Carolinas<sup>1</sup> in the previous year compelled those left to act chiefly on the defensive; but General Gillmore<sup>2</sup> and Admiral Dahlgren<sup>3</sup> made a combined attack, by land and water, upon *Charleston*, which city, however, held out till February, 1865.<sup>4</sup> Meanwhile it suffered severely from the Federal cannon.

Early in the year the fleet failed in attempts upon **Fort McAllister**, and in April in an attack upon **Fort Sumter**, and the rebel defences of Charleston.<sup>4</sup> Gillmore, in command of the land forces, gained a foothold on **Morris Island** in July. **Fort Wagner**, on the northern part of the island, after gallant assaults upon it had been as gallantly repulsed, was abandoned by its garrison in September. But without waiting for this, the army and the fleet opened fire upon Charleston, and upon Sumter and other forts in the harbor. In the latter part of August, Sumter was reported by Gillmore to be “a shapeless and harmless mass of ruins.” It was not so harmless, however; for it hurled its messengers of destruction against the besiegers for a year and a half, when Charleston and all its defences were brought under national authority.

**70.** General Foster, now in command in **North Carolina**, repelled an attack, made by the rebel General D. H. Hill, upon **Newbern**, in March, and another upon **Washington** early in the next month. Failing at Washington, Hill joined Longstreet, who was then laying siege to **Suffolk**, in South-eastern Virginia. Its garrison of fourteen thousand men, under General Peck, with the assistance of gunboats, successfully defended the post against superior numbers.<sup>5</sup>

**71.** General Burnside<sup>6</sup> remained in command of the **Army of the Potomac**,<sup>7</sup> still opposite Fredericksburg, till late in January, when he was relieved, and General Joseph Hooker<sup>8</sup> appointed in his place. No forward movement was made for three months, when Hooker crossed the Rappahannock for another advance upon Richmond, and, May 2, was met by General Lee<sup>9</sup> near *Chancellorsville*. Here was fought a desperate battle, which lasted three days, when the Union general retreated across the river, his army having suffered severely.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 264, ¶ 24—266, ¶ 26.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 57.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 43.

<sup>4</sup> Late in the year 1861 the national government attempted to stop up Charleston harbor by sinking old vessels laden with stone, known as the *stone fleet*, across the principal channels; but the tide, sweeping around these obstructions, soon opened new channels.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 280, ¶ 6.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 273, ¶ 46.

<sup>7</sup> See pp. 266, ¶ 27—273, ¶ 47.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 270, ¶ 37, and p. 272, ¶ 42.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 267, ¶ 30.

QUESTIONS.—69. What is said of operations in the Carolinas? Of the attack upon Charleston? —What two failures of the fleet are mentioned? When did Gillmore gain a foothold on Morris Island? What is said of Fort Wagner? Upon what did the army and fleet open fire? What further is said of Sumter? 70. Who was in command in North Carolina? What attacks did he repel in March and April? What is said of the siege and defence of Suffolk? 71. What is said of the Army of the Potomac, and who succeeded Burnside in command of it? Give an account of the battle of Chancellorsville.

**72.** Hooker began his advance with every promise of success. His army, about one hundred and twenty-five thousand strong, was in splendid condition, and outnumbered Lee's nearly two to one. Having sent a cavalry force, under General Stoneman,<sup>1</sup> to cut Lee's communications with Richmond, he directed General Sedgwick,<sup>2</sup> with a strong column, to cross the Rappahannock near Fredericksburg, and himself moved his main army some miles up the river, and there crossing, took position at **Chancellorsville**, about ten miles west of Fredericksburg, where Lee, nothing disconcerted by the operations of Stoneman's cavalry, fell upon and routed the Union right wing. The next morning he renewed his attack and his successes; but just then he learned that Sedgwick had carried the **Heights of Fredericksburg**, and was menacing his rear. Leaving Hooker inactive from the blow already inflicted upon him, he turned upon this new foe, and with severe fighting that afternoon and the next day, crowded him back upon the river. Sedgwick recrossed that night. The next night Hooker transferred the rest of his troops to the north side of the Rappahannock, and the whole army returned to its old camping-ground. This defeat cost the Union army over seventeen thousand men, among whom were the division generals, Berry and Whipple. The Confederates lost over twelve thousand, including their famous general, Stonewall Jackson<sup>3</sup> himself, in the magic of his name worth an army to them.

**73.** Lee, having been reënforced, resolved to assume the offensive, and attempt a **second invasion**<sup>4</sup> of the loyal states. In June he moved down the Shenandoah Valley, took Winchester and Martinsburg, crossed the Potomac near Williamsport, advanced into Pennsylvania, occupied York, and threatened Harrisburg. Hooker followed with the utmost vigor by the way of Leesburg, and on reaching Frederick, Maryland, he was relieved, at his own request, and the command was given to **General George G. Meade**,<sup>5</sup> who continued the pursuit of the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 47.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 267, ¶ 30.

<sup>3</sup> He was accidentally fired upon by his own troops, receiving wounds of which he soon afterwards died. See p. 268, ¶ 32.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 272, ¶ 43.

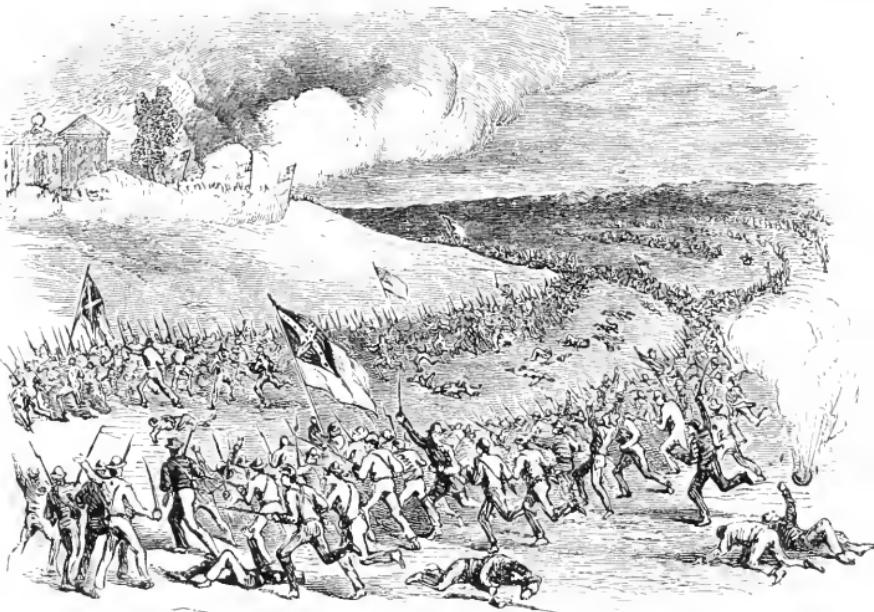
<sup>5</sup> See p. 315, ¶ 5.

QUESTIONS.—72. What further particulars can you give of this battle? Of the attack upon the heights of Fredericksburg? Of the withdrawal of the Union forces? 73. What did Lee now resolve to attempt? What can you tell of Lee's movement northward? Of Hooker's pursuit? Who took command in place of Hooker?



Thomas J. Jackson.

rebels, and gave them battle at **Gettysburg**. This great and decisive battle began July 1,<sup>1</sup> and, continuing through 1863, the next two days, ended in a Federal victory. On the 4th Lee began to withdraw his broken columns towards Virginia.



Battle of Gettysburg.

**74.** This invasion of the loyal states again created great excitement throughout the north, and the militia of Pennsylvania and the neighboring states hastened to repel the invaders. The opposing armies were of nearly equal strength, each numbering about one hundred thousand men. The Union loss in the invasion exceeded twenty-three thousand men; the rebel, probably thirty thousand. During the movement of the hostile forces north from the Rappahannock there were frequent cavalry skirmishes, and some sharp encounters, especially at **Beverly Ford** and **Brandy Station**, at **Aldie** and **Middleburg**.

**75.** Lee continued his retreat across the Potomac near Williamsport, up the Valley of the Shenandoah, through the passes of the Blue Ridge, and in September took position south of the Rapidan. Meade pursued, crossing the Potomac near Harper's Ferry, and, keeping east of the Blue Ridge, posted his army about Culpepper and Brandy Station, north of the Rapidan.

<sup>1</sup> Just one year from the battle of *Malvern Hill*. See p. 263, ¶ 33.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg and Lee's retreat. **74.** What further particulars can you give of this invasion of the loyal states? Mention some of the encounters which took place during the movement of the hostile armies north. **75.** What can you tell of the retreat of Lee and the pursuit by Meade?

The two armies remained thus confronting each other till the next spring, with the exception of some unsuccessful movements on the part of each to out-maneuvre the other.

In September a part of Lee's army was sent, under Longstreet,<sup>1</sup> and a part of Meade's, under Hooker,<sup>2</sup> to strengthen the armies contending for East Tennessee.<sup>3</sup> In October Lee advanced and attempted to turn Meade's right. The latter drew back across the Rappahannock to Centreville. After making some feints, Lee retreated in turn, followed by the national troops, who attacked the rebels at **Rappahannock Station**<sup>4</sup> and **Kelly's Ford**, November 7, and took two thousand prisoners. Meade next crossed the Rapidan, and made demonstrations upon Lee's right, encamped on **Mine Run**, but finding the position of the enemy very strong, withdrew without a battle, and recrossed the river.

76. **West Virginia**<sup>5</sup> was this year admitted to the Union as a separate state.

The military operations in this section, during the year, were of minor importance; yet it was nearly cleared of armed rebels, and they never again entered it, except as raiders. The last considerable action took place in November, near the Greenbrier River,<sup>6</sup> where the Union General William W. Averill<sup>7</sup> routed a body of the enemy.<sup>8</sup>

77. There were in the **naval service**<sup>9</sup> of the government, this year, near forty thousand seamen. Most of these were employed in squadrons to enforce the blockade and assist the land forces, but many were in smaller squadrons and single ships, watching in various quarters for rebel privateers.

So effective was the **blockade** that the prices paid for cargoes in southern ports were enormous, and tempted some English merchants to build swift steamers for blockade-running. During the year more than three hundred prizes, about one third of which were steamers, were taken by the national fleet. Late in February, Commander Worden,<sup>10</sup> in the monitor *Montauk*, approached near enough to Fort McAllister to destroy the rebel privateer *Nashville*, which had for several months been lying under the guns of the fort, watching an opportunity to run the blockade. On the 17th of June, the monitor *Weehawken*, Captain John Rodgers, captured the iron-clad ram *Atlanta*, which had steamed down from Savannah to attack the Union fleet. The ram was compelled to haul down her flag within fifteen minutes after the monitor opened fire.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 270, ¶ 38.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 71.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 276, ¶¶ 54, 55.

<sup>4</sup> Between Beverly Ford and Kelly's Ford.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 16.

<sup>6</sup> Near Lewisburg.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 295, ¶ 19.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 289, ¶ 7.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 274, ¶ 48.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 266, ¶ 26.

QUESTIONS.—What was the position of the two armies till the next spring?—When and for what purpose was a part of each army sent westward? What can you tell of Lee's advance, and the affairs at Rappahannock Station and Kelly's Ford? What of Meade's demonstration upon Mine Run? 76. What new state was admitted to the Union this year?—What of military operations in West Virginia this year? 77. How many men were in the naval service? How were they employed?—What is said of the blockade? Of the destruction of the *Nashville* by the *Montauk*? Of the capture of the *Atlanta* by the *Weehawken*?

**78. Rebel privateers** did much mischief this year among merchant vessels and Maine and Massachusetts fishermen.

**1863.** The *Alabama* and the *Florida*,<sup>1</sup> in the early part of the year, cruised near the West Indies, till the vigilance of Commodore Wilkes<sup>2</sup> made that neighborhood too hot for them. The *Alabama* continued her depredations in the South Atlantic, while the *Florida* came boldly up the coast to near New York, and then prowled on the track of the New York and Liverpool packets. The schooner *Areher*, a captured fishing vessel, manned by Confederates, anchored off Portland, and at night two boats' crews rowed into the harbor, boarded the revenue cutter *Caleb Cushing*, overpowered her crew, and put to sea with her. The next day she was pursued by two merchant steamers, the *Forest City* and the *Chesapeake*, manned by soldiers and volunteers. As the steamers bore down upon the cutter, the rebels set her on fire, and tried to escape in boats; but they were soon captured. In December the *Chesapeake*, on her way from New York to Portland, was seized by a party of rebels, who had come on board as passengers. She was pursued by United States vessels, driven into a harbor of Nova Scotia, and soon afterwards given up to her owners by the Nova Scotia authorities.<sup>3</sup>

**79.** Some persons in the north, who sympathized with the rebellion, resolved to make the drafting of troops<sup>4</sup> the occasion of exciting insurrection against the government. Forceable resistance was attempted in several places, but chiefly in New York city, where, at the opening of the draft, July 13, a terrible riot broke out, which resulted in the loss of many lives and of millions of property. Many buildings were pillaged and burned, among them the Colored Orphan Asylum. The fury of the mob was especially directed against the persons and property of negroes. Unfortunately the city militia had been sent to aid in driving Lee out of Pennsylvania,<sup>5</sup> and it was four days before order was restored. Further than this, traitors in the north failed to excite any serious resistance to the government.

**80. The year 1863** was one of great prosperity to the Union cause. The Fourth of July had received new consecration by the victory at Helena,<sup>6</sup> the surrender of Vicksburg,<sup>7</sup> and Lee's retreat from Gettysburg.<sup>8</sup> The Confederates had been beaten back, shattered, from their invasion of Pennsylvania. They had been foiled in their designs upon Kentucky and the states north of the Ohio.<sup>9</sup> Their territory had been severed by the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 274, ¶ 48.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 253 ¶ 35.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 34.

<sup>4</sup> In March a conscription act was passed authorizing the president to recruit the armies of the United States by a draft from the able-bodied citizens of the country between the ages of twenty and forty-five.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 284, ¶ 74.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 278, ¶ 59.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 61.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 284, p. 73.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 55, and p. 278, ¶¶ 57, 58.

QUESTIONS.—78. What is said of rebel privateers? Of the *Alabama* and the *Florida*? Give an account of the seizure of the *Caleb Cushing* and the pursuit of her captors. Of the seizure of the *Chesapeake*. 79. Give an account of the terrible riot in New York city. 80. What can you say of the year 1863? How had the Fourth of July received new consecration? From what had the Confederates been beaten back, and in what foiled? How had their territory been severed?

opening of the Mississippi.<sup>1</sup> Their efforts, in the loyal states, to excite resistance to the national government, had proved abortive,<sup>2</sup> and the Emancipation Proclamation<sup>3</sup> had deprived them of the last hope of foreign aid. During the year Union troops had maintained a foothold in every rebel state.

### III. FROM THE BEGINNING OF 1864 TO THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.—THE REBELLION IN ITS DECLINE.—Events of 1864.

—1. The nation entered upon the new year with buoyant hopes, which, however, were not strengthened by the earlier operations. One of the first movements was an expedition into the interior of Mississippi,<sup>4</sup> directed by General William T. Sherman.<sup>5</sup> This expedition crippled the rebel resources, but failed to restore permanently any territory to the national authority.

Early in February Sherman marched east from Vicksburg, with about twenty-five thousand men, and after some skirmishing with the enemy, reached Meridian, an important railroad centre near the eastern border of the state. Here an auxiliary force from Memphis, under General William S. Smith, was to join him, but failed to do so, and Sherman retraced his steps, after having destroyed many miles of railroad track, with its bridges, depots, and rolling-stock, and an immense amount of such other property as would have contributed to the strength of the enemy. Smith penetrated nearly to Columbus, on the Tombigbee River, when he found the rebels in such numbers, under Forrest,<sup>6</sup> that he was forced to return to Memphis, having also destroyed much Confederate property. Several thousand negroes followed these expeditions on their return.

2. Forrest moved northward, and, March 24, captured Union City, Tennessee, with its garrison of nearly five hundred men. The next day he attacked Paducah, Kentucky, but was repulsed. On the 12th of April he appeared before Fort Pillow. The garrison—less than six hundred troops, nearly half of whom were negroes—bravely resisted the attack from sunrise till afternoon, when the enemy, having treacherously gained, under cover of a flag of truce, a favorable position, suddenly carried the works by assault. A dreadful *massacre* ensued. The Union troops threw down their arms, and tried to escape, but they were cut down without mercy. The work of death, interrupted by the night, was renewed the next morning, until the greater part of the garrison had been butchered. Even women and children, within the works, were not spared.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 67.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 286, ¶ 79.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 275, ¶ 51.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 279, ¶ 61—281, ¶ 68.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 55.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 53.

QUESTIONS.—What had proved abortive? What had deprived them of the last hope of foreign aid? What had the Union troops maintained? III. 1. What is said of Sherman's expedition into the interior of Mississippi?—What particulars can you give of the expedition under Sherman and the auxiliary force under Smith? 2. What capture did Forrest make, and what repulse did he meet with? Give an account of the capture of Fort Pillow and the massacre of its garrison.

**3.** General Sturgis, with a large force, marched from Memphis in pursuit of the rebel chief, but was routed with heavy loss near **Guntown**,<sup>1</sup> Mississippi, June 10, and driven back to Memphis. General **1864.** Andrew J. Smith was then put in command of an expedition to retrieve this disgrace. He encountered and defeated Forrest at **Tupelo**,<sup>1</sup> July 14. The next month Forrest made a raid into Memphis, but after securing some plunder, and destroying considerable property, he was obliged to make a hasty retreat. Raiding expeditions in this region cease henceforth to be of interest, except as they are connected with Sherman's great campaign, already far advanced.<sup>2</sup>

**4.** Early in the year General Banks,<sup>3</sup> at New Orleans, organized an expedition, known as the **Red River Expedition**, to take possession of Western Louisiana. General Sherman contributed reinforcements from Vicksburg, and a powerful fleet, under Admiral Porter,<sup>3</sup> coöperated. Shreveport was the point aimed at. The Union forces successfully pushed their way, with occasional skirmishes, till April 8, when their advance was suddenly attacked and routed by General Taylor<sup>3</sup> at *Sabine Cross-Roads*.<sup>3</sup> But the pursuing foe was soon checked by another portion of the Union army, and Banks that night fell back some fifteen miles to unite with a column of his troops at *Pleasant Hill*. Here the enemy fiercely attacked him the next day, but were defeated and driven from the field in great disorder. Banks, however, thought it best to continue his retreat, and the undertaking was given up. General Edwin R. S. Canby<sup>5</sup> soon afterwards took command in this department.

**5.** The troops from Vicksburg were under General Andrew J. Smith, and they, with Porter's coöperating fleet, began the operations on Red River. Smith captured **Fort De Russy**, March 14, and two days later occupied **Alexandria**, already in possession of the fleet. Here Banks joined the expedition with the main army, and marched towards Shreveport with about twenty thousand men. On his way back, after the victory at Pleasant Hill, he worsted the enemy at **Cane River**, in a sharp conflict. Meanwhile the fleet had proceeded some distance up the river, but the reverse at Sabine Cross-Roads compelled its return. As it moved down the river, it was much annoyed by rebel batteries and sharpshooters along the banks. When it arrived at Alexandria, the water had fallen so much that the gun-boats could not pass over the rapids at that place. The difficulty was,

<sup>1</sup> Guntown is thirty-six miles south of Corinth, on the railroad to Mobile; Tupelo is thirteen miles farther south. <sup>2</sup> See p. 296, ¶ 23. <sup>3</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 67.

<sup>4</sup> Near Mansfield, which place has also given name to the battle.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 309, ¶ 56.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of General Sturgis's expedition against Forrest? Of General Andrew Smith's expedition? Of Forrest's raid into Memphis? 4. Give an account of the Red River expedition, including the defeat at Sabine Cross-Roads and the victory at Pleasant Hill. 5. Give further particulars of this expedition. Give an account of the return of the fleet.

however, removed by the engineering skill of Colonel Joseph Bailey, who constructed dams by which the channel was contracted and the water raised high enough to allow the vessels to pass. Banks lost in this expedition five thousand men, and the rebels at least as many more. Some Union gunboats and transports were destroyed, or fell into the hands of the enemy, before the fleet reached the Mississippi.

About the time of Banks's advance to Alexandria, General Steele<sup>1</sup> left Little Rock, **Arkansas**, with an army to coöperate in the Red River expedition. He advanced, driving the enemy before him, and reached Camden about the middle of April. But the loss of one of his trains, and tidings of Banks's reverse, determined him to turn back. The rebels, strongly reënforced, now pressed him closely, and, April 30, attacked him while crossing the Saline River at *Jenkins's Ferry*, but were repulsed with great loss. Steele reached Little Rock, having suffered severely.<sup>2</sup>

**6.** While Sherman was on his expedition to Meridian, another Union expedition, fitted out from South Carolina by General Gillmore, to reclaim **Florida**,<sup>3</sup> was disastrously defeated under General Seymour, near *Olustee*, February 20.<sup>4</sup> Seymour retreated to Jacksonville, and a few months later the troops on both sides were called to more important work in Virginia.

Early this year the rebels renewed their efforts to drive the loyal troops out of **North Carolina**. An attempt was made upon *Newbern*, February 1; but after the capture of an outpost, the city was found too strongly defended to be hopefully assailed. *Plymouth*, with its garrison, after a most gallant resistance, surrendered, April 20, to a rebel land force, assisted by the ram *Albemarle*. *Washington* was soon after abandoned, and Newbern alone on the main land, in North Carolina, was occupied by Union forces. Later in the year, however, the *Albemarle*<sup>5</sup> was destroyed and Plymouth retaken.<sup>6</sup>

**7.** In **Virginia**<sup>7</sup> and **West Virginia**, early in the year, small parties of rebels seized some Federal trains of considerable value. But the boldest enterprise of this part of the year was a *raid* by General Judson Kilpatrick,<sup>8</sup> who, with a body of cavalry from the Army of the Potomac, attempted

<sup>1</sup> See p. 278, ¶ 60.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 33.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 282, ¶¶ 69, 70.

<sup>4</sup> The action fought here is also called the battle of *Ocean Pond*.

<sup>5</sup> In the latter part of October, the *Albemarle*, then lying at Plymouth, was sunk by Lieutenant William B. Cushing, who, with thirteen men, in a steam launch, went up the Roanoke River on a dark night, and in spite of a severe fire opened upon them, exploded a torpedo under the ram. At the same instant the launch was disabled and filled with water. Cushing and one of his men escaped by swimming, but most of his party were captured.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 40.

<sup>7</sup> See pp. 282, ¶¶ 71-285, ¶ 76.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 42.

**QUESTIONS.**—What can you tell of the coöperating force under General Steele? 6. Give an account of the Union disaster at Olustee.—What is said of the efforts of the rebels in North Carolina? Of the attempt upon Newbern? The capture of Plymouth? The abandonment of Washington? What happened later in the year? 7. Give an account of Kilpatrick's raid.

to dash into Richmond and liberate the Union prisoners confined there. He crossed the Rapidan late in February, and succeeded in getting **1864.** within the outer fortifications of the rebel capital; but a force under Colonel Ulric Dahlgren, detached to strike the James River above the city, and coöperate in the attack, was led a day's march out of the way by the ignorance or treachery of a guide; and Kilpatrick, unable to penetrate farther, fell back. Afterwards most of Dahlgren's detachment joined the main column; the rest were cut off, and either captured, or, as was their brave leader, slain. This raid inflicted great damage upon the enemy's railroads, bridges, and upon the canal above Richmond.<sup>1</sup>

**8.** Meanwhile the nation had been making preparations for the final struggle. The rank of **Lieutenant-General** was conferred upon **General Grant,**<sup>2</sup> who was assigned to the chief command of all the armies of the Union.



Ulysses S. Grant.

Now first the **national forces** were moved in obedience to a single will, and were persistently held to the accomplishment of a single purpose. Hitherto they had acted without much concert, so that when one was prosecuting a campaign with vigor, the rest often were inactive. This left the Confederates at liberty to concentrate upon the point of attack, and gave them, with actually a smaller force in the field, a practical superiority in numbers. Grant determined to deprive them of this advantage, by making a simultaneous attack in the East and the West.

**9.** The bulk of the **Rebel forces** was concentrated east of the Mississippi, into two great armies. One in *Virginia*, under Lee,<sup>3</sup> occupying the south bank of the Rapidan, covered and defended Richmond; the other, in *Georgia*, under Johnston,<sup>4</sup> intrenched at Dalton, covered and defended Atlanta, the great railroad centre of the Southwest, and depot of rebel supplies.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 55. In 1798 Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of all the armies of the United States, with the rank of Lieutenant-General. The brevet rank of Lieutenant-General was conferred upon Scott in 1855.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 71.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 280, ¶ 66.

QUESTIONS.—8. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the Union armies, and with what rank?—How did this affect the movements of the national forces? 9. What was the position of the bulk of the enemy's forces?

So thoroughly had the disloyal states been stripped of men and means to raise and equip their armies already in the field, that, if these should be captured or destroyed, it would be impossible to supply their places, and armed rebellion would cease.

**10.** March and April were spent in reorganizing the **Union armies** and preparing them for action. General William T. Sherman<sup>1</sup> was put in command of the *forces west of the Alleghany Mountains*, to operate against Johnston. The *Army of the Potomac*, still under the command of General Meade,<sup>2</sup> had for its duty the destruction of the army under Lee. It was supported by a force in the Shenandoah Valley and West Virginia, under General Sigel;<sup>3</sup> by another about Fortress Monroe, under General Butler;<sup>4</sup> and by a column of reserves, under General Burnside,<sup>5</sup> which were soon incorporated with Meade's command. All the military movements were under the general supervision of the Lieutenant-General, who had his headquarters with the Army of the Potomac.

**11.** This army crossed the Rapidan,<sup>6</sup> May 4. The next day, Lee hurled his whole army upon it, in the region known as the *Wilderness*, and a terrific battle raged for two days, at the close of which the Confederates withdrew behind their intrenchments. Grant now, by a succession of flank movements, interrupted by deadly conflicts at *Spottsylvania*, the *North Anna*, and *Cold Harbor*, crowded the Confederates back nearly to the defences of Richmond, and then (June 14) began to throw his army across the James, where he laid siege to Richmond and Petersburg, and threatened Lee's communications with the south. This bloody **campaign to the James**, lasting forty-two days, cost the Union army sixty thousand men. The rebel loss was much less, because, in most cases, the national troops were the attacking party, and the enemy were intrenched.

**12.** The Army of the Potomac was organized in three corps, led by Generals Hancock, Warren, and Sedgwick.<sup>7</sup> General Sheridan<sup>\*</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 287, ¶ 1.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 283, ¶ 73.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 271, ¶ 39.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 279, ¶ 20.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 57.

<sup>6</sup> See pp. 282, ¶ 71—283, ¶ 76.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 283, ¶ 72.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 53.

QUESTIONS.—What would be the effect if these armies should be captured or destroyed? 10. What Union forces were to operate against Johnston, and who was in command of them? What army was to operate against Lee, and who was its commander? By what forces was the Army of the Potomac supported? Who exercised general supervision of all the movements, and where did he have his headquarters? 11. When did the Army of the Potomac cross the Rapidan? Give an account of the battle of the Wilderness, and Grant's movements thence to the James. What more can you say of this campaign to the James?

commanded the cavalry. The **battle of the Wilderness** took place near Hooker's battle-ground of the year before.<sup>1</sup> The field was **1864.** covered with a dense undergrowth. Neither artillery nor cavalry could be brought into action. In this thicket the opposing armies met in a deadly conflict which no man could see, and whose progress could only be followed by the sharp crackling volleys of musketry, and the Union cheer or rebel yell which told how the varying fight swayed to and fro. In this battle the Union General James S. Wadsworth was mortally wounded.

Grant next moved to **Spottsylvania**, where he found Lee behind intrenchments, again prepared to resist his progress. The fighting here continued more or less severely for twelve days. On the 9th General Sedgwick was killed by a rebel sharpshooter during a time of comparative quiet. General Wright<sup>2</sup> succeeded to his command. On the 12th the Federals assailed and captured a part of the enemy's line of defence, but were unable to gain any further advantage. On the 19th the Confederates, sallying out, made an attack, but were gallantly repulsed. The next day Grant proceeded to turn Lee's right, and the Confederates fell back towards Richmond. On the 23d the national army reached the **North Anna**, only to find the rebels on the opposite side. A passage was effected, but the enemy were so strongly posted that Grant returned to the north bank, moved down to the Pamunkey, which he crossed at Hanovertown, and pushed on for the Chickahominy. At **Cold Harbor** his progress was again arrested. After some lighter attempts to carry the enemy's position, a general assault was made, June 3, which was repulsed with frightful slaughter. The loss of the rebels was comparatively small.<sup>3</sup> Their position being too strong to be carried, and too near the defences of Richmond to be turned, Grant threw his army across the James.

**13.** While the Army of the Potomac was at Spottsylvania, Sheridan, with a picked body of **cavalry**, passed around east of the enemy, crossed the North Anna in their rear, destroyed many miles of railroad, recaptured some four hundred prisoners on their way to Richmond, and approaching the rebel capital, May 11, encountered a cavalry force, and defeated it in an action which cost the rebels the life of their dashing leader, General Stuart.<sup>4</sup> After carrying the outer defences of Richmond, Sheridan was obliged to withdraw. He returned by way of White House to the Army of the Potomac, after an absence of but little more than two weeks—in season to take part in the battles at Cold Harbor.

**14.** On the night that Grant crossed the Rapidan, **General Butler**<sup>5</sup> embarked his army, and, convoyed by gunboats,

<sup>1</sup> The battle of the Wilderness began just a year and a day after the close of the battle of Chancellorsville. See p. 282, ¶ 71. <sup>2</sup> See p. 296, ¶ 22.

<sup>3</sup> "Twenty minutes after the first shot was fired, fully ten thousand of our men were stretched writhing on the sod, or still and calm in death, while the enemy's loss was little more than one thousand." — *Greeley's American Conflict*.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 271, ¶ 41.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

QUESTIONS.—12. What particulars can you give of the battle of the Wilderness?—Of the battles at Spottsylvania? Of the movements from Spottsylvania to Cold Harbor? Of the battle at Cold Harbor? What did Grant do after his repulse at Cold Harbor? 13. Give an account of the operations of the cavalry under Sheridan. 14. What is said of the movement of General Butler?

proceeded up the James River. On the next day he landed the main body of his troops at *Bermuda Hundred*, and intrenched himself there. He had about thirty thousand men.

His command consisted of the corps of General William F. Smith and of a corps recently brought from South Carolina by General Gillmore.<sup>1</sup> About the middle of May Butler moved towards Richmond. Approaching Drury's Bluff, he gained some of the outworks of **Fort Darling**, and planned an assault on that stronghold for the 16th. But Beauregard<sup>2</sup> had come up from the Carolinas, and on the morning of that day, under cover of a dense fog, attacked Butler, who fell back within the defences at **Bermuda Hundred**, having lost nearly four thousand men. The Confederate loss was somewhat less. Beauregard was afterwards repulsed in several assaults upon Bermuda Hundred. Butler remained here, and Smith's corps was taken from him to aid the army at Cold Harbor.

**15.** While the Army of the Potomac was crossing the James, Grant attempted the capture of **Petersburg**, with Butler's command, bringing up, in support of the movement, the troops as they crossed the river. Lee, however, rapidly threw his forces into the defences of that city and of **Richmond**, and compelled the Union army to sit down before them for a regular siege. Grant, while conducting this siege, by heavy blows upon the rebel lines, now north of the James, now south of it, by threatening one point and attacking another, by sending off his cavalry on various expeditions, kept Lee constantly occupied. The rebel chieftain repelled every attempt to gain the Confederate capital, but he witnessed from day to day his army wearing away faster than it could be replenished, while the heavy Union losses were made good by frequent reinforcements. In vain did Lee try to break through the Union army; in vain did he try to divert the attention of his antagonist, who only drew his lines more closely and securely around the enemy in and near their capital.

**16.** We can make special mention only of some of the more important operations about Petersburg and Richmond. In the latter part of June the Union troops took up an intrenched position north of the James, above Malvern Hill, at a place known as **Deep Bottom**, and sustained themselves there in spite of a vigorous opposition. An attempt was made,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 289, ¶ 6, and p. 282, ¶ 69.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 7.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Butler's advance towards Richmond, and repulse? Of his subsequent operations at *Bermuda Hundred*? **15.** What did Grant attempt while the Army of the Potomac was crossing the James? How was he repelled, and what was the Union army compelled to do? What is said of Grant's operations during the siege? What of the rebel chieftain? **16.** What can you tell of the Union operations at Deep Bottom? Of an attempt to break through the rebel lines by exploding a mine?

July 30, to break through the rebel lines of defence by exploding a **mine** under one of the strongest of the works before Petersburg. In an instant a six-gun fort, with its garrison and armament, was thrown high into the air, and a strong storming party was ordered to press through the gap thus formed. But the assault was a miserable failure, and ended in a bloody repulse. While Lee weakened his southern wing to oppose the operations north of the James, a Union force, August 18, got possession of the **Weldon Railroad**, which connects Weldon with Petersburg and Richmond, and continued to hold it against the repeated and violent efforts of the enemy to regain it. During the next month General Butler captured an important rebel fort north of the James. Another effort to extend the Union lines south-west of Petersburg led to a severe action at **Hatcher's Run**, October 27. These operations of siege, assault, and defence, cost the Union army, before the close of the year, near forty thousand men, the Confederates not more than half that number.<sup>1</sup>

**17.** The coöperating force<sup>2</sup> in the **Shenandoah Valley** and **West Virginia**, at first commanded by General Sigel and afterwards by General Hunter,<sup>3</sup> began its movement May 1. But so far was it from rendering any important assistance to Grant's advance to the James, that it was driven out of the valley, which was thus left open to the rebels.

Sigel sent a detachment under General Crook, with a division of cavalry under General Averill,<sup>4</sup> to operate upon the **Kanawha** and upon the railroads of South-western Virginia, while he himself, advancing up the Shenandoah Valley, met the enemy, May 15, and was routed near **Newmarket**. He was then superseded by Hunter, who defeated the rebels at **Piedmont**, near Staunton, June 5, and then, joined by Crook's detachment, marched upon Lynchburg; but this place was too strong to be prudently attacked, and he was compelled to retire into West Virginia.

**18.** There was now nothing to obstruct the way to the Potomac, and Lee determined to try the experiment of a third invasion<sup>5</sup> of the loyal states. He hoped thus to compel Grant to raise the siege of Richmond, and hurry to the defence of the national capital. The rebel commander despatched General Early,<sup>6</sup> who, with a large army, marching rapidly down the Shenandoah Valley, crossed the Potomac early in July, threatened Baltimore and Washington, and cut off communication by railroad and telegraph with the north. But the

<sup>1</sup> See p. 307, ¶ 50.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 76.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 283, ¶ 73.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 264, ¶ 24.  
<sup>6</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 18.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of getting possession of the Weldon Railroad? Of the action at Hatcher's Run? 17. What is said of the coöperating force in West Virginia and the Shenandoah Valley?—For what purpose did Sigel send away a detachment under Crook? Where was Sigel routed? By whom superseded? Give an account of Hunter's victory at Piedmont, and his subsequent movements. 18. What did Lee determine to try? What did he hope to accomplish? Give an account of Early's invasion.

invasion failed of its object. Grant was able to provide for the defence of Washington, without relaxing his grasp upon Richmond, and Early was driven back into Virginia. He, however, hovered near the Potomac till August.

**19.** Entering upon this **third invasion** with a force not exceeding twenty thousand men, Early drove across the Potomac the few Federal troops remaining in the Valley, and followed them into Maryland. Again the excitement attendant upon the former invasions was renewed. Washington was nearly defenceless, and the loyal states sent troops to protect it. Grant spared Wright's<sup>1</sup> corps from the James, and other troops were forwarded to repel the invader. Early defeated General Lewis Wallace,<sup>2</sup> who, on the 8th of July, with a handful of men, withheld him for a time on the **Monocacy River**, near Frederick, Maryland. He next sent a body of cavalry towards Baltimore, and cut off that city from the north, while he himself marched upon Washington. After some skirmishing before the capital, he retreated across the Potomac. The Union troops pressed after him, and had several encounters with him. On the 24th of July the rebels fell upon the Federals, then under General Crook,<sup>3</sup> routed and drove them across the Potomac, and followed them into Maryland. A body of rebel cavalry advancing upon **Chambersburg**, Pennsylvania, July 30, demanded a ransom of five hundred thousand dollars, which not being paid, the raiders set fire to the town, and burned two thirds of it. On the retreat this force was overtaken by Averill,<sup>4</sup> near **Moorefield**,<sup>4</sup> and routed, losing artillery, trains, and many prisoners.



Philip H. Sheridan.

**20.** **Sheridan**<sup>5</sup> was now appointed to command on the Potomac. He struck Early a succession of telling blows, and sent him "whirling up the Valley" of the Shenandoah. Then laying waste this fertile region, so that the rebels could draw no further supplies from it, he returned northward, and took position

<sup>1</sup> See p. 292, ¶ 12.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 247, ¶ 16.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 294, ¶ 17.

<sup>4</sup> On the south branch of the Potomac, south-west of Romney.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 12.

QUESTIONS.—19. Give some further particulars of this invasion, and the efforts to resist it. What can you tell of the action on the Monocacy River, and of Early's operations in Maryland after the action? What of his retreat across the Potomac, and the Federal pursuit? Of the return of the rebels into Maryland? Of the burning of Chambersburg? Of the second retreat of the enemy and the action at Moorefield? 20. Who was now appointed to command on the Potomac? What is said of Sheridan's first operations against Early and in the Valley?

behind **Cedar Creek**. Here Early, who had been reënforced, **1864.** suddenly fell upon the Union army, October 19, in the absence of the commanding general, and drove it from the field; but Sheridan, arriving, turned the disaster into a glorious victory. After this, the Shenandoah Valley ceased to be the theatre of important operations. The shattered remnants of Early's army joined Lee at Richmond, and a large part of Sheridan's force joined Grant.

**21.** Sheridan had about thirty thousand men, Early probably one third less. The former did not assume a vigorous offensive till about the middle of September, and on the 19th he attacked the enemy near **Winchester**,<sup>1</sup> and drove them from the field. They fled to **Fisher's Hill**, and took refuge behind earthworks. The Union commander lost no time in following, and again put them to utter rout, September 22. The rebels lost, in prisoners alone, more than four thousand men. Sheridan pursued as far as Staunton, and on his return swept **the Valley**—which had been a great storehouse and granary for the rebel armies in Virginia—of cattle, crops, and everything that could be of use to the enemy. He also destroyed many houses which had sheltered guerrillas, who had murdered his troops.

**22.** Reënforcements were now sent to Early, and he again advanced down the Valley. After several minor engagements, he suddenly fell upon the Union forces at **Cedar Creek**, on the morning of October 19, while Sheridan was absent. The attack was furious. The Confederates swept over the defences, and in a short time had driven the Federals back four miles. General Wright,<sup>2</sup> temporarily in command, made great efforts to stem the tide of disaster, and succeeded in arresting the retreat. Just then Sheridan, who, on his way from Winchester, had caught the distant sound of battle, dashed up to the front, and by his voice and presence infused fresh confidence into his disheartened troops, and the exultant rebels were driven in total disorder back, over all the ground they had gained, abandoning in their flight, besides their captures in the early part of the day, many cannon and a great amount of army equipage. This victory cost the national army three thousand men. The rebel loss was greater; Early's army was virtually broken up.<sup>3</sup>

**23.** While such had been the progress of the war in Virginia, **General Sherman**,<sup>4</sup> in the west, had been conducting one of the most remarkable campaigns on record. He moved, with an army of nearly one hundred thousand men, from the neighborhood of Chattanooga, May 6, on his march to Atlanta.

<sup>1</sup> This action is also called the battle of *Opequan Creek*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 48.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 295, ¶ 19.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the battle at Cedar Creek. Result of this victory? 21. What further particulars can you give of Sheridan's operations, including the victories at Winchester and Fisher's Hill? Of his laying waste the Shenandoah Valley? 22. What more can you tell of the battle at Cedar Creek? 23. Meanwhile what had Sherman been doing in the west?

By successive flank movements he obliged General Johnston,<sup>1</sup> confronting him with about fifty-five thousand men, to fall back from one strong position to another, pushed him across the Chattahoochee, and, about the middle of July, forced him to take refuge within the intrenchments of Atlanta. He then laid siege to the city. During this march severe battles were fought at *Resaca*, *Dallas*, and on *Kenesaw Mountain*.

**24.** Sherman's army consisted of the commands of Generals McPherson,<sup>2</sup> Thomas,<sup>3</sup> and Schofield.<sup>4</sup> His course lay through a country full of mountains, ravines, and rivers, and hence peculiarly adapted to the defensive warfare which Johnston adopted. The Confederate position about **Dalton** was too strong to be carried by assault, and Sherman, while a part of his army threatened the enemy in front, flanked them on the west with the rest, and compelled them to fall back to **Resaca**. After a battle there, May 15, they retreated to **Allatoona Pass**. Attempting to turn this position, the Union army encountered the Confederates at **Dallas**, in several engagements, May 25-28, and the enemy fell back, making a stand on **Kenesaw Mountain** and the neighboring heights, where they

held Sherman at bay for nearly a month, with frequent skirmishes and engagements, in one of which the rebel General Polk<sup>5</sup> was killed. At length, July 2, Sherman again, by a flank march, made it necessary for Johnston to retreat, and shelter himself within the fortifications of Atlanta. After driving the Confederates from Resaca, Sherman sent out a detachment, under General Jefferson C. Davis, which captured **Rome**, where the enemy had foundries, mills, and military stores.

**25.** At **Atlanta**, Johnston was superseded by General John B. Hood, who made (July 20, 22, and 28) three furious assaults upon the Union lines, but was repulsed in each with great loss.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 290, ¶ 9.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 41.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 66.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 276, ¶ 54.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 250, ¶ 26.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of Sherman's march to Atlanta. What severe battles were fought during this march? 24. What is said of Sherman's army and the country through which it passed? Of driving the enemy from Dalton? From Resaca? Of the attempt to turn Allatoona Pass? After the battles at Dallas, where did the enemy make a stand? What is said of the operations about Kenesaw Mountain, and of the next flank march? What can you tell of the capture of Rome? 25. Who superseded Johnston at Atlanta? What of Hood's three assaults upon the Union lines?



William T. Sherman.

Sherman for some time kept up a cannonade night and day upon the city. At length, by throwing his main force **1864.** south, and threatening the rebel communications, he compelled Hood to evacuate Atlanta, which was immediately occupied by the national troops (September 2). There is reason to believe that the loss of the enemy thus far had been more than thirty-five thousand men, while Sherman's was about thirty thousand. During the campaign both armies were reënforced.

**26.** Johnston, too weak to take the offensive, had conducted the retreat from Dalton with masterly skill. But his "retreating policy" was not approved at Richmond, and General Hood, an officer of great reputation for energy and impetuous bravery, was appointed to succeed him. With the change of commanders came a change of policy which cost the rebels dear in their operations before Atlanta. The second battle before this city, July 22, was the severest fought in Georgia, and in it fell one of the bravest and most efficient officers of the Union army, General McPherson,<sup>1</sup> whose command was afterwards given to General Oliver O. Howard.<sup>2</sup> During the **siege of Atlanta**, detachments of cavalry were sent off to cut the railroads, by which the city was supplied. In one of these expeditions General Stoneman<sup>3</sup> and a large force of his troopers were taken prisoners. At length Hood sent his cavalry to operate on Sherman's communications, and posted another part of his army beyond the defences of the city, at Jonesboro', to protect his own. The Federal general quickly took advantage of this mistake, swept with most of his forces westward round Atlanta, and defeated the part of the rebel army at **Jonesboro'**. Hood was now forced to abandon the city.

**27.** After the fall of Atlanta, **Hood**, having been reënforced, began to threaten Sherman's communications with the north. The Federal general pursued him into Northern Alabama, and watched him till it became evident that he intended to move northward. Sherman then sent reënforcements to **General Thomas**,<sup>1</sup> who had already been despatched to guard Tennessee, and leaving him to cope with Hood, returned to Atlanta, breaking up the railroads in his rear to prevent pursuit.<sup>4</sup>

**28.** Hood advanced into Tennessee, and Thomas gradually drew in his forces towards Nashville, where he wished to concentrate his command before coming to a general engagement.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 297, ¶ 24.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 313, ¶ 65.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 283, ¶ 72.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 30.

QUESTIONS.—When and how did Sherman at length get possession of the city? What were the losses on both sides thus far? 26. What is said of Johnston's retreating policy, and the effect of a change of commanders? Of the battle before Atlanta, July 22? What further particulars can you give of operations during the siege, and of the capture of the city? 27. What is said of the movements of Hood after the fall of Atlanta, and of Sherman's pursuit of him? Whom had Sherman sent to Tennessee, and for what purpose? What did Sherman leave Thomas to do, and what did he do himself?

On the last day of November the invaders were repulsed, with heavy loss, in an attack on a strong Federal column under General Schofield,<sup>1</sup> who, to delay their progress, made a stand at *Franklin*.<sup>2</sup> Schofield, at night, fell back to *Nashville*. Soon the Confederates appeared before this city, and prepared to lay siege to it. On the 15th of December, Thomas sallied out and attacked them; and the next day he renewed the battle, and put them to total rout. Hood fled into Alabama with the demoralized fragments of his army.

The opposing forces in this battle numbered about forty thousand on each side. Thomas's loss in the Tennessee campaign was about ten thousand men. Hood's was more than double that number. After the decisive victory before Nashville, Thomas vigorously pursued the enemy for several days, capturing many prisoners.

**29.** During the summer **East Tennessee** and **Kentucky** were kept in constant alarm by bands of guerrillas, who, rushing over from Virginia, would dash upon an isolated post, devastate the adjacent country, and escape before they could be overtaken. In June, the guerrilla chief Morgan,<sup>3</sup> who had escaped from his captivity in Ohio, entered *Kentucky*, and, mounting his followers on stolen horses, made his way to Lexington. Soon, however, General Burbridge broke up his band, which escaped in scattered parties into Virginia. Morgan, too restless to be long idle, again collected a small band, and made a raid into *East Tennessee*, where he was surprised and killed, early in September. General Breckinridge<sup>4</sup> entered *East Tennessee* to act in concert with Hood, in the central part of the state. In December General Stoneman,<sup>5</sup> who had recently been exchanged, chased him back into Virginia. The disaster of Hood before Nashville caused the rebel designs upon Tennessee to be given up, and other reverses gave full occupation elsewhere to all the troops of the Confederacy.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 297, ¶ 24.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 261, ¶ 22.

<sup>2</sup> Eighteen miles south of Nashville.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 278, ¶ 58.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 298, ¶ 26.

**QUESTIONS.**—Give an account of Hood's campaign in Tennessee, including the battles at *Franklin* and *Nashville*.—What further can you say of the victory before *Nashville* and the Tennessee campaign? 29. What can you tell of guerrillas in *East Tennessee* and *Kentucky*? Give an account of Morgan's raid into *Kentucky*. Of his raid into *East Tennessee*. Of Breckinridge's invasion of *East Tennessee*.



George H. Thomas.

**30.** At Atlanta Sherman<sup>1</sup> destroyed all the storehouses and public property, everything that could be of use to an army, and, about the middle of November, abandoned the place, and set out on his famous **march to the sea**.  
**1864.** His way lay through the heart of Georgia. By threatening different points, he skilfully masked his designs, and prevented any considerable gathering of the enemy to obstruct his path. In less than a month he reached the vicinity of Savannah. He carried *Fort McAllister*<sup>2</sup> by assault, December 13, and thus opened communication with the Federal fleet off the coast. On the 21st he entered *Savannah*, its garrison, under the rebel General Hardee,<sup>3</sup> having fled the night before.

**31.** Sherman's army, **on this march**, numbered sixty thousand infantry and fifty-five hundred cavalry. The right wing was led by General Howard;<sup>4</sup> the left, by General Henry W. Slocum. General Kilpatrick<sup>5</sup> commanded the cavalry, which hovered in the front and on the flanks of the army, and met in several encounters squadrons of rebel horsemen. In vain did Beauregard,<sup>6</sup> now commanding in that department, make the most frantic appeals to the Georgians to rise and oppose the march. No serious resistance was offered. Ten thousand negroes joined the army while on the march, and accompanied it to the coast. Hardee destroyed what he could of government property in Savannah, two iron-clads and other vessels in the river, and fled with his army towards Charleston.

Some military **movements in the south-west** were undertaken to coöperate with Sherman. General Canby,<sup>7</sup> at New Orleans, sent out an expedition which threatened Mobile and other places, thus employing the enemy in Southern Mississippi, and preventing their interfering with Sherman. General Grierson<sup>8</sup> set out from Memphis, and made a raid to Vicksburg, thus performing a like service in the northern part of the state.

**32.** In August Admiral Farragut<sup>9</sup> ran his fleet past **Forts Gaines and Morgan**, which guarded the entrance to Mobile Bay, captured, destroyed, or drove away the rebel fleet within, and, with a detachment from General Canby's<sup>7</sup> command, took the forts. These operations closed Mobile to blockade-runners, and prepared the way for its fall the next year.

Even Farragut's previous brilliant exploits were rivalled by his achievements here. Lashing his wooden vessels two abreast, that they might

<sup>1</sup> See p. 298, ¶ 27.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 282, ¶ 69.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 305, ¶¶ 43, 44.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 298, ¶ 26.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 283, ¶ 7.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 293, ¶ 14.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 288, ¶ 4.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 280, ¶ 65.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 281, ¶ 67.

QUESTIONS.—30. Give an account of Sherman's march to the sea. What is said of the capture of Fort McAllister and Savannah? 31. What further particulars can you give of this march?—What can you tell of movements in the south-west to coöperate with Sherman? 32. Give an account of the capture of Forts Gaines and Morgan.—What particulars of this capture can you give?

better protect and assist each other, he boldly steamed up between the forts, attended by the monitors of his fleet, entered the bay, and having disposed of the enemy's gunboats, encountered the great iron ram *Tennessee*. Unable to pierce her sides with shot, the strongest vessels of the Union fleet rushed against her at full speed, and after a fierce combat the *Tennessee* struck her flag. The admiral directed the movements of his fleet from the main-top of the *Hartford*, his flag-ship. Troops had already been landed, under General Gordon Granger, in the rear of Fort Gaines, which surrendered August 7. They were then transferred to the rear of Fort Morgan, which surrendered on the 23d. The enemy lost nearly fifteen hundred prisoners. The Federals lost one iron-clad<sup>1</sup> and a few more than three hundred men.<sup>2</sup>

**33.** General Rosecrans<sup>3</sup> had command of the small Union force left in **Missouri**.<sup>4</sup> This state, during the year, was the scene of another invasion by General Price,<sup>5</sup> who entered it from Arkansas, with some fifteen thousand men, but was driven out with heavy loss. This was the last rebel invasion of Missouri.

On the 27th of September he attacked **Pilot Knob**, forced the garrison to retreat, and then advancing to the **Missouri**, made his way westward by the line of the river. Near the **border of the state** he was encountered and defeated, October 23, by troops from Kansas, under General Curtis,<sup>6</sup> and by a pursuing body of cavalry under General Pleasonton. They now retreated southward. The Federals pursued, and the retreat soon became a disorderly flight. Finally the invaders escaped into Arkansas, having lost artillery, trains, and many prisoners.

**34.** Three English-built **rebel cruisers**<sup>7</sup> were captured in 1864: the *Alabama*, Captain Semmes,<sup>8</sup> June 19, on the coast of France, off Cherbourg, by the *Kearsarge*, Captain John A. Winslow; the *Georgia*, August 15, off Portugal, by the *Niagara*, Commodore Craven; and the *Florida*, October 7, in the port of Bahia, Brazil, by the *Wachusett*, Commander Collins.

The destruction of the **Alabama** caused much rejoicing in the north. She had captured more than sixty American merchantmen, and for nearly two years had eluded pursuit. Soon after the *Alabama* ran into the harbor of Cherbourg, the **Kearsarge** appeared outside. The rebel commander sent Captain Winslow a challenge to fight, and Sunday morning, June 19, moved out to the combat. The neighboring French shore was thronged with people to witness the novel spectacle of a sea-fight between steam-ships.

<sup>1</sup> The *Tecumseh*, destroyed by a torpedo while passing the forts.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 46.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 277, ¶ 55.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 256, ¶ 10.

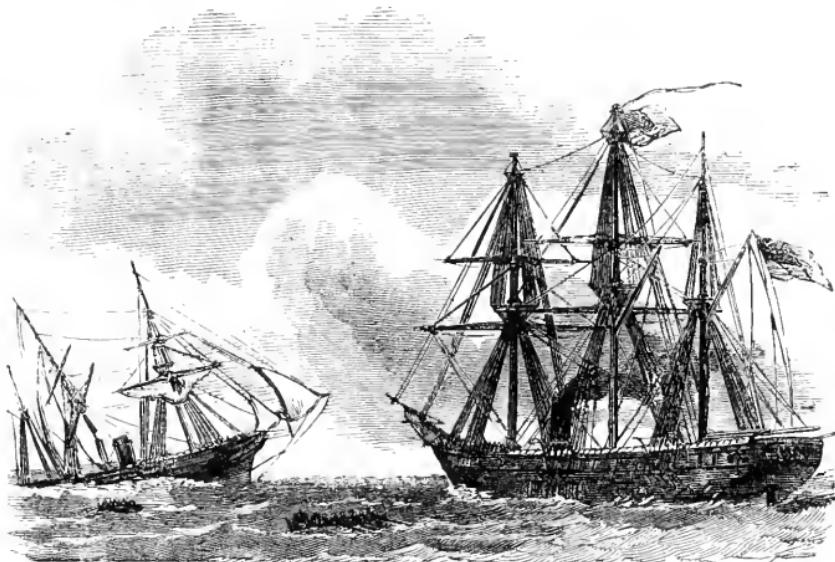
<sup>6</sup> See p. 258, ¶ 15.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 252, ¶ 33.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 278, ¶¶ 59, 60.  
<sup>7</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 77, and p. 286, ¶ 78.

QUESTIONS.—33. Give an account of Price's invasion of Missouri.—What particulars can you give of this invasion? 34. What three rebel cruisers were captured this year?—What particulars can you give of the *Alabama* and her capture?

The Alabama was sunk after an action of about an hour. None were killed on board the Kearsarge, and but one mortally wounded.<sup>1</sup> Several new privateers made their appearance on the ocean this year. One of them, the *Tallahassee*, coasted along the loyal states, and in ten days destroyed more than thirty vessels.<sup>2</sup>



Alabama and Kearsarge.

**35.** Many rebels had sought refuge in Canada, where, aided by sympathizers in the provinces and in the Northern States, they formed various schemes against the government of the United States and the loyal people. One of these plots was to liberate several thousand rebel prisoners confined on **Johnson's Island**, in Lake Erie. Another was to release the eight thousand prisoners held in **Camp Douglas**, Chicago, plunder the city, and make a raid through the Western States. These plots were thwarted by the vigilance of the national authorities. In October a gang of armed men made a raid into the village of **St. Albans**, Vermont, fired upon the defenceless people, wounding some of them, robbed the banks, and then, on stolen horses, made for Canada, where they were sheltered by the authorities. Another scheme, concocted in Canada, was to **burn the chief cities** of the loyal states. In November an attempt was made by rebel emissaries to set fire to some of the principal hotels and theatres in New York. But the fires were extinguished before much damage was done.

<sup>1</sup> An English steam yacht came out of the harbor of Cherbourg at the same time with the Alabama, picked up Captain Semmes and a part of his crew while struggling in the water, and steamed away to England with them.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 310, ¶ 57.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of new privateers? Of the *Tallahassee*? **35.** What is said of schemes formed by rebel refugees in Canada? What plots were formed to liberate rebel prisoners, and how were they thwarted? What can you tell of the raid on St. Albans? Mention another scheme concocted in Canada. Result.

**36.** In the autumn the people of the loyal states pronounced in favor of the policy of the administration, and for the vigorous prosecution of the war, by the reëlection of **Mr. Lincoln**. **Andrew Johnson**,<sup>1</sup> of Tennessee, who, when surrounded by traitors, had been conspicuous for his steadfast adherence to the Union, was elected **vice-president**.<sup>2</sup>

Mr. Lincoln's reëlection crushed the hopes which many of the rebels had cherished that a change in the administration might be effected, and that this would divide the north, and give success to their treason.

**37. Nevada**<sup>3</sup> became a state this year in season to take part in the presidential election. This was the second state, California being the first, formed from the territory gained by the Mexican war.<sup>4</sup>

**38.** The number of **Federal troops** in active service this year was somewhat less than that of 1863, being about six hundred thousand men.<sup>5</sup> The **rebel armies** in the field have been estimated at three hundred and fifty thousand men.

Yet the **contest** was not so unequal as this disparity of numbers would seem to indicate. Each national advance required new communications to be guarded and new posts to be garrisoned, while the rebels, having no conquests to protect, could concentrate their whole strength against the Federal columns actually in motion.

**39. Events of 1865.**—At the beginning of the year the **armies of the Union** were rapidly increasing, and were abundantly supplied. The loyal people were hopeful and confident. The **armies of the Confederacy** were wasting away by desertion, disease, and the casualties of battle. In March, when Grant's pressure began to be intolerable, the Confederate government authorized the arming of slaves; but this measure added nothing to its military strength. The rebel soldiers in the field were scantily fed and clothed, while their families at home were destitute and suffering. The Confederates were fast losing heart in their cause.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 6.

<sup>2</sup> These candidates received the electoral vote of all the loyal states but three—New Jersey, Delaware, and Kentucky.

<sup>3</sup> The mountain range bounding this state on the east is the Sierra Nevada—a Spanish name, signifying *mountains snow-covered*. Hence the name of the state.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 218, ¶ 7.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 311, note 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—36. What was the result of the presidential election this year? How did Mr. Lincoln's reëlection affect the hopes of the rebels? 37. What new state was admitted this year? —What further is said of Nevada? 38. What was the strength of the Federal and the rebel armies this year?—What is said of the inequality of the contest? 39. What is said of the Union armies and the loyal people at the beginning of 1865? Of the armies of the Confederacy? Of rebel soldiers in the field, and their families at home?

**40.** The first military success of the year 1865 was the reduction of **Fort Fisher**, the main defence commanding the approach to Wilmington from the sea. A combined land and naval attack, commanded by General Alfred H. Terry<sup>1</sup> and Admiral Porter,<sup>2</sup> was made upon this fort, January 13, when the fleet opened fire upon the works. The bombardment continued till the 15th, on which day the fort was carried by assault.

After the entrance to Mobile<sup>3</sup> had been closed by Farragut, Wilmington was the only port for blockade-running, and it was of the utmost importance to the rebels to keep it open. An expedition, commanded by General Butler<sup>4</sup> and Admiral Porter, had been sent out against Fort Fisher in December.<sup>5</sup> The fort was bombarded by the fleet, and troops were landed; but General Butler, deeming the works too strong to be carried, withdrew his command, and the attack was given up. Terry was sent, with a larger force, numbering eight thousand men. The garrison of the fort had also been reinforced in the mean time. With the fort Terry took two thousand prisoners. The Union loss was about six hundred and fifty men.

**41.** The next morning **Fort Caswell** and other defences were abandoned and blown up by the enemy, who thus surrendered the entire control of the mouth of Cape Fear River. Terry was now joined by General Schofield,<sup>6</sup> who had recently been put in command in North Carolina. He brought with him a body of troops from General Thomas's victorious army in Tennessee. The united forces took **Wilmington** on the 22d of February.

**42.** General Sherman<sup>7</sup> waited in Savannah more than a month to rest and refit his army; but the 1st of February found him again moving northward on his march to Goldsboro'. Driving before him, with little loss to himself, the small bodies of the enemy which obstructed his way, on the 17th he entered *Columbia*, the capital of South Carolina, and thence pushed forward towards Fayetteville, on Cape Fear River.

At **Savannah** Sherman had arranged for the government of the city, and assigned to the negroes who had followed his army, and to other

<sup>1</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 44.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 288, ¶ 4.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 32.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 292, ¶ 14, and p. 291, ¶ 10.

<sup>5</sup> Operations at that time were begun by towing a vessel filled with powder near the walls of the fort and exploding it. It was hoped by this means to injure the fort or paralyze its defenders, but the explosion produced no effect.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 293, ¶ 28.

<sup>7</sup> See pp. 296, ¶ 23—300, ¶ 31.

**QUESTIONS.**—40. Give an account of the capture of Fort Fisher.—What is said of Wilmington? Of a former attempt to capture Fort Fisher? What further of Terry's successful expedition? 41. What of Fort Caswell and other defences of Wilmington? By whom was Terry now joined? What capture did their united forces effect? 42. When did General Sherman resume his march, and towards what place? What is said of his march northward, and his occupation of Columbia?—What had Sherman done at Savannah?

freedmen, the abandoned Sea Islands and rice fields on the coast of South Carolina and Georgia. On his march he kept the rebel forces divided. Threatening Charleston, he held Hardee<sup>1</sup> there to defend it. Threatening Augusta, he detained another rebel force there. Avoiding both these places, he had but little trouble in clearing his way of such detachments as Beauregard<sup>2</sup> could collect in his front. The cavalry, under Kilpatrick,<sup>3</sup> guarded the army as on the march from Atlanta. When the Federal troops approached Columbia, the Confederates fled, leaving bales of cotton burning in the streets. The flames communicated to the buildings, and the whole city would have been destroyed but for the Union troops.

**43.** The movements of Sherman in South Carolina compelled Hardee<sup>1</sup> to evacuate Charleston on the very day when Columbia was taken (February 17); and that city, with its harbor defences, Fort Sumter<sup>3</sup> included, was occupied by Gillmore.<sup>4</sup>

Thus this famous city, the cradle of the rebellion, after having withstood so long a siege,<sup>5</sup> which had destroyed a large part of it, fell by the operations of an army many miles in its rear. Hardee, on evacuating Charleston, destroyed gunboats, rice, and many thousand bales of cotton, and left the city on fire. The flames spread ruin far and wide before they could be arrested by the Union troops.

**44.** Sherman had only scattered bands of the enemy to contend with till he reached Fayetteville. Then, however, General Johnston,<sup>6</sup> who had been restored to command, began to concentrate troops to oppose his march. But Sherman, after crossing Cape Fear River, fought and beat a large force of the enemy near Averysboro', and at Bentonsville, Johnston's whole army, which retreated towards Raleigh. The Union general entered Goldsboro' March 23, where a junction was formed with Terry,<sup>7</sup> from Wilmington, and Schofield,<sup>8</sup> from Newbern, the latter having vanquished a rebel force on his way.

At Averysboro', March 16, General Hardee,<sup>1</sup> with some twenty thousand men, attempted in vain to hold the Federal advance in check until Johnston could get his troops well in hand for a more effectual resistance. That night the rebels fled. At Bentonsville, three days afterwards,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 30.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 31.

<sup>3</sup> To commemorate the restoration of Fort Sumter to the national authority, the president directed General Anderson, on the anniversary of its evacuation, April 14 (see p. 240, ¶ 2), to raise on its battlements the same flag which he had lowered four years before.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 289, ¶ 6.

<sup>5</sup> The actual siege began July 10, 1863, when General Gillmore landed troops on Morris Island. The city had been under fire eighteen months.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 297, ¶ 23.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 40.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 41.

QUESTIONS.—What further particulars can you give of Sherman's march? 43. What resulted from the movements of Sherman in South Carolina?—What further is said of Charleston, and its evacuation by the rebels? 44. Whom did Sherman find to oppose him after crossing Cape Fear River? What is said of the battles of Averysboro' and Bentonsville? When did Sherman enter Goldsboro', and with whom was a junction there effected?—What more can you tell of the battle of Averysboro'? Of Bentonsville?

**Johnston**, with his whole command of forty thousand men, attacked one wing of the Federal army, and gained some temporary advantage; **1865.** but the next day, the rest of the army having come up, the assailants were routed. The march from Savannah cost the Union army about three thousand men. The enemy's loss was greater.

**45.** Sherman now gave his weary troops a season of rest. By his **march from Savannah** he had compelled the Confederates to abandon the sea-coast from Savannah to Newbern, and had cut a wide swath of desolation through the Carolinas. His army was now in a position to coöperate with the troops before Richmond and Petersburg.

**Since setting out for Atlanta** in May, 1864, Sherman had marched more than eight hundred miles, "beaten Johnston, out-maneuvred Hood, outwitted Beauregard, and scared away Hardee and Hampton," had captured almost every town and city along his route, had broken up railways and bridges, destroyed foundries, mills, workshops, and storehouses, had lived upon the country through which he passed, and swept a track forty miles wide of provision for man or beast.<sup>1</sup>

**46.** After the capture of the forts at the entrance of Mobile Bay,<sup>2</sup> active operations against **Mobile** were suspended for some time. In March they were resumed by General Canby<sup>3</sup> and Admiral Thatcher, and after a month its strong defences, held by General Taylor,<sup>4</sup> were taken. On the 12th of April the Union army entered the city, ignorant that the rebellion had received its death-blow, three days before, by the surrender of Lee.<sup>4</sup>

**47.** While these events were in progress, two important **cavalry expeditions** were sent off by General Thomas.<sup>5</sup> One, under General James H. Wilson, made its way into Central Alabama to operate against the rebel cavalry under General Forrest,<sup>6</sup> and to prevent the enemy from sending assistance to Johnston in the Carolinas, or to Taylor at Mobile. The other, under General Stoneman,<sup>7</sup> swept through South-western Virginia to Salisbury in North Carolina, destroying the railroads and bridges by which Lee and Johnston, if defeated, might attempt to retreat.

**48.** Meanwhile **Grant**<sup>8</sup> had ordered **Sheridan**<sup>9</sup> to move from his winter-quarters at Winchester, and make a raid on the enemy's communications. This gallant officer, leaving his camp with ten thousand cavalry, after a rapid march reached **Waynesboro'**, where (March 2) he fell upon Early,<sup>10</sup> who, with

<sup>1</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 56.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 307, ¶ 50.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 290, ¶ 8—296, ¶ 22.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 32.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 298, ¶ 27.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 287, ¶ 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 288, ¶ 4.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 299, ¶ 29.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 294, ¶ 18.

QUESTIONS.—45. What more is said of Sherman's march from Savannah? What is said of Sherman's march since setting out for Atlanta? 46. Give an account of the capture of Mobile. 47. What of two cavalry expeditions sent off by General Thomas? 48. Meanwhile what orders had Grant given to Sheridan? Give an account of the action at Waynesboro'.

twenty-five hundred cavalry, was guarding the passes of the Blue Ridge, captured more than two thirds of his force, pushed on to the James, west of Richmond, then swept round north of that city to White House, cutting the canal and railroads by which the rebel capital received most of its supplies, thence crossed the James, and (March 27), one month after he left Winchester, took position near Hatcher's Run, at the left of the Union army before Petersburg.

During the winter the **besieging army** about Petersburg and Richmond remained comparatively quiet behind its lines of investment; but a severe action occurred in February near *Hatcher's Run*, to which stream the lines of the besiegers were then permanently extended. The Union loss was about two thousand, being double that of the enemy.

**49. Lee**<sup>1</sup> was not slow to perceive to what Grant's combinations were tending. South of him was Sherman, west Thomas, with Stoneman's cavalry.<sup>2</sup> North there was no hope for him, and in his front stood Grant, ready to crush him in the embrace of death. The rebel chief made a desperate attempt to break the Union lines, by an attack upon *Fort Steadman*, before Petersburg, on the 25th of March. He was at first successful, and carried the fort by assault, but was quickly driven back to his intrenchments, with great loss.

**50.** Grant had now perfected the arrangements for a **final campaign**, which resulted in the capture of Lee's army. His advance began March 29. Within twelve days the right wing of the Confederates sustained a crushing defeat at *Five Forks*; their defences were assaulted and carried; Jefferson Davis<sup>3</sup> and the principal officers of his government were fugitives; *Richmond* and *Petersburg* were occupied by Union troops, and Lee's retreating army, pursued, overtaken, and surrounded, was compelled to surrender (April 9) near *Appomattox Court House*.

**51.** These movements began by pushing the Union left across Hatcher's Run. To meet this, Lee took all the men he could spare from his intrenchments, and massed them on his right near **Five Forks**. This resulted in a severe battle, in which the Union left, under Sheridan, gained a complete victory over the Confederate right (April 1), taking their artillery and more than five thousand prisoners. No sooner had the sound of the battle at

<sup>1</sup> See p. 290, ¶ 9.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 47.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 228, ¶ 11.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of Sheridan's movements after the battle of Waynesboro? —What is said of the besieging army during the winter? What of the action in February near Hatcher's Run? 49. What is said of Lee and his situation? What attempt did he make, and with what result? 50. For what was Grant now ready? When did he begin his advance? Within twelve days what took place? 51. Give an account of the action near Five Forks.

Five Forks died away than a terrific cannonade was opened along the whole Union front upon the rebel works, and early the next **1865**. morning an **assault** was made **along the line** from the Appomattox to Hatcher's Run. The Confederates were driven to their inner intrenchments, with the loss of many prisoners. Lee now notified the authorities in Richmond that he could no longer protect the Confederate capital, and they made good their escape. During that day and night **Richmond** and **Petersburg** were evacuated, and the next morning (April 3) were occupied by Federal troops.<sup>1</sup> As had been the case with Charleston and Columbia, Richmond was found in flames. The retreating enemy had blown up the magazines and gunboats, and set fire to some large warehouses full of tobacco. The flames spread, and before they could be arrested had consumed nearly all the business portion of the city.

**52. Lee**, hoping to join Johnston<sup>2</sup> in North Carolina, now crossed the Appomattox and **moved westward**; but Grant had anticipated his design, and Sheridan,<sup>3</sup> after a hot pursuit, pierced his line of retreat (April 6) near **Deatonsville**, where, after a spirited action, the rebel General Ewell and his whole corps were captured. Lee's retreat now became a rout. The flying foe strewed their way with guns, wagons, and all the equipage of war. Their provisions had given out, and men and horses dropped on the road from exhaustion. Many of the rebel troops threw away their arms and dispersed to their homes. Still the Confederate commander urged on his retreat. Grant's<sup>3</sup> pursuing columns harassed him unceasingly. At length, on the morning of the 9th, Lee<sup>4</sup> found himself completely hemmed in, near **Appomattox Court House**. Escape was impossible, and he surrendered what was left of his army — about twenty-seven thousand men.

**53.** As tidings of the capture of Richmond, and, later, of the surrender of Lee's army, spread through the north, the **joy in the loyal states** knew no bounds. Their streets, and hills, and valleys, echoed with shouts, ringing of bells, and roar of cannon. The end hoped for, fought for, prayed for, through four long years of terrible war, was now in view.

**54.** In the midst of these universal rejoicings the telegraph flashed over the country the appalling intelligence that **President Lincoln** had been **assassinated**. He was shot on the evening of April 14, and died the next morning.

The excitement in the loyal states was intense. A mingled feeling of horror, indignation, and grief pervaded the community. Houses and stores

<sup>1</sup> The next day President Lincoln held a public reception in the parlor of Jefferson Davis.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 44.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 48.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 307, ¶ 49.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the general assault that followed. Result. What further is said of Richmond and Petersburg? 52. What is said of Lee's next movements, and the action near Deatonsville? Of the further retreat of the rebels, and the pursuit? Of the surrender? 53. Effect in the loyal states of tidings of these victories? 54. How were these rejoicings interrupted?—What is said of the feeling excited in the loyal states by the appalling intelligence?

were hung with black, and flags were draped in mourning. The murderer was John Wilkes Booth, the head of a band of conspirators, who, hoping to help the rebel cause, had plotted to kill the chief officers of the government; but the president and the secretary of state, Mr. Seward, at that time confined to his house by illness, were the only persons actually attacked. Booth stole up behind the president, who was sitting in a theatre, shot him in the head, and escaped. Almost at the same time another conspirator made his way into the sick room of Mr. Seward, and after inflicting dangerous but not mortal wounds on him and his son, fled. Active search was immediately set on foot for the assassins and their accomplices. Booth was found hid in a barn, and refusing to give himself up, was shot. Eight other conspirators were arrested, and, after trial, four were hanged and the rest imprisoned.

55. A few hours after President Lincoln's death, the vice-president, **Andrew Johnson**,<sup>1</sup> took the oath of office, and became **President** of the United States.

56. The rest of the story of the war is soon told. The decisive victory in Virginia left the rebellion without hope. Sherman<sup>2</sup> occupied Raleigh April 13, and on the 26th received the surrender of **Johnston's**<sup>3</sup> army of thirty-one thousand men. On the 8th of May General Taylor<sup>4</sup> surrendered the other rebel forces east of the Mississippi to General Canby,<sup>4</sup> who, on the 26th, also received the surrender of the forces west of that river from General E. Kirby Smith.<sup>5</sup> Regular armed resistance to the national authority was now at an end on the land, and the announcement that **guerrillas** found in arms against the government would be treated as outlaws, caused the speedy disbanding of these organizations.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 303, ¶ 36.  
<sup>4</sup> See p. 306, ¶ 46.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 304, ¶ 42.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 305, ¶ 44.  
<sup>5</sup> See p. 257, ¶ 11.

QUESTIONS.—What can you tell of the conspiracy to kill the chief officers of the government? What more of the assassination of the president? What of the assault upon Secretary Seward? Fate of Booth and some of his accomplices? 55. Who succeeded to the presidency? 56. What had left the rebellion without hope? What is said of the surrender of Johnston's army? Of the other forces east of the Mississippi? Of the forces west of that river? Of guerrillas?



Andrew Johnson.

**57.** All the vessels in the **rebel navy**<sup>1</sup> were soon surrendered, except the *Shenandoah*, whose commander, Captain Waddell, refused to credit the news of the fall of the Confederacy, and continued for some **1865.** months a destructive cruise among the American whalers in the North Pacific. At length he sailed to England, and gave up his vessel to the British authorities, by whom it was transferred to the United States.

**58.** When **Jefferson Davis**<sup>2</sup> fled from Richmond, he hurried southward. Near Irwinville, Georgia, the fugitive was surprised in his tent, and, attempting to escape, disguised in a cloak and shawl, was captured, May 11. He was conveyed to Fortress Monroe, a prisoner, to await his trial for treason. This was the end of the Southern Confederacy.

**59.** Thus closed **this wicked war**. Forced upon the government by the restless ambition of designing men, the loyal people engaged in it in defence of the Union and the Constitution, and to avert the greater calamity of continuous strife between petty states. Begun by some of the slave states in jealousy of the growing political power of the free states, it has left the north rich and strong, and reduced the south to poverty;<sup>3</sup> begun to divide the Union, it has bound the states indissolubly together by the strong arm of the national authority; begun to perpetuate the system of human bondage, it has struck the chains from every American slave.

**60.** The government now began rapidly to adapt itself to a **state of peace**. Steps were at once taken to remove the blockade, and to reduce the army and navy.

At the close of the war there were in the **army**<sup>4</sup> over a million of men, and in the **navy** over fifty thousand. Within a few months, more than four fifths of these forces had been discharged. Scarcely less wonderful than the alacrity with which peaceful citizens rushed to arms in the time of their country's peril<sup>5</sup> were the ease and rapidity with which this immense number of men resumed the vocations of civil life.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 301, ¶ 34.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 307, ¶ 50.

<sup>3</sup> Notwithstanding the great destruction of life occasioned by the war, the loyal states threw a vote for president, in 1864, larger by more than 140,000 than the vote thrown by the same states for president in 1860. A southern historian [Pollard] says that the war "closed on a spectacle of ruin the greatest of modern times. There were eleven great states lying prostrate; their capital all absorbed; their fields desolate; their towns and cities ruined; their public works torn to pieces by armies; their system of labor overturned; the fruits of the toil of generations all swept into a chaos of destruction." In illustration of the poverty of the south, produced by the war, the same historian cites the case of South Carolina. By the census of 1860 the property of this state, including slaves, was valued at \$400,000,000. The war swept away three fourths of this, and what was left consisted chiefly of lands which had fallen immensely in value.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 311, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 241, ¶¶ 3, 4. "After the disasters on the Peninsula in 1862, over eighty thousand troops were enlisted, organized, armed, equipped, and sent to the field in less than a month. Sixty thousand troops have repeatedly gone to the field within four weeks. Ninety thousand infantry

QUESTIONS.—**57.** What is said of the rebel navy? Of the *Shenandoah*? **58.** What of Jefferson Davis's flight and capture? **59.** For what purpose had the loyal people engaged in this war? What is said of the cause of the war, and the result? **60.** To what did the government now begin to adapt itself? What steps were at once taken?—What is said of the number of men in the army and the navy at the close of the war? What of the reduction of these forces?

**61. The cost of the war**, in life and treasure, was immense. Probably three millions of men were, for a longer or shorter time, drawn from their ordinary occupations to recruit the armies of both sections.<sup>1</sup> On the Union side not less than three hundred thousand men were either killed in battle, or died of wounds received or of diseases contracted in the service. If, as is probable, the mortality among the rebels was as great, six hundred thousand men perished by this unhappy war. It may be presumed that four hundred thousand more were

were sent to the army from the five states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Iowa, and Wisconsin within twenty days." — *Report of the Secretary of War*.

<sup>1</sup> The following tables of the Union forces are compiled from the Report of the Provost-Marshal General, of March 17, 1866:—

NUMBER OF MEN FURNISHED BY EACH STATE AND TERRITORY, FROM APRIL 15, 1861, TO JUNE 30, 1865.

States and Territories.	Men furnished.	Paid commutation.
Maine, . . . . .	69,738	2,007
New Hampshire, . . . . .	33,313	692
Vermont, . . . . .	33,272	1,974
Massachusetts, . . . . .	146,467	5,318
Rhode Island, . . . . .	23,248	463
Connecticut, . . . . .	55,755	1,515
New York, . . . . .	445,359	18,197
New Jersey, . . . . .	75,315	4,196
Pennsylvania, . . . . .	338,155	28,171
Delaware, . . . . .	12,265	1,386
Maryland, . . . . .	46,053	3,678
West Virginia, . . . . .	32,003	
District of Columbia, . . . . .	16,534	338
Ohio, . . . . .	310,654	6,479
Indiana, . . . . .	194,363	784
Illinois, . . . . .	258,162	55
Michigan, . . . . .	88,111	2,008
Wisconsin, . . . . .	91,021	5,097
Minnesota, . . . . .	21,002	1,032
Iowa, . . . . .	75,793	67
Missouri, . . . . .	108,773	
Kentucky, . . . . .	75,275	3,265
Kansas, . . . . .	20,095	2
Tennessee, . . . . .	31,092	
Arkansas, . . . . .	8,289	
North Carolina, . . . . .	3,156	
California, . . . . .	15,725	
Nevada, . . . . .	1,080	
Oregon, . . . . .	1,810	
Washington Territory, . . . . .	964	
Nebraska Territory, . . . . .	3,157	
Colorado Territory, . . . . .	4,903	
Dakota Territory, . . . . .	206	
New Mexico Territory, . . . . .	6,561	
Alabama, . . . . .	2,576	
Florida, . . . . .	1,290	
Louisiana, . . . . .	5,224	
Mississippi, . . . . .	545	
Texas, . . . . .	1,965	
Indian Nations, . . . . .	3,530	
<b>Totals, . . . . .</b>	<b>2,666,999</b>	<b>86,724</b>

NUMBER OF MEN CALLED FOR, PERIODS OF SERVICE, AND NUMBER OF MEN OBTAINED, UNDER EACH CALL, TO JUNE 30, 1865.

Date of Call.	Number called for.	Periods of service.	Number obtained.
April 15, 1861, . . .	75,000	3 mos.	93,326
May 3, 1861, . . .	82,748	3 yrs.	714,231
July 22 & 25, 1861, . .	500,000		
May & June, 1862, . .	300,000	3 mos.	15,007
July 2, 1862, . . .	300,000	3 yrs.	431,958
August 4, 1862, . . .	300,000	9 mos.	87,588
June 15, 1863, . . .	100,000	6 mos.	16,361
October 17, 1863, . .	300,000	3 yrs.	374,807
February 1, 1864, . .	200,000	3 yrs.	284,021
March 14, 1864, . . .	200,000	100 days.	83,652
April 23, 1864, . . .	85,000	1, 2, 3 yrs	284,882
July 18, 1864, . . .	500,000	1, 2, 3 yrs	204,568
December 19, 1864, . .	300,000	1, 2, 3 yrs	
<b>Totals, . . . . .</b>	<b>2,942,748</b>		<b>2,690,401</b>

The calls of October 17, 1863, and February 1, 1864, were combined, and the product of the draft of July, 1863, was credited thereon.

In addition to the above number, 63,322 men were obtained, chiefly from the territories and the rebellious states, under different calls, and for various periods of service.

The whole number of men obtained by draft was 168,649. The whole number of colored troops obtained was 186,097.

STRENGTH OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY, AT VARIOUS DATES.

Date.	Present.	Absent.	Total.
January 1, 1861, . . .	14,663	1,704	16,367
July 1, 1861, . . .	183,588	3,163	186,751
January 1, 1862, . . .	527,204	48,713	575,917
January 1, 1863, . . .	698,802	219,389	918,191
January 1, 1864, . . .	611,250	249,487	860,737
January 1, 1865, . . .	620,924	338,536	959,460
May 1, 1865, . . .	797,807	202,709	1,000,516

QUESTIONS.—61. What is said of the cost of the war? Of the number engaged in the armies of both sections? Of the number that perished on both sides? Of the number crippled or disabled for life?

crippled or disabled for life. Near the close of the war, its **1865.** cost to the loyal people, in money, reached the immense amount of three and a half millions a day.<sup>1</sup> When the struggle ended, the nation was encumbered with a debt of near three thousand millions of dollars.<sup>2</sup>

If to this we add the sums expended by the insurgents, the war expenses of states, counties, and towns, of benevolent organizations and individuals, the loss from withdrawing so many men from the pursuits of productive industry, and the property destroyed by the armies and navies, the pecuniary cost of the war will be found to far exceed twice the amount of the debt.<sup>3</sup>

**62.** The national credit was well sustained. The vast expenses of the war were met by the government with promptitude, and supported by the loyal people with cheerfulness. In addition to the customary sources of revenue, recourse was had to *loans* of various forms, which were readily taken up by the people,<sup>4</sup> and to *direct taxation*.

By the first day of January, 1862, the banks had suspended specie payment. Congress authorized the secretary of the treasury to make large issues of *United States notes*, afterwards known as *Greenbacks*, which were made legal tender, and soon became the principal **circulating medium** of the country. Silver and gold commanded a premium, and before long ceased to be in general use.<sup>5</sup> Postage stamps, and in some localities omnibus tickets, ferry tickets, bankers' and traders' checks, came into circulation and passed current as small change, till at length Congress authorized the issue of paper money of denominations less than a dollar, called *fractional currency*. During the war **national banks** were established, and their notes, known as *national currency*, secured by government bonds, supplanted other bank paper as a circulating medium.

**63.** The rebel finances were by no means in so flourishing a condition. **Confederate credit** soon began to depreciate, and

<sup>1</sup> The expenditures of the government for the year ending July 1, 1862, the first entire fiscal year of the war, were about \$475,000,000, or more than \$1,300,000 per day; for the year ending July 1, 1865, they were about \$1,290,000,000, or more than \$3,500,000 per day. The expenditures of the government during the last year of the war were more than the whole expenditures of the government from the inauguration of Washington to the inauguration of Buchanan!

<sup>2</sup> January 1, 1866, the national debt was \$2,749,491,745.

<sup>3</sup> This estimate does not include the value of emancipated slaves.

<sup>4</sup> At times during the war, and after its close, the securities of the United States were much sought for and freely purchased abroad, but not till the people at home had, by subscribing for them, testified their confidence in them and given them value.

<sup>5</sup> At one time (July, 1864) the depreciation of the paper currency was so great that two dollars and ninety cents, in paper, would buy only one dollar in gold.

**QUESTIONS.** — What was the daily cost of the war near its close? The debt, when the struggle ended? — What further is said of the pecuniary cost of the war? 62. What is said of the national credit? How were the expenses of the war met by the government and supported by the people? To what was recourse had? — What is said of the banks? What soon became the principal circulating medium? What of silver and gold? What of fractional currency, and other substitutes for small change? What of national banks? 63. What is said of the rebel finances? Of Confederate credit?

cotton, the great staple on which the rebels depended to meet their obligations abroad, was kept at home by the Federal blockade. When in Washington it took a dollar and a half in United States notes to buy a dollar in gold, it took ten dollars, in Richmond, in the notes issued by the Confederacy, to buy the same. Before the collapse of the rebellion, Confederate notes had become almost worthless.

64. In the third year of the war, loud complaints began to be made in the north of the treatment of **Union prisoners** in the hands of the rebels. These unfortunate captives were crowded into filthy and unwholesome rooms, as at Libby Prison, in Richmond; or in shelterless prison-pens, as at Andersonville, Georgia. The last became especially notorious throughout the north, on account of the number of prisoners held there, and their deplorable condition. The food given them was insufficient in quantity and loathsome in quality. In a region of forests, they were mainly unprovided with shelter or fuel to protect themselves from the vicissitudes of the weather. Thousands perished who would have lived had they received the treatment which humanity accords to prisoners of war.

65. It is a relief to turn from these cruelties and notice the **charitable organizations** which the war called forth, and the **liberal contributions** which, while the nation was bearing this heavy burden, were made to relieve human suffering and to promote human advancement. Among the former are the *Sanitary Commission* and the *Christian Commission*, private philanthropic associations in the loyal states, whose expenditures amounted to many millions, and whose agents were found in every Union camp and hospital and on every battle-field, supplying to both the Federal and Confederate sick the care, comforts, and delicacies which the government could not furnish, and administering Christian instruction and consolation to all who would accept them. To these must be added the *Union Commission*, which successfully labored to succor the people of the regions desolated by the war, and the *Freedmen's Aid Societies*, which were active and efficient in affording aid and instruction to the freedmen. The better to attend to this class, as well as to destitute whites at the south, the government, at the close of the war, established a *Freedmen's Bureau*, and placed it under the charge of General Howard.<sup>1</sup> Contributions to all established charities, and to religious and literary institutions, were, during the war, more liberal than ever before; and a ship-load of provisions was, during the same period, sent to the starving operatives of England.

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 300, ¶ 31.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Confederate notes? 64. What can you tell of the treatment of Union prisoners? 65. What is said of charitable organizations and contributions? Of the Sanitary and the Christian Commissions? Of the Union Commission and the Freedmen's Aid Societies? For what purpose was the Freedmen's Bureau established, and under whose charge was it placed? What further is said of contributions?

**IV. FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR TO THE CLOSE OF THE PERIOD.—PEACE.—RECONSTRUCTION.—**1. The war being over, the government addressed itself to the work of **1865.** reconstruction. Before the end of May President Johnson issued a *Proclamation of Amnesty* to all rebels who would take an oath to support the government, except to certain specified classes, and permitting and encouraging even these to apply for pardon.

2. In Virginia a loyal government had continued throughout the rebellion; but, after the separation of West Virginia,<sup>1</sup> its authority extended only over the small part of the state occupied by the Federal armies. In Tennessee a loyal government had been established, supplanting that instituted by Andrew Johnson, as military governor.<sup>2</sup> In Louisiana and Arkansas loyal governments had been organized, under a proclamation of amnesty issued by President Lincoln in 1863. These governments were recognized by President Johnson as proper governments for these four states. For the other rebellious states the president appointed provisional governors, empowered to call conventions for the purpose of establishing loyal governments. These states were required to rescind their ordinances of secession,<sup>3</sup> declare void all debts contracted in support of the rebellion, and vote to adopt an amendment to the Constitution, proposed by Congress, abolishing slavery.<sup>4</sup> These requirements were complied with.

3. When Congress met in December, it became apparent that an unhappy difference existed between the majority of that body and the president in respect to the restoration of the rebel states to their former political rights. The president claimed that these states, by accepting the conditions he had proposed, had manifested a desire to return to their allegiance, and were entitled at once to representation in Congress, and to all their former rights in the Union. Congress maintained that

<sup>1</sup> See p. 285, ¶ 76.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 255, ¶ 6.

<sup>3</sup> South Carolina and Georgia declared the secession ordinance "repealed;" Florida, "annulled;" Alabama, Mississippi, and Texas, "null and void;" North Carolina, that it "is now, and at all times hath been, null and void."

<sup>4</sup> See Appendix, p. 17, Art. XIII., Amendments Const. U. S.

QUESTIONS.—1. To what did the government now address itself? What proclamation did the president issue? 2. What of loyal government in Virginia? In Tennessee? In Louisiana and Arkansas? How were these governments recognized by the president? What steps were taken to establish loyal governments in the other rebellious states? 3. What became apparent on the meeting of Congress? What did the president claim? What did Congress maintain?

they should not be fully restored until suitable protection had been secured to the freedmen, and proper precaution had been taken against admitting rebels to a participation in the government. During the session an amendment to the Constitution was proposed to the legislatures of the states, by which Congress hoped to secure these objects.<sup>1</sup> Before the close of the session Tennessee ratified this amendment, and senators and representatives from that state were admitted to seats in the national legislature.

4. With characteristic industry, energy, and zeal the **American people** now set about effacing the stains of the conflict. At the south, labor began rapidly to adapt itself to its new condition, and a considerable immigration from the free states aided to repair the ruin of war. A striking evidence of the immense resources of the nation may be found in the fact that even before all the extra troops called into service had been disbanded, the national debt had been diminished (July 1, 1866) more than thirty-one millions of dollars.

5. For some years there had existed a secret organization of Irishmen known as the **Fenian Brotherhood**, having for its object the overthrow of British power in Ireland. In May, 1866, large numbers of the Brotherhood in the United States collected on the northern frontier to attempt an *invasion of Canada*. A considerable body crossed over into Canada from Buffalo, June 1, but were driven back after some skirmishing with the Canadian troops. Some days later another body of Fenians crossed over from St. Albans, Vermont, and met with the same fate. A proclamation was issued by the president, denouncing the enterprise; and this, with the activity of General Meade,<sup>2</sup> commanding the national forces on the border, put a stop to this attempt against a power with which the United States were at peace, and at the same time gave Great Britain a much-needed lesson in international justice, courtesy, and good faith.

6. The year 1866 witnessed the establishment of telegraphic communication between Europe and America, by means of the **Atlantic cable**.<sup>3</sup> The two continents are chiefly indebted for the successful completion of this great undertaking to

<sup>1</sup> This amendment embraces the following principles: 1. Equal civil rights shall be guaranteed to all, without regard to race or color; 2. Representation in each state shall be in proportion to the number of voters; 3. No man who broke his civil oath to engage in rebellion shall hold office or vote for president till permitted by special act of Congress; 4. The national debt, including bounties and pensions to soldiers, shall be held inviolable; 5. The rebel debt shall be held illegal and void; 6. No compensation shall be allowed for emancipated slaves.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 291, ¶ 10.

<sup>3</sup> The main cable is eighteen hundred and sixty-six miles in length, extending from Valentia, Ireland, to Heart's Content, Newfoundland, from which points, by shorter lines, it extends to the continent of America and to Great Britain and the continent of Europe.

QUESTIONS.—What was proposed during the session, and for what purpose? What is said of Tennessee? 4. What did the American people now set about? What is said of labor at the south? Of immigration? What evidence can you give of the immense resources of the nation? 5. What is said of the Fenians, and their attempt invasion of Canada? What was the action of the United States government? 6. What is said of the Atlantic cable?

Cyrus W. Field,<sup>1</sup> of New York, who, after many failures and discouragements, announced the successful accomplishment of the work, July 29. Congratulatory despatches were forthwith exchanged between the Queen of England and the President of the United States.

7. The elections in the loyal states this year sustained, by a large majority, Congress in the questions at issue between that body and the president on the policy of reconstruction.

8. Before the close of the next session of Congress—the last of the thirty-ninth—a bankrupt law was enacted, which established a uniform system of bankruptcy throughout the United States. A reconstruction bill was passed over the president's veto.<sup>2</sup> This bill declared the governments existing in the rebel states, not yet represented in Congress, to be provisional, merely; prescribed the conditions on which these states could be restored to their former privileges in the Union, and placed them under the military authority of the nation until such restoration should be effected.

9. Nebraska<sup>3</sup> was admitted during this session of Congress, making the number of states of the Union thirty-seven.

Nebraska is formed from a part of the territory of the same name organized under the famous Kansas-Nebraska act of 1854.<sup>4</sup> It is the seventh state, in the great basin of the Mississippi, admitted from the Louisiana purchase.<sup>5</sup>

Here, for the present, this history closes. Its course, from the beginning, shows the protecting care of God over the American nation, and gives confidence that under His guidance a people who, during the late momentous years of their history, have evinced such patriotic energy, wise forecast, determination in disaster, and moderation in success, will continue to maintain the high resolve, that “the government of the people, by the people, and for the people, shall not perish from the earth.”

<sup>1</sup> For thirteen years Mr. Field had devoted himself to this undertaking with singular ability, industry, energy, and singleness of purpose. In 1858 he succeeded in having a cable laid across the Atlantic, but after a little time communications were interrupted and not again resumed. In 1861 another cable was prepared, but, while in process of being laid, parted in mid-ocean and the work was given up for that year.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix, p. 10, ¶ 2, Sec. VII., Art. I, Const. U. S.

<sup>3</sup> An Indian word, which is said to signify *water valley*.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 222, ¶ 3.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 166, ¶ 3, and note 5.

QUESTIONS.—7. What of the elections in the loyal states? 8. What laws are named as passed during the last session of the Thirty-ninth Congress? What are the provisions of the reconstruction bill? 9. What state was admitted during this session of Congress?—What further is said of Nebraska?—What has the course of this history shown? What confidence does it give?

## CHRONOLOGICAL REVIEW.

[The figures in and at the end of the paragraphs in the Chronological Review refer to the pages upon which the events are mentioned.]

## 1861—1867.

**Lincoln** became president in 1861, 239. He entered upon a second term in 1865, but, April 14, was assassinated, 308, and Vice-President **Johnson** succeeded to the presidency, 309.

During these administrations the most formidable rebellion known to history was subdued, and slavery in the United States was abolished by an amendment of the Constitution.

**1861.** The rebels began the war by an attack upon *Fort Sumter*, which was evacuated April 14. The president called for troops, and summoned Congress to meet in extra session, 240. Jefferson Davis issued letters of marque and reprisal, and President Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of the rebel ports, 242. Four more slave states joined the Confederacy, 241.

The Federals, in Virginia, were disastrously defeated at *Bull Run* (July 21), 243, and in the autumn at *Ball's Bluff*, but were victorious at *Dranesville*, 246. In West Virginia, General McClellan, in July, gained victories over the rebels at *Rich Mountain* and *Carrick's Ford*, and before the end of the year that region was nearly cleared of armed rebels, 247.

In Kentucky, the rebels, in September, took possession of Hickman and Columbus, and the Union troops, under General Grant, occupied Padueah, 250.

West of the Mississippi, General Lyon captured the rebel troops at *Camp Jackson* in May, 248, but fell back from the hard-fought battle of *Wilson's Creek* (August 10), 249.

On the Atlantic coast the Federals captured the rebel works at *Hatteras Inlet* (August 29), at *Port Royal Entrance* (November 7), and took *Tybee Island*, 251.

The Federal navy blockaded the whole Gulf and Atlantic coast of the rebel states, and rendered important service elsewhere. Rebel privateers inflicted great injury on Federal commerce, 252.

**1862.** The Federal government prohibited slavery in the territories, and abolished it in the District of Columbia; authorized the enlistment of colored troops, and enacted a test oath, 253.

In the west, east of the Mississippi, the Federals gained a victory at *Mill Springs* (January 19); captured *Fort Henry*, and *Fort Donelson*, 254, and *Nashville*; were victorious, under General Grant, at *Pittsburg Landing* (April 6 and 7), 255; and, under General Halleck, compelled the enemy to evacuate *Corinth* (May 30). In the autumn, the Federals, under General Rosecrans, defeated the enemy at *Iuka*, 256, and again before *Corinth*. The rebels lost the battle at *Perryville* (October 8), 257; and at *Murfreesboro'*

- 1862.** they were beaten by General Rosecrans in a three days' battle, which began December 31, 258.
- West of the Mississippi, Union victories at *Pea Ridge* (March 7 and 8), 258, and, nine months afterwards, at *Prairie Grove*, decided the fate of Missouri and Arkansas, 259.
- The rebel posts on the Mississippi, as far as Vicksburg, successively yielded to the Federals, 259, and Admiral Farragut opened the river from its mouth to *New Orleans* (April 25), of which city General Butler took military possession, 260.
- On the Atlantic coast General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough captured *Roanoke Island*, and before the end of April nearly the whole coast of North Carolina was at the mercy of the Federals, who also had reduced *Fort Pulaski*. The rebel ram *Merrimac*, after a day's havoc among the Union vessels in Hampton Roads (March 8), was driven back to Norfolk by the *Monitor*, 264.
- In Virginia, the rebels were beaten at *Winchester*, 266. The Army of the Potomac, under McClellan, compelled them to evacuate *Yorktown*, beat them at *Williamsburg*, repulsed them at *Seven Pines* and *Fair Oaks* (May 31), 267. Meanwhile Stonewall Jackson drove the Federals from the Shenandoah Valley, and then joined General Lee before Richmond, 268. Lee now, in a *seven days' campaign* of almost constant fighting, raised the siege of the rebel capital, pursuing McClellan to the James, where the latter repulsed the rebels, with great loss, at *Malvern Hill* (July 1), 269. The rebels next moved against the Army of Virginia, commanded by General Pope, and, after a series of conflicts, beginning at *Cedar Mountain* and ending at *Chantilly* (September 1), compelled him to fall back within the defences of Washington, 271. Lee next invaded Maryland. McClellan gained a victory over him at *South Mountain*, and by the great battle of *Antietam* (September 17) forced the rebels, who had meanwhile captured *Harper's Ferry*, back to Virginia, 272. Burnside superseded McClellan, and was badly defeated at *Fredericksburg* (December 13), 273.
- During the summer, the Sioux war broke out. It was suppressed the next year, 274.
- 1863.** President Lincoln signalized the opening of the new year by issuing the Emancipation Proclamation, 275.
- In the west, east of the Mississippi, the Federals under Rosecrans were defeated at the *Chickamauga* (September 19 and 20), and besieged in *Chattanooga*. The siege was raised, and the enemy thoroughly defeated by Grant, in a three days' battle, beginning November 23, 276. Soon after, the rebels were repulsed before *Knoxville*, by Burnside, 277.
- In Arkansas, the rebels were repulsed (July 4) at *Helena*, and, in September, *Little Rock* was captured, 278.

- 1863.** *Vicksburg* was surrendered to General Grant (July 4), 279, and a few days later *Port Hudson* to General Banks, 281. In Virginia, General Hooker superseded Burnside, and was severely beaten at *Chancellorsville* (May 2, 3, 4) by Lee, who soon after set out for a second invasion of the loyal states. General Meade superseded Hooker, beat Lee in the great and decisive battle of *Gettysburg* (July 1, 2, 3), and pursued him into Virginia, 283. Rebel sympathizers excited a riot in New York city, in opposition to drafting, 286.
- 1864.** Among the earlier events were the expedition to *Meridian*, 287, the *Red River* expedition, 288, a Federal defeat at *Olustee*, Florida, and the loss of *Plymouth* and *Washington*, North Carolina, 289. Grant was appointed to the chief command of the Union armies, 290, and, with the Army of the Potomac, crossing the Rapidan (May 4), met the enemy in bloody conflicts in the *Wilderness*, at *Spottsylvania*, the *North Anna*, and *Cold Harbor*. Then crossing the James (June 14), joined by Butler from Fortress Monroe, he laid siege to *Petersburg* and *Richmond*, 291, and fought his way south as far as *Hatcher's Run* (October 27). Meanwhile the rebels made a third invasion of Maryland, 294. They were soon obliged to retreat, but hovered near the Potomac till General Sheridan, in a brilliant campaign, ending in the victory of *Cedar Creek* (October 19), closed the war in the Shenandoah Valley, 295. In the west, General Sherman made his famous *march to the sea*. Setting out (May 6) from Chattanooga, he fought the enemy at *Resaca*, *Dallas*, and *Kenesaw Mountain*, and captured *Atlanta* (September 2), 297; then sweeping through Georgia to the sea, he carried *Fort McAllister* by assault, and took *Savannah* (December 21), 300. Meanwhile the rebels had been successfully resisted at *Franklin*, and disastrously routed at *Nashville* (December 15, 16) by General Thomas, 299. The rebels invaded Missouri, but were driven back, 301. Three English-built *rebel cruisers* were captured, one of them being the notorious privateer *Alabama* (June 19), 301.
- 1865.** *Fort Fisher*, North Carolina, was captured (January 15). Sherman swept northward through South Carolina, drove the rebels from *Columbia*, 304; compelled them to evacuate *Charleston*; then pressing forward into North Carolina, beat them at *Averysboro'* and at *Bentonsville*, and entered *Goldsboro'* (March 23), 305. Grant's army began the final campaign (March 29), gave the rebels a crushing defeat at *Five Forks*, captured *Richmond* and *Petersburg*, and compelled Lee to surrender (April 9), near *Appomattox Court House*, 307. *Mobile* was taken, 306. Before the end of May all the rebel armies had surrendered, 309. Jefferson Davis was captured (May 11), 310.
- 1866.** The Atlantic cable was laid, 315.
- 1867.** The Reconstruction Bill became a law, 316.

## CONTEMPORARY CHRONOLOGY.

1861. Decree for the emancipation of serfs issued by the Emperor of Russia.  
 Expedition against Mexico by France, England, and Spain. The two latter powers soon abandoned the enterprise.  
 Italy, except Rome and Venice, united into one kingdom under Victor Emmanuel.
1862. Revolution in Greece, and flight of King Otho. Prince George, of Denmark, was made king the next year.  
 Maximilian declared Emperor of Mexico.
1864. War of Austria and Prussia against Denmark. The latter power lost Schleswig-Holstein and other territory.  
 War between Spain and Peru.  
 Paraguay declared war against Brazil. The Argentine Republic took sides with Brazil.
1865. War between Spain and Chili. Peru joined Chili in the war.
1866. War of Prussia and Italy against Austria and other German States.  
 Defeat of the Austrians in the great battle of Sadowa. Austria gave up Venice, which was made over to Italy. Prussia obtained great territorial acquisitions, and the leadership of all Germany.  
 Insurrection in Candia (Crete) against Turkey.

Among the eminent persons who closed their career during this Period were,

Count Cavour, . . . . .	1861.	Edward Everett, . . . . .	1865.
Elizabeth Barrett Browning, 1861.		Fredrika Bremer, . . . . .	1865.
Prince Albert, . . . . .	1861.	Lord Palmerston, . . . . .	1865.
Uhland, . . . . .	1862.	Cardinal Wiseman, . . . . .	1865.
Lyman Beecher, . . . . .	1863.	Francis Wayland, . . . . .	1865.
Thackeray, . . . . .	1863.	Lydia H. Sigourney, . . . . .	1865.
Archbp. Whately, . . . . .	1863.	William Whewell, . . . . .	1866.
Hawthorne, . . . . .	1864.	Jared Sparks, . . . . .	1866.
Archbp. Hughes, . . . . .	1864.	Cousin, . . . . .	1867.
Richard Cobden, . . . . .	1865.		

## A P P E N D I X.

---

### HINTS ON THE METHOD OF TEACHING HISTORY.

BY A. P. STONE,  
PRINCIPAL OF THE PORTLAND HIGH SCHOOL.

---

**THE object** of studying History in school is not merely the acquisition of a great number of facts, nor the largest possible amount of historical information; for an extensive knowledge of history requires far more time than is devoted to school education. Children need instruction in this branch, that their attention may be specially called to the attractive features of history, and that they may early acquire a fondness for historical reading; thus laying a foundation for a very important element in their future culture. Few young people are competent to decide for themselves what history to read, or how to read it to good advantage; and they should early learn, from teachers or others, that much history is written which is not worth reading; that those who read rapidly, discursively, and without plan, can obtain no available knowledge of the subject; and that persons who are really well read in history are not necessarily persons of extensive, but rather of thorough and judicious, reading. Hence history should be studied, and not simply read; and the teacher who fully recognizes this will not, surely, so far as his influence is concerned, allow the study to be neglected in school, on the fallacious plea, often made by pupils and parents, that history is so well adapted to private reading that it can as well be attended to at home, or after leaving school. If it is necessary to give the youthful student a proper insight into the workings of the human mind, and of human action, and thereby develop his powers by that most important of all studies, the study of mankind,—if it is important that he shall early learn to view himself in the great and truthful mirror of the past, and to establish his principles and shape his conduct by a careful study of living examples,—then it must be conceded that history is fairly entitled to a place in the school-room.

As the result of considerable experience and much interest in teaching history, the following suggestions are offered for the benefit of the teacher.

1. In the assignment of lessons, it is a mistaken idea to suppose that a uniform number of pages can be profitably given out for a lesson, from day to day. Some portions are vastly more important than others, and whether the text-book is large or small, we should not dwell equally upon all parts of it. To pass rapidly and superficially over the narrative of some events, would be manifestly unwise; and it would be equally so to devote any considerable time to such portions as are of little interest or importance. Hence we may find portions of the text-book where a page or two, with the necessary collateral reading and looking up of topics, will be amply sufficient for a lesson, or, perhaps, for several; while in other parts, less important, there may not be found upon ten pages matter of sufficient consequence to occupy more than a single day. The relative importance of the subject-matter must determine the time to be spent upon any given portion of the text-book; and the teacher must, in the exercise of his good sense, have due regard to the age and capacities of his pupils, the time they propose to devote to the study, the character of the text-book, and the number and nature of the other branches pursued at the same time. It is probable that, as a general thing, teachers err in assigning lessons of too great length, oftener than otherwise.

2. Pupils need suggestions about preparing their lessons from the text-book. They should not be allowed to pursue the method, so often practised, of preparing them solely by the aid of printed questions. By this method, as is well known, the lesson is "marked off" into words and short sentences that seem to answer the printed question, and then committed, parrot-like, each answer being associated almost mechanically with its question, without regard to the connection of those answers in the narrative, and omitting altogether such portions of the text as do not happen to be called out by the printed questions; for it is well known to teachers, that lessons are often thus learned, without even once reading over the text consecutively. Now, such a course is, as a mental exercise, highly injurious, and cannot give the pupil an intelligent understanding of the subject upon which he is occupied; for an available knowledge of history does not consist in an ability to repeat a few disconnected answers, which have been learned merely for the purpose of being given in response to a series of set questions. Although pupils often consider the recitation as the end and object for which the lesson is to be learned, the teacher must regard it as a test, principally, of what the pupil has been doing in the way of healthy discipline of mind, and the acquisition of useful knowledge. No thorough, independent teacher will be inclined to make much use of printed questions in the recitation; and the only way in which they can be of service to the pupil, while studying, is, perhaps, in calling his attention to some of the most important points of the lesson. Let the pupil, therefore, be directed first to read over the lesson one or more times, so as to grasp the general scope of it, and to impress the mind with a distinct outline of the narrative; after which, the different portions should be learned so thoroughly that he can give a full and connected account of it, as a whole, or by topic, with but few questions or hints from the teacher. Pupils unaccustomed to this method, will, perhaps, enter upon it reluctantly, and with but partial success at first; but by a little practice, and by judicious encouragement from the teacher, they will not only acquire great readiness in recitation, but will pursue it with satisfaction and success. As it is one of the leading objects in teaching this branch to show pupils how to read and to investigate history, it is quite desirable that they should early form the habit of using, in the preparation of the lesson, other means besides the text-book. Let there be frequent reference to such biographies, classical dictionaries, maps, and other works having a bearing upon the subject, as may be within their reach.

3. The practice of requiring or allowing the learner, as a general rule, to commit and recite the language of the author, *verbatim*, is objectionable. It tasks the memory unduly, and if pursued for any length of time, cannot fail to impair the strength and healthy exercise of that faculty. It also very naturally and necessarily leads the pupil to form the habit of attaching more importance to words than to ideas. Those who commit to memory with even the greatest facility, cannot be expected to remember the exact language of any considerable portion of the text-book much beyond the hour of recitation, or a few days at most. Hence it follows, when undue importance is given to words, that they will fail to retain the ideas of the lesson when the particular phraseology with which they have been associated is lost. It may be true that the language of the author is better than that of the pupil; but that is no good reason why the pupil should adopt it instead of his own. Good language in an author is highly desirable, as it serves to present his ideas in a clear and attractive form to the pupil, thereby aiding him to incorporate those ideas more readily and fully into his own mind; and when he has thus thoroughly imbued his mind with the ideas—not the words merely—of the lesson, he has not only added substantially to his mental acquisitions, but he has also strengthened and sharpened his intellect by the process itself; and when, furthermore, he has clothed those ideas in language of his own, and given utterance to them in the recitation, he has advanced another step of great value to himself, in acquiring the power and habit of expressing and communicating his ideas to others—one of the best fruits of a good education. Let the learner, therefore, be encouraged to break away from the language of the text-book as much as possible, and to grasp at the ideas of the lesson and give them utterance in his own words; the result of which will be, most profitable discipline of his mental powers, and ready, available knowledge of his subject.

4. The remark of Dr. Watts, that “**Geography and Chronology** are the eyes of History,” is no exaggeration of the importance of those two features; and the method of teaching them judiciously is a matter of equal importance, requiring good judgment and much tact. There are certain features of geography which are best learned and remembered in connection with history; for they have a mutual relation to each other, and become connected by the laws of association. The topography of a country, its waters, and its climate, modify the founding and growth of its cities and colonies, the development of its resources, its wars and military campaigns, and its social relations and institutions. Hence maps in a text-book for the special illustration of the lesson, are a great auxiliary to a successful pursuit of the study. A good atlas should be the constant companion of the student and reader of history; and the geography of the lesson should be made equally prominent in the recitation. If wall maps are not at hand for that purpose, let maps of the lesson be drawn upon the blackboard—a most useful exercise for both teacher and pupil.

It is a grave mistake to require pupils, at first, especially, to commit all the dates and statistics of history, with the expectation that they will be retained in the memory; or to suppose that they constitute, in themselves merely, an acquisition of much value. No one remembers long a large number of disconnected dates. It is useless labor, therefore, to burden the memory with them alone. The facility which children often acquire in committing and reciting such matter, not unfrequently leads teachers to attach too much importance to it. The date of an historical event is highly important when taken in connection with a good knowledge of that event itself, in all its relations; but otherwise its value is comparatively insignificant. The pupil who can give the exact date of the battle of Bunker Hill, or of Saratoga, or the amount of capital of the first National Bank organized under our government, but who has no further knowledge of those events, of their nature and consequences, has no knowledge of history to boast of. The teacher must carefully guard against the tendency on the part of pupils to be satisfied with short answers and isolated matters of fact, instead of the general scope of the lesson. The habit of mind that aims too much at the former, rather unfits the learner, in a measure, to grasp at the latter. In the matter of dates and statistics, then, a few only, at first, of the most important should be selected and learned in connection with the events to which they belong; but they should be thoroughly learned, with strict accuracy, and ineffaceably stamped upon the memory by frequent reviews. Those of less importance will afterwards easily take their places among the leading landmarks.

5. A successful recitation depends quite as much upon the teacher as upon the class. The teacher must not, however, do the work of the pupils. The rule should be, that the pupils shall do the work of the recitation, while the teacher shall give direction to that work, and see that it is done properly; and in so doing he will, of course, become equally a worker himself—but his spirit will give tone to the recitation. If he is confined to the text-book, and to formal questions, the pupils will follow in the same mechanical routine, and the recitation will be as lifeless as it is unprofitable. He should be thoroughly familiar with the lesson in all its particulars, and stand before his class a living teacher; independent, but not discursive; enthusiastic, but not boisterous; and ready to communicate all desired information when needed and properly appreciated. All questions proposed, and topics stated, should be in language easily understood, and so worded as to make the pupil think before an answer is attempted. Leading questions, which suggest their own answers, are, of course, injurious, and to be wholly avoided. As before intimated, the pupil should be required to give, unaided, as far as possible, a full and connected account of the lesson. The teacher's questioning will then more properly have reference to a further illustration of the subject, its practical bearings, and to testing the pupil's thoroughness and his understanding of the lesson. The method of the recitation may vary with the nature of the subject, but the teacher should strive to avoid routine, and to make it fresh and attractive. As an example, let one pupil be required to state the general subject of the lesson; another, to give its leading divisions and topics; and others, still, to give the particulars of those several divisions, and so on. And even this method may be reversed, or greatly varied, according to the ingenuity

and skill of the teacher. The attention of the whole class may be secured by frequently interrupting the one reciting, and requiring another to take up the subject at the same point, and to continue it without any break in the narrative.

6. Let the pupil have an occasional model of historical investigation and research. For this purpose select an event, or topic, and dwell upon it for a length of time and with a degree of minuteness that shall allow the subject to be seen in every possible point of view. Collateral aid of every kind must be called in, until the historical picture shall stand out before the mind's eye like a panoramic view, distinct and complete, not only in outline, but in the minutest particular. These topics may be various, such as battles, marches, sieges, settlements, discoveries, political measures, historical personages, &c.; but whatever the topic may be, let it be expanded and treated with a thoroughness that will completely exhaust the ingenuity and resources of teacher and pupil. By such a course, repeating, reviewing, dwelling upon particulars, and generalizing, there will be awakened a wonderful degree of interest on the part of the class. Their perception of the whole subject-matter of study will, at every recitation, become clearer, and a life-like picture will be formed that will never fade from their minds. Such a method is, of course, slow; a single topic may occupy several days. But its slowness is its greatest recommendation; for it insures an impression upon the mind that is clear and distinct, and one that will be lasting and valuable. It is not, however, expected that the whole text-book will be dwelt upon in this manner. The exercise is given to show the pupil how to investigate a subject thoroughly and completely, that he may apply to his future reading, as occasion may require, the same method of careful examination and rigid inquiry.

7. Reviews, judiciously conducted, are deserving of special attention; for more is often done in the review to make the contents of the lesson the pupil's own, than in the first learning of the lesson. Topical reviews are preferable to those which are periodical. The principal objection to the latter is, that the review which occurs regularly once a week, or once a month, must oftentimes begin or end in the midst of a chapter or subject, and thus prevent the narrative from being impressed upon the mind as a whole; while topical reviews, covering a whole chapter, period, or topic, give the pupil a complete idea of the subject, with all its associations unbroken and in their proper connection. As it is by this principle of association that much of history is retained in the memory which would otherwise be lost, the practice of grouping and generalizing events, in reviews, is one of the utmost importance. If, for example, the American Revolution is the subject of the review, let all its causes and preliminary incidents be reviewed together. Then all the events which occurred in New England may form one group or campaign; those about New York, Long Island, and New Jersey, a second; the expedition of Burgoyne, a third; the campaign of Philadelphia and its neighborhood, a fourth; while the occurrences in the Southern States would constitute a fifth. The same subject may then be varied by reviewing the period chronologically, or by classifying the different battles and expeditions accordingly as they were successful or otherwise to the Americans. Settlements may be reviewed geographically, chronologically, or according to the nationality of those engaging in them. The success of such reviews will depend much upon their being made frequent, thorough, and so varied as to keep up a lively and fresh interest in the class. There must be some philosophical method observed, that only those events may be brought together which have some kind of connection; and care should be exercised that the several topics and groups are distinct and independent of each other.

The aim of the teacher, ever to be kept in view in this branch, should be to inspire the learner with a love for the study, to give all reasonable assistance needed, and to draw out before the mind such a view of history as shall make it a real panorama of the past. If we can thus furnish the minds of pupils with a few vivid historical pictures, that shall allure them on in this attractive study,—if we can teach them how to read, and how to study, in the most profitable manner, the annals of the past,—we shall accomplish a good work.

# DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

---

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

## A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident:— That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise, the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation,—

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity;

## DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

7

and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing Declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:—

## JOHN HANCOCK.

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,  
William Whipple,  
Matthew Thornton.

## MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,  
John Adams,  
Robert Treat Paine,  
Elbridge Gerry.

## RHODE ISLAND.

Stephen Hopkins,  
William Ellery.

## CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,  
Samuel Huntington,  
William Williams,  
Oliver Wolcott.

## NEW YORK.

William Floyd,  
Philip Livingston,  
Francis Lewis,  
Lewis Morris.

## NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,  
John Witherspoon,  
Francis Hopkinson,  
John Hart,  
Abraham Clark.

## PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,  
Benjamin Rush,  
Benjamin Franklin,  
John Morton,  
George Clymer,  
James Smith,  
George Taylor,  
James Wilson,  
George Ross.

## DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,  
George Read,  
Thomas M'Kean.

## MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,  
William Paca,

Thomas Stone,  
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

## VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,  
Richard Henry Lee,  
Thomas Jefferson,  
Benjamin Harrison,  
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee,  
Carter Braxton.

## NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,  
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,  
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,  
Arthur Middleton.

## GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett,  
Lyman Hall,  
George Walton.

*Resolved*, That copies of the Declaration be sent to the several assemblies, conventions, and committees, or councils of safety, and to the several commanding officers of the continental troops; that it be proclaimed in each of the United States, and at the head of the army.

CONSTITUTION  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

**SECTION I.** 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress<sup>1</sup> of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

**SEC. II.** 1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several states; and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,<sup>2</sup> which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons.<sup>3</sup> The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, Vacancies. the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

<sup>1</sup> The body of senators and representatives for each term of two years (see Sec. II., ¶ 1) for which representatives are chosen, is called *one Congress*. Each Congress expires at noon of the 4th of March next succeeding the beginning of its second regular session (see Sec. IV., ¶ 2), when a *new Congress* begins.

<sup>2</sup> The apportionment under the census of 1860 is one representative to every 127,381 persons.

<sup>3</sup> This refers to slaves.

5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers,<sup>1</sup> and shall have the sole power of impeachment. Speaker, how appointed.

SEC. III. 1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen. Qualifications of senators.

4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided. President of the senate.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers,<sup>2</sup> and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present. Senate a court for trial of impeachments.

7. Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law. Judgment in case of conviction.

SEC. IV. 1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators. Elections of senators and of representatives.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day. Meeting of Congress.

SEC. V. 1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide. Organization of Congress.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member. Rule of proceeding.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal. Journal of Congress.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting. Adjournment of Congress.

<sup>1</sup> The principal of these are the clerk, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, and postmaster. The Speaker is the presiding officer.

<sup>2</sup> The principal of these are the secretary, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, and postmaster.

**SEC. VI.** 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation<sup>1</sup> for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Compensa-  
tion and  
privileges of  
members.  
Plurality  
of offices  
prohibited.  
Revenue  
bills.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

**SEC. VII.** 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

How bills be-  
come laws.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Approval  
and veto  
powers of the  
President.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

**SEC. VIII.** The Congress shall have power—

Powers  
vested in  
Congress.

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States:

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States:

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes:

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States:

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures:

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States:

7. To establish post offices and post roads:

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court:

---

<sup>1</sup> The present compensation is \$5000 a year, with twenty cents for every mile of travel by the most usually travelled post route to and from the national capital.

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations:

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water:

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years:

13. To provide and maintain a navy:

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces:

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions:

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress:

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States;<sup>1</sup> and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings: and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SEC. IX. 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Immigrants,  
how admitted.

Habeas corpus.

Attainder.

4. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

Direct taxes.

Regulations regarding duties.

Moneys, how drawn.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

6. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Titles of nobility prohibited.

7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States, and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Powers of states defined.

SEC. X. 1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

2. No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships

<sup>1</sup> The District of Columbia. See p. 159, ¶ 6.

of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

**SECTION I.** 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, Executive power, in and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be whom vested. elected as follows:

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator, or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States shall be appointed an elector.

[3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of electors, of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice-president. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the vice-president.]<sup>1</sup>

Time of choosing electors. 4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.<sup>2</sup>

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Qualifica- 6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall tions of the president. devolve on the vice-president; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the ease of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president,<sup>3</sup> declaring what officer shall then act as president; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

<sup>1</sup> This clause, within brackets, has been superseded by the 12th Amendment. See p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> The regular time for choosing electors is the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November preceding the expiration of a presidential term. The day on which they shall give their votes is the first Wednesday of the December following; and the votes shall be counted and declared in Congress (see Amendments to the Constitution, Art. XIII., p. 16,) the second Wednesday of the following February.

<sup>3</sup> In this case "the president of the senate pro tempore, and in case there shall be no president of the senate, then the speaker of the house of representatives for the time being, shall act as president of the United States, until the disability be removed or a president shall be elected." And the secretary of state shall notify the executives of the different states to cause electors for president to be chosen, provided such notifications can be given two months before the first Wednesday of the December next preceding the expiration of a presidential term.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.<sup>1</sup>

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, pre-serve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SEC. II. 1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer, in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

May make  
treaties, ap-point am-bassadors,  
judges, &c.

SEC. III. 1. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SEC. IV. 1. The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

How officers  
may be re-moved.

### ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SEC. II. 1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of

<sup>1</sup> The salary of the president is \$25,000 a year, and has not been changed since the beginning of the government. That of the vice-president is \$8,000 a year.

<sup>2</sup> It is the custom of the president to comply with this requisition in a *message* to Congress at the opening of each session. Washington and John Adams read their messages in person to both houses of Congress assembled in convention. Jefferson introduced the present practice of sending to the two houses a written message by his private secretary.

another state ; between citizens of different states ; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states ; and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction of the supreme court. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

**SEC. III.** 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason ; but no attainer of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except How punished. during the life of the person attainted.

#### ARTICLE IV.

**SECTION I.** 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Privileges of citizens. 2. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall Executive flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the requisitions. executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping Law regulating service or labor. into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor ; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

**SEC. III.** 1. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new states shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state, nor any state be formed by the junetion of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting, the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

**SEC. IV.** 1. The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion ; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

#### ARTICLE V.

1. The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution ; or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ;

provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Validity of  
debts recog-  
nized.

Supreme law  
of the land  
defined.

Oath; of  
whom re-  
quired, and  
for what.

## ARTICLE VII.

1. The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient Ratification. for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.<sup>1</sup>

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.<sup>2</sup>

GEO. WASHINGTON,  
*Presidt. and deputy from Virginia.*

NEW HAMPSHIRE.  
John Langdon,  
Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS.  
Nathaniel Gorham,  
Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT.  
Wm. Saml. Johnson,  
Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK.  
Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.  
Wil. Livingston,  
David Brearley,  
Wm. Paterson,  
Jona. Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA.  
B. Franklin,  
Thomas Mifflin,  
Robt. Morris,  
Geo: Clymer,  
Tho: Fitzsimons,  
Jared Ingersoll,  
James Wilson,  
Gouv: Morris.

DELAWARE.  
Geo: Read,  
Gunning Bedford, Jun'r,  
John Dickinson,  
Richard Bassett,  
Jacq: Broom.

MARYLAND.  
James M'Henry,  
Dan: of St. Thos. Jenifer,  
Danl. Carroll.

VIRGINIA.  
John Blair,  
James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA.  
Wm. Blount,  
Rich'd Dobbs Spaight,  
Hu. Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA.  
J. Rutledge,  
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney,  
Charles Pinckney,  
Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA.  
Abr. Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

<sup>1</sup> See p. 150, ¶ 5, and note 1.

<sup>2</sup> The number of delegates chosen to the convention was sixty-five; ten did not attend; sixteen declined signing the Constitution, or left the convention before it was ready to be signed. Thirty-nine signed.

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

<sup>1</sup> ART. I. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, <sup>Freedom in religion,</sup> or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to <sup>speech, press.</sup> petition the government for redress of grievances.

ART. II. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, <sup>Militia.</sup> the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ART. III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be <sup>Soldiers.</sup> prescribed by law.

ART. IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and <sup>Search-warrants.</sup> effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ART. V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising <sup>Capital crimes.</sup> in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in the time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ART. VI. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall <sup>Trial by jury.</sup> have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ART. VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed <sup>Suits at common law.</sup> twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reexamined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

Bail, fines, &c. ART. VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Certain rights. ART. IX. The enumeration in the constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Powers reserved. ART. X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

Judicial power limited. <sup>2</sup> ART. XI. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

<sup>3</sup> ART. XII. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of <sup>Amendment to Art. II., See 4, respecting election of president and vice-president.</sup> the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States,

<sup>1</sup> The first ten amendments were proposed at the first session of the first Congress (1789), and declared adopted in 1791.

<sup>2</sup> The eleventh amendment was proposed at the first session of the third Congress (1794), and declared adopted in 1798.

<sup>3</sup> The twelfth amendment was proposed at the first session of the eighth Congress (1803), and declared adopted in 1804.

directed to the president of the senate; the president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for president shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the senate shall choose the vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

<sup>1</sup> ART. XIII. SEC. I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

<sup>1</sup> The thirteenth amendment was proposed at the second session of the thirty-eighth Congress (1865), and declared adopted in 1865.

## CHIEF OFFICERS OF THE NATIONAL GOVERNMENT.

## PRESIDENTS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

1774—1788.

Peyton Randolph, . . .	Va., . . .	1774.	John Hanson, . . . . .	Md., . . . . .	1781.
Henry Middleton, . . .	S. C., . . .	1774.	Elias Bondinot, . . . . .	N. J., . . . . .	1782.
Peyton Randolph, . . .	Va., . . .	1775.	Thomas Mifflin, . . . . .	Penn., . . . . .	1783.
John Hancock, . . . .	Mass., . . .	1775.	Richard Henry Lee, . . .	Va., . . . . .	1784.
Henry Laurens, . . . .	S. C., . . .	1777.	Nathaniel Gorham, . . .	Mass., . . . . .	1786.
John Jay, . . . .	N. Y., . . .	1778.	Arthur St. Clair, . . . .	Penn., . . . . .	1787.
Samuel Huntington, . .	Conn., . . .	1779.	Cyrus Griffin, . . . . .	Va., . . . . .	1788.
Thomas McKean, . . .	Del., . . .	1781.			

## NATIONAL ADMINISTRATIONS.

1789—1797.

## President.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, Va., . . . . . 1789.

## Vice-President.

JOHN ADAMS, . . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1789.

## Secretaries of State.

Thomas Jefferson, . . . . . Va., . . . . . 1789.

Edmund Randolph, . . . . . Va., . . . . . 1794.

Timothy Pickering, . . . . . Penn., . . . . . 1795.

## Secretaries of the Treasury.

Alexander Hamilton, . . . . . N. Y., . . . . . 1789.

Oliver Wolcott, . . . . Conn., . . . . . 1795.

## Secretaries of War.

Henry Knox, . . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1789.

Timothy Pickering, . . . . . Penn., . . . . . 1795.

James McHenry, . . . . . Md., . . . . . 1796.

## Postmasters-General.

Samuel Osgood, . . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1789.

Timothy Pickering, . . . . . Penn., . . . . . 1791.

Joseph Habersham, . . . . Ga., . . . . . 1795.

## Attorneys-General.

Edmund Randolph, . . . . . Va., . . . . . 1789.

William Bradford, . . . . Penn., . . . . . 1794.

Charles Lee, . . . . . Va., . . . . . 1795.

Speakers of the House of Representatives.

Fred. A. Muhlenberg, . . . . Penn., 1st Cong.

Jonathan Trumbull, . . . . Conn., 2d Cong.

Fred. A. Muhlenberg, . . . . Penn., 3d Cong.

Jonathan Dayton, . . . . N. J., 4th Cong.

1797—1801.

## President.

JOHN ADAMS, . . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1797.

## Vice-President.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, . . . . Va., . . . . . 1797.

## Secretaries of State.

Timothy Pickering, . . . . . Penn., . . . . . \*

John Marshall, . . . . . Va., . . . . . 1800.

## Secretaries of the Treasury.

Oliver Wolcott, . . . . Conn., . . . . . \*

Samuel Dexter, . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1800.

## Secretaries of War.

James McHenry, . . . . Md., . . . . . \*

Samuel Dexter, . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1800.

Roger Griswold, . . . . Conn., . . . . . 1801.

*Secretary of the Navy.*†

Benjamin Stoddert, . . . . Md., . . . . . 1798.

*Postmaster-General.*

Joseph Habersham, . . . . Ga., . . . . . \*

*Attorney-General.*

Charles Lee, . . . . . Va., . . . . . \*

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Jonathan Dayton, . . . . N. J., 5th Cong.

Theodore Sedgwick, . . . . Mass., 6th Cong.

1801—1809.

## President.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, . . . . Va., . . . . . 1801.

## Vice-Presidents.

AARON BURR, . . . . N. Y., . . . . . 1801.

GEORGE CLINTON, . . . . N. Y., . . . . . 1805.

*Secretary of State.*

James Madison, . . . . Va., . . . . . 1801.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

Samuel Dexter, . . . . Mass., . . . . . \*

Albert Gallatin, . . . . Penn., . . . . . 1802.

*Secretary of War.*

Henry Dearborn, . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1801.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

Benjamin Stoddert, . . . . Md., . . . . . \*

Robert Smith, . . . . Md., . . . . . 1802.

Jacob Crowninshield, . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1805.

*Postmasters-General.*

Joseph Habersham, . . . . Ga., . . . . . \*

Gideon Granger, . . . . Conn., . . . . . 1802.

*Attorneys-General.*

Levi Lincoln, . . . . Mass., . . . . . 1801.

Robert Smith, . . . . Md., . . . . . 1805.

John Breckinridge, . . . . Ky., . . . . . 1805.

Cæsar A. Rodney, . . . . Del., . . . . . 1807.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Nathaniel Macon, . . . . N. C., 7th Cong.

Nathaniel Macon, . . . . N. C., 8th Cong.

Nathaniel Macon, . . . . N. C., 9th Cong.

Joseph B. Varnum, . . . . Mass., 10th Cong.

\* Continued in office.

† The War Department had the superintendence of naval affairs till the Navy Department was established, in 1798.

## 1809—1817.

*President.*

JAMES MADISON, . . . Va., . . . 1809.

*Vice-Presidents.*

GEORGE CLINTON, . . N. Y., . . . 1809.

ELBRIDGE GERRY, . . Mass., . . . 1813.

*Secretaries of State.*

Robert Smith, . . . Md., . . . 1809.

James Monroe, . . . Va., . . . 1811.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

Albert Gallatin, . . . Penn., . . . \*

George W. Campbell, . . Tenn., . . . 1814.

Alexander J. Dallas, . . Penn., . . . 1814.

*Secretaries of War.*

William Eustis, . . . Mass., . . . 1809.

John Armstrong, . . N. Y., . . . 1813.

James Monroe, . . . Va., . . . 1814.

William H. Crawford, Ga., . . . 1815.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

Paul Hamilton, . . . S. C., . . . 1809.

William Jones, . . . Penn., . . . 1813.

Benj. W. Crowninshield, Mass., . . . 1814.

*Postmasters-General.*

Gideon Granger, . . . Conn., . . . \*

Return J. Meigs, . . . Ohio, . . . 1814.

*Attorneys-General.*

Cæsar A. Rodney, . . Del., . . . \*

William Pinkney, . . Md., . . . 1811.

Richard Rush, . . . Penn., . . . 1814.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Joseph B. Varnum, . . Mass., 11th Cong.

Henry Clay, . . . Ky., 12th Cong.

Henry Clay, † . . . Ky., 13th Cong.

Langdon Cheves, † . . S. C., 13th Cong.

Henry Clay, . . . Ky., 14th Cong.

## 1817—1825.

*President.*

JAMES MONROE, . . . Va., . . . 1817.

*Vice-President.*

DANIEL D. TOMPKINS, N. Y., . . . 1817.

*Secretary of State.*

John Q. Adams, . . . Mass., . . . 1817.

*Secretary of the Treasury.*

William H. Crawford, . . Ga., . . . 1817.

*Secretary of War.*

John C. Calhoun, . . . S. C., . . . 1817.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

Benj. W. Crowninshield, Mass., . . . \*

Smith Thompson, . . . N. Y., . . . 1818.

Samuel L. Southard, . . N. J., . . . 1823.

*Postmasters-General.*

Return J. Meigs, . . . Ohio, . . . \*

John McLean, . . . Ohio, . . . 1823.

*Attorney-General.*

William Wirt, . . . Va., . . . 1817.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Henry Clay, . . . Ky., 15th Cong.

Henry Clay, † . . . Ky., 16th Cong.

John W. Taylor, † . . N. Y., 16th Cong.

Philip P. Barbour, . . . Va., 17th Cong.

Henry Clay, . . . Ky., 18th Cong.

## 1825—1829.

*President.*

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, Mass., . . . 1825.

*Vice-President.*

JOHN C. CALHOUN, . . S. C., . . . 1825.

*Secretary of State.*

Henry Clay, . . . Ky., . . . 1825.

*Secretary of the Treasury.*

Richard Rush, . . . Penn., . . . 1825.

*Secretaries of War.*

James Barbour, . . . Va., . . . 1825.

Peter B. Porter, . . . N. Y., . . . 1828.

*Secretary of the Navy.*

Samuel L. Southard, . . N. J., . . . \*

*Postmaster-General.*

John McLean, . . . Ohio, . . . \*

*Attorney-General.*

William Wirt, . . . Va., . . . \*

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

John W. Taylor, . . . N. Y., 19th Cong.

Andrew Stevenson, . . Va., 20th Cong.

## 1829—1837.

*President.*

ANDREW JACKSON, . . Tenn., . . . 1829.

*Vice-Presidents.*

JOHN C. CALHOUN, . . S. C., . . . 1829.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, . . N. Y., . . . 1833.

*Secretaries of State.*

Martin Van Buren, . . N. Y., . . . 1829.

Edward Livingston, . . La., . . . 1831.

Louis McLane, . . . Del., . . . 1833.

John Forsyth, . . . Ga., . . . 1834.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

Samuel D. Ingham, . . Penn., . . . 1829.

Louis McLane, . . . Del., . . . 1831.

William J. Duane, . . Penn., . . . 1833.

Roger B. Taney, § . . Md., . . . 1833.

Levi Woodbury, . . . N. H., . . . 1834.

*Secretaries of War.*

John H. Eaton, . . . Tenn., . . . 1829.

Lewis Cass, . . . Ohio, . . . 1831.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

John Branch, . . . N. C., . . . 1829.

Levi Woodbury, . . . N. H., . . . 1831.

Mahlon Dickerson, . . N. J., . . . 1834.

*Postmasters-General.||*

William T. Barry, . . . Ky., . . . 1829.

Amos Kendall, . . . Ky., . . . 1835.

*Attorneys-General.*

John M. Berrien, . . Ga., . . . 1829.

Roger B. Taney, . . Md., . . . 1831.

Benjamin F. Butler, . . N. Y., . . . 1834.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Andrew Stevenson, . . Va., 21st Cong.

Andrew Stevenson, . . Va., 22d Cong.

Andrew Stevenson, † . . Va., 23d Cong.

John Bell, † . . Tenn., 23d Cong.

James K. Polk, . . Tenn., 24th Cong.

\* Continued in office.

† 1st session.

‡ 2d session.

§ Appointed during the recess of Congress, and negatived by the Senate.

|| The Postmaster-General was not a member of the Cabinet till 1829.

**1837—1841.***President.*

MARTIN VAN BUREN, N. Y., . . . . 1837.  
*Vice-President.*

RICHARD M. JOHNSON, Ky., . . . . 1837.  
*Secretary of State.*

John Forsyth, . . . . Ga., . . . . \*  
*Secretary of the Treasury.*

Levi Woodbury, . . . . N. H., . . . . \*  
*Secretary of War.*

Joel R. Poinsett, . . . . S. C., . . . . 1837.  
*Secretaries of the Navy.*

Mahlon Dickerson, . . . . N. J., . . . . \*  
 James K. Paulding, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1838.

*Postmasters-General.*

Amos Kendall, . . . . Ky., . . . . \*  
 John M. Niles, . . . . Conn., . . . . 1840.

*Attorneys-General.*

Benjamin F. Butler, . . . . N. Y., . . . . \*

Felix Grundy, . . . . Tenn., . . . . 1838.

Henry D. Gilpin, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1840.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

James K. Polk, . . . . Tenn., 25th Cong.  
 R. M. T. Hunter, . . . . Va., 26th Cong.

**1841—1845.***Presidents.*

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, † O., 1841.

JOHN TYLER, . . . . Va., . . . . 1841.  
*Vice-President.*

JOHN TYLER, . . . . Va., . . . . 1841.  
*Secretaries of State.*

Daniel Webster, . . . . Mass., . . . . 1841.

Hugh S. Legaré, . . . . S. C., . . . . 1843.

Abel P. Upshur, . . . . Va., . . . . 1843.

John C. Calhoun, . . . . S. C., . . . . 1844.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

Thomas Ewing, . . . . Ohio, . . . . 1841.

Walter Forward, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1841.

John C. Spencer, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1843.

George M. Bibb, . . . . Ky., . . . . 1844.

*Secretaries of War.*

John Bell, . . . . Tenn., . . . . 1841.

John C. Spencer, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1841.

James M. Porter, † . . . . Penn., . . . . 1843.

William Wilkins, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1844.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

George E. Badger, . . . . N. C., . . . . 1841.

Abel P. Upshur, . . . . Va., . . . . 1841.

David Henshaw, † . . . . Mass., . . . . 1843.

Thomas W. Gilmer, . . . . Va., . . . . 1844.

John Y. Mason, . . . . Va., . . . . 1844.

*Postmasters-General.*

Francis Granger, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1841.

Charles A. Wickliffe, . . . . Ky., . . . . 1841.

*Attorneys-General.*

John J. Crittenden, . . . . Ky., . . . . 1841.

Hugh S. Legaré, . . . . S. C., . . . . 1841.

John Nelson, . . . . Md., . . . . 1844.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

John White, . . . . Ky., 27th Cong.

John W. Jones, . . . . Va., 28th Cong.

**1845—1849.***President.*

JAMES KNOX POLK, . . . . Tenn., . . . . 1845.

*Vice-President.*

GEORGE M. DALLAS, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1845.

*Secretary of State.*

James Buchanan, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1845.

*Secretary of the Treasury.*

Robert J. Walker, . . . . Miss., . . . . 1845.

*Secretary of War.*

William L. Marcy, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1845.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

George Bancroft, . . . . Mass., . . . . 1845.

John Y. Mason, . . . . Va., . . . . 1846.

*Postmaster-General.*

Cave Johnson, . . . . Tenn., . . . . 1845.

*Attorneys-General.*

John Y. Mason, . . . . Va., . . . . 1845.

Nathan Clifford, . . . . Me., . . . . 1846.

Isaac Toucey, . . . . Conn., . . . . 1848.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

John W. Davis, . . . . Ind., 29th Cong.

Robert C. Winthrop, . . . . Mass., 30th Cong.

**1849—1853.***Presidents.*

ZACHARY TAYLOR, § . . . La., . . . . 1849.

MILLARD FILLMORE, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1850.

*Vice-President.*

MILLARD FILLMORE, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1849.

*Secretaries of State.*

John M. Clayton, . . . . Del., . . . . 1849.

Daniel Webster, . . . . Mass., . . . . 1850.

Edward Everett, . . . . Mass., . . . . 1852.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

William M. Meredith, . . . . Penn., . . . . 1849.

Thomas Corwin, . . . . Ohio, . . . . 1850.

*Secretaries of War.*

George W. Crawford, . . . . Ga., . . . . 1849.

Charles M. Conrad, . . . . La., . . . . 1850.

*Secretaries of the Navy.*

William B. Preston, . . . . Va., . . . . 1849.

William A. Graham, . . . . N. C., . . . . 1850.

John P. Kennedy, . . . . Md., . . . . 1852.

*Secretaries of the Interior.* ||

Thomas Ewing, . . . . Ohio, . . . . 1849.

Alexander H. H. Stuart, Va., . . . . 1850.

*Postmasters-General.*

Jacob Collamer, . . . . Vt., . . . . 1849.

Nathan K. Hall, . . . . N. Y., . . . . 1850.

Samuel D. Hubbard, . . . . Conn., . . . . 1852.

*Attorneys-General.*

Reverdy Johnson, . . . . Md., . . . . 1849.

John J. Crittenden, . . . . Ky., . . . . 1850.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*

Howell Cobb, . . . . Ga., . . . . 31st Cong.

Liun Boyd, . . . . Ky., . . . . 32d Cong.

\* Continued in office. † Died April 4, 1841, and was succeeded by the vice-president.

‡ Negatived by the Senate. § Died July 9, 1850, and was succeeded by the vice-president.

|| A new department, embracing certain portions of business heretofore transacted in the departments of state, treasury, &c.

**1853—1857.**

*President.*  
**FRANKLIN PIERCE**, . . N. H., . . . 1853.

*Vice-President.*  
**WILLIAM R. KING**, \* Ala., . . . 1853.

*Secretary of State.*  
**William L. Marcy**, . . N. Y., . . . 1853.

*Secretary of the Treasury.*  
**James Guthrie**, . . . Ky., . . . 1853.

*Secretary of War.*  
**Jefferson Davis**, . . . Miss., . . . 1853.

*Secretary of the Navy.*  
**James C. Dobbin**, . . . N. C., . . . 1853.

*Secretary of the Interior.*  
**Robert McClelland**, . . Mich., . . . 1853.

*Postmaster-General.*  
**James Campbell**, . . . Penn., . . . 1853.

*Attorney-General.*  
**Caleb Cushing**, . . . Mass., . . . 1853.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*  
**Linn Boyd**, . . . . Ky., . . . 33rd Cong.  
**Nathaniel P. Banks**, . . Mass., . . . 34th Cong.

**1857—1861.**

*President.*  
**JAMES BUCHANAN**, . . Penn., . . . 1857.

*Vice-President.*  
**JOHN C. BRECKINRIDGE**, Ky., . . . 1857.

*Secretaries of State.*  
**Lewis Cass**, . . . . Mich., . . . 1857.  
**Jeremiah S. Black**, . . Penn., . . . 1860.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*  
**Howell Cobb**, . . . Ga., . . . 1857.  
**Philip F. Thomas**, . . Md., . . . 1860.  
**John A. Dix**, . . . N. Y., . . . 1861.

*Secretaries of War.*  
**John B. Floyd**, . . . Va., . . . 1857.  
**Joseph Holt**, . . . . Ky., . . . 1861.

*Secretary of the Navy.*  
**Isaac Toucey**, . . . Conn., . . . 1857.

*Secretary of the Interior.*  
**Jacob Thompson**, . . Miss., . . . 1857.

*Postmasters-General.*

**Aaron V. Brown**, . . Tenn., . . . 1857.  
**Joseph Holt**, . . . . Ky., . . . 1859.  
**Horatio King**, . . . . Me., . . . 1861.

*Attorneys-General.*

**Jeremiah S. Black**, . . Penn., . . . 1857.  
**Edwin M. Stanton**, . . Penn., . . . 1860.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*  
**James L. Orr**, . . . . S. C., 35th Cong.  
**William Pennington**, . . N. J., 36th Cong.

**1861—1869.***Presidents.*

**ABRAHAM LINCOLN**, † Ill., . . . 1861.  
**ANDREW JOHNSON**, . . Tenn., . . . 1865.

*Vice-Presidents.*

**HANNIBAL HAMLIN**, . . Me., . . . 1861.  
**ANDREW JOHNSON**, . . Tenn., . . . 1865.

*Secretary of State.*

**William H. Seward**, . . N. Y., . . . 1861.

*Secretaries of the Treasury.*

**Salmon P. Chase**, . . Ohio, . . . 1861.  
**William Pitt Fessenden**, Me., . . . 1864.  
**Hugh McCulloch**, . . Ind., . . . 1865.

*Secretaries of War.*

**Simon Cameron**, . . . Penn., . . . 1861.  
**Edwin M. Stanton**, . . Penn., . . . 1861.

*Secretary of the Navy.*

**Gideon Welles**, . . . Conn., . . . 1861.

*Secretaries of the Interior.*

**Caleb B. Smith**, . . . Ind., . . . 1861.  
**John P. Usher**, . . . Ind., . . . 1863.  
**James Harlan**, . . . Iowa, . . . 1865.  
**O. H. Browning**, . . . Ill., . . . 1866.

*Postmasters-General.*

**Montgomery Blair**, . . Md., . . . 1861.  
**William Dennison**, . . Ohio, . . . 1864.

**A. W. Randall**, . . . Wis., . . . 1866.

*Attorneys-General.*

**Edward Bates**, . . . Mo., . . . 1861.  
**James Speed**, . . . . Ky., . . . 1864.

**Henry Stanbery**, . . . Ohio, . . . 1866.

*Speakers of the House of Representatives.*  
**Ganusha A. Grow**, . . Penn., 37th Cong.

**Schuyler Colfax**, . . . Ind., . . . 38th Cong.

**Schuyler Colfax**, . . . Ind., . . . 39th Cong.

\* Mr. King did not enter upon the duties of his office. See note 4, p. 221.

† Assassinated April 14, 1865, and succeeded by the vice-president.

## TABLE OF THE STATES

IN THE ORDER OF THEIR ADMISSION INTO THE UNION, WITH THEIR  
AREAS, POPULATION, AND ELECTORAL VOTE.

STATES, &c.	Date of Admission.	AREAS. Number of Square Miles.	Population by Census, 1790.	Population by Census, 1800.	Electoral Vote by Census, 1790.	Electoral Vote by Census, 1800.	Electoral Vote by Census, 1800.
Delaware,† . . . . .	2,120	59,096	112,216	3	3	3	3
Pennsylvania, . . . . .	46,000	434,373	2,906,215	15	27	26	26
New Jersey, . . . . .	8,320	184,139	672,035	7	7	7	7
Georgia,† . . . . .	52,009	82,548	1,057,286	4	10	9	9
Connecticut, . . . . .	4,674	238,141	460,147	9	6	6	6
Massachusetts, . . . . .	7,800	378,717	1,231,066	16	13	12	12
Maryland,† . . . . .	11,124	319,728	687,019	8	8	7	7
South Carolina,† . . . . .	29,385	219,073	703,708	8	8	6	6
New Hampshire, . . . . .	9,280	141,899	326,073	6	5	5	5
Virginia,† . . . . .	61,352	748,308	1,596,318	21	15	10	10
New York, . . . . .	47,000	340,120	3,880,735	12	35	33	33
North Carolina,† . . . . .	50,704	393,751	902,622	12	10	9	9
Rhode Island, . . . . .	1,306	69,110	174,620	4	4	4	4
Vermont, . . . . .	1791	10,212	85,416	3	5	5	5
Kentucky,† . . . . .	1792	37,680	73,077	1,155,684	4	12	11
Tennessee,† . . . . .	1796	45,600	35,791	1,109,801	..	12	10
Ohio, . . . . .	1802	39,934	..	2,339,511	..	23	21
Louisiana,† . . . . .	1812	46,431	..	708,002	..	6	7
Indiana, . . . . .	1816	33,809	..	1,350,428	..	13	13
Mississippi,† . . . . .	1817	47,156	..	791,305	..	7	7
Illinois, . . . . .	1818	55,405	..	1,711,951	..	11	16
Alabama,† . . . . .	1819	50,722	..	961,201	..	9	8
Maine, . . . . .	1820	31,766	90,540	628,279	..	8	7
Missouri,† . . . . .	1821	67,380	..	1,182,012	..	9	11
Arkansas,† . . . . .	1836	52,198	..	435,450	..	4	5
Michigan, . . . . .	1837	56,243	..	749,113	..	6	8
Florida,† . . . . .	1845	59,268	..	140,424	..	3	3
Texas,† . . . . .	1845	237,504	..	604,215	..	4	6
Iowa, . . . . .	1846	55,045	..	674,913	..	5	8
Wisconsin, . . . . .	1848	53,924	..	775,881	..	5	8
California, . . . . .	1850	188,982	..	379,994	..	4	5
Minnesota, . . . . .	1858	83,531	..	172,023	..	4	4
Oregon, . . . . .	1859	95,274	..	52,465	..	3	3
Kansas, . . . . .	1861	78,418	..	107,206	..	..	3
West Virginia, . . . . .	1863	with Va.	..	..	..	..	5
Nevada, . . . . .	1864	63,473	..	6,857	..	..	..
Nebraska, . . . . .	1867	†	..	†	..	..	..
District of Columbia,† . . . . .	..	60	..	75,080	..	..	..
Territories, . . . . .	..	1,179,883	..	213,338	..	..	..
Total, . . . . .	3,001,002	..	31,443,328	..	..	..	..

\* In the order of their adoption of the Constitution. See p. 150, ¶ 5, and note 1.

† Slaveholding in 1861.

‡ With the territories.

§ See p. 230, ¶ 1, and note 4.

## PRONOUNCING INDEX.

---

In the following index *ā, ē, ī, ū, û*, are to be pronounced with their long sounds, as in the words *mate, mete, mite, mote, mute*; *ă, ĕ, ă, ū, û*, with their short sounds, as in *bag, beg, big, bog, bug*; *g* is to be sounded like the obscured *ah* heard in the final syllable of *idea*; *e*, as the *e* in *matter*; *ă*, as in *urn*; *ah*, as in the interjection *ah! aw*, as in *saw; ow*, as in *caw*; *ō*, as in *foot*; *ȝ*, as in *get, go; th*, as in *this*; *ch* unmarked is sounded as in *chamber*.

*e* (Italic) is silent, but is used to denote that the vowel preceding it in the same syllable has the long sound.

*h* and *k* indicate sounds which are similar to that of a strongly aspirated *h*; *r* indicates a more distinct and forcible utterance of this letter than is usually given to it in English words.

*ü* represents the sound of the French *u* in *vue*, which is uttered with the lips in the position for *oo* (as in *noon*), but a little compressed, and the tongue in that for *ē*.

*an(g), ahn(g), awn(g), un(g)*, are used to indicate the French nasal sounds. These sounds are uttered as spelled, except that they stop before the sound of *ng* is completed.

*ȝȝ*—The sounds indicated by *ii*, *k*, *ü*, and the French nasal sounds, can only be accurately learned from the teacher.

*ꝝꝝ*—Vowels are not marked in this index when it is supposed that their position sufficiently indicates the sounds which should be given.

---

**ABD EL KADER** (ahbd-el-kah'der).

**ABENAKIS** (ab-e-nah'kiz).

**ABERCROMBIE** (ab'er-krum-bi').

**ACADIA** (a-kā'di-ă).

**ADDISON** (ad'di-sun).

**ADOLPHUS, GUSTAVUS** (gus-ta'ves).

**AGUA NUEVA** (ah'gwah nwa'veh).

**AIX LA CHAPELLE** (äks luh-shä-pel').

**ALABAMA** (al-a-bah'mä).

**ALAMO** (al'a-mo).

**ALARCON** (ah-lär-kon'se').

**ALBANY** (awl'bä-ni').

**ALBEMARLE** (äl-be-mar'l').

**ALDIE** (awl'di').

**ALEXANDRIA** (al-egz-an'dri-ă).

**ALGIERS** (al-jerz').

**ALGONQUINS** (al-gon'kwimz).

**ALLATOONA** (al-la-too'na).

**ALLEGHANY** (al'le-gä-ni').

**ALLOUEZ, CLAUDE** (klode ahl-loo-ă').

**ALLSTON** (awl'ston).

**ALMAGRO, DIEGO DE** (de-ă'go dă ahl-mah'gro).

**ALTAMAHIA** (al-tä-mä-haw').

**AMHERST** (am'er-st).

**AMIDAS** (am'i-das).

**AMPUDIA** (ahm-poo'de-ah).

**ANDRE** (an'dri).

**ANDROSCOGGINS** (an-dros-kog'inz).

**ANNE** (an).

**ANTARCTIC** (ant-ark'tik).

**ANTIETAM** (an-te'tam).

**APPALACHEE** (ap-pa-läch'e).

**APPOMATTOX** (ap-po-mat'toks).

**AQUIDNECK** (a-kwid'nek).

**ARAGO** (är'a-go; Fr. pron. al-rah-go').

**ARBUTHNOT** (ar'buth-not).

**ARIOSTO** (är-i-os'to).

**ABISTA** (ah-rees'tah).

**ARGENTINE** (ar-jeu'tine).

**ARKANSAS** (ar-kau'sas).

**ARMINIUS** (ar-min'i-us.)

**ARRAGON** (är'rä-gon).

**ASHE** (ash).

**ASIA** (ä'shi-ă).

**ATCHAFALAYA** (atch a-fä-lä'yä).

**AUGSBURG** (awgz'burg; Ger. pron. owgs'-borg).

**AUGUSTA** (aw-gus'ta).

**AUSTERLITZ** (aws'ter-lits; Ger. pron.

**AUSTRIA** (aws'tri-ă). [ows'ter-lits].

**AVERRILL** (ä'ver-il).

**AVERTYSBORO** (ä'ver-iz-bür'o).

**AVILEZ, MELENDEZ DE** (mä-len'deth dă

**AVON** (ä'ven). [ah-ve-leth']

**AYLTON, VASQUEZ DE** (yah'sketh dă ile-

**AZORES** (ä-zörz'). [yone']

**BACH** (bahk).

**BAHAMA** (bä-hä'mä).

**BAHIA** (bah-e'ah).

**BAINBRIDGE** (bahn'brij).

**BALBOA** (bahl-bo'ă).

**BALTIMORE** (bawl'ti-more, or bawl'ti-

**BARBADOES** (bar-ba'doze). [mur].

**BARLOW** (bar'lo).

**BARRON** (bär'un).

**BASTILE** (bahs-teel').

**BATON ROUGE** (bat'n-roozh).

**BAUM** (bowm).

**BAYARD** (bä'är'd).

**BAYOU TECHE** (bi'o tesh).

**BEAUFORT** (bu'furt).

**BEAUREGARD, PIERRE G. T.** (pe-are' bo-

**BEETHOVEN** (bä-to'vn). [re-gard']

**BEHRINGS** (beer'ingz).

**BELFAST** (bel'fahst).

**BELGIUM** (bel'jüm).

- BELLAMONT (bel'la mont).  
 BEMIS'S HEIGHTS (be'mis-ez hits).  
 BENHAM (ben'am).  
 BERGEN (ber'gen).  
 BERKELEY (berk'lī; formerly bark'lī).  
 BIENVILLE (be-an(g)-veel').  
 BILOXI (be-loks'i).  
 BLADENBURG (blā'dn̄z-bnrg).  
 BLAKELEY (blake'lī).  
 BLENHEIM (bleu'im).  
 BLYTHE (blithe).  
 BOILEAU (boi'lō; Fr. pron. bwō-lo').  
 BONHOMME RICHARD (bo-nom're-shār').  
 BOOTH, JOHN WILKES (wilks booth).  
 BORGNE (born).  
 BOSCAWEN (bos-kaw'en).  
 BOSSUET (bos-swā').  
 BOWDITCH (bow'ditch).  
 BOWLING GREEN (bole'ing).  
 BRACITO (brah-se'to).  
 BRAGANZA (bra-gan'za).  
 BRANDENBURG (bran'den-bnrg).  
 BRASHEAR CITY (brash'ur).  
 BRAZIL (bra-zel').  
 BREMER, FREDRIKA (fred'rī-kā bre'mer).  
 BREST (brēst).  
 BREWSTER (broo'ster).  
 BRUINSBURG (broo'inz-burg).  
 BUCHANAN (bük'an'ān; not bu-kan'ān).  
 BUENA VISTA (bwā'nāli vees'tah).  
 BUFORD (bu'furd).  
 BURGOYNE (bur-goin').  
 BURROWS (bür'oze).  
  
 CABOT (kah'bōt).  
 CABRAL (kah-brahl').  
 CABRILLO (kah-breel'yo).  
 CAIRO (kā'ro).  
 CALHOUN (kal-hoon').  
 CALIFORNIA (kal i-for'nī-a).  
 CALVERT, CECIL (sī'sil kol'vert).  
 CAMBRAI (kam-brā').  
 CAMBRIDGE (kame'brij).  
 CAMOENS (kam'o-enz).  
 CAMPBELL (kam'bel, or kam'el).  
 CANARIES (kā-nā'rīz).  
 CANONICUS (kā-nōn'ī-kus).  
 CANOVA (kā-no'vā).  
 CAPE BRETON (brit'n.).  
 CAPE GIRARDEAU (jee-rar-do').  
 CAPE HENLOPEN (hep lo'pen).  
 CARLETON, SIR GUY (gī karl'tun).  
 CARLOWITZ (kar'lō-wits).  
 CAROLINA (kār-o-li'nā).  
 CARTERET (kar'ter-et).  
 CARTHAGE (kar'thej).  
 CARTIER (kar-te-ā').  
 CASTILE (kas-teel').  
 CASTINE (kas-teen').  
 CAVOUR (kah-voo'r).  
 CAYUGAS (kā-yoo'gaz).  
 CERRO GORDO (ser'bo gor'do).  
 CERVANTES (ser-van'tēz).  
 CHALEURS (shah-loor').  
 CHALMERS (chal'merz).  
 CHAMBERSBURG (cham'berz-burg).  
 CHAMPION HILLS (cham'pi-un).  
 CHAMPLAIN (sham-plane').  
 CHANTILLY (chan'til-lī).  
 CHAPULTEPEC (chah-pool-tā-pekk').  
 CHARLEMAGNE (shar-le-mane').  
 CHATHAM (chat'am).  
 CHATTAHOOCHEE (chat-tā-hoo'che).
- CHATTANOOGA (chat-tā-nōo'gā).  
 CHAUNCEY (chahn'sī).  
 CHERBOURG (shār-boor').  
 CHEROKEES (chér-o-keez').  
 CHESAPEAKE (ches-a-peek').  
 CHICAGO (shī-kaw'go).  
 CHICKAHOMINY (chik-a-hom'ī-nī).  
 CHICKAMAUGA (chik-a-maw'gā).  
 CHICKASAW (chik'a-saw).  
 CHICORA (chi-ko'ra).  
 CHIHUAHUA (che-wah'wah).  
 CHILLI (chil'lē).  
 CHILLICOTHE (chil-lī-koth'e).  
 CHIPPEWA (chip'pe-waw).  
 CHOCTAWS (chok'tawz).  
 CHRISTINA (kris-te'nā).  
 CHRYSLER'S FIELD (krīs'lerz).  
 CHERUBUSCO (cha-roo-boos'ko).  
 CINCINNATI (sin-sī-nah'tī).  
 CLAYBORNE (klā'burn).  
 CLINCH (klīnch).  
 COACHECO (ko-che'ko).  
 COCKBURN (ko'burn).  
 CODDINGTON (kod'ding-tun).  
 COLBERT (kol-bare').  
 COLLETION (kol'lō-tun).  
 CONANT (ko'uānt).  
 CONCORD (kong'kurd).  
 CONNECTICUT (kon-trēt'ī-kut).  
 CONTRERAS (kou-trā'rahss).  
 COPERNICUS (ko-per'nī-kus).  
 CORDILLERAS (kor-dil'ler-az).  
 CORINTH (kor'inth).  
 CORNEILLE (kor-nale').  
 CORNWALLIS (korn-wol'lis).  
 CORONADO (ko-ro-nah'do).  
 CORPUS CHRISTI (kor'pus krīs'te).  
 CORREGGIO (kor-red'jo).  
 CORTEREAL (kor-tā-rā-abl').  
 CORTEZ (kor'tez).  
 COUSIN (koo-zan(g)').  
 COWPENS (kow'penz).  
 CRAVEN (kra'ven).  
 CRESPY (kres'pī).  
 CROGHAN (kro'hān).  
 CROMWELL (krum'wel).  
 CROZAT, ANTHONY (an'to-nī kro-zah').  
 CUBA (ku'bā).  
 CULLODEN (kul-lo'den).  
 CUSHING (köosh'ing).  
 CUVIER (ku've-er; Fr. pron. kü-ve-ā').  
 CYANE (si-ab').  
  
 DA GAMA, VASCO (valis'ko dah gah'mah).  
 DAILGREN, ULRIC (ul'rik dahl'grēn).  
 DAKOTA (dā-ko'tā).  
 DALTON (daw'l'un).  
 DANBURY (dan'būr-i).  
 DANVERS (dan'verz).  
 D'ANVILLE, DUKE (dahn(g)-veel').  
 DARIEN (da-rē-en').  
 DAVENPORT (dav'en-pōrt).  
 DAVY, SIR HUMPHRY (hum'frī dā'vel).  
 DEARBORN (deer'burn).  
 DEATONSVILLE (de'tunz-vil).  
 DE CABRAL (dā kah-brahl').  
 DE CABRILLO (dā kah-breel'yo).  
 DECATUR (de-kā'tur).  
 DE COLIGNY (de ko-lēn-ye').  
 DE ESPEJO (dā es-pā'ho).  
 DE GRASSE (de grās).  
 DE KALE, BARON (dē kālb').  
 DELAWARE (del'ə-wur).

- DE LEON, PONCE** (pone'thā dā lā-one').  
**DE MONTCALM** (dē mont-kahm').  
**DE MONTS, SIEUR** (se'ür' dē mawn(g)').  
**DERNE** (der'nē).  
**DE ROCHAMBEAU** (de ro-shahn(g)-bo').  
**DESCARTES** (dā-kärt').  
**DE SOTO** (dā-so'to).  
**D'ESTAING** (des-tān(g)').  
**DE TERNAY** (dē tēr-nā').  
**D'IBERVILLE, LEMOINE** (lē-mwōn' de-DIESKAU (de-es-ko'). [bare-veel').  
**DINWIDDIE** (din-wid'dī).  
**DONGAN** (don'gān).  
**DONIPHAN** (don'i-fān).  
**DONOP, COUNT** (do'nop).  
**DON PEDRO** (po'dro; Sp. pron. pā'dro).  
**DORCHESTER** (dor'ches-ter).  
**DOUGLAS** (dug'lās).  
**DOWNIE** (dow'nī).  
**DRURY'S BLUFF** (droo'rīz).  
**DUBUQUE** (du-book', oo as in *food*).  
**DU PONT** (du pont').
- ELBA** (el'bā).  
**ELBE** (el'b).  
**ENDICOTT** (en'dī-kut).  
**ENGLAND** (ing'glānd).  
**EPERVIER** (ā-pēr've-ā').  
**ERASMUS** (e-rāz'mus).  
**ERICSSON** (ēr'ik-sōn).  
**ERIE** (ē'rī).  
**ESOPUS** (e-so'pus).  
**ESPEJO** (es-pē'yo).  
**EUGENE, PRINCE** (ū-jēn').  
**EUTAW SPRINGS** (ū'taw).  
**EVERETT** (ev'er-et).
- FALMOUTH** (fālmuth).  
**FANEUIL HALL** (fan'il; formerly fun'il).  
**FARRAGUT** (far'a-gut).  
**FAYETTEVILLE** (fā-ēt'veil).  
**FENELON** (fen'e-lōn; Fr. pron. fane-.  
**FENIAN** (fe'nē-an). [lawn(g')].  
**FERNANDINA** (fer-nan-de'nā).  
**FLORIDA** (flōr'ī-dā).  
**FONTENOY** (fon-te-noy'; Fr. pro. fawn(g)-.  
**FORBES** (forbz). [nwāh'].  
**FORT BOWYER** (bo'yér).  
**FORT CASWELL** (kaz'wel).  
**FORT DE RUSSY** (dē rū'si).  
**FORT DONELSON** (don'el-sun).  
**FORT DUQUESNE** (du-kān').  
**FORT FRONTENAC** (fron'tē-nak).  
**FORT GRISWOLD** (griz'wl'd).  
**FORT MACON** (ma'kūn).  
**FORT MALDEN** (mawl'den).  
**FORT MCALLISTER** (mak-al'lis-ter).  
**FORT MCRAE** (mak-rā').  
**FORT MEIGS** (megz).  
**FORT MOULTRIE** (moo'trī, or mole'trī).  
**FORT NASSAU** (nas'saw).  
**FORT PULASKI** (pu-las'kl).  
**FORT RIDGELY** (rij'lī).  
**FORT ROSALIE** (ro-zah-le').  
**FORT SCHUYLER** (ski'lēr).  
**FORT STEADMAN** (sted'mān).  
**FORT STEPHENSON** (ste'vn-sun).  
**FRANCIS OF LORRAINE** (lōr-rāne').  
**FRANKFORT** (frangk'furt).  
**FREDERICKSHALD** (fred'er-iks-hahld).  
**FREMONT** (fre-mont').  
**FROBISHER** (frob'ish-er).  
**FULTON** (fōl'tun).
- GALILEO** (gal-lē-le'o; It. pron. gah-lē-e-  
**GALLATIN** (gal-lā-tin). [la'o').  
**GALVESTON** (gal'ves-tun).  
**GENESE** (jen-e-sē').  
**GENET** (je-net'; Fr. pron. zh'nā).  
**GENOA** (jen'o-ā).  
**GERRY** (gē'rī).  
**GETTYSBURG** (gēt'tiz-burg).  
**GHENT** (gēnt).  
**GIBRALTAR** (jib-rāwl'tār).  
**GILA** (he'lāh).  
**GILLMORE** (gil'more).  
**GOUCHESTER** (glos'ter).  
**GOETHE** (gō'tā).  
**GOLDSBOROUGH** (gōldz'bōr-o).  
**GOLIAD** (go-li-ad').  
**GOMEZ** (go'meth).  
**GONZALES** (gon-zah'les, or go-nah-thā'-  
**GORGES** (gor'jez). [leth.).  
**GOSNOLD** (goz'nuld).  
**GORQUES, DOMINIC DE** (do-me-neek' dē  
**GRANADA** (grā-nah'dā). [goorg').  
**GRANGER** (grān'jer).  
**GRANT, ULYSSES S.** (u-lis'seez).  
**GREAT PEDEE** (pe-de').  
**GREENWICH** (green'ich).  
**GRIERSON** (greer'son).  
**GROTIUS** (gro'shi-us).  
**GROTON** (graw'tn).  
**GUADALUPE HIDALGO** (gaw-dah-loop'  
 he-dal'go; Sp. pron. gwah-dah-loo'pā  
 he-dah'lgo).  
**GUANAHANI** (gwah-nā-hah'nē).  
**GUERRIERE** (gēr're-ar'e').  
**GUIANA** (gē-ah'nā).  
**GUILFORD** (gil'furd).  
**GUSTAVUS VASA** (gus-tā'vus vah'sah).
- HALLECK** (hal'lek).  
**HALLEY** (hal'li).  
**HAMPDEN** (ham'den).  
**HANDEL** (hān'del).  
**HARDEE** (har'de).  
**HARRISBURG** (hār'ris-burg).  
**HARROD** (hār'rod).  
**HATTERAS** (hat'ter-əs).  
**HAVANA** (hā-van'ā).  
**HAVERHILL** (hā'ver-il).  
**HAVRE DE GRACE** (hav'ur dē grāhs).  
**HAWTHORNE** (haw'thorn).  
**HAYDN** (hā'dn).  
**HAYTI** (hā'tī).  
**HEATH** (heet'h).  
**HEINTZELMAN** (hīnt'sel-mān).  
**HELENA** (hel-e'nā).  
**HEMANS** (hem'anz).  
**HERKIMER** (her'ki-mer).  
**HERRON** (her'un).  
**HERSCHEL** (her'shel).  
**HINDMAN** (hind'mān).  
**HISPANIOLA** (his-pān-ī-o'lā).  
**HOLMES** (hōmz).  
**HOOD** (hōod).  
**HOOKER** (hōok'er).  
**HOUSTON** (hews'tun).  
**HUGHES** (huze).  
**HUGUENOTS** (hu'žē-nots).  
**HUMBOLDT** (hum'bolt; Ger. pron. hōōm'.  
**HURONS** (hu'rūnz). [bōlt).
- IBERVILLE.** See D'IBERVILLE.  
**ILLINOIS** (il'li-nois', or -noi').  
**INDIA** (in'dī-ā, or in'jī-ā).

- INDIANA (in-dī-an'ā).  
 IOWA (i'ō-wā).  
 IROQUOIS (ir-o-kwoi').  
 IUKA (i-yoo'kā).  
 IVRY (iv'rī; *Fr. pron.* e-vre').  
 JALAPA (hah-lah'pā).  
 JAPAN (ja-pān').  
 JERSEY (jer'zē).  
 JESUITS (jez'u-its).  
 JOLIET (jo'lī-et; *Fr. pron.* zho-le-ā').  
 KANAWHA (kā-naw'wā).  
 KANSAS (kan'zās, or kan'sās).  
 KANT (kānt; *Ger. pron.* kānt).  
 KASKASKIA (kas-kas'kī-ā).  
 KEARNY (kar'nī).  
 KEARSARGE (ke'ar-sarj).  
 KENESAW, MT. (ken-e-saw').  
 KENNEBEC (ken-e-bek').  
 KEYES (kīz).  
 KICKAPOOS (kik'tā-pooz).  
 KIEFT (keft).  
 KITTANNING (kit-tan'ning).  
 KNYPHAUSEN (nip-haw'su; *Ger. pron.* knip-how'zen).  
 KOSCIUSKO (kos-sī-us'ko).  
 LA ANGOSTURA (lah ahn-gos-too'rah).  
 LABRADOR (lah-rā-dōr').  
 LAFAYETTE (lah-fā-ēt').  
 LA FONTAINE (lah fōn-tān'; *Fr. pron.* lah-fawn(g)-tān').  
 LAFOURCHE (lah-foorsh').  
 LA GRANGE (lah grāñj').  
 LANCASTER (laug'kās-ter).  
 LAPLACE (lah-plās').  
 LA PLATA (lah plah'tā).  
 LA SALLE (lah sal').  
 LAUDONNIERE (lo-dōn-e-are').  
 LE BŒUF (le búf).  
 LEDVARD (led'yard).  
 LEESBURG (lecz'būrg).  
 LEIBNITZ (līp'enitz).  
 LEISLER (līs'ler).  
 LENNI LENAPE (len'ne le-nah'pe).  
 LEPANTO (le-pān'to).  
 LEVANT (le-vānt').  
 LINCOLN (ling'kun).  
 LISBON (līz'būn).  
 LLOYD (loid).  
 LONDON (lūn'dūn).  
 LOPE DE VEGA (lo-pā dā vā'gah).  
 LOS ANGELES (lös ahng'hā-les).  
 LOUDOUN (loo'dūn).  
 LOUISBURG (loo'is-burg).  
 LOUISIANA (loo-e-zī-an'ā).  
 LOUIS PHILIPPE (loo'is phil'ip; *Fr. pron.* loo-e' feel-leep').  
 LOUISVILLE (loo'is-vil).  
 LOVELACE (luv'les).  
 LOYOLA (lo-i-o'lā; *Sp. pron.* lo-yo'lah).  
 LUTZEN (lōot'sen).  
 LYNCHBURG (līnch'burg).  
 LYNDE (līnd).  
 MACAULAY (mā-kaw'lē).  
 MACHIAS (mā-chī'ās).  
 MACHIAVELLI (mak-e-ah-vēl'le).  
 MACKINAW (mak'in-haw).  
 MACOMB (mā-koom').  
 MAGELLAN (mā-jel'īān).  
 MAGRUDER (mā-groo'der).  
 MALDEN (mawl'den).  
 MALVERN HILL (mawl'vern).  
 MANASSAS (mā-nas'sās).  
 MANHATTAN (man-hat'tān).  
 MARIA THERESA (mā-ri'ā the-re'zā).  
 MARIETTA (mā-rī-ēt'tā).  
 MARION (mār'i-un).  
 MARLBOROUGH (mawl'bōr-o).  
 MARQUETTE (mar-ke-t').  
 MASSACHUSETTS (mas-sā-ehoo'sets).  
 MASSASOIT (mas-sā-soit'; *originally* mā-sas'o-it').  
 MATAMORAS (mat-a-mo'rās).  
 MATHER (math'er; *formerly* mah'ther).  
 MAUMEE (maw-mee').  
 MAUREPAS LAKE (mo're-pah).  
 MAXIMILIANS (maks-i-mil'yān).  
 MAYHEW (mā'hu).  
 McCLEERNAND (mak-kler'nānd).  
 McCULLOCH (mak-kul'ōch).  
 McDONOUGH (mak-don'ūh).  
 McDOWELL (mak-dow'el).  
 MCINTOSH (mak'in-tosh).  
 MCPHERSON (mak-fēr'sn).  
 MECHANICSVILLE (me-kan'īks-vil).  
 MEIGS (megz).  
 MELANCHTHON (me-langk'thon).  
 MELENDEZ (mā-len'deth).  
 MENDELSSOHN (men'del-sōne).  
 MENOMONIES (mē-nom'o-niz).  
 MERIDIAN (me-rid'i-an).  
 MESILLA VALLEY (mā-seel'yāh).  
 MIAMIS (mi-ah'meēz).  
 MIANTONOMOH (mi-an-ton'o-mo).  
 MICHAEL ANGELO (mī'kel an'je-lo).  
 MICHIGAN (mish'i-gān).  
 MILAN (mil'an, or mī-lān').  
 MILLIKEN'S BEND (mil'li-kinz).  
 MINNESOTA (min-ne-so'tā).  
 MINUIT (me-noit').  
 MIQUELON (mīk-ē-lōn').  
 MISSISSIPPI (mis-sis-sip'pī).  
 MISSOURI (mis-soo'rī; *often mispronounced* mīz-zoo'rā).  
 MOBILE (mo-beel').  
 MOHEGAN (mo-hē'gān).  
 MOLIERE (mo-le-are').  
 MOLINO DEL REY (mo-le'no del rā).  
 MONCLOVA (mon-klo've).  
 MONHEGAN ISLAND (mon-he'gān).  
 MONMOUTH (mon'muth).  
 MONOCACY (mo-nok'a-sī).  
 MONONGAHELA (mo-non-gā-he'lā).  
 MONROE (mūn-ro').  
 MONTAUK (mon-tawk').  
 MONTEREY (mon-te-rā').  
 MONTESQUIEU (mawn(g)-tes-ke-ā'; *sometimes Anglicized* mon'tes-ku).  
 MONTEZUMA (mon-tē-zu'mā).  
 MONTGOMERY (mōnt-gum'er-ī).  
 MONTREAL (mont-re-awl').  
 MOSCOW (mos'kō; *not* mos'kow).  
 MOULTRIE (moo'trī, or mole'trī).  
 MOZART (mo-zart'; *Ger. pron.* mot'sart).  
 MURFREESBORO' (mur'frez-bür-o).  
 NADIR SHAH (nah'dur shah).  
 NANTES (nānts; *Fr. pron.* nahn(g)t).  
 NARRAGANSET (nar-ra-gan;set).  
 NARVAEZ, PAMPHILO DE (pahm-fe'lō dā  
 NASEBY (nāzē'bī). [nar-vāh'eth].  
 NATCHEZ (natchē'ez).  
 NAUMKEAG (nawm'kēg).

NAVAJO (nah've-ho).	POCAHONTAS (po-kah-hon'tas).
NAVARINO (nah-vah-re'no).	POIETIERS (poi-teerz; Fr. <i>pro. pwō-te-ā'</i> ).
NAVARRE (nah-var').	POINT ISABEL (iz'a-bel).
NEVADA (ue-vah'də).	POKANOKETS (po-kah-no'kets).
NEW ALBION (al'bē-un).	POLK (poke).
NEWARK (nu'ark).	POMEROY (pnm'roi).
NEW BRUNSWICK (brunz'wik).	PONTCHARTRAIN LAKE (pont-shar-
NEWBURYPORT (nu'bē-rē-pōrt').	PONTIAC (pon'ti-ak). [trane'].
NEWFOUNDLAND (nu'fund-land).	POPHAM (pop'am).
NEW HAMPSHIRE (hamp'shur).	POPOCATAPETL (po-po-kah-tä-petl').
NEW NETHERLANDS (neh'ther-ländz).	PORT GIBSON (gil'sun).
NEW ORLEANS (or'lē anz).	PORTSMOUTH (ports'muth).
NIAGARA (ni-ag're-ra).	PORTUGAL (pōr'tū-gal).
NICHOLSON (nik'ul-sun).	POTOMAC (po-to'mäk).
NINA (neen'yah).	POTTAWATOMIES (pot'-ah-wot'o-miz).
NORFOLK (nor'fuk).	POWHATAN (pow-hä-tan').
NORRIDGEWOCKS (nor'rij-woks).	PRAGUE (präg).
NORWALK (nor'wak).	PRAIRIE DU CHIEN (prä'rē-doo-sheen').
NOVA SCOTIA (no've sko'shē-a).	PRESQUE ISLE (presk eel).
NUECES (noo-ä'sës).	PREVOST (pre-vost').
OGLETHORPE (ö'gl-thorp).	PRIDEAUX (prid'o).
OKECHOBEE LAKE (o ke-cho'be).	PRIMA VISTA (pre'mah vees'tah).
OLUSTEE (o-lus'te).	PRUSSIA (prush'a, or proo'sha).
ONEIDAS (o-né'daz).	PUEBLA (poo-ä'blah).
ONONDAGAS (on-on-daw'gaz).	PULASKI (pu-las'ki).
ONTARIO LAKE (on-tä'ri-o).	PULTOWA (pul-to'wə).
OPECHANANOUGH (op-e-kan'kə-no).	QUANTRELL (kwon'trel).
OREGON (or'e-gon).	RABELLAIS (rahb-lä').
ORETO (o-re'to).	RACINE (rah-seen').
ORINOCO (o rē'no'ko).	RAHL (rah'l).
ORISKANY (o-ris'kä-ni).	RAISIN (rä'zn).
OSCEOLA (os-e-o'lä).	RALEIGH (raw'lī).
OSWEGO (os-we'go).	RAPIHAEL (raf'a-el).
OTHO (o'tho).	RAPIDAN (rap-id-an').
OTTAWAS (ot'tä-wawz).	RAVAILLAC (rah-vah-yahk').
PADUCAH (pa-doo'ka).	READING (red'ing).
PAKENHAM (pak'n-am).	RENO (re'no).
PALMERSTON (pal'mer-ston).	RESACA DE LA PALMA (rä-sah'kah dä lah
PALO ALTO (pah'lō ah'lō).	REYNOLDS (ren'uldz). [pahl'mah].
PALOS (pah'lōs).	RHINE (rine).
PAMUNKEE (pah-mung'kē).	RIALL (ri'äl).
PANAMA (pan-ä-näh').	РИАУЛТ (re-bo').
PAOLI (pä-o'lī).	RICHELIEU (reesh'loo; Fr. <i>pron. reesh-</i>
PARRAS (par'rah-s).	RINGGOLD (ring'guld). [le-ü'].
PASCAL, BLAISE (blaze pas'kal; Fr. <i>pron.</i>	RIO GRANDE (ri'o grand; Sp. <i>pron. re'o</i>
pahs-kahl').	ROANOKE (ro-a-noke'). [grahn'dä].
PASCUA FLORIDA (pahs-koo'ali flo-re'-	ROBERVAL (ro-bär-vahl').
PATUXENT (pa-tuks'ent).	ROMNEY (rom'ni).
PAULUS HOOD (paw'lus).	ROSECRANS (roze'krans).
PAVIA (pah-ve'ah).	ROUEN (roo'en; Fr. <i>pron. roo-ahn(g)'</i> ).
PAWCATUCK (paw'kä-tuk).	ROWLEY (row'lī).
PAWTUCKET (paw-tuk'ets).	RUBENS (roo'benz).
PEGRAM (pe'gram).	RUSSIA (rush'a, or roo'sha).
PENSACOLA (peñ-sä-ko'lä).	RUYZ (roo-ëth').
PEPPERELL (pep'er-el).	RYSWICK (riz'wik; Dut. <i>pron. rîse'wik</i> ).
PEQUOTS (pe'kwots).	SABINE (sa-been').
PERDIDO (per-de'do).	SACO (saw'ko).
PEROTE (pä-ro'tä).	SACRAMENTO (sak-rä-men'to).
PERU (pe-roo').	SADOWA (sah-do'wə).
PESTALOZZI (pes tah-lot'se).	SALEM (sä'lem).
PHILIPPI (fi-lip'pi).	SALINE (sa-lēn').
PHILIPPINE Is. (fil'ip-pin).	SALISBURY (sawiz'bür-y).
PIEDMONT (peed'mont).	SALMON FALLS (sam'min).
PIERCE (peerse, or perse).	SALTILLO (sahl-teel'yo).
PIGOT (pig'ut).	SAMOSET (sam'o-set).
PINTA (peen'tah).	SAN DIEGO (sahn de-ä'go).
PITCAIRN (pit'karne).	SAN JACINTO (san ja-sin'to).
PISCATAQUA (pis-kat'a-kwə).	SAN JUAN DE ULLOA (sahn Hoo-ahn' dä
PIZARRO (pé-zär'ro; Sp. <i>pron.</i> pe-tha'-	ool-yo'ah).
PLEASONTON (plez'un-tən). [RO].	
PLYMOUTH (plim'uth).	

- SAN SALVADOR (sahn sahl-vah-dore').  
 SANTA ANNA (sahn'tah ahn'nah).  
 SANTA FE (sam'tah fe; *Sp. pron.* sahn'tah).  
 SANTA MARIA (sahn'tah mah'-reh'ah). [fā].  
 SANTA ROSA (sahn'tah ro'zah).  
 SANTEE (san-te').  
 SARCOXIE (sar-koks'e).  
 SARDINIA (sar-din'i-ah).  
 SASSACUS (*sas-sa-*kus').  
 SCHENECTADY (ske-neck'tah-di').  
 SCHILLER (shil'ler).  
 SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN (shles'vig-hol'-  
[stine]).  
 SCHOEPF (shūpf).  
 SCHIOFIELD (sko'feeld).  
 SCHUYLER (ski'ler).  
 SEMINOLES (sem'i-nōlз).  
 SEMMES (semz).  
 SENECAS (sen'e-kaz).  
 SERAPIS (se-rā'pis; *commonly* sér'ə-pis).  
 SEVERN RIVER (se'vern).  
 SEVILLE (sev'il, or se-vil').  
 SEYMOUR (so'mur).  
 SHAWNEES (shaw-nee'z).  
 SHENANDOAH (shen-ən-do'ə).  
 SHIELDS (sheeldz).  
 SHILOH (shī'lō).  
 SIGEL (sē'gēl).  
 SIGOURNEY (sig'ur-nē).  
 SIOUX (soo, or se oo').  
 SISMONDI (sis-mon'di).  
 SKENESBOROUGH (skeenz'bür-o).  
 SLIDELL (slī-del').  
 SLOUGHTER (slaw'ter).  
 SOBIESKI (so-be-es'ke).  
 SOLYMAN II. (sol'yī-man).  
 SOMERSET (sum'er-set).  
 SOTHEL (soth'el).  
 SOUTHAMPTON (sūth-amp'tun).  
 SPIRE (spīr).  
 STATEN ISLAND (stat'n).  
 STAUNTON (stan'tun).  
 ST. ALBANS (sānt aw'l'bānz).  
 ST. AUGUSTINE (sānt aw-gus-teen').  
 ST. CLAIR (sānt klār).  
 ST. CROIX (sānt kroi).  
 ST. DOMINGO (sānt do-ming'go).  
 ST. GENEVIEVE (sānt jen-e-vee').  
 ST. LEGER (sil'in-jer, or sānt lej'er).  
 ST. LOUIS (sānt loo'is).  
 ST. PIERRE (sāu(g) pe-are').  
 ST. REGIS (sānt re'jis).  
 ST. SIMON (sānt sī'mun; *Fr. pron.* san(g) se-mawn(y')).  
 STEUBEN (stu'ben; *Ger. pron.* stoi'ben).  
 STRASBURG (stras'burg).  
 STREIGHT (strate).  
 STRINGHAM (string'äm).  
 STUVVESANT (sti'ves-ant).  
 SUFFOLK (suf'fuk).  
 SURAJAH DOWLAH (sūr-ah'jah dow'lah).  
 SWANZEY (swon'zi).  
 TALLAHASSEE (tal-lä-has'se).  
 TALLAPOOSA (tal-lä-poo'sä).  
 TAMPICO (tahm-pe'ko).  
 TANEY (taw'nē).  
 TARLETON (tarl'tun).  
 TECUMSEH (te-kum'se).  
 TEZCUCO LAKE (tes-koo'ko).  
 THACKERAY (thak'ə-ri).  
 THAMES (temz).  
 TICONDEROGA (ti-kon-dur-o'ga).  
 TILGHMAN (til'män).
- TIPPECANOE (tip-pe-kä-noo').  
 TITIAN (tish'ē-an).  
 TOHOPEKA (to-ho-pe'kä).  
 TORTUGAS (tor-too'gäz).  
 TOWNSHEND (townz'end).  
 TRAFALGAR (trä-fäl-gär').  
 TRIPOLI (trip'o-le).  
 TRISTAN D'ACUNHA (trees-tahn' dah-kuoo'yah).  
 TULLAHOMA (tul-lä-ho'mä).  
 TUPELO (tu'pe-lo).  
 TUSCARORA (tus-ka-ro'ra).  
 TYBEE ISLAND (ti-be').  
 UHLAND (oo'lalnd).  
 UNCAS (ung'käz).  
 UTAH (yoo'tah).  
 UTRECHT (yoo'trekt; *Dut. pron.* ü'trekt).  
 VALENTIA (vā-len'shū-a).  
 VALLADOLID (val-lä-do-leed').  
 VALLEY FORGE (val'lī fōrj).  
 VALPARAISO (vahl-pah-rī'so).  
 VALVERDE (vahl-vēr'dä).  
 VANDYKE (van-dike').  
 VAN RENNELAER (van ren'se-lur).  
 VAN WART (van wawrt).  
 VASA (val'hah).  
 VEGA, LOPE DE (lo'pā dā vā'gah).  
 VENANGO (ve-nang'go).  
 VENICE (ven'is).  
 VERA CRUZ (vā'rah kroos).  
 VERPLANCK'S POINT (ver-plangks').  
 VERRAZZANI (ver-rat-sah'ne).  
 VESPUCCI (ves-poot'che).  
 VIENNA (ve-en'nä).  
 VINCENNES (vin-senz').  
 WACHUSETT (wā-choo'set).  
 WADDELL (wod'del).  
 WADSWORTH (wodz'wurth).  
 WAHOO SWAMP (wā hoo').  
 WALDRON (wol'druu).  
 WALKER (wawk'er).  
 WALLACE (wol'lis).  
 WAMPANOAGS (wom-pā-no'agz).  
 WARRINGTON (wōr'ring-tun).  
 WATAUGA (wā-taw'gā).  
 WAXHAW CREEK (waks'haw).  
 WAYLAND (wā'lānd).  
 WEEHAWKEN (we-haw'ken).  
 WEITZEL (wite'sel).  
 WESTPHALIA (west-fale'yā).  
 WEYMOUTH (wā'muth).  
 WHEWELL (hū'el).  
 WHITEFIELD (whit'feeld).  
 WINDER (wind'er).  
 WINDSOR (win'zur).  
 WINTHROP (win'thrup).  
 WOOSTER (wōō'ster).  
 WORDEN (wur'dn).  
 WORDSWORTH (wurdz'wurth).  
 WORTH (wurth).  
 WREN (ren).  
 WYANDOTS (wi-an-dots').  
 WYOMING (wi-o'ming).  
 YAMASSEES (yam-as-seez').  
 YEAMANS (yem'anz).  
 YEARDLEY (yard'le).  
 ZAGONYI (za-gon'yē).  
 ZOLLICOFFER (zōl'i-kof-fer).

W 61







WERT  
BOOKBINDING  
Granville Pg  
March April 1989  
We're Writing Books

